C20-1690-0

13 JAN 1970

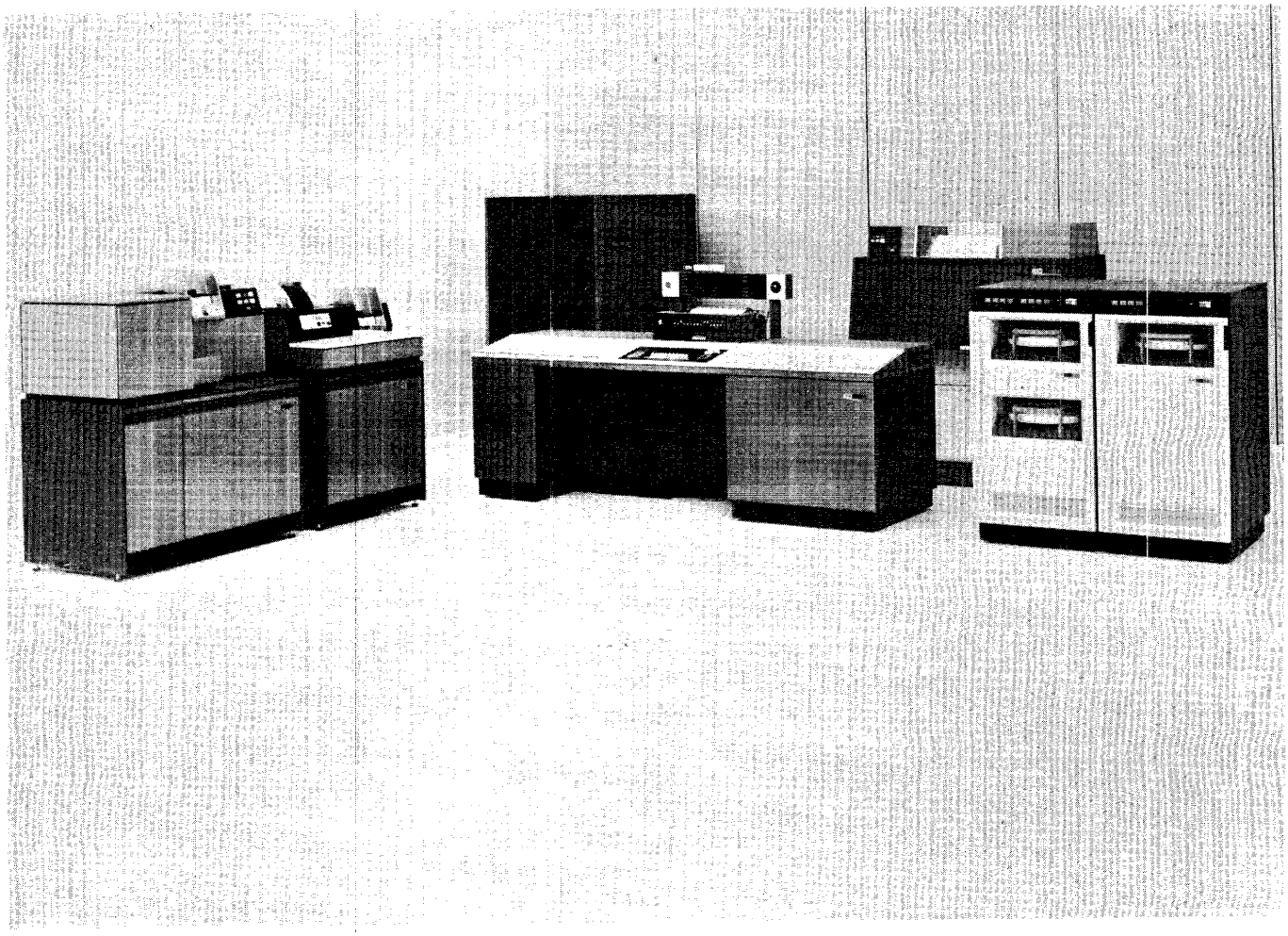
IBM Data Processing Techniques

IBM 1130 Computing System User's Guide

This manual, covering a wide range of subjects that are of interest to 1130 customer personnel, is designed for insertion in a workbook along with user-generated materials. It deals with the steps to be considered in any successful installation program: preinstallation planning, documenting current applications, design of new applications, conversion, program development, testing, and program documentation.

Additional topics discussed include the 1130 system, the 1130 Monitor, Job Management, Disk Management, Core Management, File Organization, Disk Data Storage, FORTRAN and the Commercial Subroutine Package, Sorting and System Evaluation - Performance.

It is suggested that the User's Guide be placed in a binder and that dividers be inserted before the various sections. The resulting workbook becomes the single major source of installation guidance when you include your own data processing policies, standards, and control forms.



IBM 1130 Computing System

First Reprint

This first reprint contains a few minor changes to the original edition, but does not in any way obsolete the original edition.

Copies of this and other IBM publications can be obtained through IBM branch offices. Address comments concerning the contents of this publication to:
IBM, Technical Publications Department, 112 East Post Road, White Plains, N.Y. 10601

READER'S GUIDE

INTRODUCTION

This section is intended as a guide to help you get the most out of this manual. Because of the magnitude of the manual and the differing needs of various readers, such a guide, or "road map", is particularly important.

For purposes of the guide, readers will be divided into three groups:

1. Top management, who want an overview of the system.
2. Data processing management, who have direct responsibility for the installation and management of the 1130 System.
3. Programmers and systems analysts, who will actually set up the system, determine the methods to be used, and/or code the programs.

Groups 2 and 3 are subdivided into those concerned with "pure" scientific applications, and those working in a commercial or mixed scientific-commercial atmosphere.

Figure 01.1 shows a general outline of the manual and suggests which sections should be read by each group. However, the top manager who wants a more detailed view of the 1130 will find much of the data processing management material to be relevant; the data processing manager may want to read more than Figure 01.1 indicates; etc.

The effectiveness of this Guide depends entirely on the responsible manager in your installation. The Guide contains possible paths to a successful installation. Since the installation of data processing equipment is a disciplined venture that involves decisions concerning the selection of the best paths, your management's responsibility is clearly delineated. This responsibility began with the creation of realistic objectives. Control is exercised through timely reviews in which progress is related to checkpoints and corrective action is undertaken.

A WORD TO TOP MANAGEMENT

Within the last several years, your company may have increased its plant capacity to meet growing needs. Before this new resource became fully operational, though, many things had to be done. Management was chosen, an organization chart drawn up, a plan for startup formulated, a date picked for the start of production, etc.

Just recently you may have added a new product or service. The introduction of this product or service involved many considerations. Its need was studied, its function determined, an announcement date selected, etc.

In both cases, management:

- Defined its objectives
- Made a plan
- Established checkpoints
- Assigned responsibilities

Timely reviews determined whether your plans were being followed, your objectives met, etc. On the basis of these reviews, modifications and adjustments were made to ensure that the operation was a success.

Now you are adding another resource to your organization — an IBM 1130 Computing System. As before, there are many things that you, as management, must do if your 1130 installation is to meet its planned objectives.

Should the installation of a new data processing system be any less subject to management control than a new plant, or a new product? The answer is no. Data processing capability is a resource, just like the new plant or new product. In fact, a data processing system is a unique type of resource; it is one that extends management's ability to control other resources.

Your 1130 system may be used to maintain a personnel skills inventory or to schedule plant operations. It may be assigned to keep a close watch on cash flow or to determine reorder points for your inventory. In each case, data processing is a resource being used to control other resources.

In this light, the IBM 1130 Computing System that you are about to install should take on an added importance. Objectives, checkpoints, and the mechanics for review should be established for this resource, just as for any other resource available to you.

The 1130 Computing System, through its stored-program power and random access disk capability, embodies a new technology. The maximum value will be derived from this technology only if the system is oriented toward your objectives and its installation is closely monitored to see that those objectives are achieved. It is through this type of involvement that the philosophies and policies of a manager can be manifested.

The 1130 User's Guide has been designed with these thoughts in mind. First, it deals with all the considerations that lead to a successful installation. Second, it is so organized as to lend itself to the control and review process. The cornerstone of

THE TOPIC:		THE READER				
		Top Mgmt	DP Mgmt (Commercial-Scientific)	DP Mgmt (Scientific)	Programmer/ Analyst (Commercial-Scientific)	Programmer/ Analyst (Scientific)
Preinstallation Planning		✓	✓		✓	
Documenting Current Applications		Introduction	Introduction		✓	
Preliminary Questions & Answers	Cards vs Disk Files		✓		*	*
	Safeguarding Data		✓		*	*
Application Design	Accounting Controls		✓		✓	
	Forms Design				✓	✓
	Card Design				✓	✓
	Disk Design				*	*
Program Development			Introduction	Introduction	✓	✓
Testing Effectively			✓	✓	✓	✓
Documentation		Introduction	✓	✓	✓	✓
Conversion			✓		✓	
The 1130 System			✓	✓	✓	✓
The 1130 Monitor			✓	✓	✓	✓
Job Management			✓	✓	✓	✓
Disk Management	Layout of Disk				✓	✓
	Increasing Space				✓	✓
	Disk Util. Prog.				✓	✓
Core Storage Management					✓	✓
FORTRAN	Arithmetic		✓	✓	✓	✓
	Overlapped I/O		✓		✓	
	Character Handling				✓	
	Core Saving Tips				✓	✓
	Timing				✓	✓
Sorting			Introduction		✓	
Use of the Disk for Data Storage			Introduction *	Introduction *	*	*
Disk Organization and Processing			*	Introduction *	*	*
Improving Your System — Performance		Introduction	✓	✓	✓	✓

✓ Read this section

* May be skipped if you don't have, or are not considering using, the disk for data storage

Figure 01.1

this organization is an Installation Activity Schedule, which highlights all the events leading to a successful installation. This is fully described in Section 05.

This Guide should become a working document in your organization. Although the experience and specific needs of each organization vary considerably, all the events apply to some extent in every installation.

A WORD TO DATA PROCESSING MANAGEMENT

In addition to the comments directed toward top management, several thoughts apply here.

You are the men in the middle — between top management and the programmer/analyst. For this reason the sections checked for your attention are those concerned with how to do things the "right" way; how to avoid potential pitfalls; how to get the most out of your 1130 system; etc.

A WORD TO THE PROGRAMMER/ANALYST

As Figure 01.1 shows, this manual is directed primarily toward you; you should read its entire contents. This is especially true for those of you who are working in a commercial, or mixed, environment.

However, the distinction between a commercial, or mixed, environment and a "pure" scientific environment is very tenuous. More and more, users who once considered themselves "pure" scientific find their applications taking on aspects of the traditional commercial job — large data files are developed, input and output formats become more critical, alphabetic codes and data are encountered.

Actually, the subjects checked for the "pure" scientific reader represent a bare minimum. Anyone who is or expects to be in a mixed environment should read the entire manual.

SUMMARY OF THE USER'S GUIDE

The Installation Phase

The following listing of the material in this Guide reflects the major grouping of installation events and should provide an indication of the Guide's comprehensive nature. Comments have been added to each listed item to relate the manner in which that subject matter may be used.

- Preinstallation Planning — provides a proven method of scheduling and reviewing installation activities, specifically tailored to the 1130 user, and illustrates the points where management review is most essential.
- Documenting Current Applications — concerns the control and techniques that can be applied to the documentation of existing procedures. Distinction is made between manual operations and those already mechanized.
- Some Preliminary Questions and Answers Regarding Data Storage — considers the pros and cons of using either cards or disk for data storage. Also considers protecting your data — why and how it should be protected.
- 1130 Application Design — includes card and form design, record layouts, and flowcharts. The elements of application design are made clear through "live" illustrations, which are used throughout. This section also aids in the selection of the right job-oriented programming language and thus contributes to the effectiveness of the whole installation effort.
- Program Development — devotes itself to converting designs for 1130 applications into tested, debugged machine programs. The application discussed throughout the Guide is provided to serve as a teaching aid and time saver for the programmer. Programming hints and aids are also provided.
- Testing Effectively — shows the methods an installation should use in testing individual programs and complete systems.
- Program Documentation — shows how a good set of working documents, which a computer installation must develop, can be created during the development phases.
- Conversion — outlines the procedures required to perform the cutover from your present system to the 1130.

The Operations Phase

This portion of the Guide contains several sections of interest to users who have completed the installation phase:

- 1130 Computing System — contains a comprehensive description of the 1130 System and a brief description of each component.
- 1130 Disk Monitor System — discusses the 1130 Monitor in general and leads into the more detailed material of the next three sections.
- Job Management — covers those features of the Monitor that help you manage the job, or unit of work.
- Disk Management — describes the layout of disk storage, how you may use it, and how to get the most out of it.

- Core Storage Management — outlines the facilities the Monitor gives you to manage core storage with the LOCAL, SOCAL and LINK overlay systems.
- FORTRAN — General and Commercial — covers many aspects of FORTRAN that are of interest to all users, but with special emphasis on the needs of commercial programmers. Use of the Commercial Subroutine Package, arithmetic considerations, and core-saving tips are among the major topics covered.
- Sorting with Your 1130 — describes the sorting process and some alternate approaches.
- Use of the Disk for Data Storage — describes the way data is situated on the disk, and stresses efficiency.
- Disk Data Files — Organization and Processing — continues the previous topic, discussing the various file organization techniques and how the processing sequence affects the choice of organiation.
- Improving Your System — Performance — covers performance and how it is affected by (1) the Monitor, (2) the programmer, and (3) the 1130 itself. Three case studies are presented to illustrate various approaches to improving throughput rates and run times.

CONTENTS

Section 01: Reader's Guide

Section 02: Table of Contents

Section 05: Preinstallation Planning
- Section Contents 05.00.00
- Introduction 05.01.00
- General Planning 05.10.00
- Application and Conversion Planning ... 05.20.00
- Programming Planning 05.30.00

Section 10: Documenting Current Applications
- Section Contents 10.00.00
- Introduction 10.01.00
- Documentation of Manual Systems 10.10.00
- Documentation of Punched Card Systems 10.20.00
- Accounting Controls 10.30.00
- Survey Questionnaires 10.40.00
  - Billing 10.40.10
  - Accounts Receivable 10.40.20
  - Sales Analysis 10.40.30
  - Inventory 10.40.40
  - Accounts Payable 10.40.50
  - Payroll 10.40.60
- Manual System Documentation Example-Payroll 10.50.00
  - Introduction 10.50.01
  - Job Description 10.50.10
  - Survey Form 10.50.20
  - Sample Documents 10.50.30
  - Systems Flowchart 10.50.40

Section 15: Some Preliminary Questions and Answers Regarding Data Storage
- Section Contents 15.00.00
- Introduction 15.01.00
- Data -- On Disk or Cards? 15.10.00
  - General Considerations 15.10.01
  - Flexibility in Order of Processing ... 15.10.10
  - Jobs Involving More than One File ... 15.10.20
  - Frequency of Changes to Your File ... 15.10.30
  - Need for Inquiry into Your File 15.10.40
  - Size of Your Data File 15.10.50
  - Your Backup Requirements 15.10.60
  - Record Size 15.10.70
  - Other Considerations 15.10.80
  - Summary 15.10.90
- How to Safeguard Your Disk Data Files 15.20.00
  - Introduction 15.20.01
  - Know Your Data 15.20.10
  - Know What Can Happen to Your Data 15.20.20
  - Design an Accident-Insensitive System 15.20.30
  - Detect Errors Before They Do Damage 15.20.40
  - Plan Modest-Size, Modular Programs 15.20.50
  - Always Back Up Your Disk Files with a Duplicate Copy 15.20.60
  - Provide Tested and Documented Recovery Procedures 15.20.70

Section 20: 1130 Application Design
- Section Contents 20.00.00
- Introduction 20.01.00
- Accounting Controls 20.10.00
  - Review of Accounting Control Principles 20.10.10
  - More Specific Suggestions for Document and Accounting Controls ... 20.10.20
- Form Design 20.20.00
  - 1130 Considerations 20.20.10
  - Form Design Principles 20.20.20
- Card Design 20.30.00
  - 1130 Considerations 20.30.10
  - Card Design Principles 20.30.20
- Design of Disk Data Files 20.40.00
  - Introduction 20.40.01
  - Data 20.40.10
  - Field Size 20.40.20
  - Data Sequence 20.40.30
  - File Organization 20.40.40
  - Record Format and Blocking 20.40.50
  - File Processing 20.40.60
  - File Control 20.40.70
- Payroll Example 20.50.00
  - Narrative 20.50.10
  - Card Forms and Console Keyboard Input 20.50.20
  - Console Printer and Line Printer Forms for Output 20.50.30
  - Disk Record Formats 20.50.40
  - System Flowchart 20.50.50
- Language Selection 20.60.00
  - Introduction 20.60.01
  - Programming Languages 20.60.10

Application Programs 20.60.20
Which Programming Language or Application Program Should You Use? 20.60.30

Section 25: Program Development
Section Contents..... 25.00.00
Introduction 25.01.00
Programming and Documentation Standards 25.10.00
Program Change Authorization 25.20.00
Programming Aids 25.30.00
Documenting Variable Usage 25.30.10
Modular Programming 25.30.20
Programming Examples 25.40.00
Introduction 25.40.01
Example 1: File Creation 25.40.10
Example 2: Add Name to the File ... 25.40.20
Example 3: Changes to the File 25.40.30
Example 4: Calculations and Payroll Register..... 25.40.40
Example 5: Check Writing..... 25.40.50
Example 6: Check Register 25.40.60
Example 7: 941 Report..... 25.40.70

Section 30: Testing Effectively
Section Contents 30.00.00
Introduction 30.01.00
Testing Strategy 30.10.00
Testing Tactics 30.20.00
Testing Hints 30.30.00
Summary..... 30.40.00

Section 35: Program Documentation
Section Contents..... 35.00.00
Introduction..... 35.01.00
Installation Manuals 35.10.00
Program Information Manual..... 35.10.10
Operation Manual 35.10.20
Documentation Examples..... 35.20.00
Payroll System -- Program Information Manual 35.20.10
Payroll System -- Operation Manual..... 35.20.20

Section 40: Conversion
Section Contents 40.00.00
Introduction 40.01.00
Planning for Conversion 40.10.00
Preparing for Conversion 40.20.00
Conversion Methods 40.30.00

Section 45: 1130 Computing System
Section Contents 45.00.00
Introduction 45.01.00
The 1131 CPU..... 45.05.00
Console Printer and Keyboard 45.05.10
Data Switches 45.05.20
Console Display Lamps 45.05.30
Disk Storage..... 45.10.00
Printers 45.15.00
Card Readers and Punches 45.20.00
Paper Tape Readers and Punches 45.25.00
Plotter..... 45.30.00
Graphic Display..... 45.35.00
Optical Readers..... 45.40.00
Storage Access Channel 45.45.00
Teleprocessing 45.50.00
The 1130 Configurator 45.55.00

Section 50: 1130 Disk Monitor System
General 50.01.00

Section 55: The Monitor - Job Management
Section Contents 55.00.00
Introduction 55.01.00
Job and Subjob 55.10.00
Stacked Jobs or the Input Stream..... 55.20.00
Disk Cartridge ID Checking 55.30.00

Section 60: The Monitor - Disk Management
Section Contents 60.00.00
Introduction 60.01.00
Disk Storage Layout 60.10.00
Introduction 60.10.01
Cylinder 0 ..... 60.10.10
IBM Systems Area 60.10.20
Working Storage (WS) 60.10.30
User Area (UA) 60.10.40
Fixed Area (FX) 60.10.50
Summary..... 60.10.60
Increasing the Amount of Space Available to the User..... 60.20.00
Introduction 60.20.01
How Much Room Do I Have? 60.20.10
How Can I Make More Space Available? 60.20.20
Summary..... 60.20.30
The Disk Utility Program 60.30.00
Introduction 60.30.01
Format of Material on the Disk 60.30.10
The Most Commonly Used DUP Functions 60.30.20
Special Options -- Multiple Disk 1130 Users..... 60.30.30

Section 65: The Monitor-Core Storage Management
Section Contents..... 65.00.00
Introduction 65.01.00

The Logical Layout of Core Storage ... 65.10.00
Basic ... 65.10.10
Flipper ... 65.10.20
SOCAL Area ... 65.10.30
LOCAL Area ... 65.10.40
Program or LINK Area ... 65.10.50
COMMON Area ... 65.10.60
Unused Area ... 65.10.70
Summary ... 65.20.00

Section 70: 1130 FORTRAN and the Commercial Subroutines
Section Contents ... 70.00.00
Introduction ... 70.01.00
Arithmetic Considerations ... 70.10.00
General ... 70.10.01
Integer Mode ... 70.10.10
Real Mode ... 70.10.20
Decimal Mode ... 70.10.30
Summary ... 70.10.40
Overlapped Input/Output ... 70.20.00
Introduction ... 70.20.01
The Commerical Subroutine Package Overlapped I/O Subroutine ... 70.20.10
Using the Overlapped I/O System ... 70.20.20
The Interaction of Arithmetic and I/O ... 70.30.00
Character Handling Techniques ... 70.40.00
General ... 70.40.01
Code Conversion ... 70.40.10
Other Character Handling Techniques ... 70.40.20
FORTRAN Core Saving Tips ... 70.50.00
General ... 70.50.01
Reducing Program Size ... 70.50.10
Reducing Subroutine Requirements ... 70.50.20
FORTRAN Execution Times ... 70.60.00
Processing ... 70.60.10
Summary and Conclusion ... 70.60.20

Section 75: Sorting with Your 1130
Section Contents ... 75.00.00
Introduction ... 75.01.00
Some Preliminary Information ... 75.10.00
Alternate Approaches ... 75.20.00
Use of File Organization ... 75.20.10
Sorting Offline ... 75.20.20
Methods of Sorting ... 75.30.00
Introduction ... 75.30.01
Internal Sorting Methods ... 75.30.10
External Sorting Methods ... 75.30.20
A Detailed Look at an 1130 Record Sort ... 75.40.00
Summary ... 75.50.00

Section 80: Use of the Disk for Data Storage
Section Contents ... 80.00.00
General ... 80.01.00
The Physical, or Hardware, Structure of the Disk ... 80.10.00
The Disk As Seen by the FORTRAN Programmer ... 80.20.00
The Interrelationship of the Physical and Logical Structures ... 80.30.00
The DEFINE FILE Statement ... 80.30.10
The *STOREDATA and *FILES Cards ... 80.30.20
Record Lengths and Sector Utilization ... 80.40.00
A Trick to Get Long Records and/or Better Packing ... 80.40.10
Computing Record Length ... 80.50.00
Shortening Record Length ... 80.60.00
Some Examples of Disk File Layout ... 80.70.00
Example 1 ... 80.70.10
Example 2 ... 80.70.20
Example 3 ... 80.70.30

Section 85: Disk Data Files -- Organization and Processing
Section Contents ... 85.00.00
General ... 85.01.00
Organization ... 85.10.00
General ... 85.10.01
Pure Sequential ... 85.10.10
Indexed Sequential ... 85.10.20
Direct, or Random, Organizations ... 85.10.30
Processing ... 85.20.00
The Interaction of Organization and Processing ... 85.30.00
Introduction ... 85.30.00
Choosing the Organization ... 85.30.10

Section 90: Improving Your System -- Performance
Section Contents ... 90.00.00
General ... 90.01.00
The Role of the Monitor ... 90.10.00
General ... 90.10.01
The Effect of the Monitor on Performance ... 90.10.10
The Role of the Programmer ... 90.20.00
Planning for Performance ... 90.20.10
Organizing for Performance -- How to Use LOCAL's ... 90.20.20
Programming for Performance ... 90.20.30
The Role of the 1130 Hardware ... 90.30.00

General 90.30.01
Productive Time That Cannot Be Improved by Hardware Changes 90.30.10
Productive Time That Can Be Improved by Hardware Changes 90.30.20
Nonproductive Time That Can Be Reduced by Hardware Changes 90.30.30

Some Case Studies of Performance Improvements 90.40.00
General 90.40.01
Case I 90.40.10
Case II 90.40.20
Case III 90.40.30
Summary 90.40.40

Section 05: PREINSTALLATION PLANNING

CONTENTS

Introduction 05.01.00
General Planning 05.10.00
Application and Conversion Planning ... 05.20.00
Programming Planning 05.30.00

INTRODUCTION

Now that your 1130 computing system is on order, what should you do next? When the 1130 computing system was proposed, mention was made that it could perform both scientific and commercial jobs. Some typical commercial jobs that may have been considered at that time are:

- Payroll (used as an example later in the manual) and labor distribution
- Accounts receivable
- Accounts payable
- Sales analysis
- Inventory control

Planning the use of the 1130 for specific applications such as the above leads to other questions that need answers. How will the personnel for your installation be selected? When will your applications be implemented on the 1130? How will this job of implementation be carried to completion? In other words, you need a plan to carry out the installation of this new system.

In answer to the first question, selection of personnel, your IBM representative can supply you with the Programmer's Aptitude Test, which will help you with some of the selection. (It may be that you will find these people in your company, but you may also find it necessary to hire someone outside.)

The second and third questions, when will the implementation be done and how, may be answered by your general (installation) plan, which is discussed next.

GENERAL PLANNING

The General Installation Plan is made up of two items: the Activity List (Figure 05.1) and the Activity Time Estimates (Figure 05.2)

Your Activity List contains the major areas of concentration. It answers the questions "who" and "what". Your Activity Time Estimates answers the question "when". However, you still do not have enough detail.

Before going into more detail, go back and be sure the two lists are fully understood.

The Activity List contains the major installation activities you need to complete a successful installation. The first two areas, Installation Organization and Document Current Processes, although not end products, are most important. They are the foundation of your installation. The remaining items on the list are:

- Application Design
- Operations Planning
- Physical Planning
- Conversion and Applications Complete
- Evaluation

These will go smoothly if you ensure that the first two areas are complete.

Your Activity Time Estimates makes this point clear; notice that the early parts of your installation efforts, as mentioned previously, must all have start dates. If your foundation is firm and on schedule, the later installation activities will also be smooth and on schedule.

The later installation activities require more detail. You may find these items helpful in planning applications other than those listed.

GENERAL INSTALLATION PLAN
ACTIVITY LIST

Installation Organization
- Select personnel:
  - Management
  - Programmers
  - Operators
- Education
  - Train management
  - Train programmers
  - Train operators

Document Current Processes
- Document current:
  - Payroll and labor distribution procedures
  - Accounts receivable procedures
  - Accounts payable procedures
  - Sales analysis procedures
  - Inventory control procedures
- Determine 1130 documentation standards
- Schedule application development and conversion
- Management review

Application Design
- Application development:
  - Payroll and labor distribution
  - Accounts receivable
  - Accounts payable
  - Sales analysis
  - Inventory control
- Convert:
  - Payroll files
  - Accounts receivable files
  - Accounts payable files
  - Inventory files

Operation Planning
- Establish operating schedules and procedures

Physical Planning
- Physical layout
- Management review
- Order cables
- Physical alterations

System Delivered

Conversion and Applications Complete

Entire Systems Evaluation

Figure 05.1.

APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates		Revised Dates # 1		Revised Dates # 2	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish

Figure 05.2.

APPLICATION AND CONVERSION PLANNING

Figure 05.3 is the Activity List for your Application Development Plan. This corresponds to the Activity List for your General Installation Plan. Similarly, Figure 05.4 is the Activity Time Estimates for your Application Development Plan.

The Application Development Plan is, in general, composed of three items:

1. Analysis
   a. Review of present system
   b. Designing reports and card layouts
   c. Flowcharting
2. Evaluation
   a. Establishment of controls
   b. Management review
3. Programming of the application

The most important steps in this process are, once more, the earliest: Analysis and Evaluation. If these items are complete, that is, if the individuals and groups involved agree with what you propose, the remainder of the installation effort will be relatively free from serious problems.

Figures 05.5 and 05.6 are, respectively, the Activity List and Activity Time Estimates for the Conversion Plan.

Notice that the discussion of the Application Development Plan so far has not included programming. The question, how will the programming be carried to completion, will be discussed next.

APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY LIST

For each application:

- Review present system
- Design reports and card layouts
- Flowchart
- Establish controls
- Management review
- *Program development

*Further detail

Figure 05.3.

APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates		Revised Dates # 1		Revised Dates #2	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Payroll and Labor Distribution								
Review present system	2.0							
Design reports and card layouts	2.0							
Flowchart	1.5							
Establish controls	1.0							
Management review	1.0							
*Program development	7.0							
Accounts Receivable								
Review present system	1.5							
Design reports and card layouts	2.0							
Flowchart	1.0							
Establish controls	1.5							
Management review	1.0							
*Program development	5.0							
Accounts Payable								
Review present system	.5							
Design reports and card layouts	2.0							
Flowchart	1.0							
Establish controls	.5							
Management review	1.0							
*Program development	6.0							
Sales Analysis								
Review present system	1.0							
Design reports and card layouts	1.0							
Flowchart	1.0							
Establish controls	.5							
Management review	1.0							
*Program development	4.0							
Inventory Control								
Review present system	1.0							
Design reports and card layouts	2.0							
Flowchart	2.0							
Establish controls	.5							
Management review	1.0							
*Program development	7.0							
* Further detail (Figure 05.8)								

Figure 05.4.

CONVERSION PLAN
ACTIVITY LIST

For each application (where applicable):

- Develop conversion procedures
- Train conversion personnel
- Convert files
- Parallel or pilot run
- Train other departments

Figure 05.5

CONVERSION PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates		Revised Dates # 1		Revised Dates # 2	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Develop data preparation and card punching procedures	1.0							
Develop conversion control plans and procedures	1.0							
Train conversion personnel	2.0							
Convert payroll and labor distribution files	2.0							
Convert accounts receivable files	4.0							
Convert accounts payable files	4.0							
Convert inventory files	6.0							
Train other departments -- all applications	4.0							
Parallel runs -- payroll and labor distribution	4.0							
Parallel runs -- accounts receivable	4.0							
Parallel runs -- accounts payable	4.0							
Parallel runs -- inventory control	2.0							
TOTAL CONVERSION	10.0	(F) - 4/8/68						

Figure 05.6.

PROGRAMMING PLANNING

The Activity List and Activity Time Estimates for the Program Development Plan (Figures 05.7 and 05.8 respectively) complete the planning.

This is the detailed level of planning on which your installation depends. For this reason you must have control over the progress of these activities. The Progress Charts for Program Development (Figure 05.9) will provide the necessary control. Used in conjunction with the Activity Time Estimates for the Program Development Plan, these charts show you, at all times, the progress of your installation effort. You can determine whether it is ahead of schedule, on schedule, or behind schedule and requiring action.

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY LIST

For each application:

- Define program
- Flowchart
- Code
- Desk-check and list
- Prepare test data
- Test
- Production test
- Complete program documentation

Figure 05.7.

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN

ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates*		Revised Dates # 1*		Revised Dates # 2*	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Define PAY 01 (Payroll)	.1							
Flowchart PAY 01	.1							
Code PAY 01	.1							
Desk-check, list PAY 01	.1							
Test data PAY 01	.1							
Test PAY 01	.2							
Production test PAY 01	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 01	.2							
Define PAY 02 (Payroll)	1.0							
Flowchart PAY 02	.5							
Code PAY 02	.8							
Desk-check, list PAY 02	.2							
Test data PAY 02	.2							
Test PAY 02	1.0							
Production test PAY 02	1.0							
Complete documentation PAY 02	.5							
Define PAY 03 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 03	.2							
Code PAY 03	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 03	.1							
Test data PAY 03	.1							
Test PAY 03	.2							
Production test PAY 03	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 03	.2							
Define PAY 04 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 04	.2							
Code PAY 04	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 04	.1							
Test data PAY 04	.2							
Test PAY 04	.2							
Production test PAY 04	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 04	.2							
Define PAY 05 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 05	.2							
Code PAY 05	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 05	.1							
Test data PAY 05	.2							
Test PAY 05	.2							
Production test PAY 05	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 05	.2							
Define PAY 06 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 06	.2							
Code PAY 06	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 06	.1							
Test data PAY 06	.2							
Test PAY 06	.2							
Production test PAY 06	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 06	.2							
Define PAY 07 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 07	.2							
Code PAY 07	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 07	.1							
Test data PAY 07	.2							
Test PAY 07	.2							
Production test PAY 07	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 07	.2							

*Only one start and finish date should be supplied for each program being developed.

Figure 05.8 (Sheet 1 of 5).

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates*		Revised Dates # 1*		Revised Dates # 2*	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Define PAY 08 (Payroll)	.5							
Flowchart PAY 08	.3							
Code PAY 08	.5							
Desk-check, list PAY 08	.1							
Test data PAY 08	.2							
Test PAY 08	.2							
Product test PAY 08	.2							
Complete documentation PAY 08	.1							
Define PLD 01 (Labor Dist.)	.8							
Flowchart PLD 01	.5							
Code PLD 01	.5							
Desk-check, list PLD 01	.2							
Test data PLD 01	.3							
Test PLD 01	.5							
Production test PLD 01	.2							
Complete documentation PLD 01	.2							
Define PLD 02 (Labor Dist.)	.5							
Flowchart PLD 02	.2							
Code PLD 02	.5							
Desk-check, list PLD 02	.1							
Test data PLD 02	.2							
Test PLD 02	.2							
Production test PLD 02	.2							
Complete documentation PLD 02	.2							
Define AR 01 (Accts Rec)	.1							
Flowchart AR 01	.1							
Code AR 01	.1							
Desk-check, list AR 01	.1							
Test data AR 01	.1							
Test AR 01	.2							
Production test AR 01	.2							
Complete documentation AR 01	.2							
Define AR 02 (Accts Rec)	.8							
Flowchart AR 02	.5							
Code AR 02	.5							
Desk-check, list AR 02	.2							
Test data AR 02	.3							
Test AR 02	.5							
Production test AR 02	.2							
Complete documentation AR 02	.2							
Define AR 03 (Accts Rec)	1.0							
Flowchart AR 03	1.0							
Code AR 03	.7							
Desk-check, list AR 03	.2							
Test data AR 03	.2							
Test AR 03	1.0							
Production test AR 03	1.0							
Complete documentation AR 03	.2							
Define AR 04 (Accts Rec)	.5							
Flowchart AR 04	.2							
Code AR 04	.4							
Desk-check, list AR 04	.1							
Test data AR 04	.1							
Test AR 04	.5							
Production test AR 04	.5							
Complete documentation AR 04	.2							

*Only one start and finish date should be supplied for each program being developed.

Figure 05.8 (Sheet 2 of 5).

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates*		Revised Dates # 1*		Revised Dates # 2*	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Define AR 05 (Accts Rec)	1.0							
Flowchart AR 05	1.0							
Code AR 05	.7							
Desk-check, list AR 05	.2							
Test data AR 05	.2							
Test AR 05	1.0							
Production test AR 05	1.0							
Complete documentation AR 05	.2							
Define AR 06 (Accts Rec)	.5							
Flowchart AR 06	.5							
Code AR 06	.2							
Desk-check, list AR 06	.1							
Test data AR 06	.2							
Test AR 06	.4							
Production test AR 06	.4							
Complete documentation AR 06	.2							
Define AP 01 (Accts Pay.)	.1							
Flowchart AP 01	.1							
Code AP 01	.1							
Desk-check, list AP 01	.1							
Test data AP 01	.1							
Test AP 01	.2							
Production test AP 01	.2							
Complete documentation AP 01	.2							
Define AP 02 (Accts Pay.)	.5							
Flowchart AP 02	.3							
Code AP 02	.2							
Desk-check, list AP 02	.1							
Test data AP 02	.1							
Test AP 02	.2							
Production test AP 02	.2							
Complete documentation AP 02	.2							
Define AP 03 (Accts Pay.)	.4							
Flowchart AP 03	.2							
Code AP 03	.2							
Desk-check, list AP 03	.1							
Test data AP 03	.1							
Test AP 03	.2							
Production test AP 03	.2							
Complete documentation AP 03	.2							
Define AP 04 (Accts Pay.)	.5							
Flowchart AP 04	.4							
Code AP 04	.2							
Desk-check, list AP 04	.1							
Test data AP 04	.1							
Test AP 04	.2							
Production test AP 04	.2							
Complete documentation AP 04	.2							
Define AP 05 (Accts Pay.)	.4							
Flowchart AP 05	.2							
Code AP 05	.2							
Desk-check, list AP 05	.1							
Test data AP 05	.1							
Test AP 05	.2							
Production test AP 05	.2							
Complete documentation AP 05	.2							

*Only one start and finish date should be supplied for each program being developed.

Figure 05.8 (Sheet 3 of 5).

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates*		Revised Dates # 1*		Revised Dates # 2*	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Define AP 06 (Accts Pay.)	.5							
Flowchart AP 06	.3							
Code AP 06	.5							
Desk-check, list AP 06	.1							
Test data AP 06	.2							
Test AP 06	.4							
Production test AP 06	.2							
Complete documentation AP 06	.2							
Define AP 07 (Accts Pay.)	.5							
Flowchart AP 07	.4							
Code AP 07	.5							
Desk-check, list AP 07	.1							
Test data AP 07	.1							
Test AP 07	.4							
Production test AP 07	.2							
Complete documentation AP 07	.2							
Define INV 01 (Inventory)	.1							
Flowchart INV 01	.1							
Code INV 01	.1							
Desk-check, list INV 01	.1							
Test data INV 01	.1							
Test INV 01	.2							
Production test INV 01	.2							
Complete documentation INV 01	.2							
Define INV 02 (Inventory)	.4							
Flowchart INV 02	.2							
Code INV 02	.2							
Desk-check, list INV 02	.1							
Test data INV 02	.1							
Test INV 02	.2							
Production test INV 02	.2							
Complete documentation INV 02	.2							
Define INV 03 (Inventory)	.4							
Flowchart INV 03	.4							
Code INV 03	.4							
Desk-check, list INV 03	.1							
Test data INV 03	.1							
Test INV 03	.2							
Production test INV 03	.4							
Complete documentation INV 03	.2							
Define INV 04 (Inventory)	.5							
Flowchart INV 04	.4							
Code INV 04	.4							
Desk-check, list INV 04	.1							
Test data INV 04	.1							
Test INV 04	.2							
Production test INV 04	.2							
Complete documentation INV 04	.2							
Define INV 05 (Inventory)	.4							
Flowchart INV 05	.2							
Code INV 05	.2							
Desk-check, list INV 05	.1							
Test data INV 05	.1							
Test INV 05	.1							
Production test INV 05	.2							
Complete documentation INV 05	.2							

*Only one start and finish date should be supplied for each program being developed.

Figure 05.8 (Sheet 4 of 5).

PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT PLAN
ACTIVITY TIME ESTIMATES

Activity	Duration in Weeks	"Must" Start (S) or Finish (F) Date	Original Schedule Dates*		Revised Dates # 1*		Revised Dates # 2*	
			Start	Finish	Start	Finish	Start	Finish
Define INV 06 (Inventory)	.4							
Flowchart INV 06	.2							
Code INV 06	.2							
Desk-check, list INV 06	.1							
Test data INV 06	.1							
Test INV 06	.1							
Production test INV 06	.2							
Complete documentation INV 06	.2							
Define SA 01 (Sales Anal.)	.1							
Flowchart SA 01	.1							
Code SA 01	.1							
Desk-check, list SA 01	.1							
Test data SA 01	.1							
Test SA 01	.2							
Production test SA 01	.2							
Complete documentation SA 01	.2							
Define SA 02 (Sales Anal.)	1.0							
Flowchart SA 02	.5							
Code SA 02	1.0							
Desk-check, list SA 02	.1							
Test data SA 02	.1							
Test SA 02	.3							
Production test SA 02	.4							
Complete documentation SA 02	.2							
Total, application development	16.0							

*Only one start and finish date should be supplied for each program being developed.

Figure 05.8 (Sheet 5 of 5).

PERCENTAGE COMPLETED

Activity	Payroll Start 11/20 Finish 2/3						A/R Start 12/4 Finish 2/3				All Applications Start: 11/20/67 Finish: 3/11/68
	PAY 01	PAY 02	PAY 03	PAY 04		All Payroll	A/R 01		All A/R		
Define program	100	100	100	50		90	100		70		40
Document logic	100	100	100	50		60	100		50		20
Code	100	70	40			20					5
Desk-check	100					10					5
Prepare test data	100	100				20	30		30		10
Test	100					10					5
Production test											
Complete documentation	90	20	20	20		30	50		50		10
All activities above	85	49	33	15		31	35		1		10

Figure 05.9. Program development -- progress chart

Section 10: DOCUMENTING CURRENT APPLICATIONS

CONTENTS

Introduction 10.01.00
Documentation of Manual Systems 10.10.00
Documentation of Punched Card Systems 10.20.00
Accounting Controls 10.30.00
Survey Questionnaires 10.40.00
- Billing 10.40.10
- Accounts Receivable 10.40.20
- Sales Analysis 10.40.30
- Inventory 10.40.40
- Accounts Payable 10.40.50
- Payroll 10.40.60

Manual System Documentation Example - Payroll 10.50.00
- Introduction 10.50.01
- Job Description 10.50.10
- Survey Form 10.50.20
- Sample Documents 10.50.30
- Systems Flowchart of Weekly Procedure 10.50.40

INTRODUCTION

Since the cornerstone of your installation effort, planning, is now complete, the time to begin documenting is at hand.

If you were going to remodel a building, it would be very important to have the plans of the structure on which you would be working. You could, of course, do the job without the plans, but much time would be wasted in trial and error as you proceeded.

The same situation exists when you are converting an application to the 1130. Proper documentation of the present system will guide you rapidly and efficiently into the new solution. Rather than spending your time "rediscovering" the old procedures, you can spend it in improving them.

Depending on whether you are converting from a manual system or a punched card system, one of the following two subsections will help you plan this phase of your preinstallation effort:

Documentation of Manual Systems (10.10.00)
Documentation of Punched Card Systems (10.20.00)

These introductory subsections are followed by a discussion of the ways in which your current accounting controls can be documented (10.30.00). Questionnaires used for documenting manual systems are then illustrated (10.40.00).

A payroll example, which is used also in later sections, is introduced in 10.50.00. This consists of:

Job description
Survey forms
Sample documents
Systems flowchart

DOCUMENTATION OF MANUAL SYSTEMS

Follow these steps if you currently do not use punched card equipment, or if you are planning to put additional applications on the computer that are not now mechanized:

1. Ask questions about details of the job as it is being done now.
2. Record the procedure by means of a flow-chart.
3. Gather samples of all the documents being used.

Survey Notes. A set of questionnaires (10.40.00) is included that assists in surveying the most common data processing procedures: billing, accounts receivable, sales analysis, inventory, accounts payable, and payroll. No questionnaire can cover all the details of, for instance, all billing procedures, but a start can be made that will lead you to discover and analyze the unique elements that have to be accounted for in your own system. Before starting your survey with a questionnaire, review the questions and determine which ones you already know the answers to, those you want to check out, and those you know are not applicable to your company. Then add questions of your own.

Where none of these survey questionnaires are applicable, record on plain paper the important elements of the system, answering the questions "who", "what", "when", "why", and "how". Notice the amount of detail called for by the questionnaires, and get down to that level in your own surveys.

You will often find that the people most familiar with the details of the job do not see the forest for the trees, or --to use a more precise metaphor -- they think they have been looking only at elms when some of the trees have been maples. Wherever possible, count the files yourself (rough counts are usually adequate), look at the completed (not the blank) documents, and talk to the man who actually does the work, rather than taking someone else's word for what he does.

Flowcharts. As an understanding of the procedure is developed, you should draw flowcharts in which input/output documents are represented by one kind of block, processing or handling steps by another, and the flow of work by arrows, as shown in Figure 10.1.

Other symbols can be used for certain variations of the basic symbols; these are discussed in greater detail in the IBM manual Flowcharting Techniques (C20 - 8152) and illustrated in the manual examples in this section.

Sample Documents. Samples of each document used in the procedure should be gathered. Where possible, filled-in documents should be picked up, as well as blank documents on which the people closest to the work have made notes explaining how the documents are completed.

In other words, you should have at least two samples of each document in the system:

1. A blank document. This should have the following information written on it:
   a. The volume of these documents produced each day, week, or month -- both maximum and average.
   b. Who produces them.
   c. Where they come from, and where they go, copy by copy.
   d. For each different kind of information, or "field", all possible varieties of information that can be entered. State how long the field must or can be, and whether

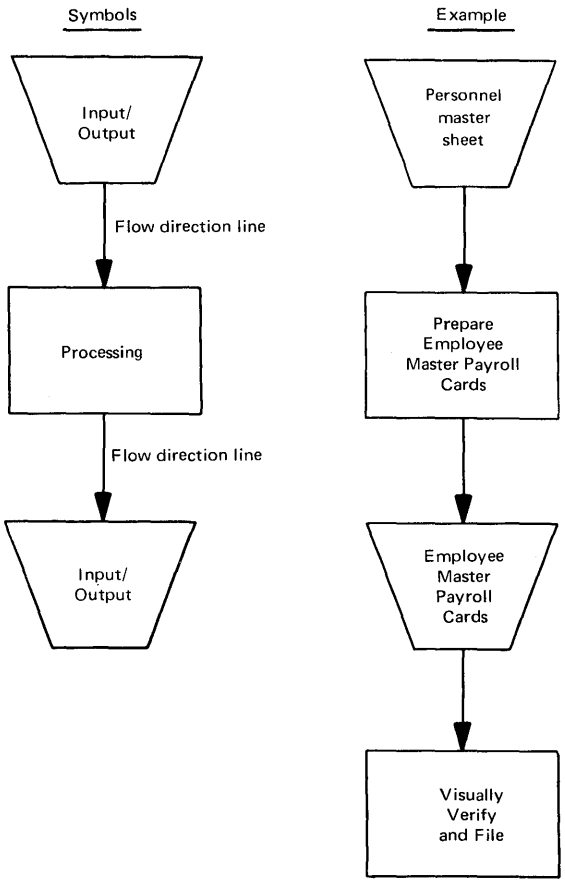


Figure 10.1.

each individual "position" or character in the field is strictly numeric, is sometimes alphabetic, may be blank, may contain special characters $.,'*()=+-&/, or has any other restrictions on it.

e. For each field, whether the information in it has limits. For instance, a weekly salary field could go up to $999.99 and still consist of only five digits, but you may want to pull out all of those that go above $500.00 for special handling.

f. For each field, its origin. If it has been calculated, show the formula. If it came from another document, state which one, and whether it has been altered in the process. Beware of fields that have the same name but are slightly different, such as date of receipt, date of entry, date of transcription, date of processing.

2. At least one filled-in document. The filling-in should be done by the man who normally performs the job, and he or you should annotate the reasons for and restrictions on each step of his work. Make sure that all possible ways of filling in the document have been illustrated.

Summary. When the documentation of manual systems has been completed, you should have at hand:

1. Flowcharts
2. Sample documents
3. Survey notes, including:
   a. Complete lists of codes
   b. Current standards
   c. Procedure descriptions, where the flowchart is not self-explanatory
   d. Reasons for current methods
   e. Accounting control procedures
   f. Any other facts they may influence or cause restrictions on the way an application may be designed.

All these survey notes should be cross-referenced to the flowcharts and sample documents.

DOCUMENTATION OF PUNCHED CARD SYSTEMS

Follow these steps in documenting your present punched card applications:

1. Make a list of all your control panels.
2. Arrange the list by job step within application. For instance, a payroll application, like the one in 10.50.00, might consist of panels to perform the balancing of current earnings cards to time cards, matching current deductions cards to earnings cards, preparing the deduction register, and all the remaining job steps.
3. Obtain copies of all the reports that have been run using these panels.
4. Collect your current spacing charts and card layouts and make a checklist of them. Use your list of control panels to make sure that you have gathered spacing charts and card layouts for all the operations. If not, put them on your checklist, and either find them or get them made up.
5. Check your spacing charts against the currently run copies of your reports, and bring your spacing charts up to date. Mark them on your checklist as they are updated.
6. Check your card layouts against your procedures as you run them. This will allow you to update both the card layouts and the written procedures to conform with your current actual practice. Mark the card layouts on your checklist as they are updated.
7. Obtain a current schedule of jobs. Use your list of control panels to verify the schedule.

Having finished these steps, you should have current and accurate copies of spacing charts and card layouts. If you do not, your 1130 application design and program development will suffer, and you will be forced to retrace your steps to get updated facts. The surveys (in 10.40.00) will either verify the accuracy of your documentation or indicate discrepancies that need to be checked further.

Next, since you have all the information at hand, you can develop the following items:

1. Updated flowcharts of your applications
2. Job descriptions
3. Calculation descriptions and formulas

These items, if prepared thoroughly (and this is a very important "if"), can serve as the basis for your entire 1130 application design effort.

Summary. The important thing in documenting any procedure is that all the information be made available to the programmer in concise, easily understood form.

You will find that these documenting methods will be very useful in analyzing all the procedures in your business. By pinpointing bottlenecks, areas of duplication, etc., they can provide a means of improving those procedures that you do not plan to convert immediately to the new system.

Once a program has been completed for an application, the documentation will become a permanent record of the procedure. It can be used, for example, as:

1. A source of information for implementing future changes.
2. An education device for familiarizing new operators and management personnel with the procedures.
3. A source of information for your auditors, who must be familiar with your procedures.

Start documenting your present applications now. Once the application is documented, programmed, and operating on your new system, keep the documentation up to date. It will contribute toward an efficient and productive data processing installation.

ACCOUNTING CONTROLS

Understanding your present controls will help you design practical and effective controls for your new system.

Control procedures can be documented in two places:

1. On your flowcharts, where, for instance, control tapes are balanced to accounting machine totals.
2. With the survey questionnaires or informal narratives.

For a discussion of various kinds of accounting controls that may appear in your system, refer to section 20.10.00.

SURVEY QUESTIONNAIRES

Survey Questionnaire - Billing

PROCEDURES

1. Bill before shipment or after?
2. Reasons
3. Is completion billing used?
4. Optimum time from order to shipment
5. Are shipments from stock? What percent?
   (a) Buy outside %
   (b) Manufacture? Drop Ship?
6. Do you send confirmation of order to customer? When?
7. Sold-to and ship-to information required on invoices? % of invoices?

TERMS

1. Standard by customer, variable by customer, or other
2. Do salesmen have protected customers?
3. Pricing flexible - changed to meet competition in field?
4. How many must be acknowledged?
5. Cash sales - volume and how handled?

ITEM QUANTITIES

1. Whole numbers, fractions, or decimals?
2. Will you print quantity ordered, quantity shipped, back ordered?
3. Largest quantity sold (include decimals)
4. Unit of issue

PRICES

1. Standard, volume determines, customer class, variable? How many prices?
2. Percent of billing lines with variable pricing daily

Billing Questionnaire (cont'd)

3. Variable pricing authorized by?
4. Per CM, dz, gross, bd ft, other?
5. Largest unit price
6. Fractional prices

DISCOUNTS

1. Line item only? Variable or standard?
2. What governs discounts to customers?
   (a) Customer
   (b) Type of merchandise
   (c) Quantity of merchandise
   (d) Salesman's quoted price
   (e) Total of invoice
   (f) Combination of above
   (g) Other
3. Group discounts
4. Discounts on total invoice?
   (a) Standard by customer
   (b) Variable
5. Should discount amount print on invoice?
6. Chain discounts?
   (a) Line items
   (b) Groups
   (c) Invoice totals
7. Chain discount examples
8. Terms or cash discount. Should it be calculated?

Billing Questionnaire (cont'd)

COSTING

1. Standard, percent, other?
2. Any lot or job costs?

TAXES

1. How many states?
2. What % of items taxable?
3. Are selected items on an invoice taxable?
4. Other taxes - excise, etc.
5. Whole percents, fractional?

FREIGHT

1. Based upon weight? Volume? Explain
2. Examples of computation
3. Prepaid percent - collect percent
4. Is freight cost known at billing time?
5. At prebilling time?
6. Allowances - examples. How computed?
7. Flat rates?
8. Minimums?
9. Do items have standard weights?

COMMISSIONS

1. Paid on:
   (a) Gross profit
   (b) Gross invoice
   (c) Variable each line

Billing Questionnaire (cont'd)

(d) Total customer purchase

(e) Other

2. Percentage fixed by:

(a) Product?

(b) Salesman?

(c) Customer?

(d) Volume?

3. If volume, what are the breaks in computing rate?

FORMS INFORMATION

1. Use of copies

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

2. If you prebill, could invoice serve as picking document? As bill of lading?

3. Average number of body lines

4. Minimum depth of form

5. Preprint invoice number? Why?

6. Are back orders noted on invoice?

7. What is the length of item descriptions?

(a) Number and type of special characters included in descriptions?

(b) Can description be conveniently abbreviated?

8. Discount on line item?

9. Largest quantity shipped? Largest unit price? Largest extension?

Billing Questionnaire (cont'd)

10. Cash discount printed on invoice? Terms?

11. Length of ship-to/sold-to lines

12. Cost extended - line items?

13. Do credit memos and invoices use same format?

14. Are contractual notes typed on invoice or credit memo?

    (a) If yes, what is longest note?

    (b) What is the incidence of use (percent) of total invoices per day?

15. Multi-page invoice? Frequency

16. What class of products is most active? At what time of the year?

17. Are the products of a seasonal nature? When? What is increase in orders?

18. What items make up largest percentage of total sales volume?

19. How much item information is needed on the order? On the invoice? Can it be typed later?

20. How are items coded?

    (a) What is the length of part number or code?

    (b) Numeric or alphameric?

21. What procedure is being followed as to partial shipments?

    (a) How prevalent are they?

    (b) Are shipments made daily to all areas? If not, what is the policy regarding shipments?

    (c) Is warehouse sequence of items on the order important?

22. Describe miscellaneous data required.

Billing Questionnaire (cont'd)

ANALYSIS

1. Time from receipt of order to billing of customer
2. Number and jobs of people performing order writing and billing
3. Type of machines and equipment presently being used

CONTROL AND EDITING INFORMATION

1. What is the editing procedure for invoicing? Who is responsible for final approval of invoice?
2. What controls are now established for accuracy?
3. Do you have subsidiary branch locations?
   (a) If so, what accounting functions are they performing?
   (b) How many invoices is each branch preparing?
   (c) Would it be more advantageous to centralize accounting operations, especially billing?

Survey Questionnaire - Accounts Receivable

PROCEDURES: CASH

1. List all cash credit posting media
2. What discounts are offered? How are they handled?
3. Cash receipts and deposit slip prepared:
   (a) Separately
   (b) Simultaneously
4. How often do payments include copy of invoice or statement or identification?
5. What percentage of payments are nonstandard?
6. What is policy on overpayments?
7. Can cash be applied to oldest balance or must it be selective?
8. What accounts are involved?
9. Can distribution be made at cash posting time?
10. How many ledger controls are carried?
    (a) How are control groups determined?
    (b) Illustrate divisions
11. How often is a trial balance taken?
    (a) Can trial balance be alternated by control?
    (b) Could trial balance, aging, and customer purchasing analysis be prepared simultaneously?
12. When are statements mailed?
13. Attach samples of accounting (A/C) journal used, revised to include additional information you require.
14. Volume and reasons for credit memos

Accounts Receivable Questionnaire (cont'd)

FORMS CONSIDERATIONS - STATEMENTS

1. How many accounts in ledgers?
   (a) Total active
   (b) Total inactive
   (c) Does total fluctuate or remain static?
   (d) How are they coded?
2. Open item or balance forward?
3. What percent of customers pay by:
   (a) Statement?
   (b) Invoice?
   (c) Time pay?
4. How many statements mailed?
   (a) Total
   (b) Weekly
   (c) Monthly
   (d) Are they mailed to all accounts?
5. If time pay is allowed, explain circumstances.
6. Do statements show:
   (a) All transactions for the month?
   (b) Open items only?
   (c) Aged balances only?
   (d) Aged transactions?
7. Any objection to aged balances only, with no reference?
8. What description shows on statement?

Accounts Receivable Questionnaire (cont'd)

9. Daily inquiries into customer records?

10. Extent of bad debts

11. Attach a sample statement, complete with various postings.

LEDGER RECORDS

1. What description is shown on ledgers?

2. Credit limit on each card?

3. Purchases to date? Is this desirable?

4. Is aging by invoice? Oldest dollar amount?

5. Attach a sample card, complete with typical postings.

CREDIT REFERENCE

1. Does credit department refer to ledgers? How often?

2. Is a credit record other than ledger kept? If so, attach a sample.

3. When does an account become delinquent?

4. How are delinquents followed?

5. Do you suspend credit buying of delinquent accounts? If so, how is it restored?

6. Are accounts aged?

   (a) What breakdowns?

   (b) When?

   (c) How often?

ANALYSIS

1. Number of people involved

2. Type of equipment involved

Survey Questionnaire - Sales Analysis

1. Information required by:
   - (a) Customer
   - (b) Item
   - (c) Area
   - (d) Salesman
   - (e) Class of trade
2. What reports should management be receiving that they are not now getting?
3. Report information
   - (a) What information is required on each report?
     - (1) What records or registers are used to substantiate reports?
     - (2) What can be added to present reports to make them more meaningful?
   - (b) Who receives each report?
   - (c) By what priorities are reports prepared?
   - (d) Are cost analysis reports generated?
     - (1) How often?
     - (2) To whom?
     - (3) What information?
     - (4) By what classification?
   - (e) Are gross reports prepared?
     - (1) By what classification?
   - (f) Are comparative sales analysis reports generated?
     - (1) What period are the results based on?
   - (g) Are salesman commission statements prepared?
     - (1) How many salesmen?

Sales Analysis Questionnaire (cont'd)

4. Control information

   (a) What are controls and editing procedures for above reports?

5. What is present cost to derive these reports?

Survey Questionnaire - Inventory

1. What percentage of inventory items account for:

   (a) High activity? %

   (b) Medium activity? %

   (c) Low activity? %

2. Does the present coding structure have any real significance, such as block code, significant digit, etc. ?

   (a) Give example

   (b) Are bin locations assigned in sequence by part number?

3. How many transactions are there of each type?

   (a) Receipts and returns

   (b) Issues

   (c) Miscellaneous

4. Are standard or economic order quantities used? If so, how are they determined?

   (a) Do you order by vendor group or as required?

5. Does the inventory record reflect planned requirements, such as:

   (a) On-hand balance

   (b) On-order balance

   (c) Reserved balance

   (d) Available balance

   (e) Minimum balance

   (f) Usage data, etc.

   (g) Maximum balance

6. What inventory costing method is used?

   (a) Average

   (b) Last in, first out (LIFO)

Inventory Questionnaire (cont'd)

(c) First in, first out (FIFO)

(d) Standard

7. What is the frequency of inventory cost changes? What is the frequency of inventory sales price changes?

   (a) How often are price changes of finished goods made?

   (b) Are they made by product line or by item?

8. If partial shipments are made, what is the procedure for handling them?

9. Is there a back-order problem? If so, how is it controlled?

   (a) What percentage of orders have items back-ordered, substituted or canceled?

   (b) How much $ volume do you lose?

10. How and when is a physical inventory taken? By whom?

11. What controls are set up and maintained on the inventory system?

12. What is the cost of inventory maintenance?

13. What are the present costs of keeping inventory records?

14. What are the types of inventory records and reports?

   (a) Do they result in a stock status summary report?

   (b) How often are inventory reports prepared?

   (c) Who receives them?

15. What is the origin and layout of source documents and what controls are used?

16. How often are inquiries made into inventory records? What are their nature? Who makes them?

17. How are present inventory recordkeeping functions correlated with purchasing, billing, sales, manufacturing, etc. ?

Inventory Questionnaire (cont'd)

18. What comparative information do you need?

    (a) Month-to-date

    (b) Year-to-date

    (c) Same period last year

    (d) Percent of comparisons

19. Where must current inventory records be physically located?

Section	Subsections		Page
10	40	50	01

Survey Questionnaire - Accounts Payable

REPORT INFORMATION

1. Is a cash requirement register being prepared?

   (a) What is the average daily cash requirement to meet payables?

   (b) How often is this register prepared?

2. Are amounts being distributed and charged to job orders and expense accounts?

   (a) What is the procedure for each of the above?

      (1) Number of open job orders

      (2) Number of expense accounts

   (b) Are departments budgeted?

      (1) How often are budgets depleted and how often are analysis reports submitted?

CONTROLS AND EDITING PROCEDURES

1. How are payable accounts reconciled?

2. Who is responsible for editing before releasing checks, and what is the procedure?

3. How often are payable accounts reviewed?

4. What controls are in effect?

PURCHASES

1. Number of vendors active and inactive. What are criteria for active?

2. Are orders placed verbally, by requisition, by purchase order, or other?

3. Is blanket order placed for staggered shipments?

4. How are incoming goods accounted for?

5. How are partial shipments handled?

6. What method is used to notify Accounts Payable regarding overs, shorts, or damaged goods?

Accounts Payable Questionnaire (cont'd)

7. Are purchase orders (P. O. 's) coded by Accounting when written?

   (a) If not, when and how are codes assigned?

INCOMING INVOICES

1. Is an invoice register maintained? If not, how are invoices controlled?

2. Pay by statement?

   (a) Is early-pay discount given?

3. When is liability recognized?

   (a) Receipt of goods

   (b) Receipt of invoice

4. Are invoices matched to P. O. 's?

5. Are invoices received from same vendor with different discount dates? How are they handled?

6. Are any invoices paid before arrival of goods?

7. Can one invoice be charged to two or more accounts?

PROCEDURE

1. Is a voucher system presently in use? Ledger system? Other?

2. How are invoices or vouchers filed to ensure that discounts will be taken?

3. Are incoming invoices numbered consecutively?

   (a) Upon receipt?

   (b) Other?

CHECK WRITING

1. How many banks are checks drawn against?

2. If more than one, can the bank be determined before the voucher is opened?

3. Are checks prenumbered?

4. What accounting (A/C) distribution is required? Attach sample.

Accounts Payable Questionnaire (cont'd)

5. How often are checks written?
6. What is present form of checks, voucher, and remittance advice? Attach sample.
7. Are discounts computed at check-writing time? If not, when?
8. Is a check register required?
9. Are certain checks written daily? If so, estimate number.

DISTRIBUTION

1. Which accounts receive greatest number of distributions?
2. How many income and expense accounts are kept? How many divisions are used?
3. How many controlling accounts? Identify each.
4. What department or person is responsible for A/C distribution of invoice?
5. Is apron or rubber stamp used?
6. What percent of invoices contain items chargeable to different income and expense accounts?
7. Is distribution made directly from invoice? At checkwriting time?
8. How much detail in distribution record?
9. How many items other than invoices (e.g., journal vouchers) are distributed each month?
10. What is cutoff date?
11. When is trial balance secured?
12. How is trial balance secured ?

MISCELLANEOUS

1. Is obligation record required?
2. Is purchase journal available? How prepared?
3. Is vendor control card required?
4. Total purchases-to-date by vendor required?
5. Do you, or will you, use group processing method?
6. Do you, or will you, use balance-forward method?
7. Are expenditures compared against budget?

Survey Questionnaire - Payroll

1. How is time figured?
   (a) Tenths of hours
   (b) Hundredths of hours
   (c) Hours and minutes
   (d) Other (nearest half or quarter hour)
   (e) Incentive or price rates
2. What is overtime?
   (a) Over 40 hours
   (b) Over 8 hours
   (c) Other
3. How prevalent are rate changes? Temporary or permanent?
   (a) How many can a man have?
   (b) When?
   (c) Does job carry a rate?
4. How many shifts are there?
   (a) What kind of bonus is there?
   (b) How is it calculated?
5. What is employee turnover?
6. What YTD information will appear on check stub?
7. How many timekeepers?
8. Are timeclocks used? Is time recorded in tenths or hundredths of hours?
9. Is there labor distribution?
   (a) By job? Department? Operation? Machine?
   (b) Is average labor cost used?

Payroll Questionnaire (cont'd)

(c) Actual labor cost?

(d) How is overtime handled?

PREPARATION DATA

1. What are pay periods?
2. When does pay period close?
3. What is paying date? Preparation time?
4. How are employees paid?
   (a) Check, cash?
   (b) Is envelope used?
5. How many copies of journals?
6. Any objection to the use of spot carbon on check?
7. Should check amount be protected?
8. Is check signer used?
9. Do you write payroll checks on more than one bank?
10. How and when are vacation checks written?
11. How are advances handled?
12. How are terminations handled?
13. How is sick pay handled?
14. How is holiday pay handled?

INCENTIVES, SHIFTS, ETC.

1. How many shifts?
2. What is incentive formula?
3. Are rates for various jobs known by employees?
4. How often is it necessary to pay "make-up" pay?
5. List indirect labor categories

Payroll Questionnaire (cont'd)

6. Are efficiency standards established?

   (a) By machine?

   (b) By employee?

DEDUCTIONS

1. Voluntary
2. Involuntary
3. Average deduction amount
   (a) Voluntary
   (b) Involuntary
4. Percentage of activity
   (a) Voluntary
   (b) Involuntary

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Payroll Questionnaire (cont'd)

5. Largest month total ($)
   (a) Voluntary
   (b) Involuntary

6. List the posting media for each of the above

7. What reports must be furnished?

8. How are salesmen paid?

   (a) Salary or standard commission

   (b) Explain other

Payroll Questionnaire (cont'd)

9. Reports (payroll and labor distribution)

   (a) Form (sequence of information)

   (b) Content (size of fields, number of classifications)

   (c) Frequency (Presently? With IBM approach to application?)

   (d) Distribution

10. Schedule requirements

   (a) Length of pay period

   (b) When are source documents available for processing?

   (c) When does pay period close?

   (d) How soon after pay period closes must checks be available?

   (e) How long does it take for changes to clear through the personnel department?

11. Reporting

   (a) Who reports payroll source data? Employees? Timekeeper? Foreman?

   (b) What degree of control does the accounting department have over the people who report data?

12. Management requirements

   (a) Who gets the reports?

   (b) What would they like that their present system doesn't give them?

13. Miscellaneous

   (a) In what states do you pay payroll?

   (b) What special deduction considerations are there?

   (c) Is state or city income tax deducted?

MANUAL SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION EXAMPLE -- PAYROLL

Introduction

This example of a typical manual application consists of the following items:

Job Description -- Payroll
Survey Form - filled in for payroll
Samples of all documents being used
Flowchart -- all of payroll procedure

Notice that the illustrations are shown in the order in which they are ordinarily developed. After the job description is written, the survey is completed, and all sample documents are gathered. Then the procedure that produces the reports, using the information from the survey form, is drawn in flowchart form.

Job Description

A job description is not always necessary, but is useful when new people are introduced to an application, or when presentations are made for management or visitors. Both of these situations occur frequently during the conversion process.

The following is a typical job description. Note that it is short, describes objectives, and provides a summary of the procedure.

Payroll -- Job Description

The objectives of the payroll procedure are:

1. To record earnings, deductions, and taxes for historical purposes.
2. To provide state and federal governments, unions, and other agencies with a record of moneys collected for them.
3. To furnish employees with a personal record of earnings, deductions, and taxes.
4. To write and reconcile paychecks.
5. To provide entries to labor statistics and miscellaneous reports.

To accomplish the above, current period time cards, containing hours worked, are matched to the production report, and gross earnings are calculated and posted to the payroll register. Then, deductions and net pay are calculated and posted to the payroll register, paychecks are written, and earnings records are updated. Miscellaneous reports are produced from earnings records, and quarter-to-date information is prepared for 941 and W-2 forms preparation.

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	01

Survey Form

The following is a typical completed survey form. Note that the answers are short and descriptive.

The survey form is always necessary.

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	02

FACTORY PAYROLL

Survey Questionnaire - Payroll

1. How is time figured?
   (a) Tenths of hours
   (b) Hundredths of hours X
   (c) Hours and minutes
   (d) Other (nearest half or quarter hour)
   (e) Incentive or price rates
2. What is overtime?
   (a) Over 40 hours X
   (b) Over 8 hours X
   (c) Other
3. How prevalent are rate changes? (Temporary) or permanent?
   (a) How many can a man have? Maximum, 10 per year
   (b) When? At union contract time, promotions
   (c) Does job carry a rate? Yes
4. How many shifts are there? 1, 2, or 3, by plant
   (a) What kind of bonus is there? 2nd $.06 3rd $.12
   (b) How is it calculated? Added to base and treated as rate change
5. What is employee turnover? 25% average overall plants
6. What YTD information will appear on check stub? None
7. How many timekeepers? One per plant
8. Are timeclocks used? Yes Is time recorded in tenths or hundredths of hours? Tenths
9. Is there labor distribution? Yes
   (a) By job? (Department?) Operation? Machine?
   (b) Is average labor cost used? Yes

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	03

(c) Actual labor cost? No

(d) How is overtime handled? As separate item

PREPARATION DATA

1. What are pay periods? Weekly
2. When does pay period close? Sunday
3. What is paying date? Following Friday Preparation time? 12 man-days
4. How are employees paid?

   (a) (Check,) cash?

   (b) Is envelope used? Varies by plant
5. How many copies of journals? One
6. Any objection to the use of spot carbon on check? No
7. Should check amount be protected? Yes
8. Is check signer used? Yes
9. Do you write payroll checks on more than one bank? Yes
10. How and when are vacation checks written? Just before plant closes for vacation
11. How are advances handled? None
12. How are terminations handled? Records are kept as prescribed by state. Severance pay is treated as special earnings.
13. How is sick pay handled? None
14. How is holiday pay handled? At base rate if worked day before and day after.

INCENTIVES, SHIFTS, ETC.

1. How many shifts? 1, 2, or 3, by plant
2. What is incentive formula? % of piecework completed over standard
3. Are rates for various jobs known by employees? Yes
4. How often is it necessary to pay "make-up" pay? Never
5. List indirect labor categories Printing die room, cutting die maintenance, janitor, watchman, trainee, sales and experimental, cleanup, salvage, meetings, inventory

6. Are efficiency standards established? Yes

   (a) By machine? X

   (b) By employee?

DEDUCTIONS

1. Voluntary	1	Credit Union
	2	Charitable contributions
	3	Stock
	4	
	5	
	6	
2. Involuntary	7	Union dues
	8	Federal income tax
	9	Insurance
	10	Social security tax
	11	Local tax
	12	

3. Average deduction amount		
(a) Voluntary	1	$5.00
	2	$0.50
	3	$11.00
	4	
	5	
	6	
(b) Involuntary	7	$11.50
	8	$15.00
	9	$0.55
	10	$4.00
	11	$1.00
	12	

4. Percentage of activity		
(a) Voluntary	1	25
	2	90
	3	2
	4	
	5	
	6	
(b) Involuntary	7	99
	8	100
	9	15
	10	100
	11	80
	12	

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	05

5. Largest month total ($)

(a) Voluntary

1 $6,000
2 $1,000
3 $ 150
4
5
6

(b) Involuntary

7 $ 3,000
8 $ 7,500
9 $ 180
10 $ 7,000
11 $ 1,400
12

6. List the posting media for each of the above

1 payroll register, check, general ledger
2 payroll register, check, general ledger
3 payroll register, check, general ledger
4
5
6
7 payroll register, check, general ledger
8 payroll register, check, general ledger
9 payroll register, check, general ledger
10 payroll register, check, general ledger
11 payroll register, check, general ledger
12

7. What reports must be furnished?

1 Credit union list
2 union dues list
3 Stock deduction list
4 W-2
5 941
6 local tax report
7 Check
8 Check stub
9 Employee earnings record
10 Payroll register
11 Machine activity report
12

8. How are salesmen paid?

(a) Salary or standard commission Salary + 10% over quota

(b) Explain other

9. Reports (payroll and labor distribution)

   (a) Form (sequence of information) By machine

   (b) Content (size of fields, number of classifications)
   Machine (Name) M Sq. Ft/Machine (xxxx.x) Pct Effic (xxx.x)
   Shift (x) JOJ Std Hrs (xxxx.x) Delay Effic (xx.x)
   M Sq. Ft/Man-hr (xxx.x) JOJ Nonrated hrs. (xx.x) OJ hrs (xxx.x)
   M. Pieces (xxxx.x) Man-hours (xxxx.x) Actual Dollars (xxxxx.xx)

   (c) Frequency (Presently? With IBM approach to application?) Weekly and monthly

   (d) Distribution Accounting, plant superintendent, plant gen. mgr., top management

10. Schedule requirements

   (a) Length of pay period Weekly

   (b) When are source documents available for processing? Monday

   (c) When does pay period close? Sunday

   (d) How soon after pay period closes must checks be available? 5 days

   (e) How long does it take for changes to clear through the personnel department? 1 day

11. Reporting

   (a) Who reports payroll source data? Employees? Timekeeper? (Foreman?)

   (b) What degree of control does the accounting department have over the people who report data?
   None, except for validation of time

12. Management requirements

   (a) Who gets the reports? President, chairman of the board, plant managers

   (b) What would they like that their present system doesn't give them? 1. Better labor distribution
   2. Y.T.D info. carried thru each reporting pay period

13. Miscellaneous

   (a) In what states do you pay payroll? Ohio, Ind., W.Va., Tex.

   (b) What special deduction considerations are there? Union initiations, notice of levy

   (c) Is state or city income tax deducted? Yes

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	07

ADMINISTRATIVE PAYROLL

Survey Questionnaire - Payroll

1. How is time figured?
   (a) Tenths of hours X
   (b) Hundredths of hours
   (c) Hours and minutes
   (d) Other (nearest half or quarter hour) Salary
   (e) Incentive or price rates
2. What is overtime?
   (a) Over 40 hours X
   (b) Over 8 hours
   (c) Other
3. How prevalent are rate changes? (Temporary) or permanent?
   (a) How many can a man have? Maximum, 4 per year
   (b) When? Varies
   (c) Does job carry a rate? Range
4. How many shifts are there? One
   (a) What kind of bonus is there? None
   (b) How is it calculated?
5. What is employee turnover? 15% average over all plants
6. What YTD information will appear on check stub? None
7. How many timekeepers? One
8. Are timeclocks used? No Is time recorded in tenths or hundredths of hours?
9. Is there labor distribution? Yes
   (a) By job? (Department?) Operation? Machine?
   (b) Is average labor cost used? No

(c) Actual labor cost? Yes

(d) How is overtime handled? Included

PREPARATION DATA

1. What are pay periods? Biweekly
2. When does pay period close? Every other Friday
3. What is paying date? Same Friday Preparation time? 3 man-days
4. How are employees paid?
   (a) (Check,) cash?
   (b) Is envelope used? Yes
5. How many copies of journals? One
6. Any objection to the use of spot carbon on check? No
7. Should check amount be protected? Yes
8. Is check signer used? Yes
9. Do you write payroll checks on more than one bank? Yes
10. How and when are vacation checks written? At employee option before vacation
11. How are advances handled? None
12. How are terminations handled? Records are kept as prescribed by state. Severance pay is treated as special earnings.
13. How is sick pay handled? Standard pay, nothing special
14. How is holiday pay handled? 8 hours at base rate or salary

INCENTIVES, SHIFTS, ETC.

1. How many shifts? One
2. What is incentive formula? None
3. Are rates for various jobs known by employees? No
4. How often is it necessary to pay "make-up" pay? Never
5. List indirect labor categories Janitor, watchman, meetings, trainee

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	09

6. Are efficiency standards established? No

   (a) By machine?

   (b) By employee?

DEDUCTIONS

1. Voluntary	1	Credit union
	2	Charitable contributions
	3	Insurance
	4	Stock
	5	
	6	
2. Involuntary	7	Federal Income Tax
	8	Local taxes
	9	Social Security
	10	
	11	
	12	

3. Average deduction amount		
(a) Voluntary	1	$ 10.00
	2	$ 1.00
	3	$ 1.00
	4	$ 2.00
	5	
	6	
(b) Involuntary	7	$ 40.00
	8	$ 1.00
	9	$ 8.00
	10	
	11	
	12	

4. Percentage of activity		
(a) Voluntary	1	25
	2	90
	3	35
	4	10
	5	
	6	
(b) Involuntary	7	100
	8	80
	9	100
	10	
	11	
	12	

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	10

5. Largest month total ($)

(a) Voluntary

1 $ 6,000
2 $ 400
3 $ 200
4 $ 350
5
6

(b) Involuntary

7 $ 8,000
8 $ 400
9 $ 3,200
10
11
12

6. List the posting media for each of the above

1 Payroll Register, check, General Register
2 Payroll Register, check, General Register
3 Payroll Register, check, General Register
4 Payroll Register, check, General Register
5
6
7 Payroll Register, check, General Register
8 Payroll Register, check, General Register
9 Payroll Register, check, General Register
10
11
12

7. What reports must be furnished?

1 Credit union list
2 Insurance deduction list
3 Stock deduction list
4 W-2
5 941
6 Local tax report
7 Check
8 check stub
9 Employee earnings record
10 Payroll register
11 Machine activity report
12

8. How are salesmen paid?

(a) Salary or standard commission Salary + 10% over quota

(b) Explain other

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	20	11

9. Reports (payroll and labor distribution) None

   (a) Form (sequence of information)

   (b) Content (size of fields, number of classifications)

   (c) Frequency (Presently? With IBM approach to application?)

   (d) Distribution

10. Schedule requirements

   (a) Length of pay period Biweekly

   (b) When are source documents available for processing? Wednesday

   (c) When does pay period close? Friday

   (d) How soon after pay period closes must checks be available? Same day

   (e) How long does it take for changes to clear through the personnel department? One day

11. Reporting

   (a) Who reports payroll source data? Employees? Timekeeper? Foreman? Supervisor

   (b) What degree of control does the accounting department have over the people who report data? Validation only

12. Management requirements

   (a) Who gets the reports? President, Chairman of the board

   (b) What would they like that their present system doesn't give them? 1. Better labor distribution reporting. 2. YTD info. carried thru each payperiod

13. Miscellaneous

   (a) In what states do you pay payroll? Ohio, W. Va., Ind., Tex.

   (b) What special deduction considerations are there? Matrix of levy

   (c) Is state or city income tax deducted? Yes

SAMPLE DOCUMENTS

The following is a typical collection of sample documents. Note that both blank and completed documents are present.

It is always necessary to collect all documents, both completed and blank, for your current system.

ORDER NO.	CUSTOMER	SQ. FT.	NO. OUT	S. U.	RUN	NO. PIECES	MAN HRS. TOTAL SET	MAN HRS. RUN TOTAL
					TOTALS			

CLOCK NO.	NAME	START	STOP	REG.	BONUS

MACH.		DATE	
PIECES		MACH HRS	
SQ.		HRS.	
SET UP		ALLOW	
RUN		MAKE UP	
TOTAL		BONUS	

Form 101

ORDER NO.	CUSTOMER	SQ. FT.	NO. OUT	S. U.	RUN	NO. PIECES	MAN HRS. TOTAL SET	MAN HRS. RUN TOTAL
1234	JINES MFG	8000	8000	0	1713	345	7	9
					TOTALS			

CLOCK NO.	NAME	START	STOP	REG.	BONUS
4011	R. BEDAN	8:00	4:00	8	0

MACH.	113	DATE	1-11-68
PIECES	345	MACH HRS	6
SQ.	8000	HRS.	9
SET UP	2	ALLOW	2
RUN	7	MAKE UP	0
TOTAL	9	BONUS	0

Form 101

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	04

MASTER EMPLOYEE TIME SHEET

NAME		MON.	TUES.	WED.	THURS.	FRI.	SAT.	TOTALS
BROOALONA, J.								
CLOY, C.								
CRASWELT, F.								
DAZDEL, M.								
DORLIN, J.								
FOLLORE, R.								
MIROHOSE, V.								
PANUNI, D.								
WALLJAMS, J.								

MASTER EMPLOYEE TIME SHEET

NAME		MON.	TUES.	WED.	THURS.	FRI.	SAT.	TOTALS
BROOALONA, J.		8	8	8	8	8		40
CLOY, C.		8	9	8	8	9		42
CRASWELT, F.		8½	8½	8	8	9		42
DAZDEL, M.		10	10	10	8	8		46
DORLIN, J.		8	8	8	8	8		40
FOLLORE, R.		9	8	8	9	9½		43½
MIROHOSE, V.		8	8	8	8	8		40
PANUNI, D.		8	8	8	8	8		40
WALLJAMS, J.		8	8	8	0	0		24

TIME SHEET

NAME _____ TWO WEEKS ENDING _____

	START–STOP	LUNCH	HOURS WORKED	
SAT.				
MON.				
TUES.				
WED.				
THUR.				
FRI.				
TOTAL FIRST WEEK				

SAT.				
MON.				
TUES.				
WED.				
THUR.				
FRI.				
TOTAL SECOND WEEK				

TOTAL HOURS _____

CHECKED BY _____

APPROVED BY _____

TIME SHEET

NAME J. DOE TWO WEEKS ENDING 2/2/68

	START–STOP	LUNCH	HOURS WORKED	
SAT.	9-12		3	-
MON.	8-6	12-1	9	-
TUES.	8-5:30	12:30-1:30	8	1/2
WED.	8-5	12:30-1:30	8	
THUR.	8-5	12-1	8	
FRI.	8-5	12-1	8	
TOTAL FIRST WEEK			44	1/2

SAT.				
MON.	8-5	12-1	8	
TUES.	8-5	12-1	8	
WED.	8-5	12-1	8	
THUR.	8-5	12-1	8	
FRI.	8-5	12-1	8	
TOTAL SECOND WEEK			40	

TOTAL HOURS 84 1/2

CHECKED BY JAH

APPROVED BY EJ

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	08

PRODUCTION & LABOR REPORT

Week Ending _____ Rate _____ Machine _____ Shift _____

Dc	M Pcs.	M Sq. Ft.	Standard Hours			Non Rated	% Eff	Actual Hours		Bonus Hours	Delay Time		Non Rate Bonus	Actual Overtime Hours	Actual Dollars
			Set-up	Run	Total			Mach.	Man		Allow.	M/U			
	M														
	T														
	W														
	T														
	F														
	S														
	S														
	This Week														
	Prev. Wks.														
	To Date														

PRODUCTION & LABOR REPORT

Week Ending _____ Rate _____ Machine _____ Shift _____

Date	M Pcs.	M Sq. Ft.	Standard Hours			Non Rated	% Eff	Actual Hours		Bonus Hours	Delay Time		Non Rate Bonus	Actual Overtime Hours	Actual Dollars
			Set-up	Run	Total			Mach.	Man		Allow.	M/U			
	M														
	T														
	W														
	T														
	F														
	S														
	S														
	This Week														
	Prev. Wks.														
	To Date														

PRODUCTION & LABOR REPORT

Week Ending: 1-13-68 | Rate: 3.50 | Machine: 7 | Shift: 3

Dc.	M Pcs.	M Sq. Ft.	Standard Hours			Non Rated	% Eff	Actual Hours		Bonus Hours	Delay Time		Non Rate Bonus	Actual Overtime Hours	Actual Dollars
			Set-up	Run	Total			Mach.	Man		Allow.	M/U			
1-9	580 M	10126	1.0	6.0	7.0	1.0	88	6.0	14.2	.5	1.0	1.1	—	.8	1276.
1-10	726 T	13502	.6	6.8	7.4	.6	93	6.8	13.8	—	.6	.5	—	—	1492.
1-11	431 W	9526	1.0	5.8	6.8	1.2	85	5.8	10.9	—	1.0	1.2	—	—	1130.
1-12	508 T	9972	.3	6.9	7.2	.8	90	6.9	15.2	1.2	.3	.4	—	1.4	792.
1-13	631 F	12703	.5	7.0	7.5	.5	94	7.0	16.7	—	.5	.6	—	—	997.
	S														
	S														
	This Week	55829	3.4	32.5	35.9	4.1	90	32.5	70.8	1.7	3.4	3.8	—	2.2	5687
	Prev. Wks.	107501	7.6	63.3	70.9	9.1	89	67.3	143.0	5.0	7.3	6.9	1.7	3.7	12708
	To Date	163330	11.0	95.8	106.8	13.2	89	99.8	2138	6.7	10.7	10.7	1.7	5.9	18395

PRODUCTION & LABOR REPORT

Week Ending: 1-13-68 | Rate: 3.75 | Machine: 8 | Shift: 1

Date	M Pcs.	M Sq. Ft.	Standard Hours			Non Rated	% Eff	Actual Hours		Bonus Hours	Delay Time		Non Rate Bonus	Actual Overtime Hours	Actual Dollars
			Set-up	Run	Total			Mach.	Man		Allow.	M/U			
1-9	606 M	13706	.6	6.5	7.1	.9	89	6.0	13.7	.7	.6	.7	—	.9	1375.
1-10	908 T	21206	.6	6.6	7.2	.8	90	6.6	14.2	—	.6	.7	—	1.0	1696.
1-11	675 W	14193	1.0	5.9	6.9	1.1	86	5.9	13.9	.9	1.0	1.1	—	—	1377.
1-12	431 T	9120	.6	6.9	7.5	.5	94	6.9	14.2	.9	.6	.5	—	—	908.
1-13	1260 F	28665	.7	7.1	7.8	.2	98	7.1	15.1	—	.7	.7	—	—	2790.
	S														
	S														
	This Week	86890	3.5	33.0	36.5	3.5	91	32.5	71.1	2.5	3.5	3.7	—	1.9	8146
	Prev. Wks.	170403	7.3	68.1	75.4	4.6	94	66.3	153.1	5.1	7.3	7.7	1.0	3.2	17503
	To Date	257293	10.8	101.1	111.9	8.1	93	98.8	224.2	7.6	10.8	11.4	1.0	5.1	25649

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	10

YEAR_____

NAME CLOCK NO. TAX CLASSIFICATION

REMARKS

ADDRESS AGE DEPT. (1) DEPT. (2)

S. S. NO. TEL. NO.

CITIZENSHIP YEAR

EMPLOYMENT RECORD

	IN	OUT	REASON	RATE CHANGE	DATE	RATE	PER

CONSTANT DEDUCTIONS

QUART'R	EARNED	FOA & SI	WH TAX	CITY OR OTHER TAX
FIRST				
SECOND				
THIRD				
FOURTH				
TOTAL				

REASON	CODE	REASON	CODE
WORK AVAILABLE SICKNESS	WA	CATASTROPHE	C
CONTINUED UNAVAILABITITY	CA	DISCIPLINE	D
LABOR DISPUTE	LD	SELF EMPL'D	SE

	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	EARNINGS				DEDUCTIONS						AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER	
				REG. RATE	OVERTIME	OTHERS	TOTAL	F. O. A. B.	WITHHOLDING TAX	A	B	C	D			
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
8																
9																
10																
11																
12																
13																
QTR.																
14																
15																
16																
17																
18																
19																
20																
21																
22																
23																
24																
25																
26																
QTR.																

W-2

YEAR 1966

NAME _____ CLOCK NO. _____ TAX CLASSIFICATION M-2

REMARKS

6.00 15.38 UA. ~~5.08 DI~~ 20.00 C.U.

ADDRESS _____ AGE _____

S. S. NO. _____ TEL. NO. _____

CITIZENSHIP _____

EMPLOYMENT RECORD

IN	OUT	REASON

YEAR

RATE CHANGE	DATE	RATE	PER

CONSTANT DEDUCTIONS

DEPT. (1)

QUART'R	EARNED	FOA & SI	WH TAX	CITY OR OTHER TAX
FIRST				
SECOND				
THIRD				
FOURTH				
TOTAL				

DEPT. (2)

REASON	CODE	REASON	CODE
WORK AVAILABLE SICKNESS	WA	CATASTROPHE	C
CONTINUED UNAVAILABILITY	CA	DISCIPLINE	D
LABOR DISPUTE	LD	SELF EMPL'D	SE

	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	EARNINGS				DEDUCTIONS						AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER
				REG. RATE	OVERTIME	OTHERS	TOTAL	F. O. A. B.	WITHHOLDING TAX	A	B	C	D		
1	1/14						76923	3231	12500	769		1538	2000	56885	6166
2	1/17	4th	Qtr	1965	Bonus		130000	5460	28500	1300				94740	6220
3	1/28						76923	3231	12500	769		508	2000	57915	6233
4	2/11						76923	3231	12500	769		1538	2000	56885	6344
5	2/25						76923	3231	12500	769		508	2000	57915	6456
6	3/11						76923	3231	12500	769		1538	2000	56885	6567
7	3/25						76923	3231	12500	769		508	2000	57915	6679
8															
9															
10															
11															
12															
13															
QTR.			5915.38		3,000.00		5915.38	248.46	1035.00	59.14		~~46.14 UA~~ 13.24 DI	120.00	4391.40	
14	4/8						76923	3231	12500	769		1538	2000	56885	6781
15	4/22						76923	3231	12500	769		600	2000	57823	6902
16	4/25	1ST	Qtr	Bonus	1966		100300	—	21160	1003				78137	6855
17	5/6						76923	—	12990	769		1538	2000	59626	7010
18	5/20						76923	—	12990	769		508	2000	60656	7133
19	6/3						76923	—	12990	769		1538	2000	59626	7255
20	6/17						76923	—	12990	769		508	2000	60656	7361
21	7/1						76923	—	12990	769		1538	2000	59626	7418
22															
23							638761								
24															
25															
26															
QTR.			684.62		-0-		12302.99	313.08	2146.10	123.00		~~107.66 UA~~ 31.90 DI	260.00	9321.75	

W-2

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	12

PAYROLL REGISTER

SHEET NO. _____

PAY PERIOD ENDING _____

		EMPLOYEE	CLOCK NO.	HOURS WORKED	TOTAL HOURS	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	EARNINGS REG. RATE	EARNINGS OVERTIME	EARNINGS OTHERS	EARNINGS TOTAL	DEDUCTIONS F. O. A. B.	DEDUCTIONS WITHHOLDING TAX	DEDUCTIONS A	DEDUCTIONS B	DEDUCTIONS C	DEDUCTIONS D	AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER	✓
	1																				
	2																				
	3																				
	4																				
	5																				
	6																				
	7																				
	8																				
	9																				
	10																				
	11																				
	12																				
	13																				
	14																				
	15																				
	16																				
	17																				
	18																				
	19																				
	20																				
	21																				
	22																				
	23																				
	24																				
	25																				
	26																				
	27																				
	28																				
	29																				
	30																				
		TOTALS THIS SHEET																			
		TOTALS FROM PRECEDING SHEET																			
		TOTALS																			
				HOURS WORKED	TOTAL HOURS	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	EARNINGS REG. RATE	EARNINGS OVERTIME	EARNINGS OTHERS	EARNINGS TOTAL	DEDUCTIONS F. O. A. B.	DEDUCTIONS WITHHOLDING TAX	DEDUCTIONS A	DEDUCTIONS B	DEDUCTIONS C	DEDUCTIONS D	AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER	

W-2

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	13

PAYROLL REGISTER

SHEET NO. _____

PAY PERIOD ENDING _____

	EMPLOYEE	CLOCK NO.	HOURS WORKED	TOTAL HOURS	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	EARNINGS REG. RATE	EARNINGS OVERTIME	EARNINGS OTHERS	EARNINGS TOTAL	DEDUCTIONS F. O. A. B.	DEDUCTIONS WITHHOLDING TAX	DEDUCTIONS A	DEDUCTIONS B	DEDUCTIONS C	DEDUCTIONS D	AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER	✓
1	J.S. QUINLAN	753		40	11/17/67			557.69			557.69	–	103.00	5.58		4.14	50.00	394.97	7576	
2	J. SIELING	754		40	11/17/67			769.23			769.23	–	108.12		6.67	4.88		649.56	7577	
3	M.L. MANN	755		40	11/17/67			576.92			576.92	14.92	91.10			5.93		464.97	7578	
4	V HETTINGER	756		40	11/17/67			865.39			865.39	–	134.06					731.33	7579	
5	R. FERGUSON	757		40	11/17/67			323.08			323.08	14.20	52.66	7.69				248.53	7580	
6	T.C. NORRIS	758		40	11/17/67			500.00		14.16	514.16	22.60	82.88	6.35		4.66		397.67	7581	
7	J. MATTHEWS	759		40	11/17/67			634.32			634.32	27.80	101.55			9.10		495.87	7582	
8	J. BURGESON	760		40				519.23			519.23	22.80	84.67				20.00	391.76	7583	
9	D. TERRAMORSE	761		40				557.69			557.69	24.52	91.37	11.17			5.00	425.63	7584	
10	M. JOYCE	762		40				323.07		12.00	335.07	14.72	53.80	14.03		11.30		241.22	7585	
11	J. REYNOLDS	763		40				369.25			369.25	16.26	58.77	6.67				287.55	7586	
12	H. ORLICK	764		40				265.38			265.38	11.70	42.19					211.49	7587	
13	T. L. PRITCHARD	765		40				500.00			500.00	22.60	80.00					397.40	7588	
14	V. Mc DOLE	766		40				396.14		8.20	404.34	17.76	64.19		19.00			303.39	7589	
15	B. BARABACHEFF	767		40				769.23			769.23	–	126.37		8.50		20.00	614.36	7590	
16	R. L. SHEPHARD	768		40				865.39			865.39	–	149.92	8.85	21.00		20.00	665.62	7591	
17	T. TRISSLER	769		40				323.08			323.08	14.22	51.14	9.16			10.00	238.56	7592	
18	G. GROFT	770		40				265.38			265.38	11.70	42.33					211.35	7593	
19	L. STUDY	771		40				634.14			634.14	27.80	101.56					504.78	7594	
20	E. WAGNER	772		40				708.92			708.92	–	117.92		14.92		1.98	574.10	7595	
21																				
22																				
23																				
24																				
25																				
26																				
27																				
28																				
29																				
30																				
	TOTALS THIS SHEET			800				10722.53	0.00	34.36	10757.89	263.60	1737.60	69.50	70.09	40.01	126.98	8450.11		
	TOTALS FROM PRECEDING SHEET			1736				47523.98	756.38	481.30	56214.44	452.65	2145.87	105.64	253.64	108.12	232.12	52916.40		
	TOTALS			2536				58246.51	756.38	515.66	66972.33	716.25	3883.47	175.14	323.73	148.13	359.10	61366.51		
			HOURS WORKED	TOTAL HOURS	PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	REG. RATE	OVERTIME	OTHERS	TOTAL	F. O. A. B.	WITHHOLDING TAX	A	B	C	D	AMOUNT OF CHECK	CHECK NUMBER	
								EARNINGS				DEDUCTIONS								

W-3

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	30	14

PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	REG RATE	OVERTIME	OTHERS	TOTAL	F. O. A. B.	WITHHOLDING TAX	A	B	C	D	AMOUNT OF CHECK
			EARNINGS				DEDUCTIONS						

THE CONTAINER COMPANY
COLUMBUS, WASH.

A- CITY TAX
B- INS.
C- MISC.
D- CREDIT UNION

PLEASE DETACH KEEP THIS STUB FOR YOUR RECORD

PAY ROLL ACCOUNT

THE CONTAINER COMPANY

No. 8123

COLUMBUS, WASH. _____

123 - 4
567

PAY

TO THE ORDER OF _____ $ _____

THE CONTAINER COMPANY
PAYROLL ACCOUNT NO. 2

TO THE NATIONAL BANK & TRUST CO.
OF COLUMBUS, WASH.

_____

W-1

PERIOD ENDING	HOURS	RATE	REG RATE	OVERTIME	OTHERS	TOTAL	F. O. A. B.	WITHHOLDING TAX	A	B	C	D	AMOUNT OF CHECK
2-2-68	40	4 50	180 00	0 00	0 00	180 00	7 82	36 00	6 00	1 00			129 18
			EARNINGS				DEDUCTIONS						

THE CONTAINER COMPANY
COLUMBUS, WASH.

A- CITY TAX
B- INS.
C- MISC.
D- CREDIT UNION

PLEASE DETACH KEEP THIS STUB FOR YOUR RECORD

PAY ROLL ACCOUNT

THE CONTAINER COMPANY

No. 8123

COLUMBUS, WASH. 2-2-68

123 - 4
567

PAY

TO THE ORDER OF Eric Q Jones $ 129.18

THE CONTAINER COMPANY
PAYROLL ACCOUNT NO. 2

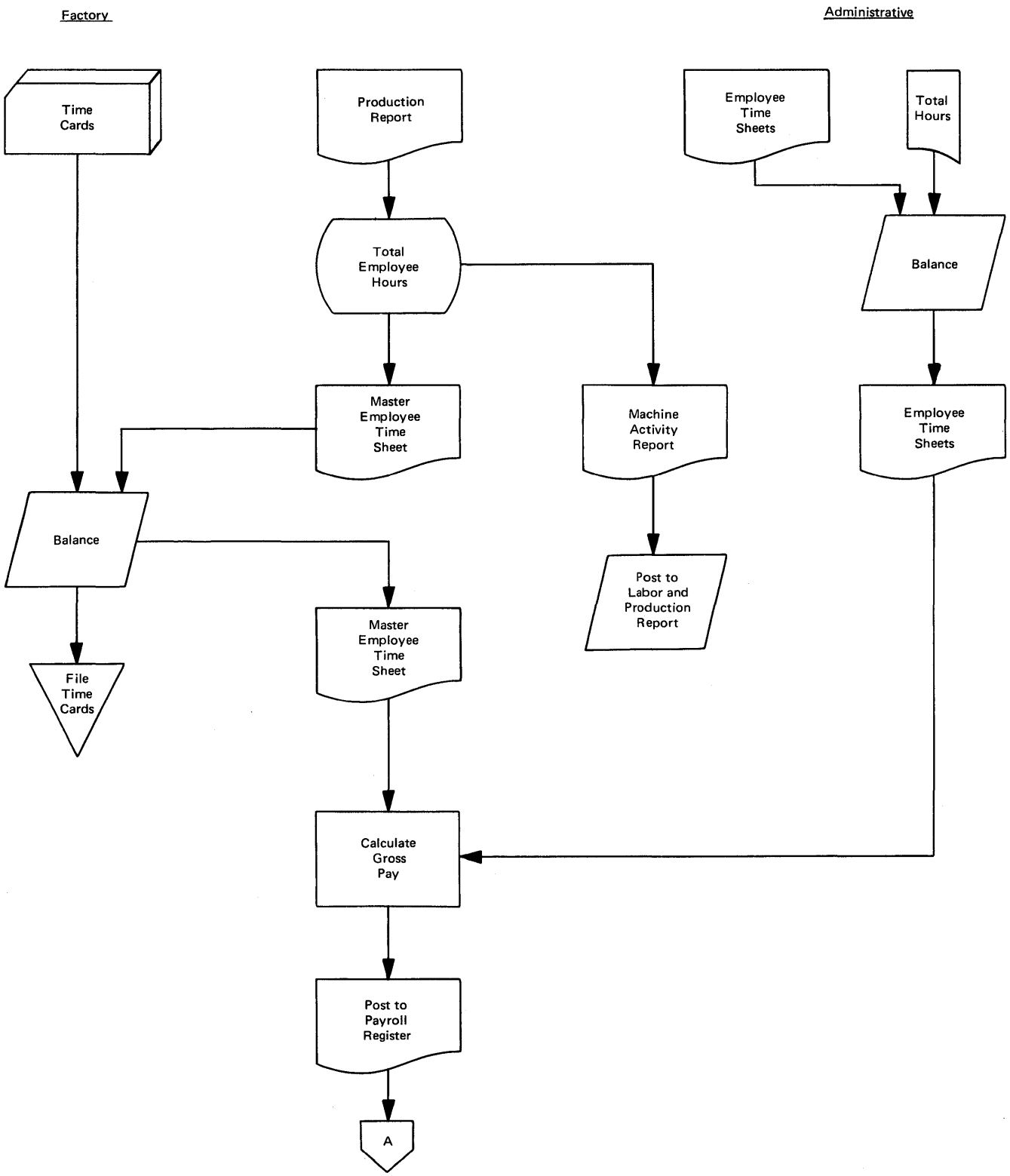
TO THE NATIONAL BANK & TRUST CO.
OF COLUMBUS, WASH.

John Horn

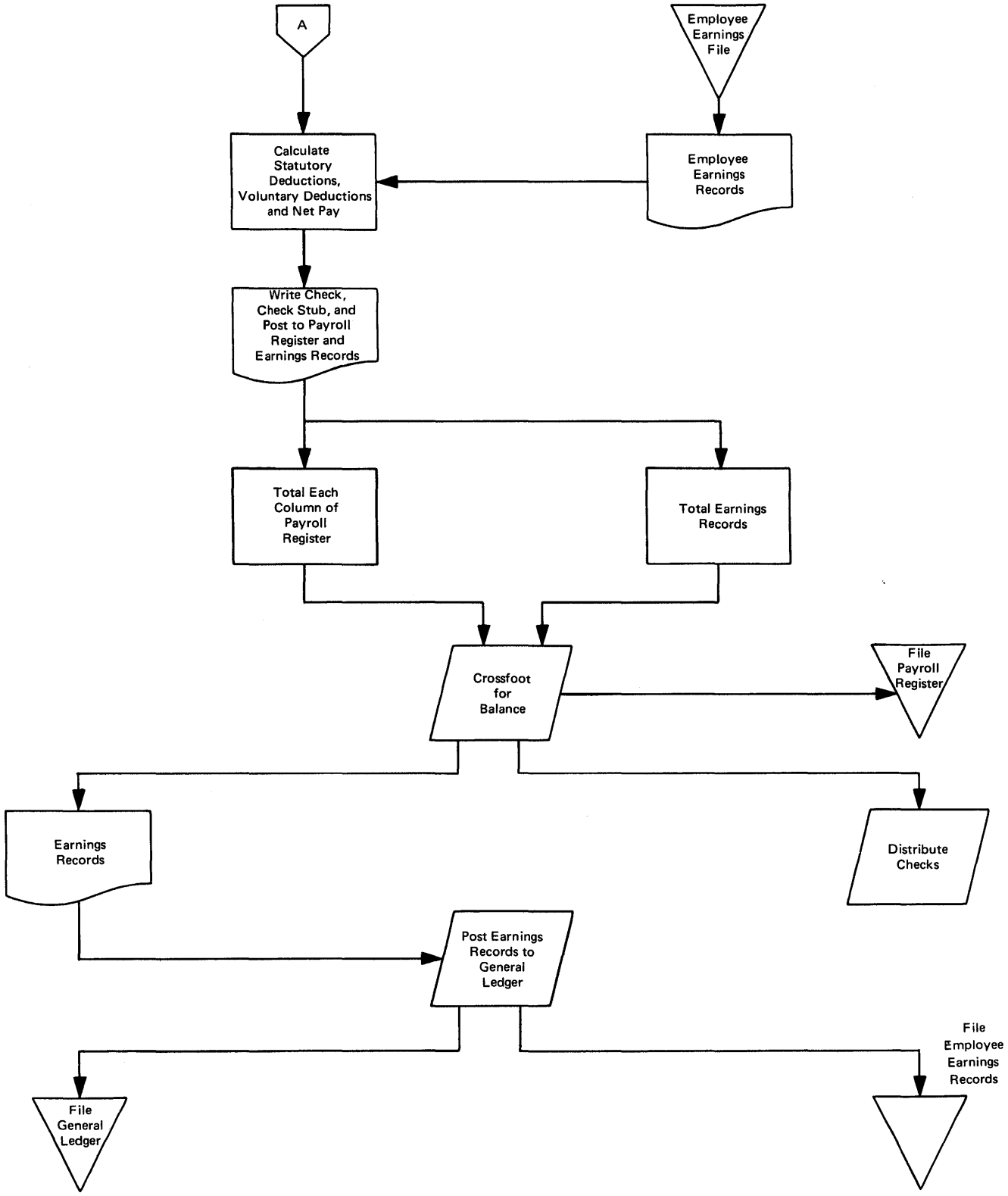
W-1

Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	40	01

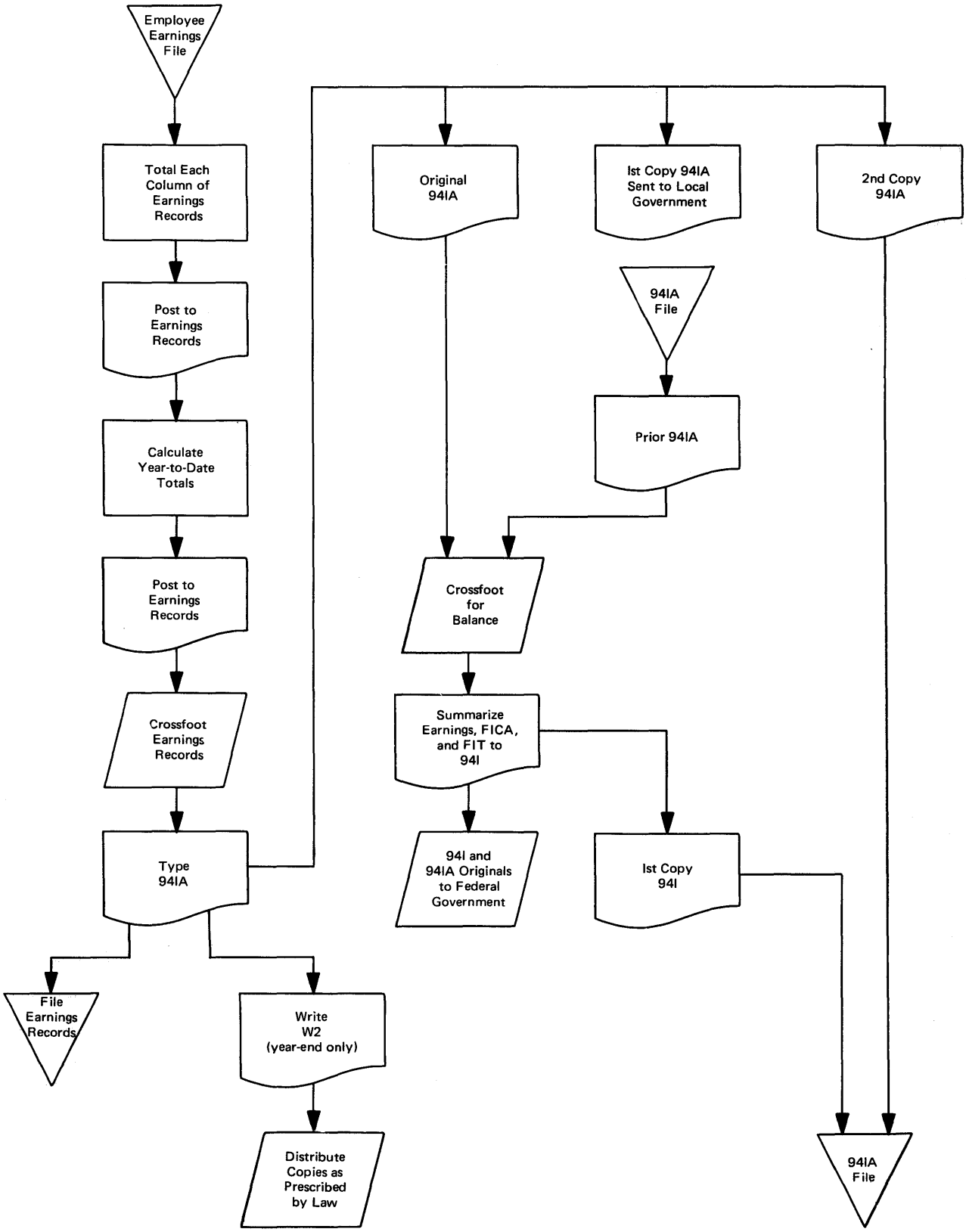
SYSTEMS FLOWCHART OF WEEKLY PROCEDURE



Section	Subsections		Page
10	50	40	02



Quarterly Procedure



Section 15: SOME PRELIMINARY QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS REGARDING DATA STORAGE

CONTENTS

Introduction 15.01.00
Data — on Disk or Cards? 15.10.00
- General Considerations 15.10.01
- Flexibility in Order of Processing 15.10.10
- Jobs Involving More Than One File.... 15.10.20
- Frequency of Changes to Your File.... 15.10.30
- Need for Inquiry into Your File 15.10.40
- Size of Your Data File 15.10.50
- Your Backup Requirements 15.10.60
- Record Size 15.10.70
- Other Considerations 15.10.80
- Summary 15.10.90

How to Safeguard Your Disk Data Files .. 15.20.00
- Introduction 15.20.01
- Know Your Data 15.20.10
- Know What Can Happen to Your Data .. 15.20.20
- Design an Accident-Insensitive System 15.20.30
- Detect Errors Before They Do Damage 15.20.40
- Plan Modest-Size, Modular Programs 15.20.50
- Always Back Up Your Disk Files with a Duplicate Copy 15.20.60
- Provide Tested and Documented Recovery Procedures..... 15.20.70

INTRODUCTION

Often, before starting the design of a system, there are many questions regarding data storage. Two of the more important are:

- Should I use cards or disks for my data files?
- How can I safeguard my data?

This chapter answers these questions on a broad basis, leaving the details for later chapters.

DATA — ON DISK OR CARDS?

General Considerations

Before you get too far into systems design and programming, you should ask a basic question about every data file you intend to use: Should it be stored on a disk cartridge or in the form of a card deck?

The disk can be an extremely powerful medium for the storage of your data; however, it can be misused. Some data, if placed on the disk, will cause your programmer more work in the long run than if a simple deck-of-cards approach had been used.

In order to lessen the possibility of such a situation, let us answer some of the questions that arise when choosing a storage medium for data.

Flexibility In Order of Processing

In general, your data, whether on disk or cards, contains some master information (names, rates, balances, etc.) in some order or sequence. When you process this information, the transactions may be in another sequence. For example, your employee master data file may be in man-number sequence, while your employee detail cards are grouped by department.

In this situation, the disk has a distinct advantage over cards, since it is a direct access storage device (DASD). This means you can directly access any record, regardless of which record was processed last or which record is next. This allows you complete flexibility in the order of processing.

With your master data on cards, you have to sort both the master deck and the transaction deck into the same order, collate them together, and then process your data in the desired sequence.

Although the disk has a great advantage over cards, its importance varies with the size of the file. Are you talking about 100 employees and a 10-minute sorting job, or 1,000 employees and 45 minutes of card handling? In later sections some other considerations will be discussed that may tip the scales in favor of cards.

Jobs Involving More Than One File

The previous topic can be expanded to consider more than one file, which is the case in many commercial applications. For example, many payroll applications involve a job cost file as well as the employee payroll file. If an employee detail card says that man 607 worked 12.5 hours on job 70976, you can find man 607 in the employee file and add 12.5 hours to his weekly total, then find job number 70976 in the job cost file and add 12.5 hours to its weekly total, all within one program. A card file system would involve:

1. Sorting and collating the employee detail cards with the employee master cards
2. Running the program and punching a new updated employee master card
3. Separating the cards
4. Sorting and collating the employee detail cards again, this time with the job master cards
5. Running a different program, this one punching a new master job cost card
6. Separating the cards and filing them

Depending on the number of cards involved, this could be a cumbersome process. But again, some of the considerations discussed later may override this one.

Frequency of Changes to Your File

A third consideration in deciding on card or disk is the number of times the data in your file must be changed, and the difficulty involved in changing it. Some amount of change is inevitable; in a payroll file every week will bring raises, new dependents, changes of address, etc. These minor changes do not present much of a problem.

With a card file it is very easy; a new card is punched and substituted for the old card.

With a disk file it is somewhat more involved; you must run a change program, which reads the new data from cards or the console keyboard and inserts it in the proper place on the disk record.

Major changes are another matter — new employees, a new group of items in stock, etc. Here again, changing a card file is relatively easy, and changing a disk file more difficult. It is a simple matter to punch a master card for new item number 1705 and place it in the card deck between items 1704 and 1800. It is not quite so simple on the disk, where items 1704 and 1800 are probably adjacent, with no space between them. Either item 1705 is placed in a special area, with a special routine to find it, or the entire file is reorganized, moving every item after 1704 "down" one position to make room for item 1705. This also would require a special program or routine.

If a data file is subject to frequent major (organizational) changes, you may add a few points to the "card file" side of the balance. These points may or may not be enough to swing the decision, since the first two items (processing order and number of files) are more important, and generally favor disk use.

Remember, when you change a field on a card, you still have the old card; when you change some data on the disk (usually an entire record at a time!), the old information is gone. Therefore, special care must be taken to ensure that disk changes are processed correctly the first time.

Need for Inquiry into Your File

In some cases it is very desirable to be able to look into your data file to get certain current information: number of pieces of item number 170653 on hand, year-to-date gross pay of man number 8091, etc. When your data file is in the form of a card deck, this is relatively easy, since you merely find the right card, interpret it, and read the data, much as you would any other hard-copy file — index cards, ledger sheets, etc.

People are accustomed to doing this, and often resist the change to disk-resident files because they cannot "see" what is on the disk.

It is true that data written on the disk is somewhat less tangible than if it were on a deck of cards, but this is not the overriding consideration it is made out to be.

True, it takes a special program or subprogram to read and display data on a disk, so demands for inquiry do add a few points to the "card file" side of the balance. However, a properly designed system can lessen or eliminate these points entirely.

If someone within your company requires, say, the current status of inventory, it may be possible to replace his 5" x 8" card file with a daily listing of stock status, or a weekly listing with daily updates. If he insists on immediate response to up-to-the-minute status, the programmer can build an inquiry subroutine into every program, calling it only when some console switch is turned on:

```
      CALL DATSW(7, MM)
      GO TO (9,10), MM
    9 CALL INQUR
   10 CONTINUE
```

These four statements would be placed at a convenient spot in every program. Whenever anyone wanted to inquire of the disk, he would turn on switch 7. The subroutine INQUR would soon be called, and probably request that a part number be entered through the console keyboard. After the requested information was looked up on the disk, it would be typed on the console printer, and the main program would continue.

Large demands for inquiry sometimes make the use of card files appear more attractive than disk files, but proper systems design can often reduce the importance of this factor. In fact, inquiry into a disk-resident file is often a plus factor, since the data obtained would have an up-to-the-minute status.

Size of Your Data File

This item is hard to separate from some of the other considerations. However, all other things being equal, putting very small data files on the disk is sometimes not worth the extra effort, and very large data files will not fit on the disk. Most files fall somewhere in between, and some factor other than size will govern the final card or disk decision.

Your Backup Requirements

Whenever you work with files containing important data (payroll, accounting, etc.), you should not ignore the possibility of accidental destruction of this information. Many accidents can befall card decks — card jams in the reader, floods, spilt coffee, misplacement, etc. Because you can recover from many of these accidents by patching torn cards, duplicating watersoaked cards, etc., it is not too common to find duplicate sets of master card files maintained.

Data files kept on the disk cartridge are subject to a similar list of accidents, but with a difference: it is often impossible to reconstruct the data after an accident, unless you have planned for just such an occurrence.

Because of the need for preplanning, the matter of backup may be considered a disadvantage for the disk file. In actuality, it may be on the plus side, since it forces duplicate files.

Record Size

Because of the physical limitations inherent in a punched card (80 columns), it can be cumbersome to process long records that are kept in card form. Each record may require four or five cards, which must be identified and kept in order. On the other hand, disk records may be as long as 320 words (640 characters). If long records are required, you have a few "plus" points for placing the data file on disk.

Other Considerations

In addition to the factors noted previously, there may be others of equal or greater importance — factors that may be completely unrelated to the particular data file under study. Some typical factors are the storage cost of many cards versus one disk, management's wishes, and the desire to train programmers in disk techniques.

Summary

This section has briefly covered some of the disk-vs-card considerations and attempted to give general guidelines for making this decision. It would be ideal if these factors could be presented in the form of a decision table, score sheet, or other device, but this is not possible. Lacking such a tool, you must study each data file, mull over the pros and cons of disk or cards, and make your own decisions.

Some companies (especially those installing their first data processing system), realizing that their files fall on the borderline, decide to start with card data files. Their reasoning is correct: The system may be less sophisticated and require more machine and operator time, but it is easier to program, use, and understand. Later, if they decide that a certain file should be placed on the disk, it is relatively simple to make the change. The bugs in the system have been ironed out, the programmers are more experienced and confident, and the general atmosphere is more conducive to such a step.

HOW TO SAFEGUARD YOUR DISK DATA FILES

Introduction

This section is of particular interest to those using (or considering) the disk for storage of data files. Accidents will happen, and you must plan ahead to minimize their effect. This is especially true in the case of disk, where data is stored in the form of magnetized spots, recorded at extremely high densities, and read/written by a precise mechanism.

On the other hand, hard copy data is relatively insensitive to accidents. Punched cards can be folded, spindled, and mutilated (even torn, crumpled, splattered with coffee, etc.) without disastrous results. A few minutes (or hours) at the keypunch can remedy all but the most drastic card mishaps. Other paper documents (ledger book, index cards, forms and reports) are not too difficult to duplicate or reconstruct if the original is destroyed.

The purpose of this section, however, is not to discourage the use of the disk for data storage; used properly, the disk offers advantages that overshadow the potential hazards. If you follow the common-sense suggestions in this section, accidents can become rare, improbable events — more a nuisance than a disaster.

Know Your Data

Before starting into a long discussion of how to protect disk data, let us review the various types of data fields in your disk records and determine which, if any, are worth protecting. Naturally, you don't want any of your data lost, but certain items are more important than others, since they are much more difficult to replace.

Take a typical payroll file, where there is a record for each employee:

1. Employee number
2. Name, address, city and state
3. Indicators — marital status, sex, number of dependents, etc.
4. Pay rate
5. Year-to-date dollar figures — gross, taxes, etc.
6. Quarter-to-date dollar figures — gross, taxes, etc.
7. Miscellaneous cumulative — days vacation, sick leave taken, etc.

The first four items are comparatively static, seldom changing, but the latter three probably change every pay period.

If an accident occurs (you should assume the worst possible case), the entire record for every employee is lost. How would you reconstruct your data file? The first four items are easy — the latest information probably exists in the form of a card deck and can simply be reloaded onto the disk. That is how it got there in the first place. However, the last three items present a different picture — they change each pay period. When you write the updated disk record, this week's total is written over last week's total, and last week's total disappears from the disk. Unless you take definite steps to save it before writing on top of it, last week's total will completely cease to exist.

Some disk data fields, therefore, are more critical than others — particularly those that change often, are modified on the basis of previous data (for example, year-to-date gross), or are not kept in duplicate copies.

Know What Can Happen To Your Data

Before you can go about safeguarding a disk data file, you must know what you are safeguarding it against. Basically, there are three general classifications of hazards:

1. Physical hazards. Although the disk cartridge is in a sturdy container, it is certainly not immune to careless handling, loss, natural disaster, etc. The cartridge should be stored at moderate temperatures, (between 60 and 90 degrees Fahrenheit) and should not be placed on high shelves or other precarious places. In general, common sense prevails.

2. Intentional modification. Payroll data and other confidential information should be kept on disk cartridges dedicated to that use, and should be kept in a secure place. As in the case of physical hazards, there is very little else that can be said about this sensitive area except that common sense must be used.

3. Accidental modification. Every program that writes on the disk should be given very close scrutiny. Ask yourself: Is there a chance that wrong information could be written on my disk file? Nine times out of ten the answer is yes. All you need is one mispunched card column, with the resulting wrong answers, and you have a disk record with erroneous data. If the data you are placing on the disk is of a critical nature (as discussed in the preceding pages), you may have problems.

Later sections will discuss some of the ways you may avoid such accidental modification, and how you may easily recover from them. Some of the potential sources of such accidents are:

1. Programming errors (program not completely debugged, etc.)
2. Errors in input data
3. Mistakes by the 1130 operator (running a program twice, etc.)

Design an Accident-Insensitive System

The safety of disk data should be a constant consideration when designing a system. "An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure" — or, in data processing terms, a few minutes spent in planning can save many frantic hours or days in keypunching and computer reruns. An accident may never occur, but it would be foolhardy to ignore its possibility. By following a few basic guidelines, the system may be designed so as to be relatively insensitive to accidents; no matter what may happen, recovery is quick and straightforward.

Detect Errors Before They Do Damage

Whenever there is any chance of erroneous data being written on the disk, you should provide a series of checks to minimize the damage. If there is any possibility that input data cards contain bad data, they should be checked. Your keypunch operators should be familiar with the business, so that they can recognize outright mistakes on source documents. Programmers should be urged to build reasonableness checks into their programs.

For example, a program that reads employee labor cards should always check the number of hours worked and, if the number is questionable, take appropriate action (such as type a message and pause).

Program results in the form of printed answers should be spot-checked before the next processing phase. Most errors are easily spotted early in the game, provided someone is there to look for them.

Plan Modest-Size, Modular Programs

At first thought, it would appear that the best program is one that does as much as possible. Why have half a dozen small payroll programs when one could do everything? Unfortunately, however, a large program that does many things tends to compound errors rapidly.

Let us look at the typical payroll job steps for each employee:

1. Read employee's payroll labor card(s)
2. Read his master data from disk
3. Compute gross
4. Compute deductions and net pay
5. Compute all YTD and QTD totals
6. Write his new master disk record
7. Print payroll register
8. Print paycheck
9. Print check register

Suppose you wrote one very large program to do all nine steps and one of the cards for the 56th man somehow got mixed in with the cards of the 108th man. Your programmer has done a good job of error checking, so the 1130 types CARDS MIXED UP and pauses. You have processed 107 employees — printed the register, written checks, updated disk records, etc. — with one man (the 56th) completely wrong. How do you recover?

Correct the cards and rerun from the beginning? No. Besides printing duplicate checks, that would compute and write new YTD and QTD totals for everyone and completely ruin your disk data records.

Keep going and fix the 56th man later? Possibly, but how? This would require a special program to correct his now-erroneous disk record. It would also require a handwritten paycheck, a hand correction to the payroll register, handwritten totals, and a lot of explaining to the accounting department.

Reprogram the entire system to be less accident-prone? Yes, but a little too late. It should never have been written to do so many things.

This example represents an everyday occurrence. Programs are written this way and cause great consternation when the inevitable error in input data occurs — or when the operator enters the wrong week-ending date, or when the paper in the printer jams, etc.

A properly planned payroll system, like the example used throughout the following chapters, would consist of four programs, not one:

PAY16	• Read Input Cards • Check for Errors
PAY04, Part 1	• Read Input Card • Find Man Number on Master Disk File • Perform Calculations • Update Disk • Repeat Steps 1 - 4 for All Employees
PAY04, Part 2	• When Part 1 Is Finished, Print Payroll Register Directly from Master Disk File
PAY05	• Print Payroll Checks Directly from Master Disk File
PAY06	• Print Check Register Directly from Master Disk File

The advantages of this plan are obvious:

1. The input cards are checked before they are used to modify the disk records.

2. Payroll checks are printed after the payroll register has been inspected for errors.

Always Back Up Your Disk Files with a Duplicate Copy

Regardless of how the processing system is designed, there should be a duplicate copy of every disk data file. If you have multiple disk drives, you can copy from one disk drive onto another; if you have one drive, you must dump to cards. The copying (or dumping) should be on a regular basis, and should not be left to chance or done whenever there is nothing else to do. Both copying and dumping may be done easily with the Disk Utility Program, as outlined in section 60.

If your 1130 system has only one disk drive, it is impossible to copy disks, and backup must be in the form of cards. Either the DUP *DUMPDATA function may be used, or you may write your own dump program. With large data files, both dumps take a significant amount of time. For example, it takes about three hours to dump a 1000-sector data file.

Because of the time involved, there is a natural tendency to avoid dumping such files. However, an analysis of a typical situation shows this to be self-defeating.

Assume an 800-man employee file, contained in 400 sectors. To dump it with a 1442, Model 6, takes about 60 minutes.

The weekly processing sequence is as suggested earlier:

PAY16	Edit	30 min.
PAY04	Calculations, Disk Update and Payroll Register	90 min.
PAY05	Payroll Checks	60 min.
PAY06	Check Register	30 min.

For purposes of analysis, assume the worst possible case — namely, that somehow during PAY04 the payroll data cartridge is completely destroyed. (No matter how improbable or infrequent you think this might be, it can happen.) How do you recover?

If you dump the data file every week, you must:

Reload the dumped deck	30 minutes
Rerun PAY16 and PAY04	2 hours

You have completely recovered in 2-1/2 hours.

If you dump every other week, and you again consider the worst case (your last dump was two weeks ago), you must get the data cards from last week, and:

Reload the dumped deck	30 minutes
Rerun PAY16 and PAY04 with last week's cards	2 hours
Rerun PAY16 and PAY04 with this week's cards	2 hours

In 4-1/2 hours you have caught up to where you were before the accident.

If it had been three weeks since your last dump, the reconstruction time would be 6-1/2 hours; four weeks, 8-1/2 hours; five weeks, 10-1/2 hours; etc. Each week adds about 2 hours.

These figures assume that you can immediately lay your hands on the previous week's data cards in the proper order. If this is not so, these times could go up drastically. The figures also assume that everything goes smoothly during the recovery phases. This, however, is not a very safe assumption, since the operators will be rushed and unfamiliar with the procedures.

Without knowing the probability of such an accident, it is impossible to compute the optimum dump frequency. It is probable, however, that you will not want to be in a 10-1/2-hour recovery position, no matter how slight the probability, just to save an hour a week and a few thousand cards.

In this case, the best approach would seem to be a dump every week for the first few months of the installation, every other week after everything has stabilized, and every third week if conditions seem to warrant it.

Provide Tested and Documented Recovery Procedures

It does little good to follow the previous advice if your recovery procedures have not been tested and documented. Usually, time is of the essence, and the operator should not have to study program listings to determine what to do when accidents occur. This is inviting trouble and can turn a minor mistake into a disaster.

If a program checks the input data for errors (as it certainly should), the error messages should be self-explanatory or be keyed to a document that explains exactly what to do. For example, a well written and well documented program will type a message such as ERROR NO. 6 and pause, waiting for the operator to take corrective action. The "run book", or "operation manual", should contain a complete description of what happened and what to do about it. Figure 15.1 shows a typical error recovery sheet; Figure 15.2 is a blank copy of the same form.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB PAYROLL

PROGRAM NAME PAY 16

PROGRAMMER NAME JP

MESSAGE TYPED:
ERROR 1 MMMM JJJJ

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUMULATOR

1	1	1	1

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 176, AND:

CLEARS TOTAL AND GOES TO READ A DETAIL CARD, ASSUMING IT IS THE FIRST CARD FOR NEW MAN

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

DETAIL CARD MAN NUMBER JJJJ IS LOWER THAN LAST CARD, WHICH WAS MMMM. IT SHOULD BE EQUAL OR HIGHER

PROBABLE CAUSE:

THE DETAIL CARD JUST READ IS IN THE WRONG PLACE. IT BELONGS EARLIER IN THE DECK.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

REMOVE OUT-OF-SEQUENCE CARDS AND CONTINUE WITH JOB. HOLD CARDS REMOVED UNTIL PROGRAM IS RUN AGAIN. ADJUST CONTROL TOTALS AT END OF RUN.

COMMENTS: MAKE CERTAIN THAT WHOEVER "SORTED" THE CARDS KNOWS THAT THEY GOOFED!

SCORESHEET

DATE	12/28	3/15						
INITIALS	JAH	JAH						

Figure 15.1.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB _____ PROGRAM NAME _____

PROGRAMMER NAME _____

MESSAGE TYPED: _____

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUMULATOR

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT _____

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: _____

PROBABLE CAUSE: _____

RECOVERY PROCEDURES: _____

COMMENTS: _____

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Figure 15.2.

Section 20: 1130 APPLICATION DESIGN

CONTENTS

Introduction 20.01.00
Accounting Controls 20.10.00
Review of Accounting Control Principles 20.10.10
More Specific Suggestions for Document and Accounting Controls 20.10.20
Form Design 20.20.00
1130 Considerations 20.20.10
Form Design Principles 20.20.20
Card Design 20.30.00
1130 Considerations 20.30.10
Card Design Principles 20.30.20
Design of Disk Data Files 20.40.00
Introduction 20.40.01
Data 20.40.10
Field Size 20.40.20
Data Sequence 20.40.30
File Organization 20.40.40
Record Format and Blocking 20.40.50
File Processing 20.40.60
File Control 20.40.70
Payroll Example 20.50.00
Narrative 20.50.10
Card Forms and Console Keyboard Input 20.50.20
Console Printer and Line Printer Forms for Output 20.50.30
Disk Record Formats 20.50.40
System Flowchart 20.50.50
Language Selection 20.60.00
Introduction 20.60.01
Programming Languages 20.60.10
Application Programs 20.60.20
Which Programming Language or Application Program Should You Use ? 20.60.30

INTRODUCTION

Up to this point, you have been concerned mainly with planning and gathering facts about the way you are processing your data now. The next step is to take this information and mold it into application designs for the 1130. Follow this plan:

1. Be sure your current-system documentation is complete. This cannot be overemphasized, because time gained by doing a hasty but poor job in documentation will be lost later. In fact, it will probably be lost several times over, because of the need to sift out errors of omission from other design and programming errors, research the omitted facts, then rewrite and retest all affected programs.
2. Design or redesign your reports. This must be done in detail, and all interested parties should sign off on the new layouts. The forms layouts illustrated later in this section are sufficient to guide data processing personnel in their programming. The people who will use these forms should be shown samples, as they will actually appear, with real data hand-printed in the formats that are planned.
3. Lay out the cards (see 20.30.00).
4. Draw flowcharts of the procedures you will follow in processing the cards to produce the reports. Decide what programming system or application program (such as 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package) you will use for each run, and note it on your flowcharts.
5. Establish procedures for accounting controls where you need them. They may be different from those you are using now.

(Steps 2-5 are usually overlapped to a large extent. Changes in reports usually require changes in card formats, procedures, and accounting controls. Similarly, changes in any one of the latter three elements affect the others.)

6. Hold a management review after the first application has gone through the steps above.
7. Let each person who is programming carry one of the programs in this initial application through Program Development (see section 25) to completion. By so doing, he will broaden his experience quickly, develop a more realistic idea of the amount of time required for application design, programming, and testing, and get a clearer idea of the depth of detail needed in your current system documentation. After this experience has been gained, review your activity schedule dates and adjust them according to what you have learned.

This section reviews the important considerations of designing accounting controls, forms, and cards. Then the same payroll example introduced in 10.50.00 is presented, along with typical form and card designs and job flowcharts, as well as the disk record layouts for the programs required to do this payroll.

To help you decide which language to use for any given run, this section also covers the considerations that go into language selection. Finally, it presents an example of a method for estimating the length of time required to run a program.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	10	00	01

ACCOUNTING CONTROLS

This section covers the subject of accounting controls at two levels. The first part, "Review of Accounting Control Principles", points out the types of control that are required and serves as a review if you have set up and used controls before. It ends with a short summary.

The second part, "More Specific Suggestions for Document and Accounting Controls", deals with specific examples of control sheets and methods of control, and can be used as source material for setting up your own control documents and procedures.

Review of Accounting Control Principles

Accounting controls are an essential part of your data processing installation. The inherent accuracy of data processing equipment and the elimination of many error-prone clerical steps helps reduce the number of errors in processing; however, good accounting practice requires that you have a precise procedure available to prove and reconstruct the basic records of the system. Controls are also necessary to guard the records of your business against fraudulent acts.

The accompanying exhibit shows a typical information flow through a system. Information from source documents is punched into cards. The first control (A1) ensures that your information was transcribed correctly and completely. This can be determined in one of several ways:

1. The cards can be key-verified.

2. Control totals from the source documents can be balanced against the card totals. For example, an adding machine total of the quantities on a batch (several source documents) can be balanced against the total of the quantities in the cards created from the documents. This same technique can be used to control other numeric fields, such as employee number, part number, etc. The total is often called a "hash" total. If an out-of-balance condition occurs, a listing of the cards provides a means of comparing the card information with the source documents, and the error is quickly isolated and corrected.

3. Document or transaction counts can be used to ensure that a card document is created for every transaction.

Since the information in the cards will be used to update several associated records, accuracy is of prime importance.

At the time the cards are run through the system for accumulating control or hash totals, other tests can be performed.

Fields may be tested for size or reasonableness. For example, the nature of your business may be such that the quantities have reasonable limits, based on the class of an item. Any item exceeding the limit can be so noted for review before processing. This type of test might keep you, for instance, from shipping 24 bathtubs to a small country store as a result of mispunching an item number for pliers.

Batch size (the number of documents included in a control group) should be small enough to keep error tracing from becoming too cumbersome. On the other hand, it is not reasonable to control each document separately.

As the documents enter the process (A2), the same control list above can be used on a cumulative basis to ensure that all the cards from the several batches that constitute a processing run are completely processed.

Card documents being created by the process can be balanced against your control (A3) totals.

A control should be maintained on all card files (A4). The total from (A3) will be used to update this control as cards enter the file. Before processing a large card file, it is often advisable to run a trial balance on the file--particularly if the file is being updated or used as a source of reference between processing runs. The purpose of this trial balance is to catch errors in filing, missing cards, duplicate cards where a change was made but the old record was not removed, etc.

A control listing of all cards entering and leaving the file establishes the control total entry and provides an audit trail if it is necessary to identify lost or duplicate records.

The accompanying exhibit also shows an example of a simple control sheet. Each time records enter the file or are removed, an appropriate entry is made and the file balance is updated.

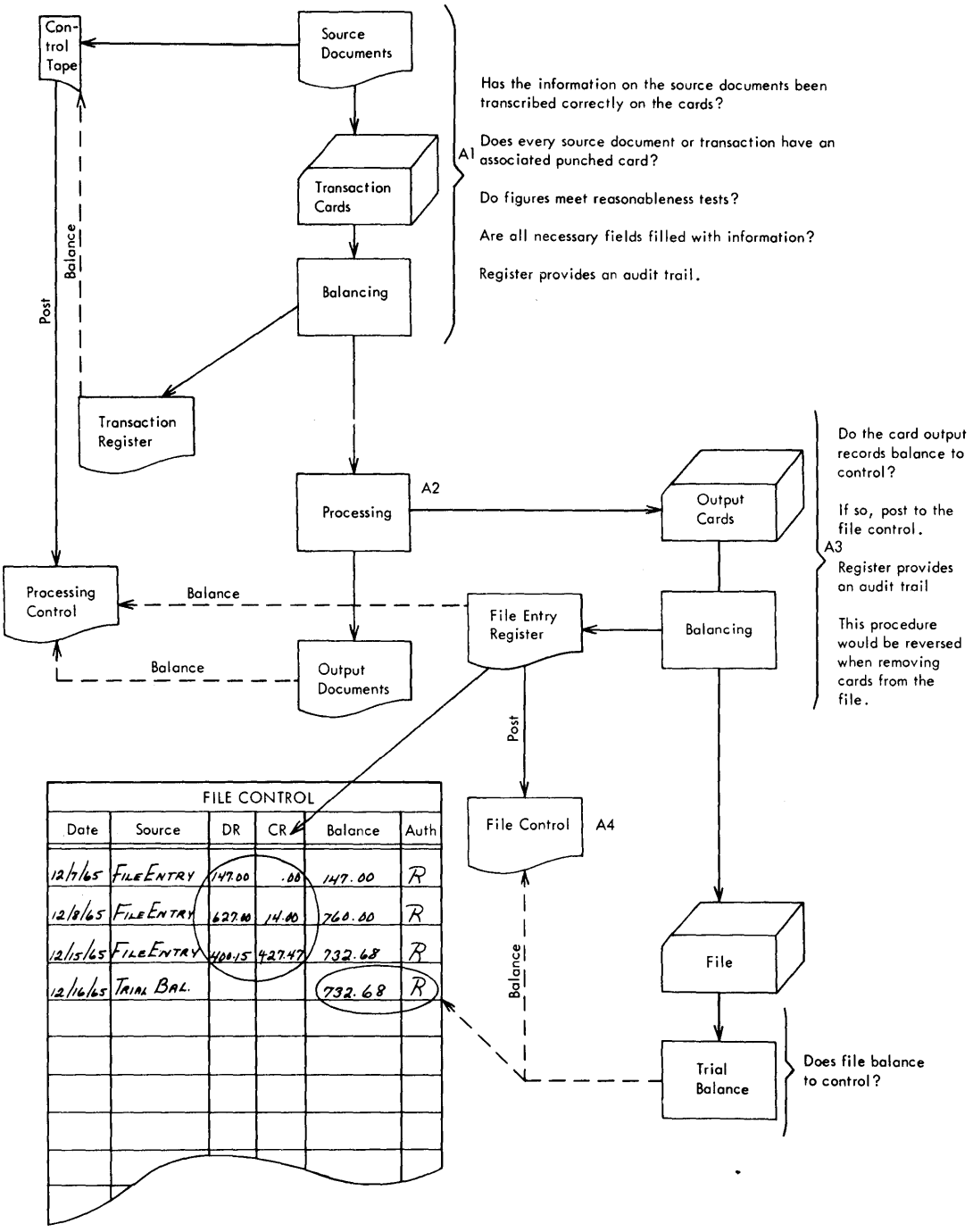
It is often possible to provide audit requirements as a by-product of creating normal reports. For example, the trial balance of your file might be a stock status report. The value of separate balancing runs must be determined by experience for each application and will vary with the experience and capability of your operating personnel.

The number and types of controls will depend a great deal on the application. Your own auditors should be consulted in determining control procedures. Controls and audit trails should conform with their requirements and should be established as an integral part of the data processing procedure. Much of the material in subsection 20.10.20 will help you and your auditors design adequate control forms.

In setting up controls that will operate successfully, the following should be kept in mind:

1. Only those controls that satisfy a need should be included.

2. The overall system of controls should be conceived and arranged for when procedures are being planned. Thus they will be an integral part of each procedure, and those areas that may have a tendency to be overcontrolled or undercontrolled will be spotted.



Typical control of data processing system

3. Personnel who maintain the controls should be familiar with machine functions so that they can locate, determine the cause of, and correct out-of-balance conditions.

4. Controls should be simple and easy to maintain so that workflow is not disrupted.

5. A description of control operations should be documented and assembled for reference and training purposes.

6. Whenever possible, control operations should be mechanized.

7. When documents to be processed are batched, batch size should be such that work will continue to flow steadily.

8. Company auditors should agree with the audit and control procedures.

9. Department controls should always be established outside the department, at the source of the data.

More Specific Suggestions for Document and Accounting Controls

The following discussion of accounting controls is concerned with (1) those controls established and used outside the data processing installation and (2) those established and used inside the installation. Outside controls consist primarily of the initiation, authorization, and verification of source documents representing accounting transactions. Inside controls consist of (1) checking operations, in which transcribed transaction data is verified, and (2) balancing operations, which ensure the accurate processing of all transaction data.

Generally, the necessity for accounting control increases with the volume of transactions or documents processed and the complexity of operations performed. A variety of control techniques will be discussed. The techniques to be employed depend upon individual conditions within your organization. It is important that the controls which you use always provide a proper balance between their cost and their value. Since a system of accounting controls may be obsoleted by a change in accounting procedure, company policy, company organization and/or data processing equipment, controls should be examined and evaluated periodically. Company auditors should participate in establishment and evaluation of a control system.

Outside Controls

Control techniques described in the following text are not necessarily limited in use to any one application; they are easily modified for use with a variety of applications.

Document register. Control of individual documents can be maintained effectively by the preparation of a register on which each document is listed at the point of receipt or origin. The register should include either a description that is sufficient to identify each document quickly, or a serial identification number. The serial number not only furnishes positive identification and an effective method for later reference, but is also most easily used at the point of entry or origin. When each document has been completely processed, it is "checked off" or canceled on the register. Uncanceled numbers represent documents that either are in process or have been mislaid. Intermediate processing operations for each document may be shown on the register and dated as the document passes those points in the procedure. The illustrated document register for sales orders not only discloses a missing or misplaced document, but also indicates any delays in processing--as might be the case with order 12843, which, several days after its receipt, has not yet been billed.

Serial numbering and the batch control ticket. Where serial numbers are printed or stamped on each document, rearrangement in serial number order and a check for missing numbers may be performed during, as well as after, processing to ensure inclusion of all documents. This plan is particularly adaptable to documents such as checks or drafts, where each document must be accounted for. When the document is an IBM card, the serial number may be punched into, as well as printed or interpreted on, the card; arrangement of the documents, as well as a count of and sequence check for missing documents, may then be accomplished automatically.

Serial numbering may also be used for groups and batches. If so, the number of documents in each batch is recorded, together with the batch serial number, either on the first document or on a separate form accompanying the batch. For large-volume operations, batch size should be predetermined for ease and efficiency in handling.

The illustrated batch control ticket employs a document count as well as document and batch serial numbering. By maintaining a file of the batch control tickets, both the sending and receiving departments can account for all documents.

Transmittal and route slips. A letter of transmittal describing a group or batch of documents is frequently employed to establish control and transfer responsibility when documents move from one department or location to another. The transmittal slip, as shown, is usually a printed form with spaces to indicate the variable information for the batch.

When the volume of work or the number of people who may perform any given operation is large, it may be desirable to fix responsibility for accounting for documents passed from each operation to the next as well as from one department to another. In this case, a route slip is employed, either in addition to or in combination with the letter of transmittal. The route slip is similar to the batch control ticket shown, except that in this case each department, or operational step performed, is identified, along with an indication of the processing time and the operator or clerk responsible for each job. Responsibility is fixed, and the means to effect a degree of work control as well as document control has been incorporated into the same form.

ORDER REGISTER

MONTH October

DATE RECEIVED	ORDER NUMBER	DATE AUDITED	DATE BILLED	DATE SHIPPED	REMARKS
10/14	12831	10/14	10/18	10/18	
"	12832	"	10/16	10/16	
"	12833	"	"	"	
"	12834	10/15	10/17	10/18	
"	12835	10/14	10/16	10/17	
"	12836	"	"	"	
"	12837	10/15	10/17	10/19	
"	12838	10/14	"	"	
"	12839	"	10/15	10/17	
"	12840	"	"	"	
"	12841	"	10/16	10/17	
10/15	12842	10/15	10/17	10/18	
"	12843	10/16			awaiting spec instructions
"	12844	"	10/19	10/19	

Order register

BATCH NO. 142

TO: Receiving Dept

DATE 10/13

FROM: Purchasing Dept.

NO. OF DOCUMENTS	NUMBERED FROM	NUMBERED TO
37	12355	12391

RECEIVED ATTACHED DOCUMENTS SPECIFIED ABOVE

DATE

SIGNATURE

PLEASE SIGN AND FORWARD THE COPY OF THIS BATCH CONTROL TICKET TO SENDING DEPT. WITHOUT DELAY.

Batch control ticket

CARD SHIPMENT TRANSMITTAL

TO: LOCATION New York DEPT. A/R; INDIVIDUAL H. Doe

FROM: LOCATION Jacksonville DEPT. A/R; INDIVIDUAL D. Lou

REPORT NAME A/R Journal

REPORT CODE 0032 BOX NO 1 OF 2

CONTROL TOTALS 3,000 cards $25,643.21

ROUTING SLIP

BATCH NO.	DATE	NUMBERED FROM	NUMBERED TO	NO. OF DOCUMENTS
441	10/16	17321	17385	65

DEPT. TO	DATE FWD.	INITIALS	REMARKS
Billing	10/16	JCR	
A/R Rec.	10/19	TLH	
Order	10/26	A.R.	#17349 held for approval

EXPLAIN ANY DIFFERENCES IN NO. OF DOCUMENTS FORWARDED AND RETURN TO CONTROL CLERK

Transmittal and route slips

Cancellation and time stamps. As a document is received at a control point or passed through a given department, it may be "canceled" by a stamp to indicate that it has reached or passed through a certain stage in its processing. Any clerk or operator handling documents would automatically reject or return for checking any document not bearing the correct cancellation. As shown in the accompanying illustration, the use of the time stamp for cancellation affords, in addition to document control, a method of achieving work time or production control, since it furnishes an accurate, unalterable record of elapsed time for handling.

Matching. The reassembly and matching of duplicate documents can be used to effect control. This technique is particularly useful when multiple copies are prepared, as with carbon copies, and each copy is then used to prepare records at a different location, for example, purchasing department and receiving department. When all copies are reassembled and matched at the predetermined point, the presence of all copies indicates complete processing. If the documents are punched cards, matching and checking can be done automatically.

Control of factors subject to change. Factors used for calculations and processing may be reviewed and changed from time to time. Examples of such factors are discounts, selling prices, credit limits, commission percentages, and inventory reorder levels.

Controls must be established that allow only authorized changes to be made. This is accomplished by requiring a signature with each request for change (see change authorization exhibit). Changes are documented by printing a register (see change register exhibit). A copy of the report is routed back to the initiating department for review and approval.

Inside Controls

Controls within the data processing installation should ensure that all transactions are processed completely and accurately. The series of checks and balances that make up these controls must begin with the entry of transactions into the data processing installation and continue throughout processing.

PURCHASE ORDER

NEW MEXICO COMPANY
HOUSTON, TEXAS

SHOW OUR ORDER NO. ON ALL INVOICES, PACKAGES AND SHIPPING PAPERS

REQ. 56 DATE 10/12

ORDER No. 311

MAIL INVOICES IN TRIPLICATE UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED.

TO GENERAL MANUFACTURING COMPANY
ENDICOTT, N. Y.

SHIP TO ABOVE VIA BEST WAY F. O. B.

QUANTITY	DESCRIPTION		PRICE
40	SQUARE SHANK SWIVEL	11202	
75	FLAT TOP RIGID	13102	
5	EXT SHANK WITH BRK	17203	
2	BOLT AND NUT SHANK	32105	
4	RND SPR RING STEM	44104	
40	BOLT AND NUT SHANK	62110	

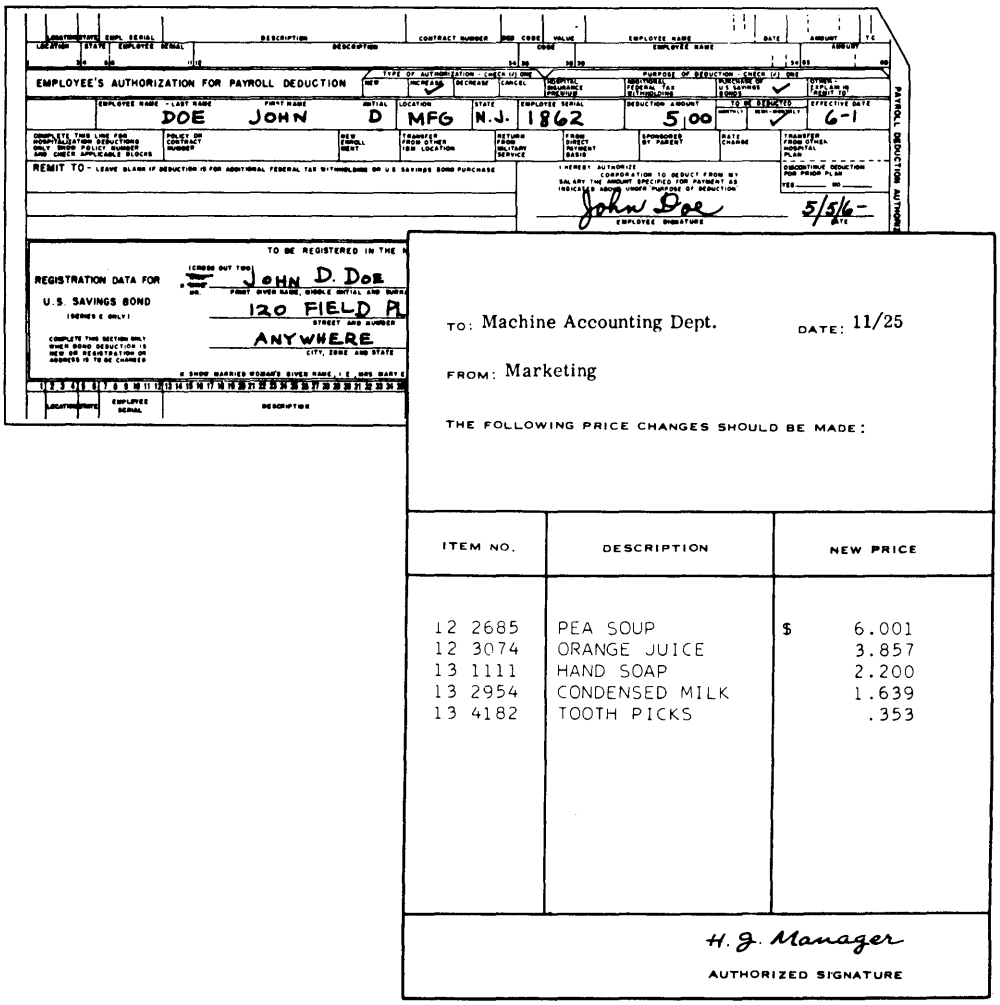
RECEIVING DEPARTMENT
OCT 14 10 47 AM 19-

NOTIFY DEPT.	ORD. BY DEPT.	DEL. TO DEPT.	APPROPRIATION	CLASS	CODE	

SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS ON THE BACK HEREOF WHICH ARE INCORPORATED AND MADE A PART HEREOF

W.C. Dawson
PURCHASING AGENT

Time stamp cancellation



EMPLOYEE'S AUTHORIZATION FOR PAYROLL DEDUCTION

EMPLOYEE NAME - LAST NAME	FIRST NAME	INITIAL	LOCATION	STATE	EMPLOYEE SERIAL	DEDUCTION AMOUNT	EFFECTIVE DATE
DOE	JOHN	D	MFG	N.J.	1862	5.00	6-1

REMIT TO -

I HEREBY AUTHORIZE CORPORATION TO DEDUCT FROM MY SALARY THE AMOUNT SPECIFIED FOR PAYMENT AS INDICATED ABOVE UNDER PURPOSE OF DEDUCTION

John Doe
EMPLOYEE SIGNATURE

5/5/6-
DATE

REGISTRATION DATA FOR U.S. SAVINGS BOND

JOHN D. DOE
120 FIELD PL
ANYWHERE

TO: Machine Accounting Dept. DATE: 11/25

FROM: Marketing

THE FOLLOWING PRICE CHANGES SHOULD BE MADE:

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	NEW PRICE
12 2685	PEA SOUP	$ 6.001
12 3074	ORANGE JUICE	3.857
13 1111	HAND SOAP	2.200
13 2954	CONDENSED MILK	1.639
13 4182	TOOTH PICKS	.353

H. J. Manager
AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE

Change authorizations

CHANGE REGISTER

DATE	ITEM CODE	DESCRIPTION	FACTOR BEFORE CHANGE	FACTOR AFTER CHANGE
11-26	12 2685	PEA SOUP	5.956	6.001
	12 3074	ORANGE JUICE	3.132	3.857
	13 1111	HAND SOAP	2.253	2.200
	13 2954	CONDENSED MILK	1.652	1.639
	13 4182	TOOTH PICKS	.352	.353

Change register

Control techniques and devices. A list of control devices and techniques, many of which can be incorporated into the procedure for any data processing system, includes:

- Serial numbering. The serial numbering of orders, invoices, checks, etc., provides control while the data is in transit. Each item or document in the series or group is assigned a successive number; an indication of the beginning and ending numbers accompanies the group.
- Batching with a document or item count. In batching data with a document or an item count, the items or documents are counted instead of numbered; an indication of the count accompanies the group. This technique can be used to control data, both before and after it is punched into cards--for example, requisitions, changes, receiving reports, and punched cards for various analysis reports.
- Batching with a control total. In batching with a control total, some data field that is common to all items or documents is accumulated for the control total, which then becomes the basis for balancing operations during processing. The control field may be an amount, a quantity, an item code, an account number, etc.; totals based on an account number or code are known as "hash" totals. An advantage of this technique is that balancing can often be performed during regular machine processing operations at no extra cost in time.
- Crossfooting. Crossfooting is the addition and/or subtraction of factors in a horizontal spread to prove processing accuracy. It can be used on a payroll register to prove that the final totals of net pay and deductions equal the final total earnings; this provides control on report preparation as well as calculating and card-punching operations. In posting transactions to records that are temporarily stored in a computer (for example, accounts receivable), crossfooting is used to prove the accuracy of posting, either as each transaction is posted, or collectively at the end of the run, or both.
- Zero balancing. Zero balancing is an effective method of verification when both detail items (for example, accounts payable distribution cards or records) and their summary (for example, an accounts payable disbursement card or record) are processed together. Each detail item is accumulated minus, and the summary plus. The result is a zero balance if both are correct.
- Negative balance test. It is possible to detect a change in sign during arithmetic operations and either stop the machine or signal the condition for subsequent review. In payroll applications the sign check is used to indicate the condition in which deductions exceed gross pay; in accounts receivable, accounts payable, inventory, and general ledger applications it can be used to recognize any balance that becomes negative.
- Blank field test. This means checking any data field for all blank positions. As a computer control, it can be used to prevent the destruction of existing records in storage, indicate when the last item from a spread card has been processed, skip calculation if a rate or factor field is blank, etc.
- Comparing. Comparing, as a control technique, permits data fields to be machine-checked against each other to prove the accuracy of matching, merging, coding, balancing, reproducing, gang punching, and record selection.
- Sequence checking. Sequence checking is used to prove that a set of data is arranged in either ascending or descending order before it is processed. It is generally a mechanized operation and may be performed in a separate machine run or simultaneously with another operation in one run.
- Visual comparisons. Comparisons are based primarily upon experience, past performance, and a knowledge of trends that have intervened. By knowing the status as of a certain time and observing trends since that time, it is possible to determine to some degree whether present records represent a complete and accurate picture. For example, present-period payroll is often compared against last-period payroll to spot any questionable variations.

Controls on processing operations. The number of available techniques indicates the need for a thorough study of your application and equipment in order to come up with a system of controls which is adequate but which does not overcontrol and delay processing. In so doing, it is desirable to mechanize as many controls as possible. Mechanized controls are always performed at a constant, rapid speed; manual ones are not. A study of the application will reveal:

1. How closely it is to be controlled.
2. Points in the procedure at which controls must be placed.
3. The correcting and restart procedures to be employed at each point, in case the operation does not balance. If the procedure is a manual one, it should be clearly documented for operator reference and training purposes.
4. How accounting control responsibilities are to be divided.

The basis for control during processing must be established as data enters your installation. This

is generally done when transactions are edited and may consist of assigning a system of serial numbers or developing a document count, a transaction count, an item count, a tape listing and total of some field such as quantity, amount, or code, etc., or a combination of these. When these preliminaries are taken care of, your transactions are ready for processing.

During report preparation, the primary control objective is to prove that all items (accounts or transactions, etc.) are included in the processing and that arithmetic is performed accurately. It can be assumed that the data itself is correct, since punching, summary, and posting operations are proved as they occur.

To ensure the inclusion of all items in the report, a final control total is developed during processing and balanced at the end of the run to a predetermined one. In cycle billing operations, the control may be an account number hash total of those accounts that are in the cycle; for other reporting operations it may be a control total based upon an amount, a quantity, or another code field. For control of arithmetic functions that occur during report preparation, the following techniques should be investigated: crossfooting, total transfer, zero balancing, parallel balancing, reasonableness test, or a combination of these.

Built-in checks and controls. Built-in checks should be taken advantage of and not duplicated by programmed or manual controls. They function as a result of internal machine circuitry and are therefore performed automatically. For example, all machines have checks which stop the machine for an operation that is impossible or in conflict with another.

Computers utilize input/output checks. The input check ensures that all data is read and coded correctly. The output check ensures that your output characters are correctly set up for punching and/or printing.

This discussion does not include all built-in checks; for more information regarding a specific piece of equipment, refer to the reference manual describing the machine.

The audit trail. An audit trail must be incorporated into every procedure; you should provide for it early so that it becomes an integral part. In creating an audit trail it is necessary to provide:

1. Transaction documentation that is detailed enough to permit the association of any transaction with its original source document.

2. A system of accounting controls which proves that all transactions have been processed and that accounting records are in balance.

3. Documentation from which any transaction can easily be recreated and its processing continued, should that transaction be misplaced or destroyed at some point in the procedure.

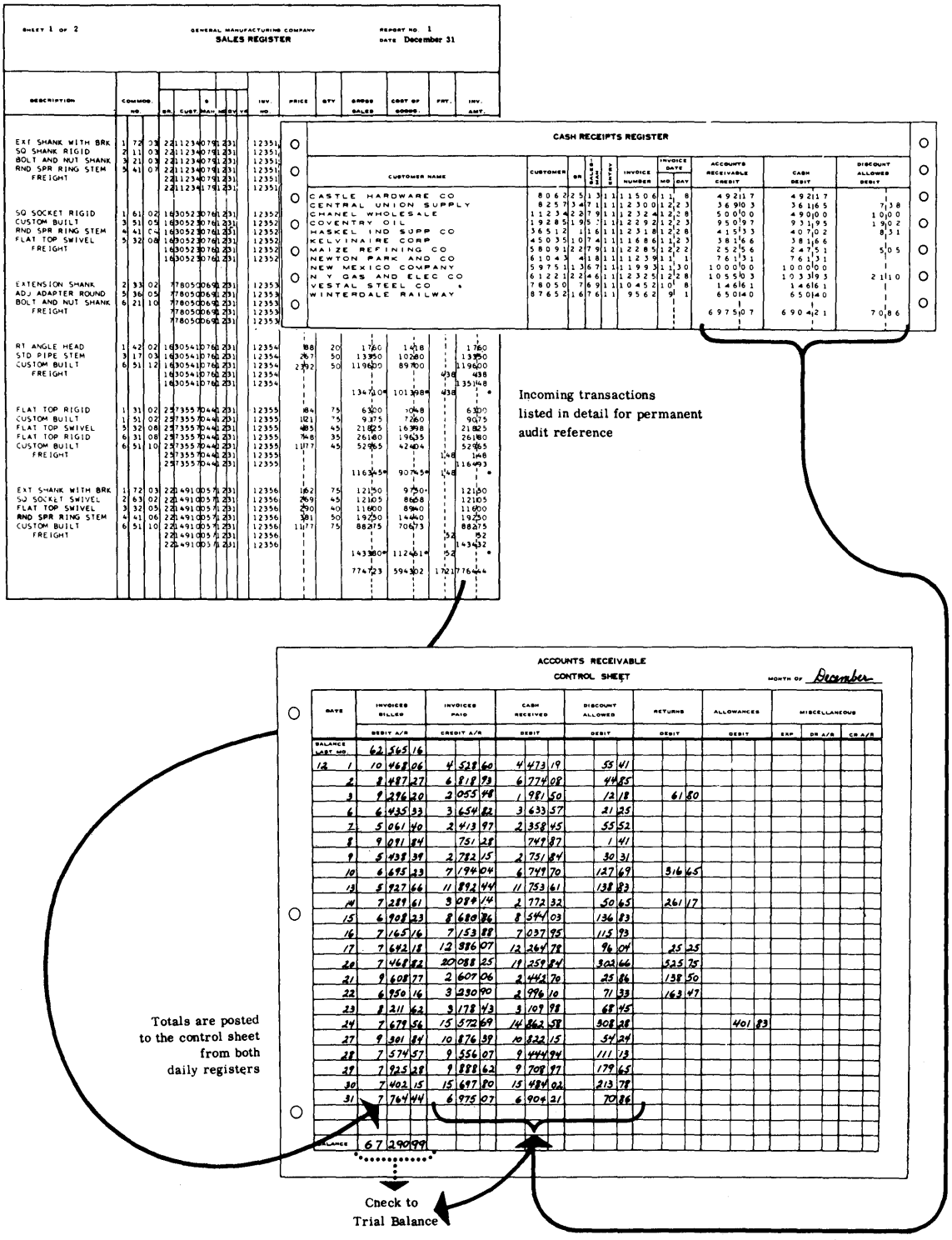
The audit trail shown in the accompanying exhibit might be found in an accounts receivable application. The original or entry sales register is prepared by date of entry immediately after the cards have been punched or activated from a file. All punched information is listed on the register in detail, so that if a transaction has to be recreated at some later time, reference to the source document will not be necessary. To prove the accuracy of the register's preparation, its final total is balanced to a predetermined one; if the two are equal, the final total is also posted to the control sheet. The sum of these individual totals on the control sheet establishes the final control total to which all accounts receivable operations for the period must balance.

Cards for the cash receipts book are either punched or activated from a holding file. After being prepared in detail, the cash receipts book is balanced to a predetermined total. If it is in balance, the final total is posted to the control sheet and the receipts are posted to accounts receivable.

When the aged trial balance is run, the final total should equal the difference between total debits and total credits to accounts receivable; this difference is available from the control sheet. If the totals do not agree, all the transactions for the accounting period can be sorted into entry date sequence, summarized, and checked against the daily entry totals on the control sheet to isolate the entry date that is out of balance. The transactions for that date are relisted; an entry-by-entry comparison on the duplicate and original entry registers will reveal the discrepancy so that a correcting entry can be initiated.

The sales register and cash receipts book provide documentation that is sufficient for reconstructing a transaction or associating it with the original source document. Balancing each register to a predetermined total proves that all transactions in the group have been processed through that point. The entries on your control sheet provide the means for balancing accounting records at the end of the accounting period.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	10	20	07



Audit trial

FORM DESIGN

The first part of this section, written for persons familiar with punched card processing, deals with 1130 considerations only.

The second portion is more detailed and serves as an introduction to the subject for those who are new to automated data processing.

1130 Considerations

1. The ability of both FORTRAN and the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package to provide heading information can greatly reduce the cost of forms. Standard stock forms can be used for all internal reports, and appropriate headings can be provided at the time the report is prepared. Setup time can be significantly reduced by eliminating the need to change forms in the printer.

2. The 120-character print line is probably at least equal to your present capacity. Consider printing narrow forms two-up --that is, two pages side by side (on special paper for splitting), printed at the same time. This technique can double your output or can avoid the need for extra runs or extra carbon copies where the number of required copies is large.

3. The extra speed of your printer (1403) may allow you to make some short runs twice instead of buying expensive multiple-part paper just for those runs.

4. Interchangeable chain cartridges for the 1403 allow you to improve the appearance of certain reports by providing a variety of special characters. Also, printing speed can be considerably improved by selecting a character set containing only the characters you need.

5. The ability to have both the 1403 and 1132 on line can save time, in some cases, by eliminating the need for rerunning cards to produce a second, different report.

Form Design Principles

The design of effective, economical forms reqires a certain amount of preparatory evaluation and analysis. The major objectives are legibility, simplicity, economy, and efficient preparation. Local IBM representatives should be consulted early; their guidance and reference materials may help avoid costly mistakes. Steps to be taken in forms design are:

1. Establish the need for the new form. Similar forms may exist which, with minor changes, will satisfy the new requirements.

2. Study the machine to be used for printing. In so doing, use the reference manual for that machine; most manuals have at least one section devoted to the tape-controlled carriage and/or form design. These sections contain valuable information about forms specifications as well as different printer characteristics and operation.

3. List all types of information to be recorded and the number of positions that will be allotted for printing each. In doing this, assemble and study past and present statistics. These can be evaluated in light of future plans and then used as an indication of probable needs. One of the greatest weaknesses in forms design is the tendency to burden a form with unnecessary information. Since entire data processing procedures may be geared to the preparation of a certain report, extraneous information can be costly.

4. Lay out the form on a printer spacing chart. (See Figure 20.17.) In using the spacing chart the following tips will be helpful (some will be discussed in greater detail later):

- Use bold type to make special information or headings stand out.
- In columns for figures allow sufficient space for the largest amount plus punctuation.
- Place filing information near the top of the form.
- Title the form.
- Include form number, date, and page number.
- Keep headings small, to allow room for written data.
- Consider total headings at the bottom of the form.
- Use different-colored copies as an aid in routing.
- Use double-ruled lines to set off sections.
- Avoid horizontal rulings as much as possible.
- Consider guide marks for names, addresses and folding.
- If possible, choose a standard form width.
- Make certain that the form length is compatible with the spacing to be used.
- Include a guide for forms alignment in the printer.

5. Make a test using a copy of the proposed form. Examine the report carefully to make certain that zeros are printing properly and that amount fields are large enough.

During the creation of a form the designer should understand and keep in mind the following:

Form width. The overall width of a form is important in determining printing space. Although the IBM form-feeding devices available will handle a great variety of document sizes, certain practical aspects should be observed.

Form costs can be reduced by confining widths to the standard sizes of paper stock used by business forms companies. (These sizes can obtained from the companies; reference to the individual machine manual will indicate which are acceptable.)

In addition, width standardization permits (1) purchase of report binding and filing supplies in fewer sizes and greater quantities at reduced cost, (2) more convenient forms handling, and (3) a reduction in the setup time of form-feeding devices.

Form length. The total number of body lines in a form (regardless of whether six-or eight-lines-per-inch spacing is employed) can be any whole number, up to 132. It should be evenly divisible by two in the case of double spacing, and by three in the case of triple spacing.

Horizontal spacing. All printing is ten characters per inch. Vertical lines separating fields and decimal positions should be drawn so that each splits a printing position. If they are drawn between adjcent positions, paper shrinkage, variations in form insertion and alignment, as well as other variables, may prevent satisfactory registration during printing.

Vertical spacing. The vertical spacing of the printers is under operator control and can be set for six or eight lines per inch. The importance of this is that double spacing at eight lines per inch permits 33-1/3% more lines to be listed on a page than double spacing at six lines per inch. While it is true that six lines per inch at single spacing gives more items than eight lines per inch at double spacing, the latter offers increased legibility.

Form skipping. The maximum distance that can be skipped without losing machine time is not the same for all printers. The individual machine or systems reference manual should be read so that little or no processing time is lost.

Form alignment guide. If possible, a guide for form alignment should be determined and preprinted on each form to facilitate machine setup operations. It is important that a description of the form alignment guide and its use be included in the operation manuals. A delay in machine setup will create a delay in processing.

Numeric amounts. In determining the number of print positions needed for numeric fields, the size of the total must be provided for, rather than the size of the detail amounts. If marks of punctuation are to be machine-printed, the size of the field should be checked to make certain that printing positions have been allotted.

Printable characters. The standard printable characters are:

A — Z
0 — 9
+ / (
— $)
. ' ,
& * =

More information may be found in the appropriate machine reference manual.

Marginal perforations. Most forms have a vertical perforation 1/2" from each side. Sometimes, however, forms are designed with dissimilar margin widths. For example, a form with an overall width of 9-7/8" may be perforated 1/2" on the left and 7/8" on the right, to leave an 8-1/2" x 11" letter-size report after the marginal strips are removed. Many such variations in margin size are used. At least one unused printing position should be left between a machine-printed character and a perforation.

Since some report binders utilize the form-feeding holes for binding, many reports are set up with no perforation on the binding side. The practice of eliminating perforations and letting the form-feeding holes remain on both sides of the finished reports is being followed more and more, particularly with internal reports.

Binding. In most cases, it is desirable to minimize binding space in order to reduce form cost. Therefore, information that will be referred to least should be placed nearest the margin, since it becomes more difficult to read information near the binder posts as sheets are added to a binder.

Because of the amount of space required for headings, many forms can be bound at the top, with no sacrifice in readability. If it is desirable to bind continuous forms without bursting them or binding them on the side, binding holes can be punched in both the top and bottom of the forms.

Carbon copies. Substantial savings can be realized by mininizing the number of carbon copies. Some techniques that are effective in doing this are:

1. Side-by-side duplicate reports
2. Consolidation of reports for multiple use
3. Sequence-routing of reports to different departments, instead of simultaneous distribution
4. Mechanical or photographic reproduction

Any report that is subject to constant usage, such as a weekly timesheet, should be prepared on a durable grade of paper. For most multiple-copy work, the first, or original copy and the last copy are heavier in weight than the intermediate copies. Lighter weights of paper have less cushioning effect on the printing impact, and therefore permit more legible printing on multiple copies. On the other hand, the paper must be of sufficient weight and strength to prevent tearing while feeding or ejecting forms.

The carbon paper used should produce the required number of legible copies without excessive smudging. Various carbon forms in use include:

1. One-time carbon. This is used once and discarded.
2. Carbon-backing paper. The carbon surface is on all or part of the reverse side of the original.
3. Chemical-coated paper. The chemical coating on the back on one sheet reacts with the coating on the face of the next, under the impact of the printing mechanism.

Type style is also an important consideration for multiple carbon copies. Standard type gives maximum legibility. A smaller type style tends to "fill in" when printed through several sheets of paper; with a bolder type style the force of the hammer blow is spread so that sharpness and density are decreased.

The legibility of some special-purpose type is limited. Since it is fixed in size, the more characters that are crowded within the area, the smaller each character becomes. Therefore, as the number of carbon copies increases, the difinitive lines of each character seem to become broader. The result is a character that is difficult to read.

In some cases carbon paper is narrower than the form. It may be held in place by a fastening technique at the horizontal perforations between forms, or by some other method such as stitching, gluing, or marginal perforations.

The recommended maximum distances between fastenings are:

Form Length	Maximum Distance between Fastenings
1 to 5 inches	5 inches
5-1/2 to 11 inches	11 inches
11 to 14 inches	7 inches
14 to 17 inches	8-1/2 inches

For forms more than 17" in length, the maximum distance between stitches should be determined by actual test.

If staples are used, they must:

- Be located out of the printing area.
- Be properly crimped so they won't catch on guide edges or staples in succeeding forms.
- Not cause excessive bulging during feeding, particularly at the out-fold.

Form types. Depending on its purpose and destination, the form on which a report is printed may range from the least expensive blank stock to custom design. Imprinted stock forms are standard-size forms which are stocked in large quantities and upon which lines, headings, markings and some designs are printed as desired. Custom forms are those designed to fill special needs of size, complexity, and design. Although more expensive, they can be used advantageously to "sell" your company.

CARD DESIGN

This section is divided into two parts. The first provides information that will be useful to a person who has had punched card experience but wants to become familiar with the considerations unique to the 1130. The second deals with more basic card design principles. A more extensive coverage of the subject is contained in the IBM manual Form and Card Design (C20-8078).

1130 Considerations

1. Lining up similar fields between cards is desirable for ease of recognition, for offline punched card processing, and for ease of card handling. A program can as easily define a field in one set of columns as in another.

2. The results of calculations often do not have to be punched into cards. It takes but a few milliseconds for the computer to recalculate the same figure the next time it needs it.

3. The EBCDIC character set contains 256 possible codes. However, many of them cannot be handled by standard FORTRAN programs. Only 53 characters are permitted in card input (see the FORTRAN manual, C26-3715); of these, only 48 may be printed by the 1132 Printer.

4. Normally, an 11-punch over the units position of a field indicates to the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package that a field is negative, while a 12-punch or no-zone indicates that it is positive. The combinations (11-0) and (12-0) are not valid FORTRAN codes. However, the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Overlapped I/O Package can handle them.

5. Punching speed for serial punches (1442) varies with the last column punched. For example, if the card is to be punched in cc 1-10, 176 cards per minute can be punched on a 1442, Model 6. The same data can be punched in cc 71-80 at only 49 cards per minute. Therefore, fields to be punched should be placed close to column 1. Fields to be read can then be placed anywhere to the right of fields to be punched, with no effect on card reading speed.

Card Design Principles

Determining Card Data

The first step in card design requires a study of the final report that is to be printed from the card and a listing of data needed for it. Next the procedure is studied, and any data needed for processing but not for the report is added to the same listing. Every item is recorded on a worksheet. Provision must be made for recording in the card all data that is listed, unless it is calculated or otherwise generated.

A check should be made that the necessary reference data is included. Reference data should be sufficient to:

1. Identify the transaction with the original source document from which it was created.
2. Indicate the date on which the transaction occurred.
3. Establish some reference, such as invoice number, batch number, account number, or salesman number.

Care should be taken to avoid duplicate or unnecessary reference data.

Determining Field Size

The number of positions required to record each type of information should be determined.

The size of the field for card codes, invoice number, and account number is determined by the largest single number to be recorded. With quantity and amount fields, the largest amount that will occur on a reasonably frequent basis must be determined, rather than the largest it could ever be. If the largest possible amount is known and its chances of occurring are rare, multiple cards may be punched for the transaction.

After all card data is listed, the number of columns required should be added. If this is between 80 and 100, it may be possible to reduce it to 80. If it is over 100, an additional card is evidently required. At this point a check should be made to see whether the fields can be rearranged so that all transactions need not have multiple cards, but could have if necessary. Master information can be punched in one card and variable information in the other. Sufficient reference information must be included in the second card if sorting is required.

Some techniques to be considered for reducing the number of card columns are:

- Reduce the size of reference fields by repeating the numbering series more frequently. For example, invoice number may start with 1 each quarter instead of each year.
- Record in the eleventh and twelfth punching positions various codes that may be using a separate punching position.
- Avoid unnecessary data: for example, the use of both an order number and an invoice number may not be necessary if one will provide adequate reference to the other.
- Reduce the size of reference fields by recoding. It may be possible to eliminate several positions.
- Reduce the number of columns required for recording reference data by ignoring positions that are not essential for this purpose.

If more than one card is to be used to hold a "record", the division of information between the cards can be made on the following bases:

1. Place constant information in one card (master) and temporary information in the second card (detail).
2. If more than one source document is used, place the information of each document on a separate card and code the cards.
3. When one transaction affects two different accounts, design a card for each account with differing degrees of detail as required by each account.
4. For printing a bill, order, or other notice, design a card for each section of the form. Some of these cards (for example, name and address cards, constant data cards) can be reused.

Determining the Sequence of Fields

Four basic factors are involved in determining field sequence:

1. Sequence of data on the source document from which the new card will be punched
2. Machines and programs used to process the new cards
3. Manual operations in which the new card will be used
4. Location of identical data in other cards with which the new one will be processed

Keeping the sequence of fields similar to the order in which the data is read from the source document will make the keypunching operation faster and more accurate. This is especially important since keypunching is a manual operation and therfore subject to far greater fluctuation in

speed and accuracy than the subsequent mechanized operations. The sequence of fields can be arranged to take maximum advantage of machine characteristics. Specifically, field sequence can be designed to maximize the usage of card punches, sorters, computers (see 20.30.10), control panel wiring, or the manual handling of cards. Placing data in the same columns of the new cards as used in other cards ensures that sorting and controlling the data can be speedily performed when the cards are processed together. It also simplifies control panel wiring where cards are processed by standard punched card machines. If data on the new card is to be checked visually by manually fanning a deck of cards, the fields for that data should be located at either the left or right end of the card.

Using a Card Layout Form

A multiple-card layout form (X24-6599) should be used when planning several cards simultaneously or when planning a new card that will be used with existing cards. The use of this form makes it easy to align those fields that are common to more than one card, where this is desirable. It also makes working with the formats easier, since they are on one sheet of paper and can be compared with one another.

Designing the Card Form

After field size and sequence are established, the design of the card itself can be done. This is usually drawn on a special form considerably larger than the punched card. Photographic reduction is used to create the proper-size print plate (called an "electroplate", or "electro").

It is not always necessary to design a card form for each card used in an application. Where the cards are used only within your data processing department, are interpreted, and are needed only in small quantities, it may be advantageous to use a standard card form, such as the IBM 5081.

Certain principles in the design of card forms should be kept in mind:

1. Field and box headings should be explicit and force writing into desired locations.
2. Adequate space should be allowed for accommodating written information.
3. The right-hand side of a box containing handwritten information should be at least five columns to the left of the columns in which it is to be punched. This is so that the data will not be obscured by the punch station of the card punch machine when it is time to punch it.
4. Information to be punched should not be handwritten along the bottom edge of a card, since the shield on the IBM card punch obscures the lower 1/8" of the card.
5. Field headings should be above the zero row of a card unless interpretation or printing of punches prevents it.
6. Headings and interpreted data should be kept between rows, so that punches will not obliterate them.
7. Preprinted decimals and commas should be placed where dollar amounts will be interpreted.
8. Colored cards, colored stripes, and corner cuts may be used for visible distinction between cards. Also, an identifying punch (called a "key") may be used.
9. Card column numbers should be preprinted where possible and digits should be placed where the numbers can be punched. These aid in reading the punches in a column.
10. Mark-sensing fields should be placed on the right-hand side of a card, so that the card can be easily held and marked.
11. Card or company names should be printed on the ends of a card.
12. When coded punches are used, decoding abbreviations should be preprinted on the card.
13. Where no more than 40 columns are needed, a sectional or "tumble" card may be designed in which the layout in columns 1-40 is duplicated upside-down in columns 41-80. This allows the card to be used twice and cuts card costs in half.

Testing the Card Layout

After the card layout is developed, the fourth and final step in card design is performed — namely, testing the card for its effectiveness. For the test, the new design must be laid out on several cards and the cards must be used in their designated procedure.

DESIGN OF DISK DATA FILES

Introduction

The formats of cards and forms are the tangible types of input/output. You still must design the intangible record formats.

Your 1130 Computing System is concerned with two different intangible records: those in core storage and those on the disk cartridge. Although the storage media are different, the design considerations are the same.

The items discussed in this section concern the components of disk records, the order of the components, and groups of records. Considerations covered include growth, organization, and content.

More detailed information on many of the topics covered here may be found in section 80.

Data

The first step in file design requires a study of all procedures that utilize the file. On the basis of these studies, record each necessary item on a worksheet like the one illustrated in Figure 20.1. Indicate the type of information, the frequency of occurrence, and the sequence in the source document, if applicable. The following should be done:

- Check that the necessary reference data is included, if this is a source file.
- Weigh the effects of media storage costs vs program execution time for constant-type data, such as tax-exempt dollars in payroll.
- Include fields obtained by processing, if the results must be recaptured later.
- Examine all applications that utilize the file, in order to prevent omission of necessary data.
- Explore future requirements of the current procedures. For example, it might be judicious to include an additional deduction field in your payroll application.
- Determine any additional information needed for planned applications. It may be more practical to include an extra field now than to reorganize your files later.
- Study the feasibility of consolidating existing data files into a single data file to eliminate duplication of common information, if such a combined record would not too adversely affect the running time.
- Ascertain whether material needed in a new application, for which the data file is to be designed, is available already in an existing data file.
- Verify that the data file, when set up, will contain all the basic information to meet the requirements of all persons who will be using the products resulting from the file processing.
- Consider file maintenance and audit control.

FILE DESIGN WORKSHEET

Date Started _____

Completed _____

File Name _____ Designer _____

Process Cycle	Record Characteristics		File Dynamics					File Media Requirements	
DA MO WK YR	Type: Fixed Var.	Character Size MIN MAX AV	NO. REC. A	YRLY % ADD B	YRLY % DROP C	5 YR % GROWTH D	TOT NO. REC E	TYPE	AMOUNT
						5(B-C)=D	A+AD=E		

Information Required for Processing and Reporting	Type of Information Required	Field Size				Sequence			REMARKS
		TRIAL	TRIAL	TRIAL	FINAL	IN SOURCE DOC	IN RECORD	IN RELATED FILES	

Figure 20.1. File design worksheet

Field Size

The number of positions required to record each item of information should be determined and entered on a form similar to that shown in Figure 20.1.

Type of Field

Control and indicative data field size should equal the total number of digits in the largest single item to be recorded in the particular field. Occasionally, to conserve storage, the high-order digits may be disregarded for a field such as order number.

Quantitative data field size may equal the total number of digits in the largest amount to be recorded, or the number of digits that will occur with reasonable frequency. Procedures can be developed to handle the rare exceptions.

Recording Medium

Since some media, such as cards and disks, contain a fixed number of positions per unit of storage (card field or disk sector or track, etc.), it is essential to consider this overall limit in order to design efficient and practical records.

Example:

On the 1130, your disk records are automatically "blocked" within 320-word sectors. A 55-word record will be blocked 5 records to the sector with 320-(5x55) or 45 words unused. Rather than waste these 45 words, you might as well increase the size of the record to 64 words, which will still allow 5 per sector (5x64 = 320) with no waste. Or, if possible, reduce the record size to 53 words, which permits 6 records per sector.

File Size (Total Number of Records)

Since the field size affects the total record size, all unnecessary positions should be eliminated to decrease I/O time and storage media requirements.

Future Requirements

If the demands to be placed on the information indicate an impending need for another position, it would be easier to incorporate the additional character in the design phase so as to avoid reprogramming and a patched-up record layout.

Field Compaction Techniques

Because a reduction in the length of a record produces such positive results as an increase in DASD packing and a decrease in time to read and/or write, field compaction techniques should be investigated and the cost of the technique evaluated as each file is designed. Some methods to consider for reducing the number of positions are found in 80.60.00.

A given compaction technique must be evaluated for:

1. Amount of core storage required to hold the encode-decode instructions
2. Encode-decode subroutine timing requirements
3. Compaction percentage achieved
4. Compatibility with programming systems
5. Retention of collating sequence
6. Retention of fixed field length
7. Effect on the overall system, including related clerical functions

Some of these methods are discussed in detail in section 80. For a discussion in depth of compaction techniques see Record Compaction Techniques (E20-8252).

Data Sequence

Data sequence is most critical for those files that work with source documents. Card punching, terminal operations, etc., being manual operations, are subject to the greatest variation in rate of production. Anything that simplifies these functions tends to ensure a faster and more accurate operation. The following are points to bear in mind:

- Recording of data in the same order as that in which it is normally read. If the data sequence is considerably different from that on the source document, it may be necessary to redesign the source document and retrain personnel. If the file is to be used as input to a serial I/O unit, such as disk to card, the sequence is dictated mainly by the sequence desired on the output unit.
- Location of like fields in the same relative record positions in files that work together. This ensures that sorting and controlling can be accomplished if the file is contained in cards; it also facilitates programming.
- Placement of sorting fields adjacent to one another, with the minor code on the right and each progressively higher code to the left. Although sort programs can operate on multiple-control fields, time is used to extract and combine fields into a single key.
- Compatibility with computer characteristics so that data sequence does not affect processing speed.
- Arrangement of alphabetic/alphameric data in one area of the record. This facilitates handling of data, particularly in fixed-word-length machines, such as the 1130, and permits minimum core and media requirements.
- Adherence to requirements of programming systems.

File Organization

For strictly card- and/or paper-tape-oriented systems, file organization normally is sequential. Therefore, the following discussion of indexed sequential (as in an encyclopedia) vs random organization (as in shuffled playing cards) is oriented mainly toward the design of disk data files.

Indexed Sequential Advantages

- Both sequential and random transactions can be handled effectively in most cases.
- Reports arranged in data file sequence can be obtained without sorting.
- Control over both the processing and the stored file can be more positive.
- Less storage space is required.
- Frequently the entire file need not be online simultaneously.

Indexed Sequential Disadvantages

- More core storage may be required because of index handling routines.
- Process time is greater for random input because of index file seeking and processing.

Random Advantages

- Less core storage is required normally.
- Process time is less for random input.

Random Disadvantages

- To maintain access requirements, frequent reorganization may be necessary if the file is dynamic.
- Extensive key analysis and development of address conversion routines probably are required for implementation.

A detailed description of these techniques may be found in section 85.

Record Format and Blocking

To select the record format and blocking, each of the following factors must be considered:

1. File boundaries. Cards are limited to 80 columns of punched data, while the disk has 320 words that may be recorded on each sector.

2. Core storage requirements. Since IOCS handles physical records for I/O operations and contains a core storage area large enough to accommodate the physical record, you must supply a core storage area for a logical record. In addition, for efficient operation, multiple I/O areas may be required for the I/O devices.

File Processing

Before the file design is finally determined, the run time and associated costs should be calculated for the entire system. The results must be evaluated to determine whether the original design objectives have been met. If the system is I/O-limited (that is, if I/O time exceeds process time), the following approaches may be considered:

- Create a second master file splitting away from the main master file those fields not required on the primary runs. For example, name and address records could be kept in a separate name and address file. This new file would be used perhaps only as output documents are printed.
- Extract from the master file the active records for processing. This method is useful if the ratio of active master records to total master records is very low.
- Increase the number of input buffers. If the activity rate is low and processing time per hit is high, more process time can be overlapped if the input is queued in additional buffers. If process time requires 250 milliseconds while an input area can be filled in 50 milliseconds, there will be 200 milliseconds of unoverlapped process time per hit, with two input areas. If the number of input areas were increased to four, only 100 milliseconds would not be overlapped.

File Control

The design of a data file connot be divorced from the environment in which the file must function. Some of the considerations of file control and maintenance are now discussed.

Data Validation

The entry of incorrect data into a file should be prevented. The following techniques may be used to control the accuracy of input data:

1. Precoded forms, or standardized and simplified forms, which reduce the possibility of error at the point of origin of the data.
2. Batch controls that establish totals for a given group of records to detect the loss or distortion of data during intermediate handling. A batch may consist of a fixed number of items or the transactions that occurred in a given period of time. Typical batch totals are record counts, dollar or quantity amounts, and "hash" totals of significant data, such as wage rates. Frequently, batch totals are recorded in a trailer record to provide automatic zero-balance checking.
3. Turnaround documents, such as prepunched remittance forms, which require little or no extra recording and a minimum of handling.
4. Character checking, which determines whether the data in given positions of the record contain permissible characters. This type of check can be used to ensure that the proper algebraic sign is present for the type of transaction or that alphabetic data is not included in numeric fields, and vice versa, or that data is present where required (not blank).
5. Field checks that examine the content of a field for certain characteristics. These include:

- Limit checks, which determine whether data is within a prescribed range. Such checks can apply to fields such as employee's wage rate, amount of gross pay, etc.
- Historical checks, which use prior experience as a basis of validation. The public utility industry often compares, for reasonableness, prior consumption for a year or more against current usage.
- Validity checks, which compare the content of a field against a list of existing "good" numbers. This prevents posting to nonexistent account numbers. Matching by control key against a master file indicates duplicate and missing numbers.
- Logical relationships, which determine whether the items of input data have a logical relationship to one another or to the file they affect. For example, if an employee adds a bond deduction, a bond denomination is also required.
- Self-checking numbers, which detect incorrect identification numbers (such as account number, employee number, etc.) by performing certain mathematical calculations on the base number and comparing the resulting digit against a check digit appended to the base number.

Operating Controls

The following controls are common methods used to detect errors caused by poor operator performance, equipment failure, or malfunctioning programs:

1. Disk cartridge ID checking, which verifies that the proper cartridge is online before any processing can take place.
2. Record counts, which check that the numbers of records before and after processing are the same, in order to guard against accidental loss of a record.
3. File totals, which ensure that the file is in balance in light of the transactions just processed. For example, the previous file total for a given field plus the net change represented in the transactions should be equal to the sum of the individual record fields after the transactions are processed.
4. Intervention logging, which records through the console printer any intervention by the operator.

Error Analysis

The file control techniques suggested above indicate the wide variety of methods available. Selection of the specific control procedures depends on such factors as the frequency of possible occurrence, the results if the error were allowed to enter the system, and the chance that the error might remain undetected even through later operations. All errors should be logged indicating the nature and the cause. A review of these error logs can serve as a guide to management to increase or decrease error control.

When errors are detected, any of the following procedures can be used:

1. Programmed halts, where the computer is halted by detection of certain conditions, and the operator follows prescribed steps dependent upon the nature of the halt. The trend is away from programmed halts to eliminate operator intervention.
2. Bypass procedures, where the error condition is recorded on some output medium, such as paper tape or console printer, for later analysis, and the computer continues without stopping.

3. Suspense accounts, where totals are posted for invalid records in order to keep in a single account all items requiring analysis.

Audit Trail

An audit trail may be defined as the means whereby the source transaction and its corresponding supporting documentation can be related to processed data. Although the audit trail may be a by-product of normal processing, it may sometimes be additional. The requirements of the auditor should be discussed to provide the necessary historical information trail.

Reconstruction

If the information on a file is mutilated, the need for reconstruction arises. The method selected depends upon such factors as job priority, the time and cost required to provide reconstruction data, and the time and cost required to perform the reconstruction. Listed below are several approaches:

1. Periodically, a dynamic disk file should be copied (dumped) on paper tape, on cards, or on another disk. Often, the copy can be made as a by-product of a periodic run. All transactions since the last dump must be retained to update the copy to current status.
2. To avoid reprocessing of all transactions since the last dump, write the updated records on paper tape or cards as the transactions are processed against the file. In sequential processing, only one paper tape or card record per active disk record is written. In case of reconstruction, the record with the most recent status can be used to replace the corresponding record on the dumped file.
3. If no output unit is available to record the updated records, as suggested above, the master can be flagged, and on a later run the flag can signal a copy operation for a given record. This technique requires a rewrite to the file for removal of the flag.
4. The contents of a static file should be available either by copying to another disk or by dumping onto paper tape or cards that may be used later to reload the mutilated file.

PAYROLL EXAMPLE

Narrative

Note: All of the pages in the following example represent material that you should have developed by this point in the installation of your system. When completed, the material becomes a part of your system documentation (see section 35).

* * *

The corporation consists of six manufacturing plants, engaged in the fabrication of Liquid Dairy Product Packaging in Ohio, Indiana, West Virginia, and Texas. The payroll system was designed to accommodate all six plants, which have separate bookkeeping records. However, the accounting functions are centralized in one location. Communication is by phone and mail.

The system consists of 16 programs.

The files creation program is first. Data decks are keypunched for each individual, in sets, by plant. The data is edited and, when correct, is loaded on the disk by PAY01. Three files are created: a master file, an index file, and a plant information file. A second data deck with employee clock number and name is loaded onto the master file by PAY02.

Changes to the disk information are made by PAY03. Documents, received from personnel departments at the individual plants, are checked, summarized, keypunched, and verified. Time sheets, submitted by the plant payroll departments, are keypunched and verified. All these cards are processed by PAY16, which edits and generates control totals. PAY04 then processes these cards, performing all payroll calculations. Cards are read, pay is computed, disk files are updated, and cards are extended with current pay figures. After all cards are processed, a payroll register is printed.

Checks are printed by PAY05. A header card is read and the checks are printed from the disk file. PAY06 lists the check register from the disk file. If an error is made in computing pay, PAY11 provides the means of voiding checks. The extended time cards from PAY04 are read in and the affected employee records are reset. The above are weekly runs.

At month end, registers are prepared showing each individual's deductions for the month:

PAY13 writes union dues register.

PAY14 writes credit union register.

PAY15 writes stock deductions register.

PAY12 resets charity deductions code.

At the end of the quarter and at the end of the year, PAY07 and PAY08 are used to balance the disk files to control totals.

PAY09 produces the 941 tax report.

PAY10 produces a tax worksheet used to determine tax liability.

Card Forms and Console Keyboard Input

PAY01 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard
Week no. of month - 1 digit - keyboard
Check no. - 2 digits - keyboard
Name - 18 blanks - keyboard
Plant name - 32 characters maximum - keyboard
Figure 20.3 - card

PAY02 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard
Figure 20.4 - card

PAY03 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard
Figure 20.2 - card
Social Security Number, if changed - keyboard
Figure 20.5 - card
Figure 20.6 - card

PAY04 Figure 20.7 - card
Check no. - 5 digits - keyboard
Week no. of month - 1 digit - keyboard
Maximum check amount allowed - 5 digits - keyboard
Figure 20.8 - card

PAY05 Figure 20.7 - card
Check no. - 5 digits - keyboard
Check maximum amount - 5 digits - keyboard
Clock no. (if requested) - 4 digits - keyboard

PAY06 Figure 20.7 - card

PAY07 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard

PAY08 Figure 20.10 - card
Figure 20.11 - card
Figure 20.6 - card

PAY09 Figure 20.12 - card
Figure 20.13 - card
Figure 20.14 - card
Figure 20.15 - card
Figure 20.16 - card

PAY10 Figure 20.10 - card
Figure 20.6 - card

PAY11 Figure 20.7 - card
Figure 20.9 - card
Figure 20.6 - card

If requested:
Insurance deduction - 4 digits - keyboard
Stock deduction - 4 digits - keyboard
Charity deduction - 4 digits - keyboard
Miscellaneous deduction - 4 digits - keyboard

PAY12 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard

PAY13 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard
Individual amount for a plant - 4 digits - keyboard

PAY14 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard

PAY15 Plant no. - 1 digit - keyboard

PAY16 Figure 20.7 - card
Figure 20.8 - card

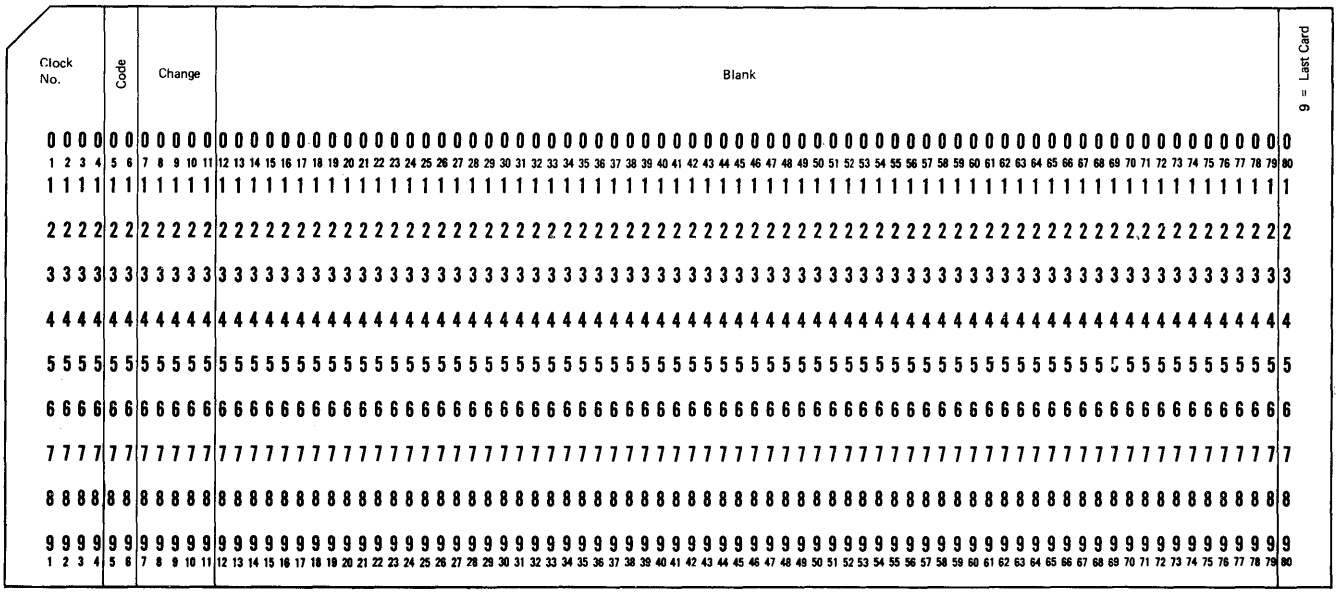


Figure 20. 2.

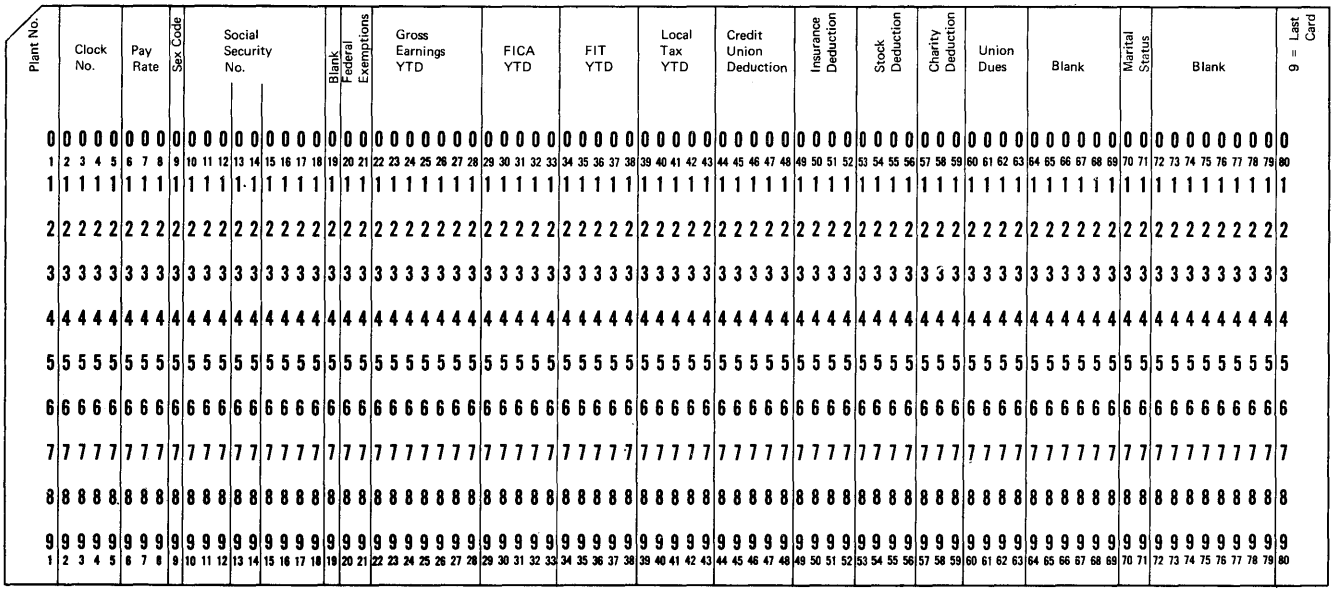


Figure 20. 3.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	20	03

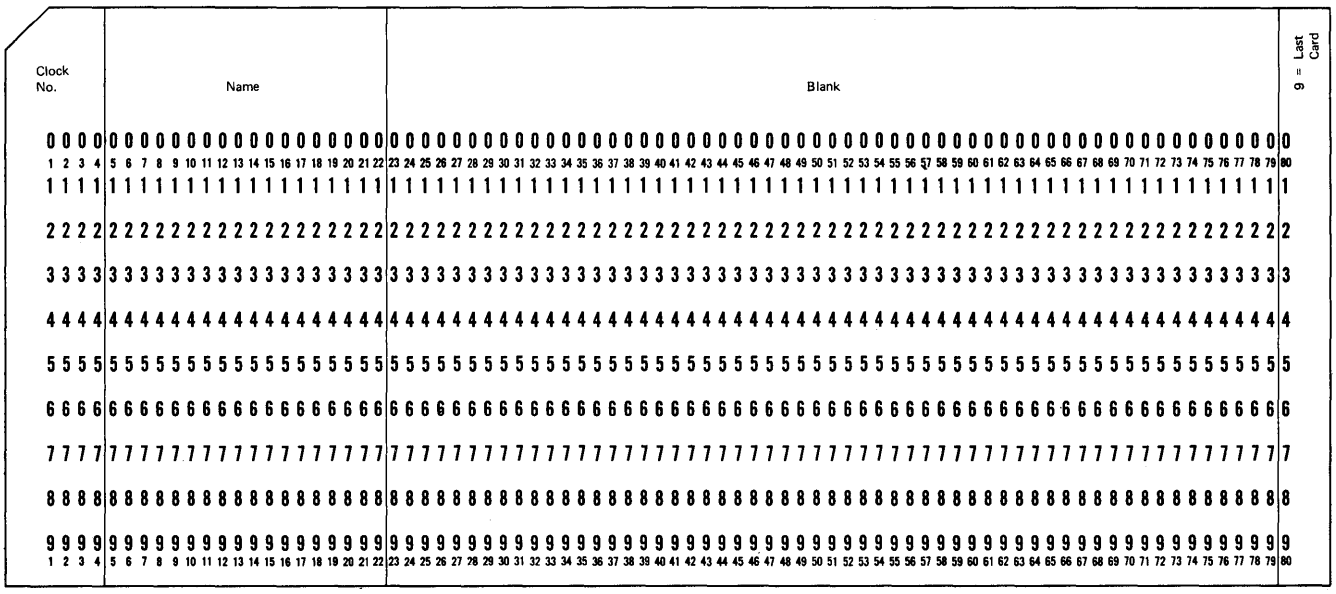


Figure 20.4.

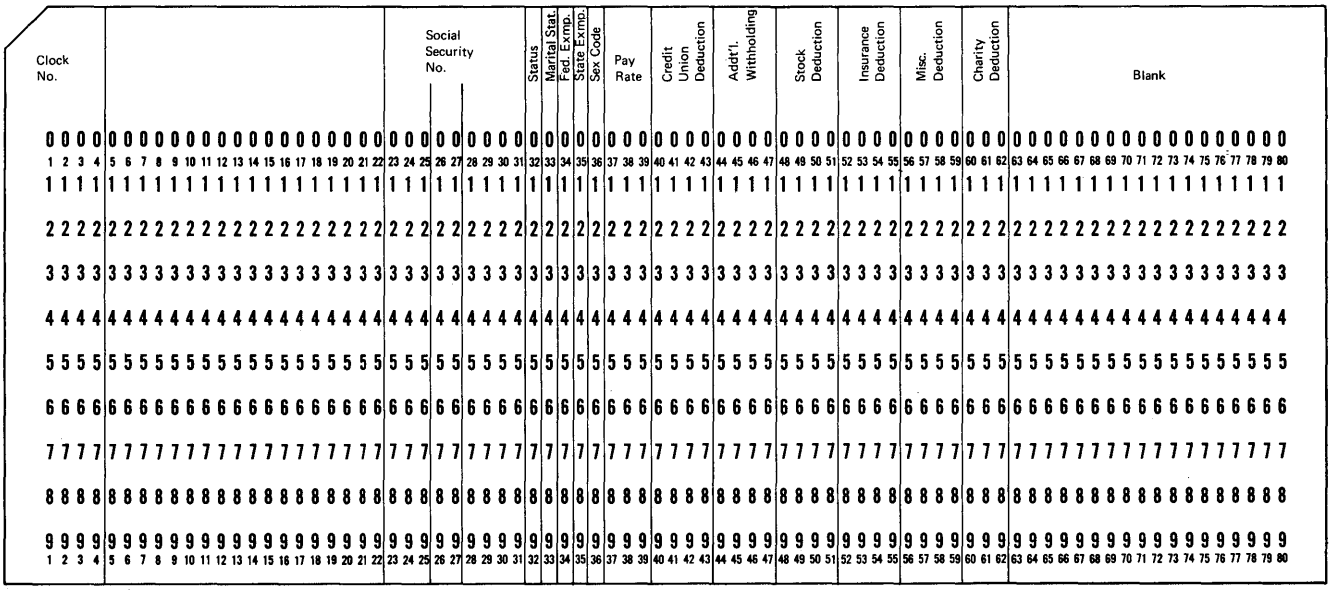


Figure 20.5.

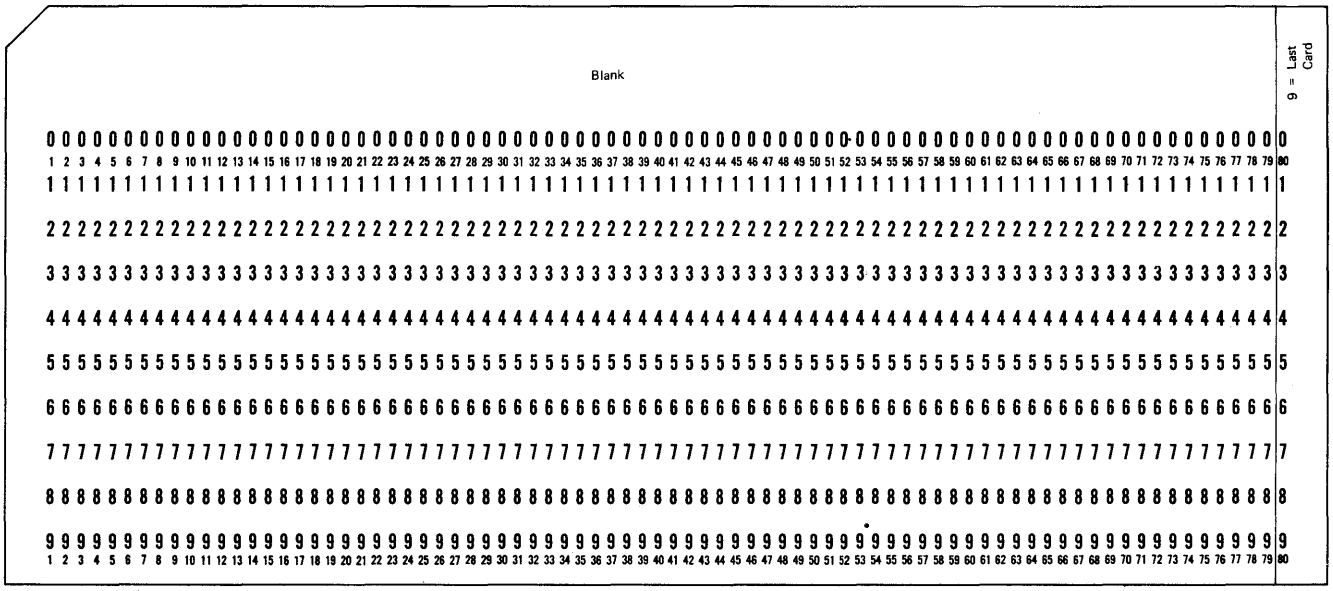


Figure 20.6.

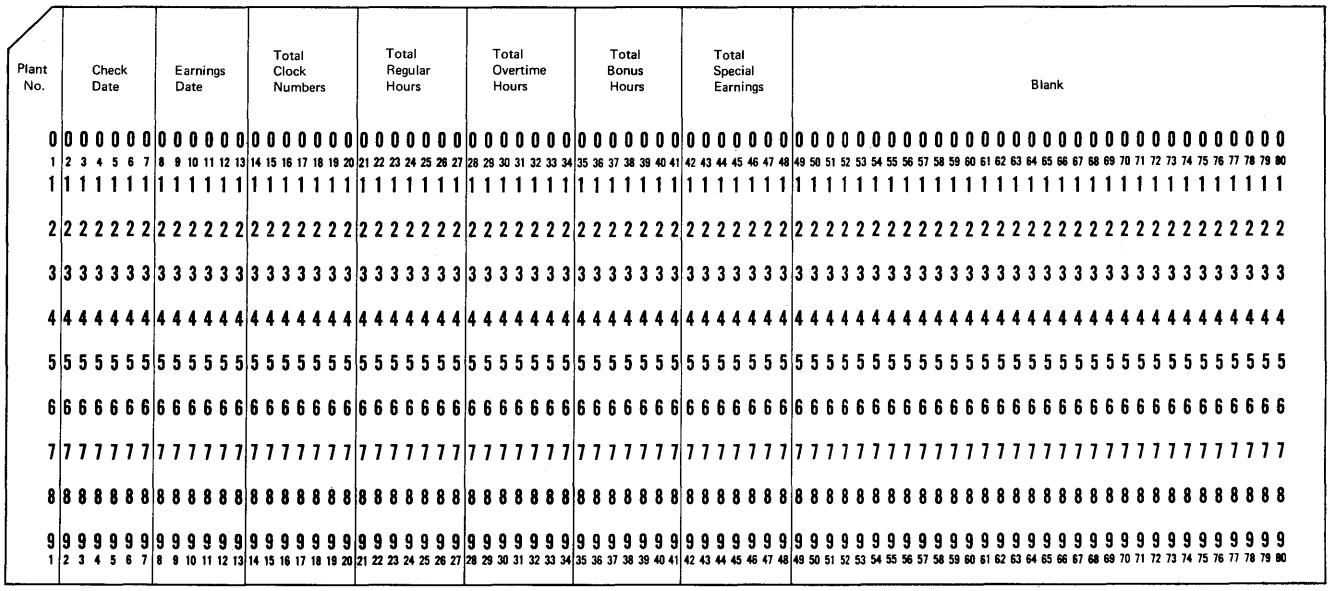


Figure 20.7.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	20	05

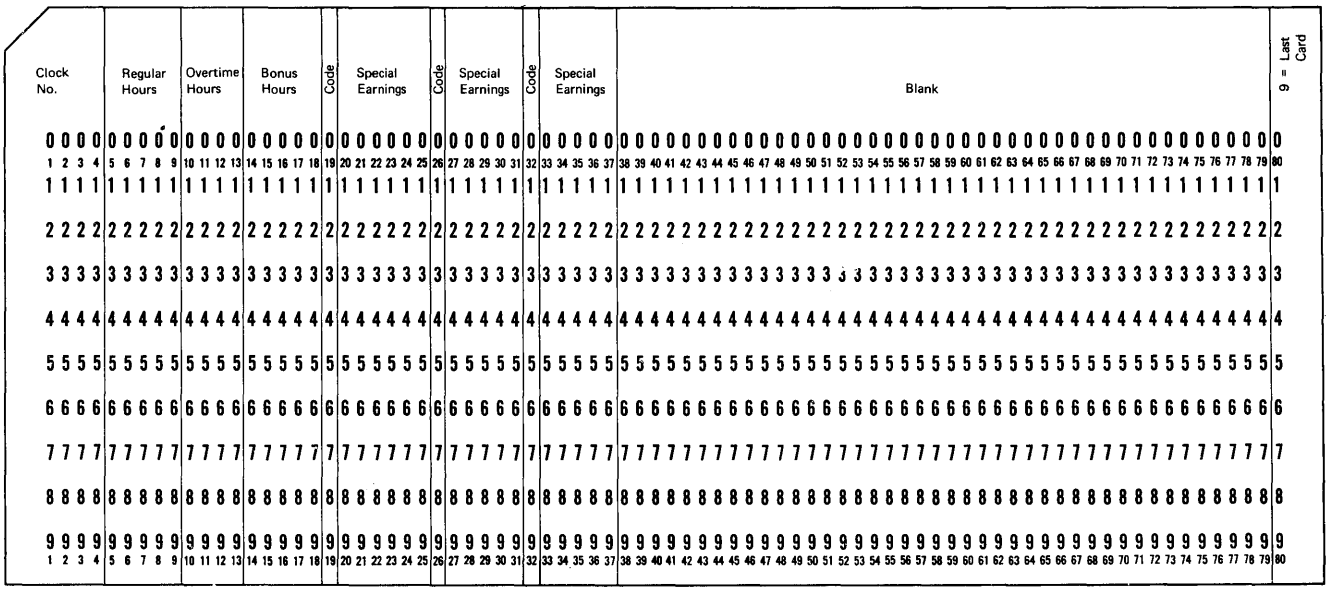


Figure 20.8.

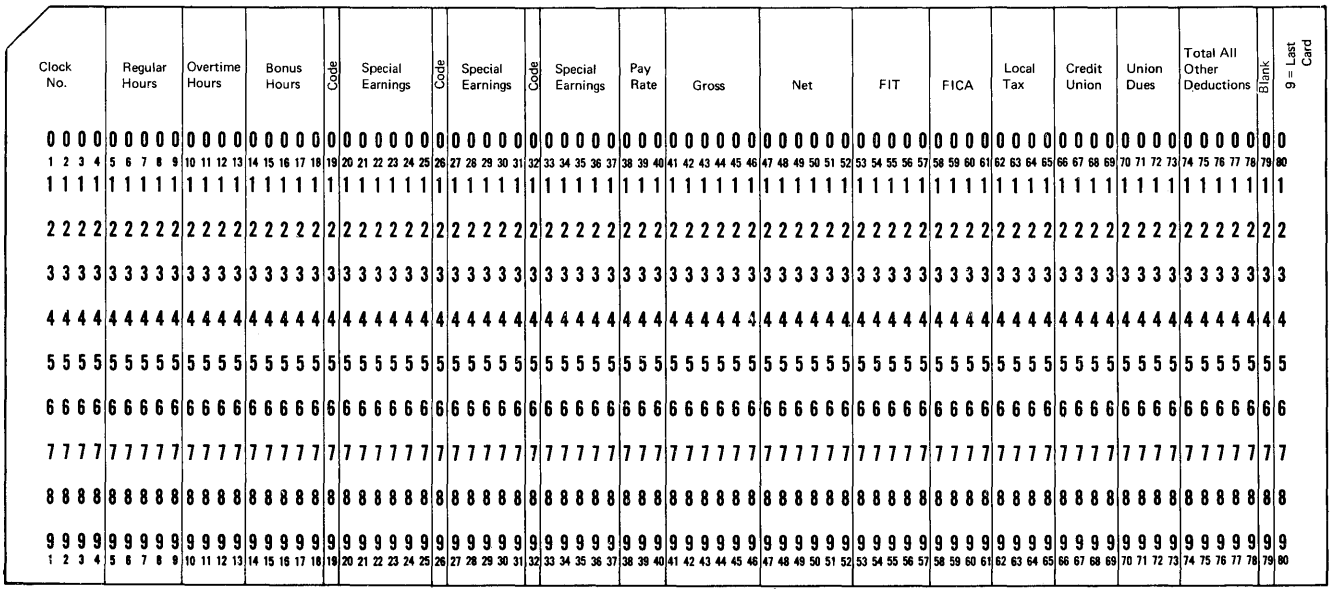


Figure 20.9.

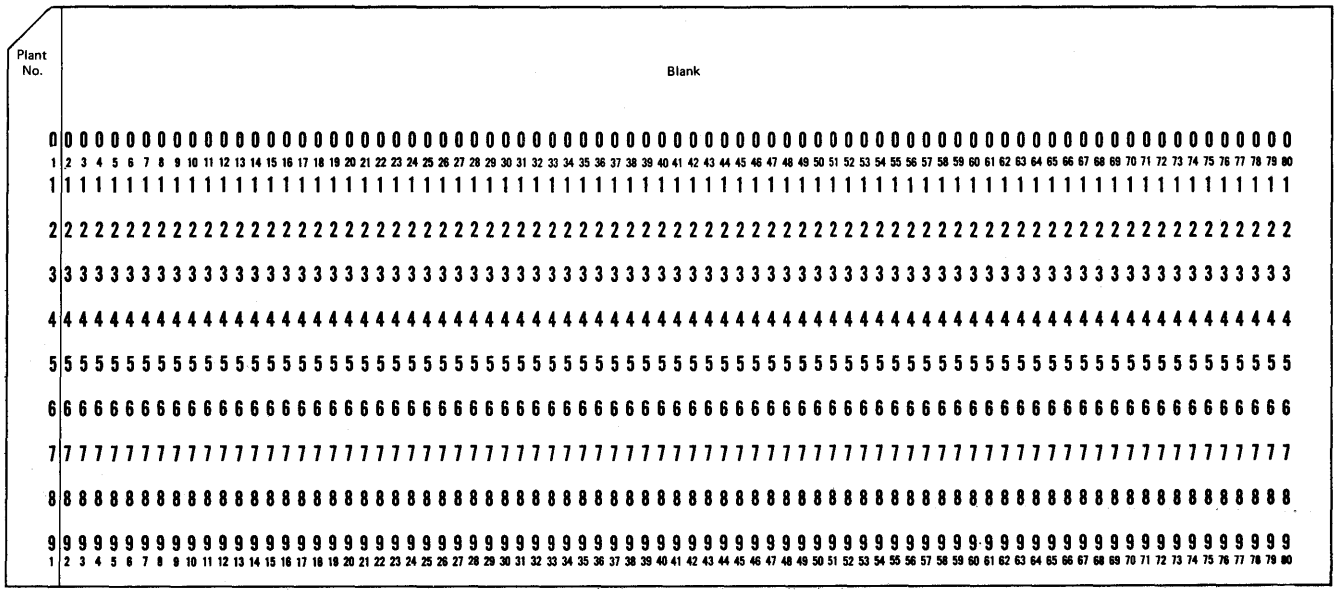


Figure 20.10.

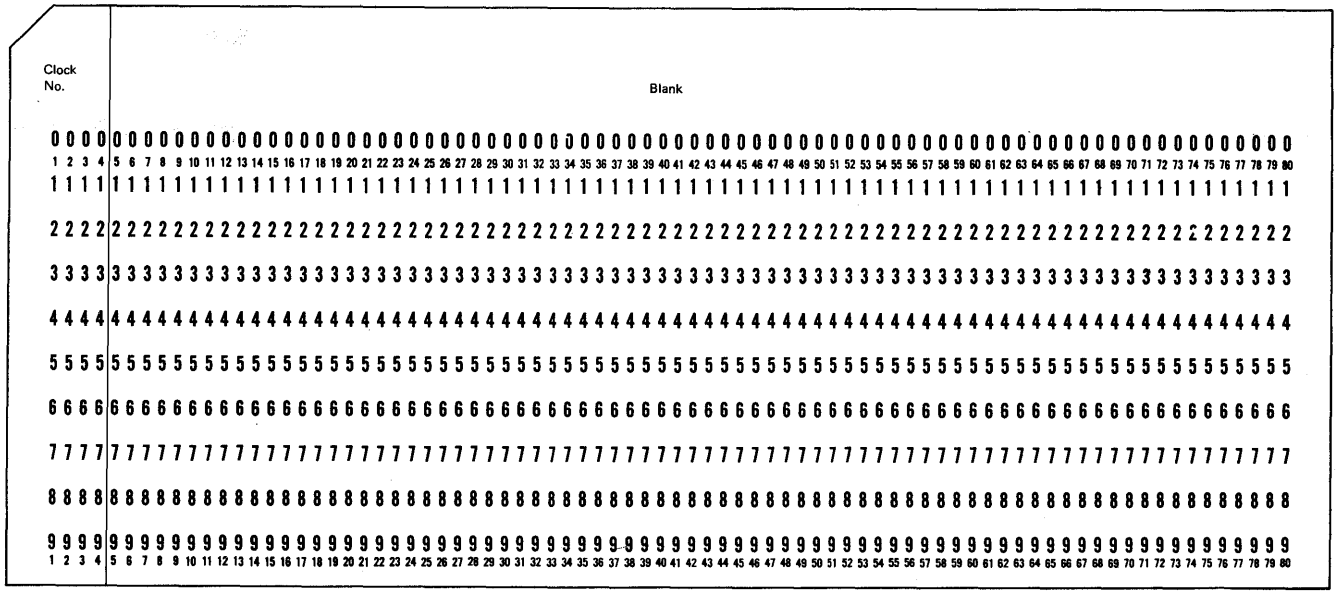


Figure 20.11.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	.20	07

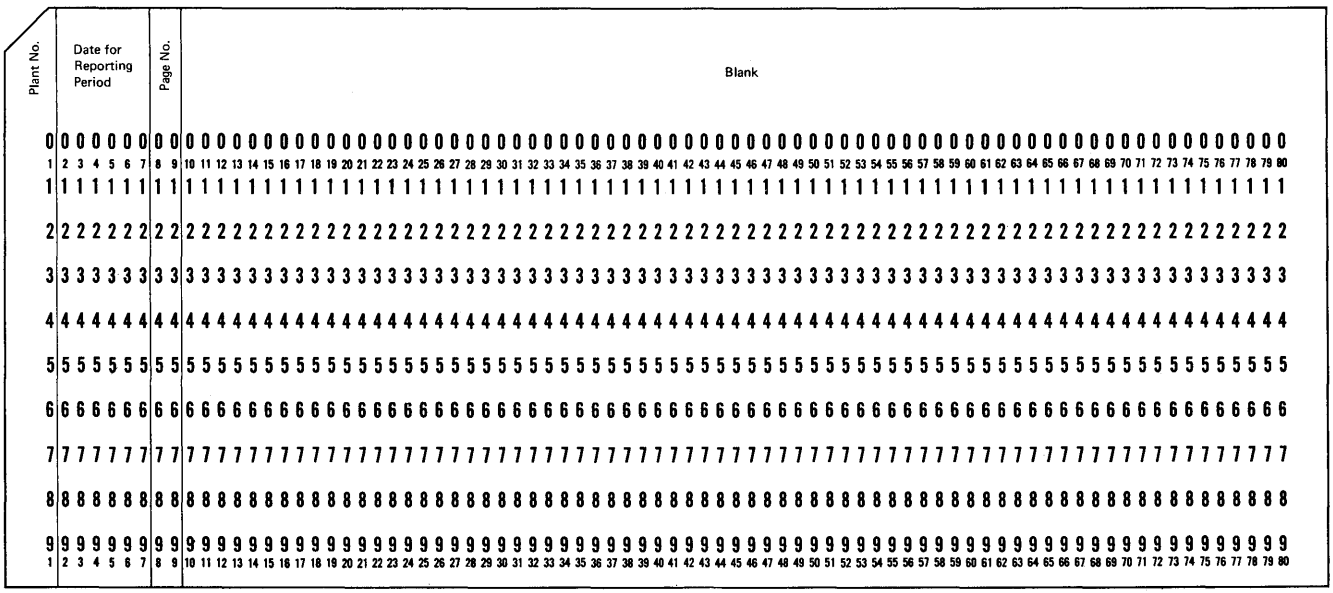


Figure 20.12.

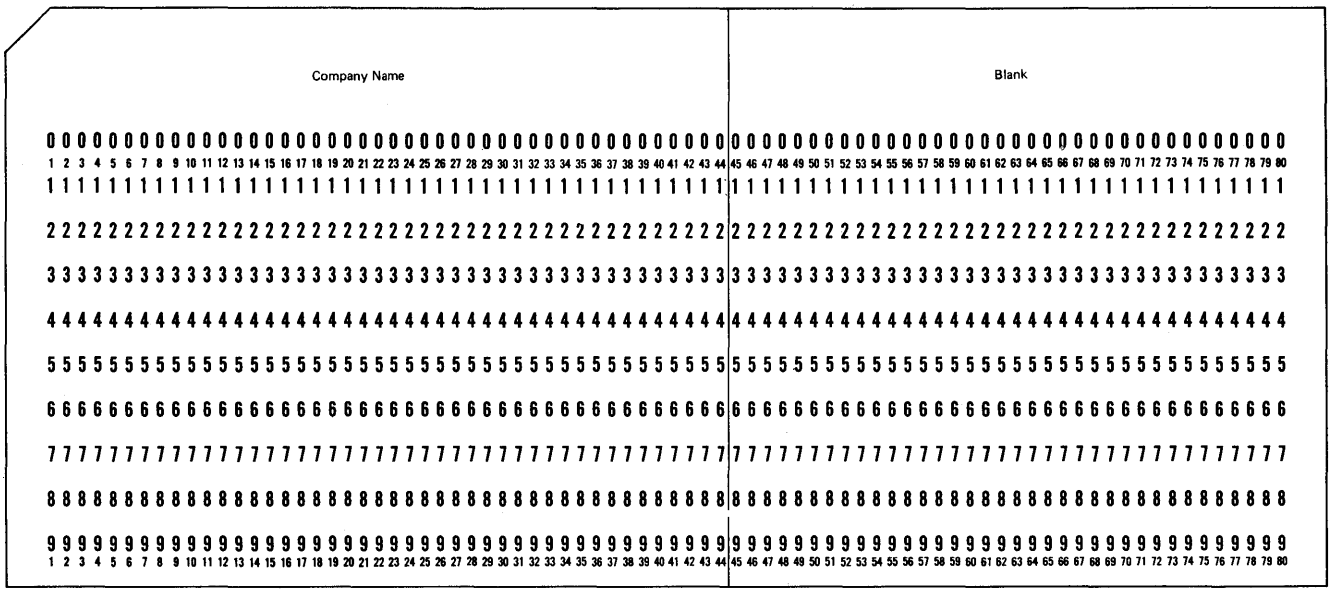


Figure 20.13.

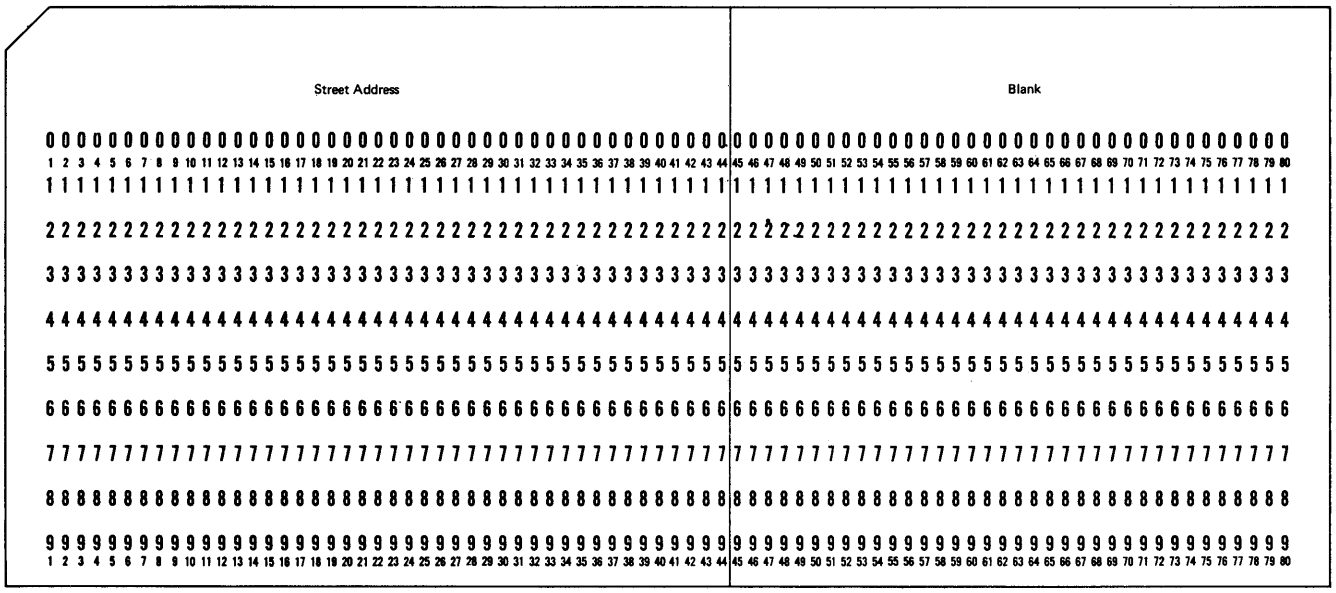


Figure 20.14.

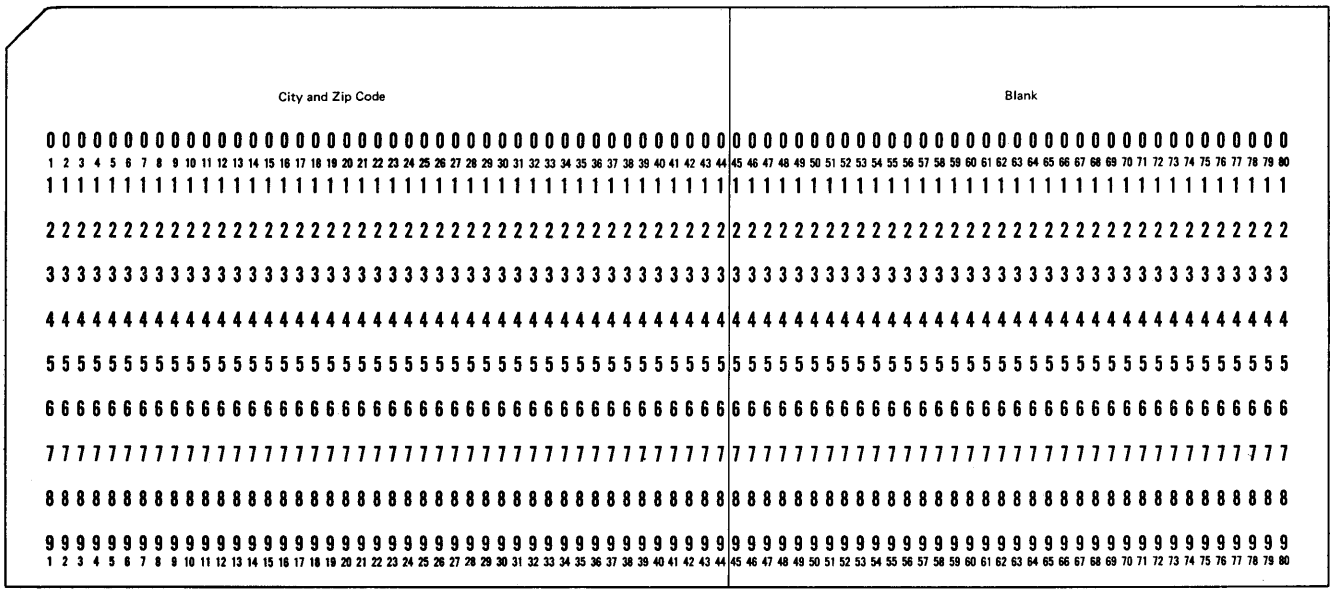


Figure 20.15.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	20	09

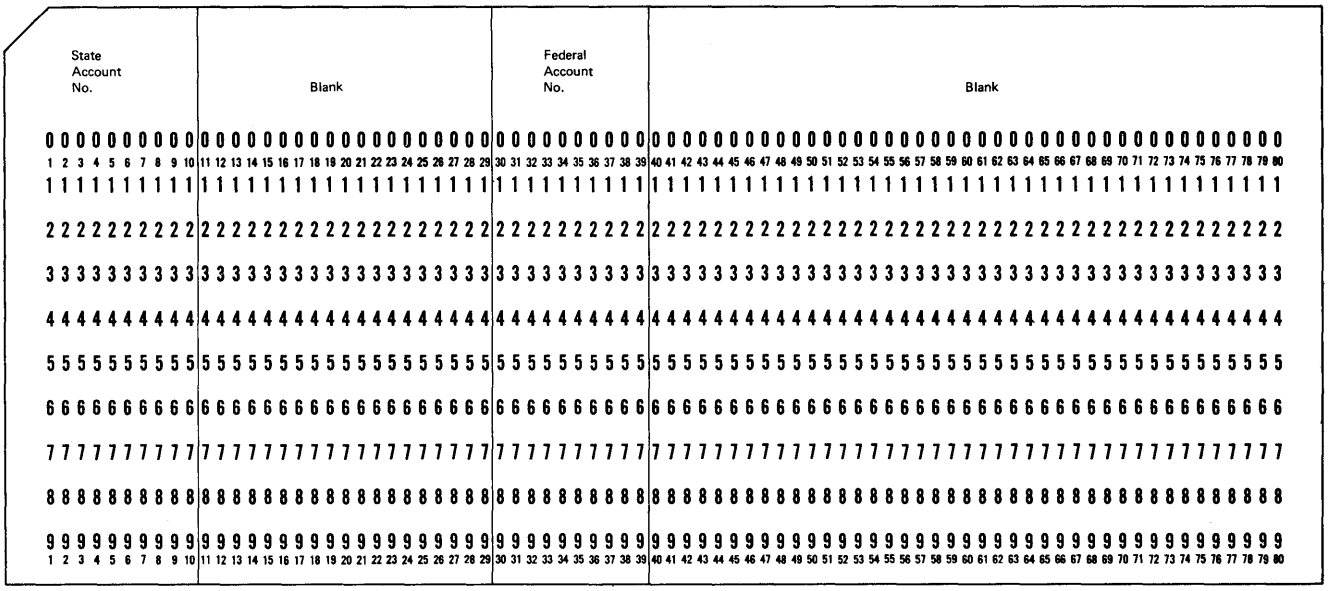


Figure 20.16.

Console Printer and Line Printer Forms for Output

PAY01	None
PAY02	None
PAY03	None
PAY04	Figure 20.18
	Figure 20.19
PAY05	Figure 20.19
PAY06	Figure 20.20
PAY07	Figure 20.21
PAY08	Figure 20.17
PAY09	Figure 20.22
PAY10	Figure 20.23
PAY11	Figure 20.18
PAY12	None
PAY13	Figure 20.24
PAY14	Figure 20.25
PAY15	Figure 20.26
PAY16	Figure 20.27

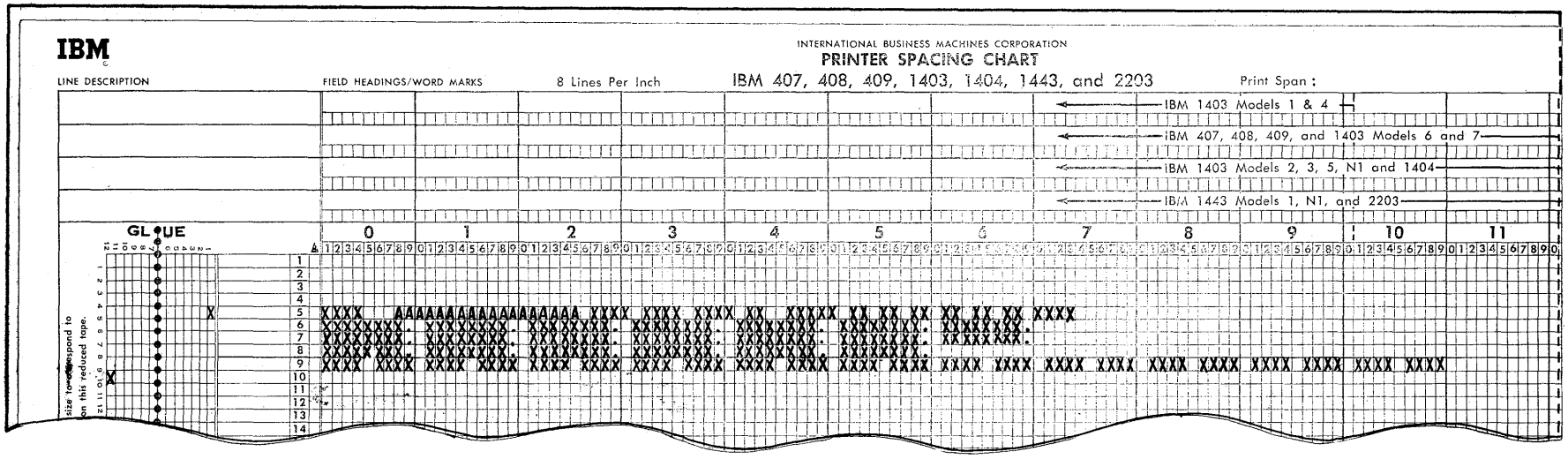


Figure 20. 17.

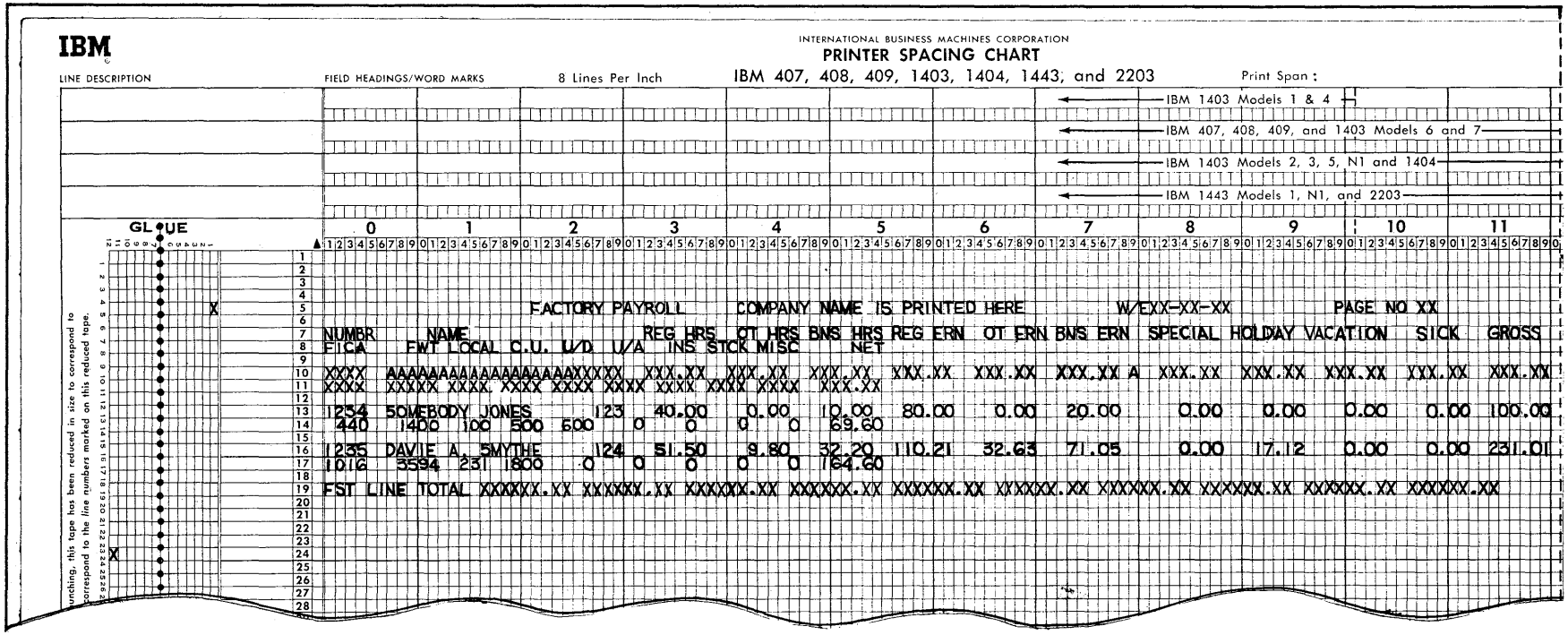


Figure 20. 18.

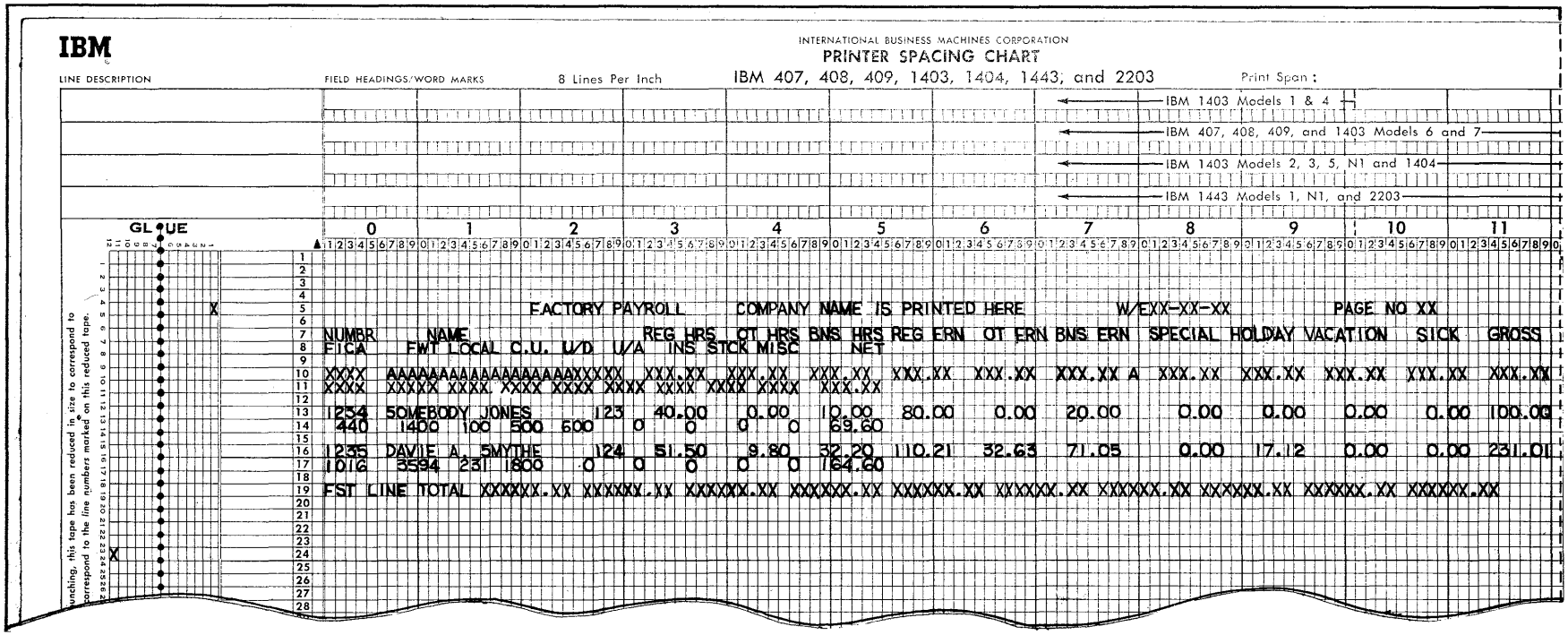


Figure 20.18. (Cont)

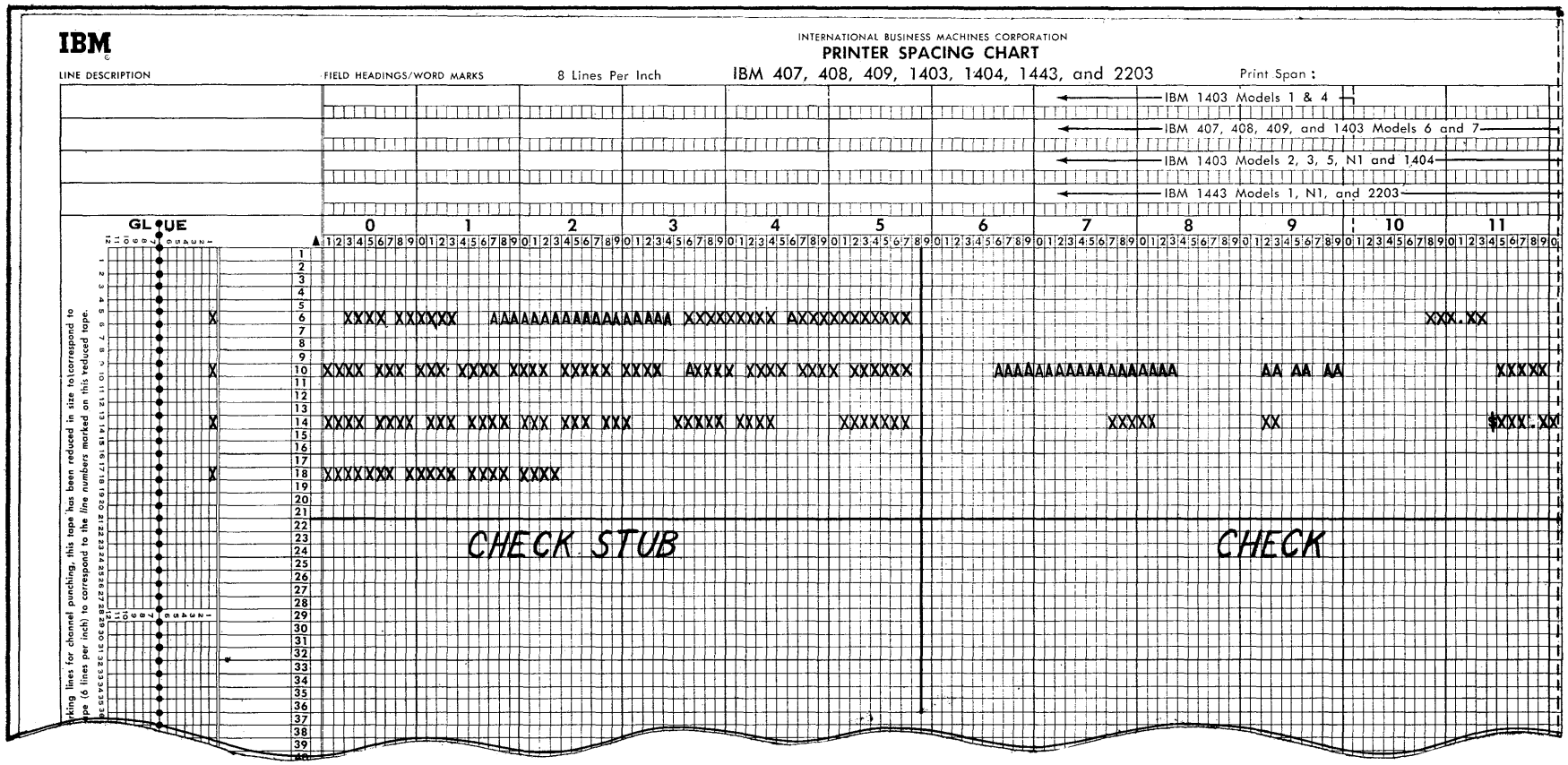

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span:
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
CHECK STUB
CHECK
Punching lines for channel punching, this tape has been reduced in size to correspond to type (6 lines per inch) to correspond to the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.

Figure 20.19.

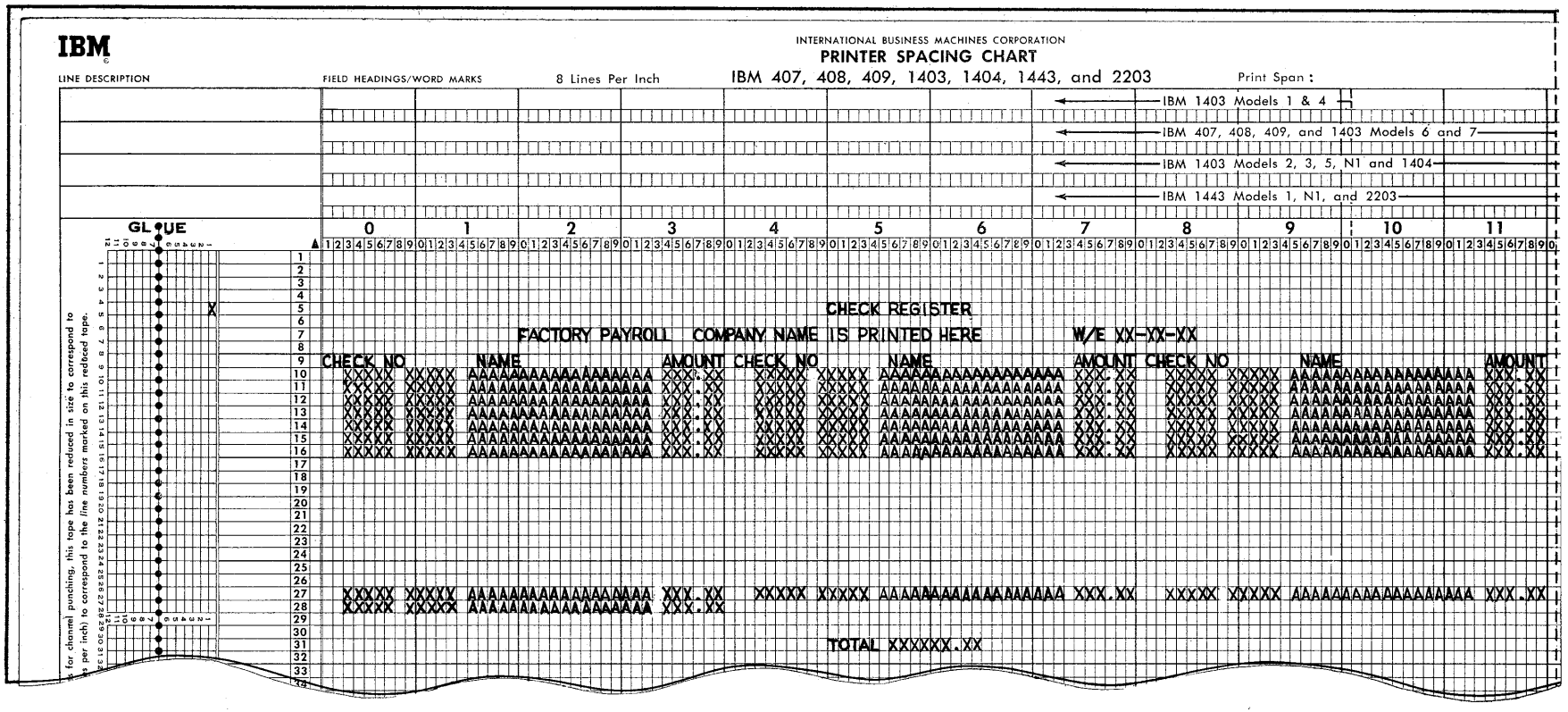

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLOVE
CHECK REGISTER
FACTORY PAYROLL COMPANY NAME IS PRINTED HERE
W/E XX-XX-XX
CHECK NO
NAME
AMOUNT
TOTAL XXXXX.XX
For channel punching, this tape has been reduced in size to correspond to 6 per inch) to correspond to the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.

Figure 20. 20.

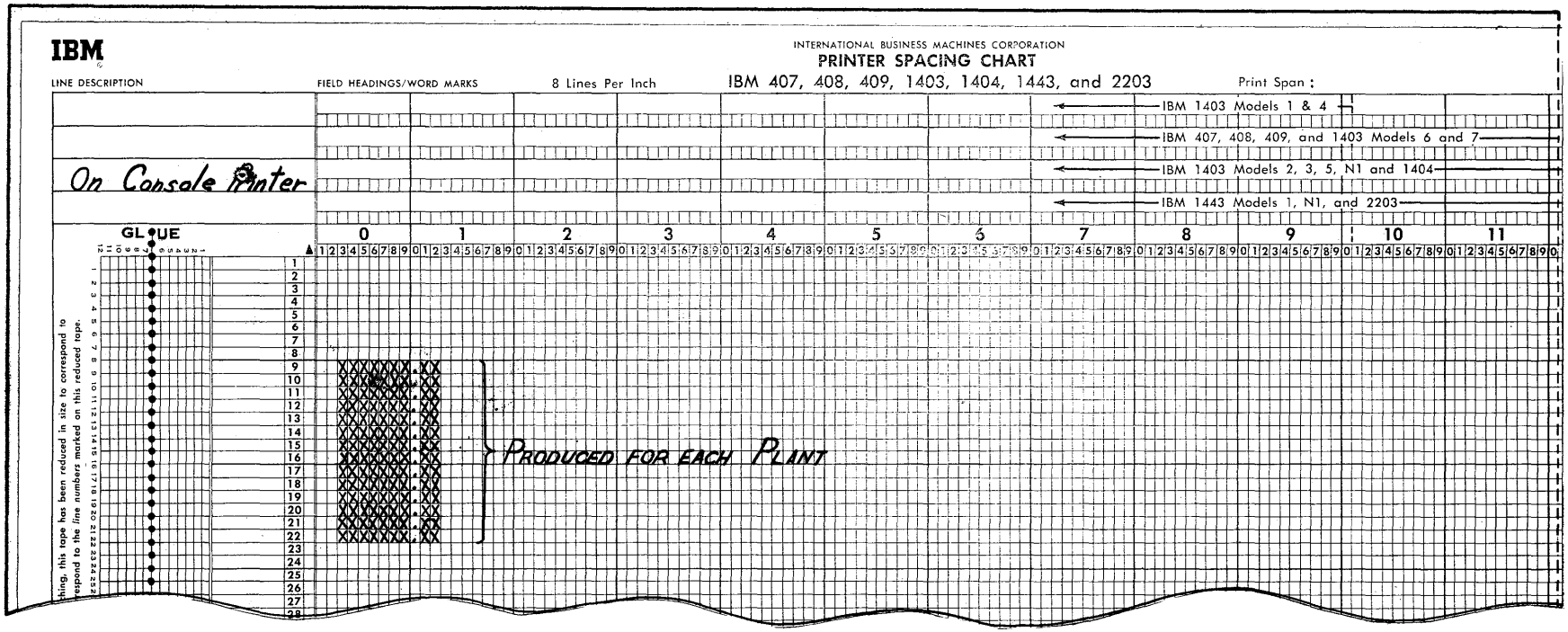
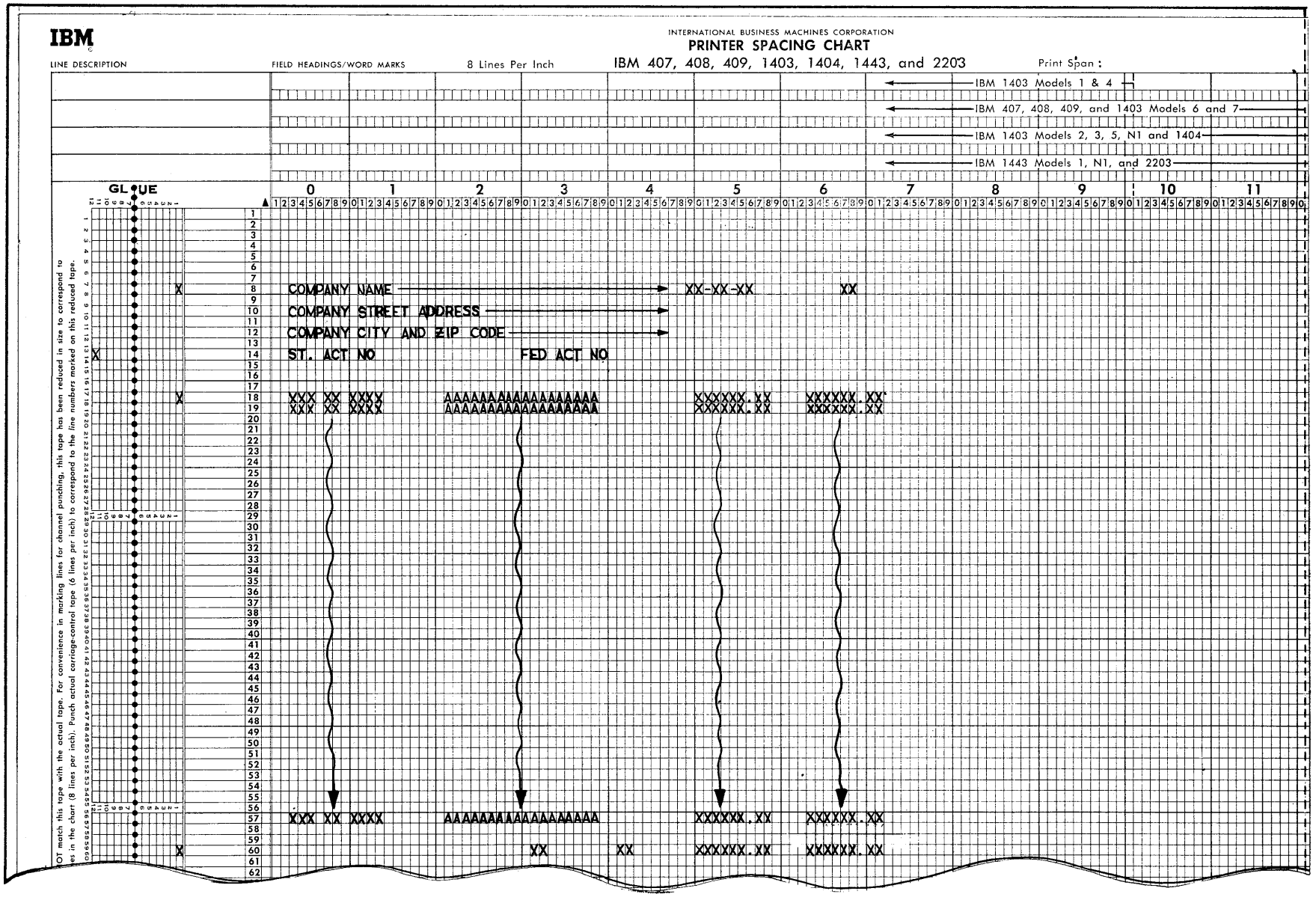

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span:
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
On Console Printer
GLUE
PRODUCED FOR EACH PLANT
ching, this tape has been reduced in size to correspond to
respond to the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.

Figure 20.21.


IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
Print Span:
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
COMPANY NAME
COMPANY STREET ADDRESS
COMPANY CITY AND ZIP CODE
ST. ACT NO
FED ACT NO
XX-XX-XX
XX
XXX XX XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXXXX.XX
XXXXXX.XX
XX
XX

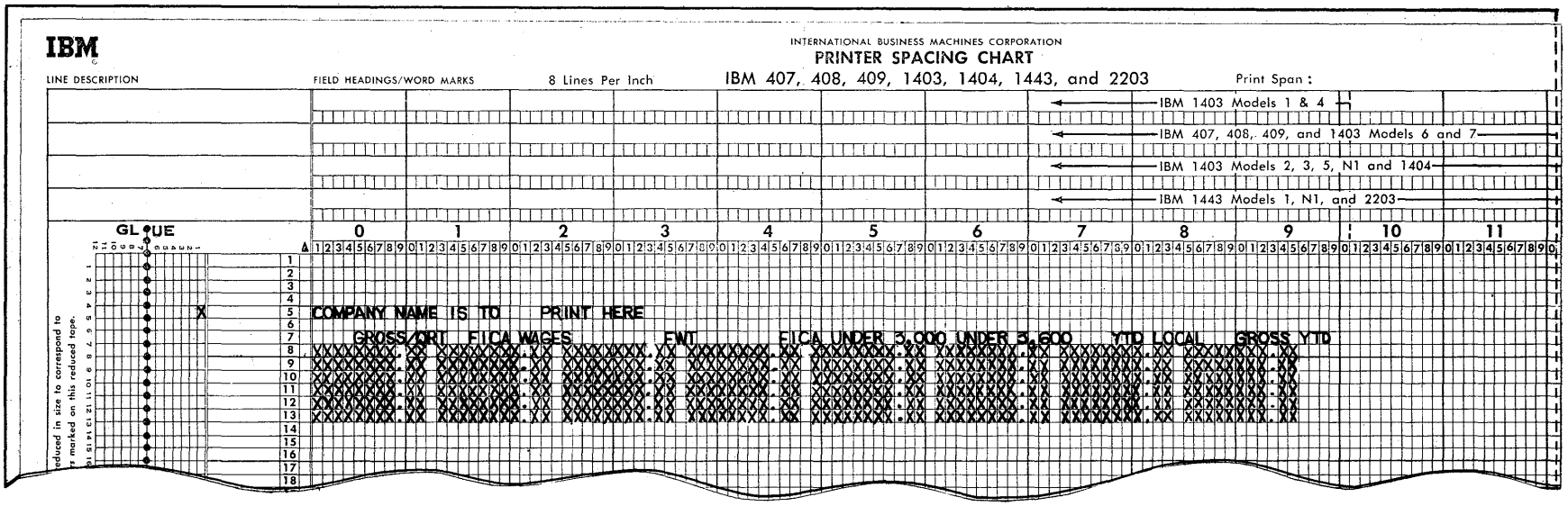

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
GROSS/QRT FICA WAGES FWT FICA UNDER 3,000 UNDER 3,600 YTD LOCAL GROSS YTD

Figure 20. 23.

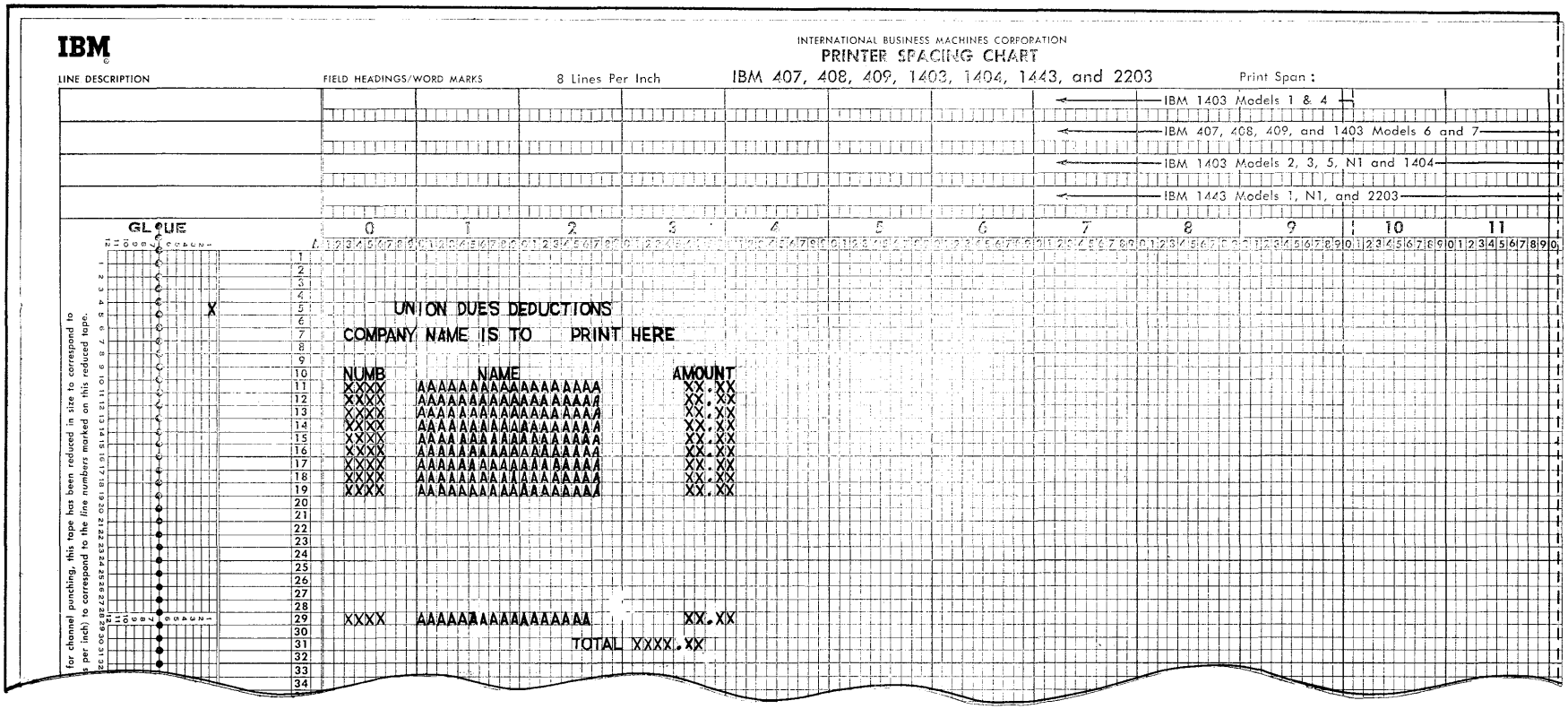

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span:
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
for channel punching, this tape has been reduced in size to correspond to 8 lines per inch) to correspond to the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.
X
UNION DUES DEDUCTIONS
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
NUMB
NAME
AMOUNT
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XX.XX
TOTAL XXXX.XX

Figure 20.24.

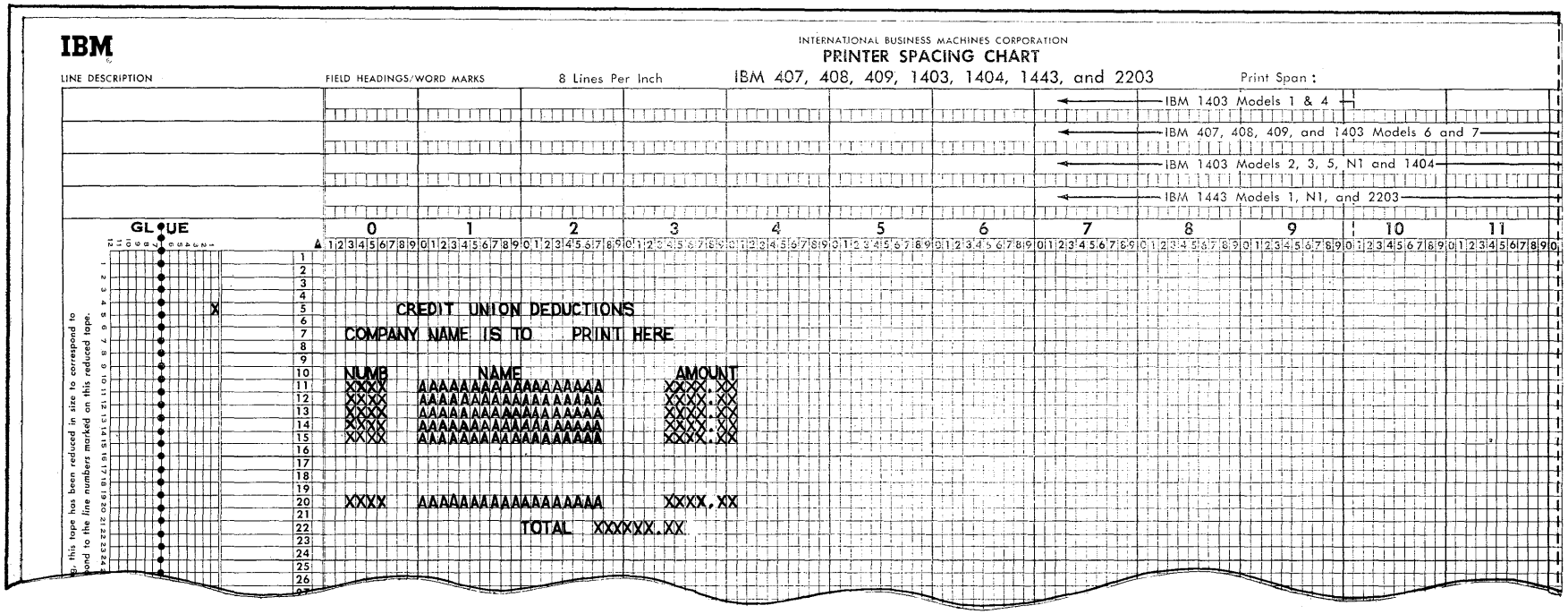

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
CREDIT UNION DEDUCTIONS
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
NUMB
NAME
AMOUNT
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
XXXX AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA XXXX.XX
TOTAL XXXXXX.XX
This tape has been reduced in size to correspond to
the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.

Figure 20.25.

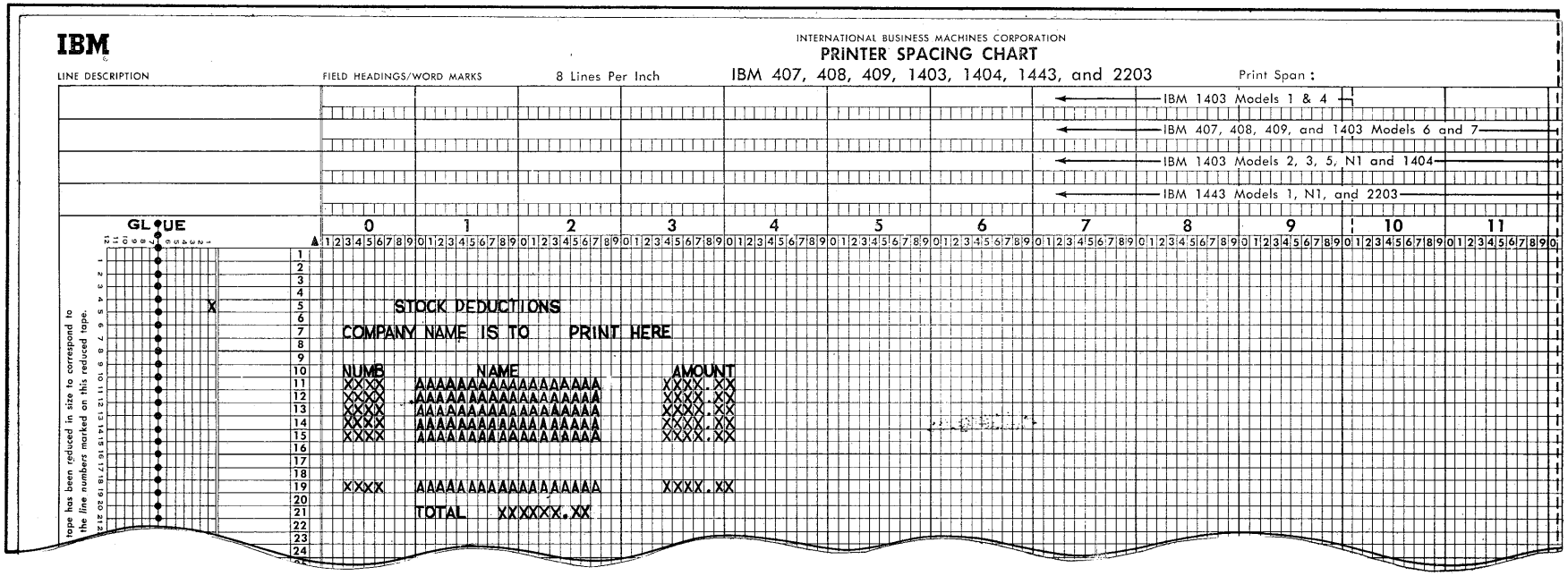


Figure 20.26.

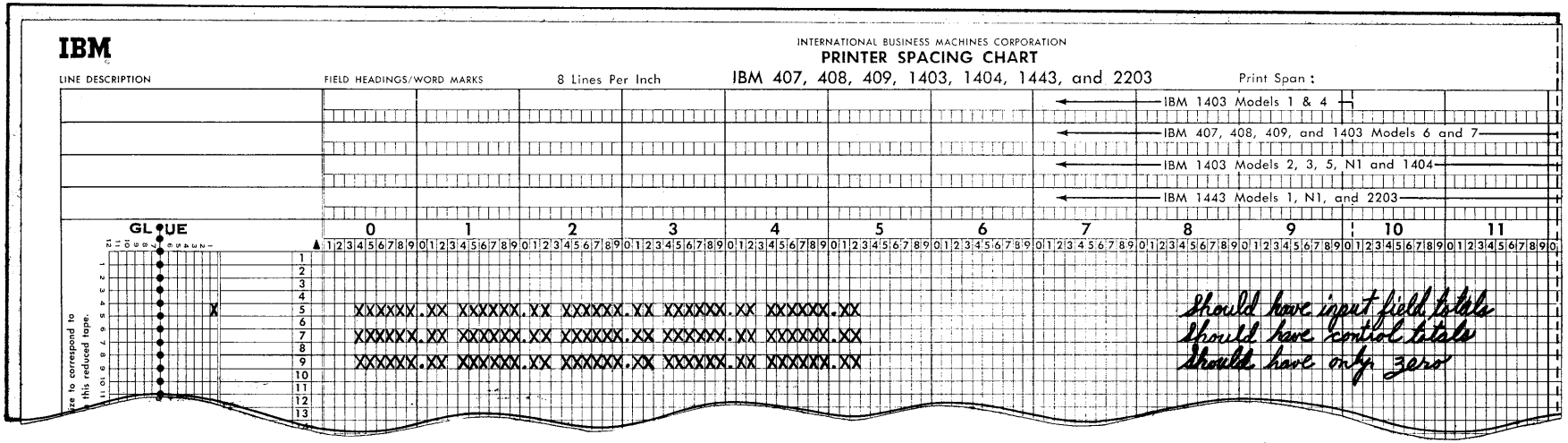


Figure 20.27.

Section	Subsections	Page
20	50 30	11

Disk Record Formats

Employee File - Figure 20.28
Index to Employee File - Figure 20.29
Company Record in the Corporation File - Figure 20.30

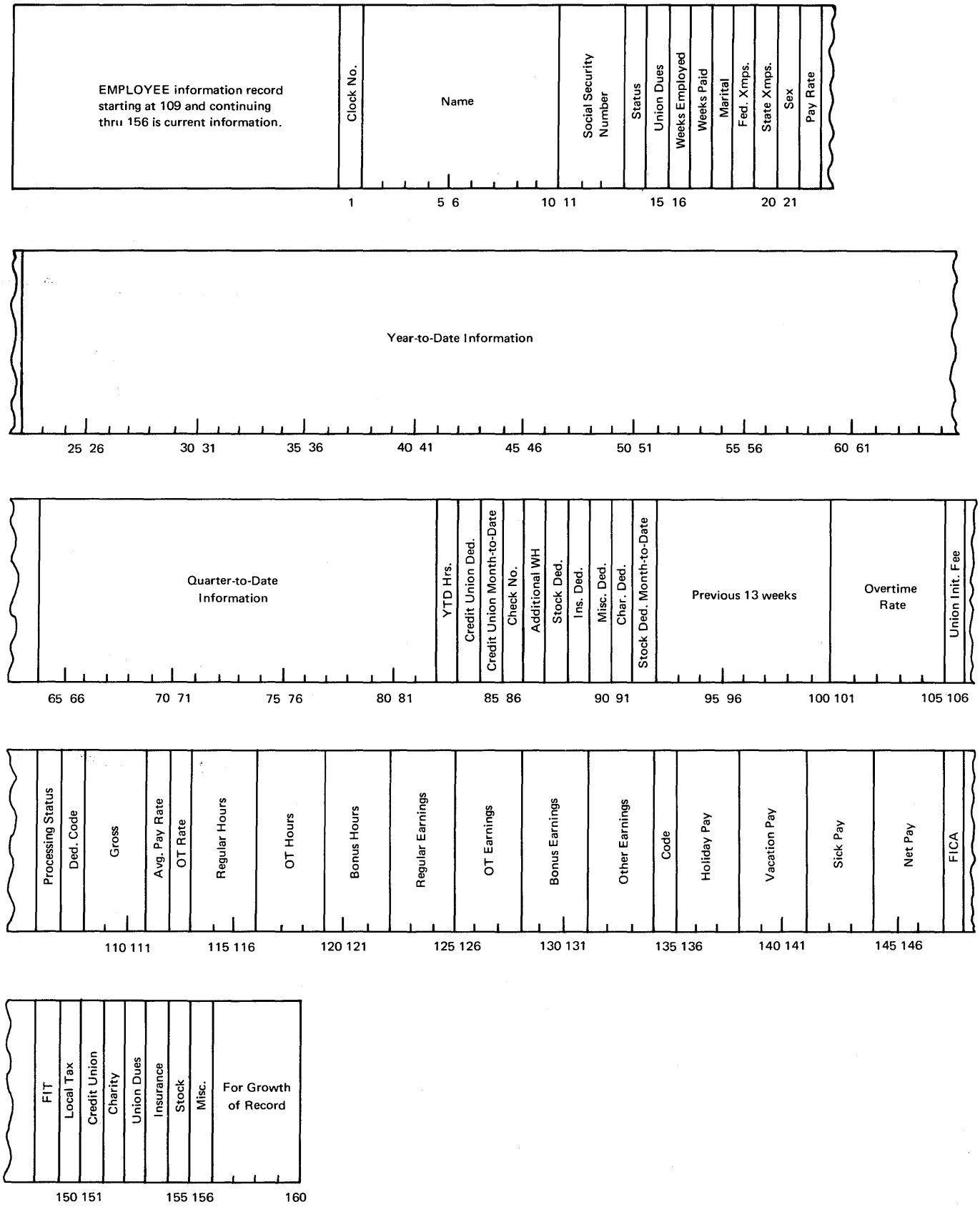

EMPLOYEE information record starting at 109 and continuing thru 156 is current information.
Clock No.
Name
Social Security Number
Status
Union Dues
Weeks Employed
Weeks Paid
Marital
Fed. Xmps.
State Xmps.
Sex
Pay Rate
1
5 6
10 11
15 16
20 21
Year-to-Date Information
25 26
30 31
35 36
40 41
45 46
50 51
55 56
60 61
Quarter-to-Date Information
YTD Hrs.
Credit Union Ded.
Credit Union Month-to-Date
Check No.
Additional WH
Stock Ded.
Ins. Ded.
Misc. Ded.
Char. Ded.
Stock Ded. Month-to-Date
Previous 13 weeks
Overtime Rate
Union Init. Fee
65 66
70 71
75 76
80 81
85 86
90 91
95 96
100 101
105 106
Processing Status
Ded. Code
Gross
Avg. Pay Rate
OT Rate
Regular Hours
OT Hours
Bonus Hours
Regular Earnings
OT Earnings
Bonus Earnings
Other Earnings
Code
Holiday Pay
Vacation Pay
Sick Pay
Net Pay
FICA
110 111
115 116
120 121
125 126
130 131
135 136
140 141
145 146
FIT
Local Tax
Credit Union
Charity
Union Dues
Insurance
Stock
Misc.
For Growth of Record
150 151
155 156
160

Figure 20.28.

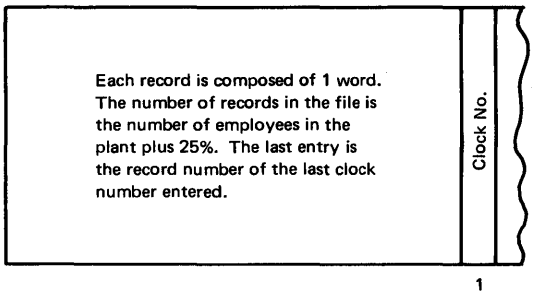


Figure 20.29.

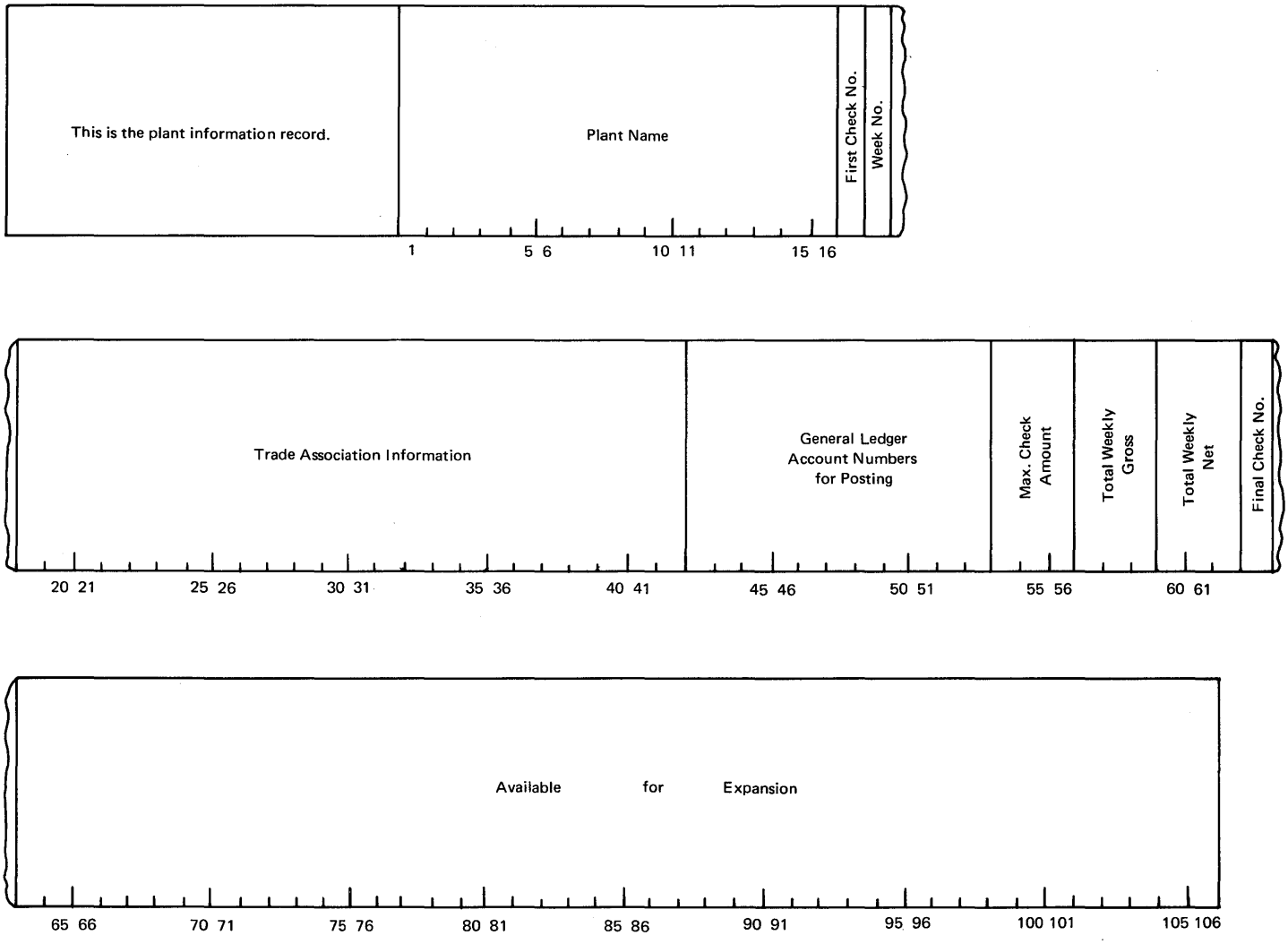
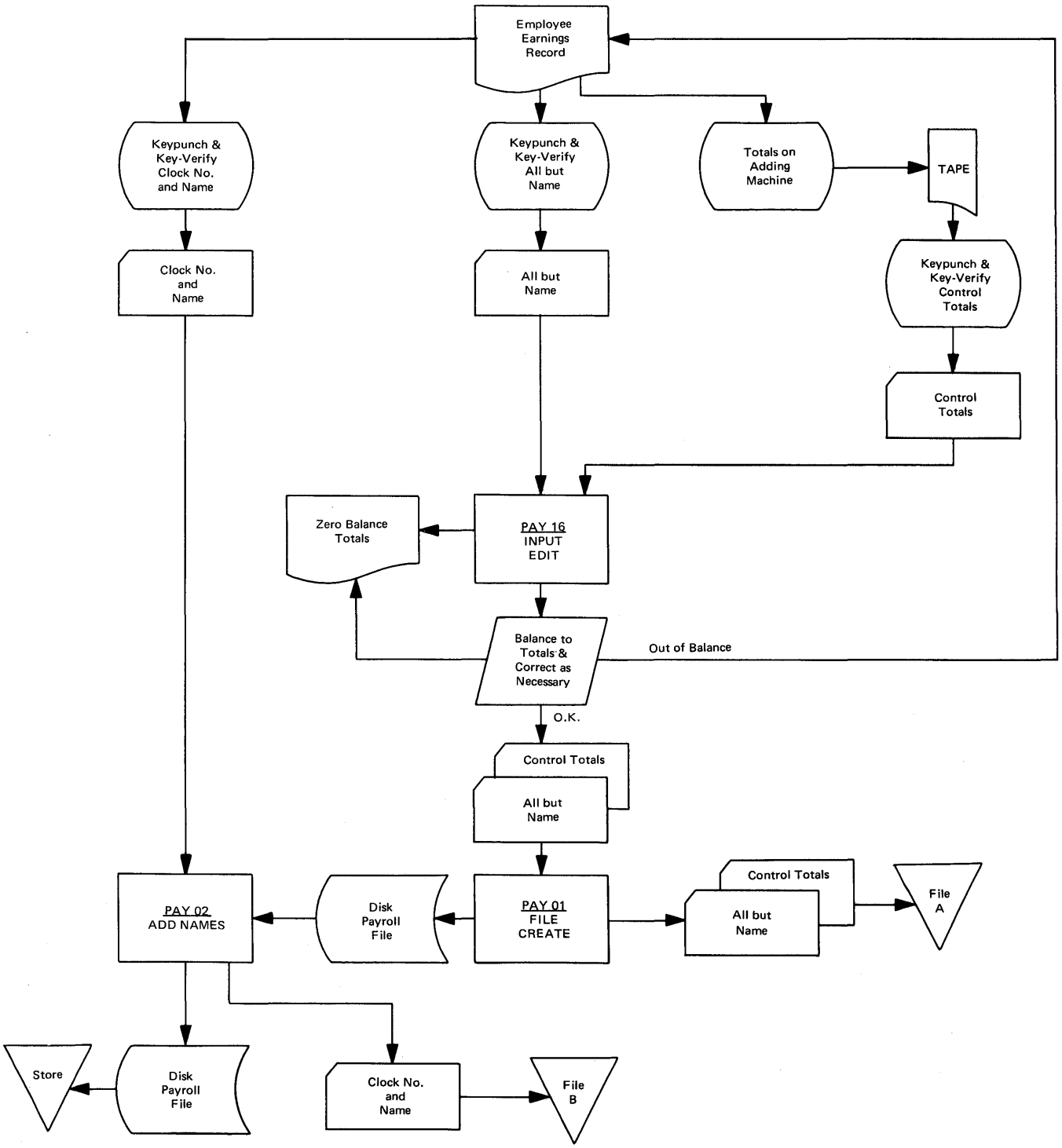


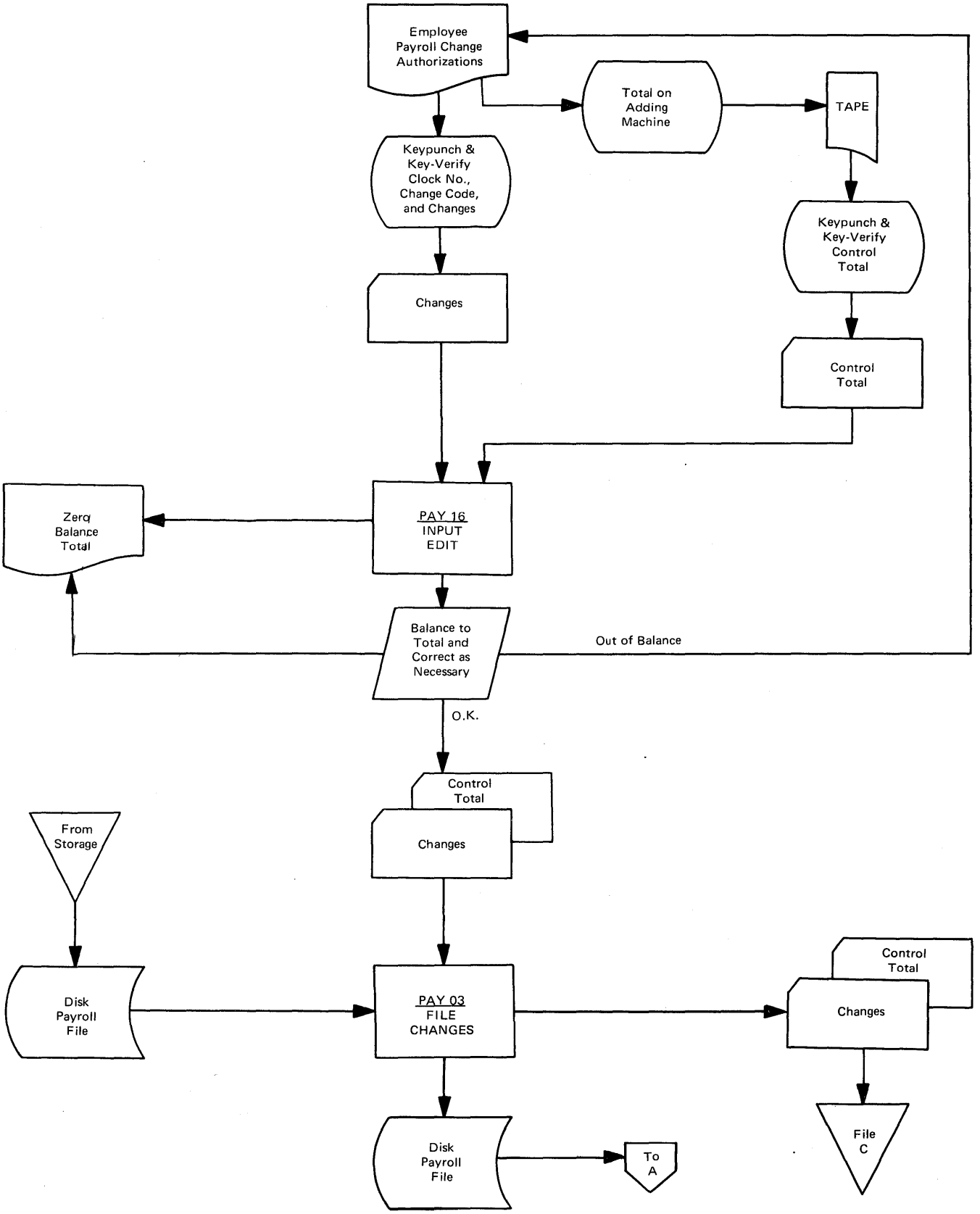
Figure 20.30.

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	50	01

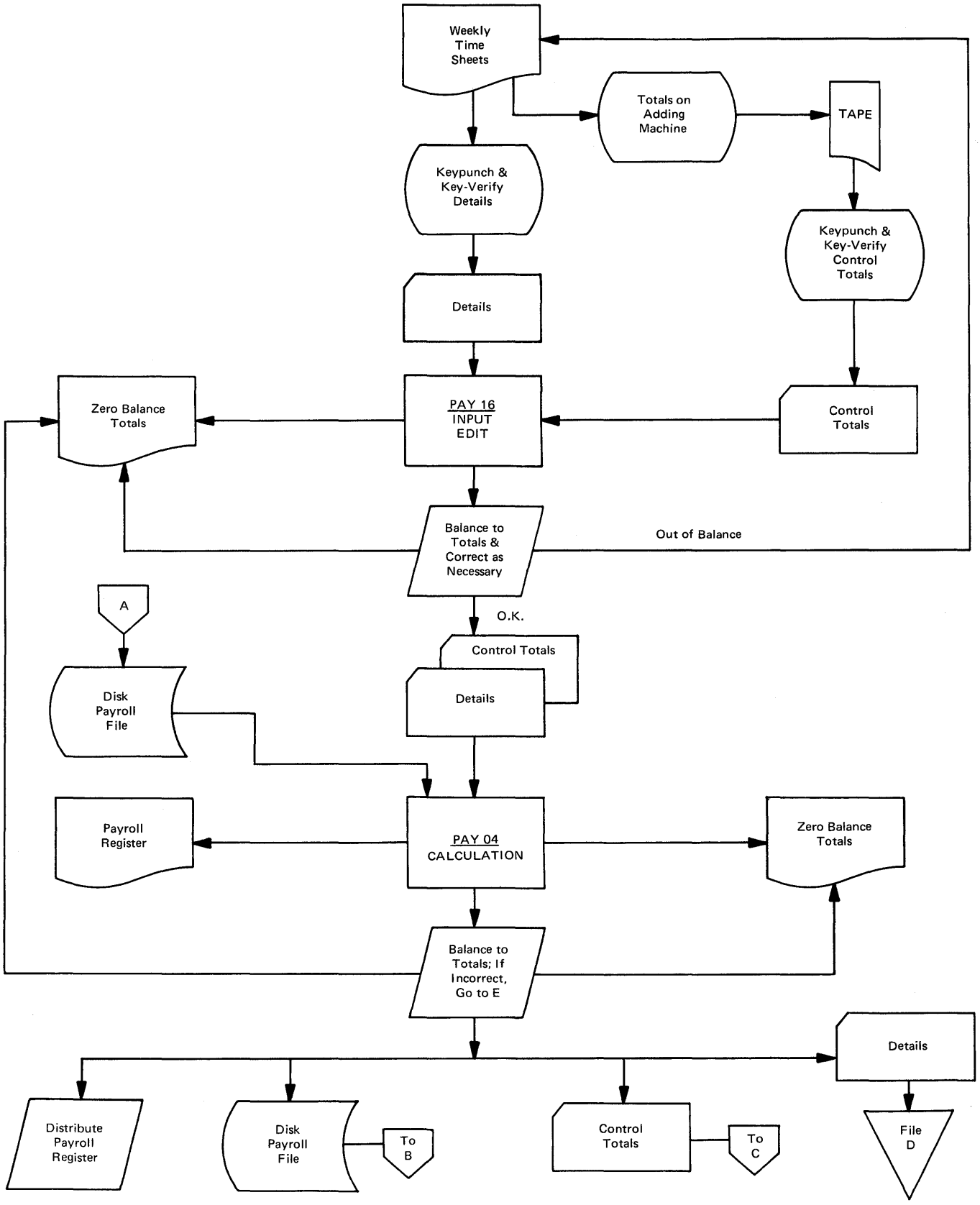
System Flowchart



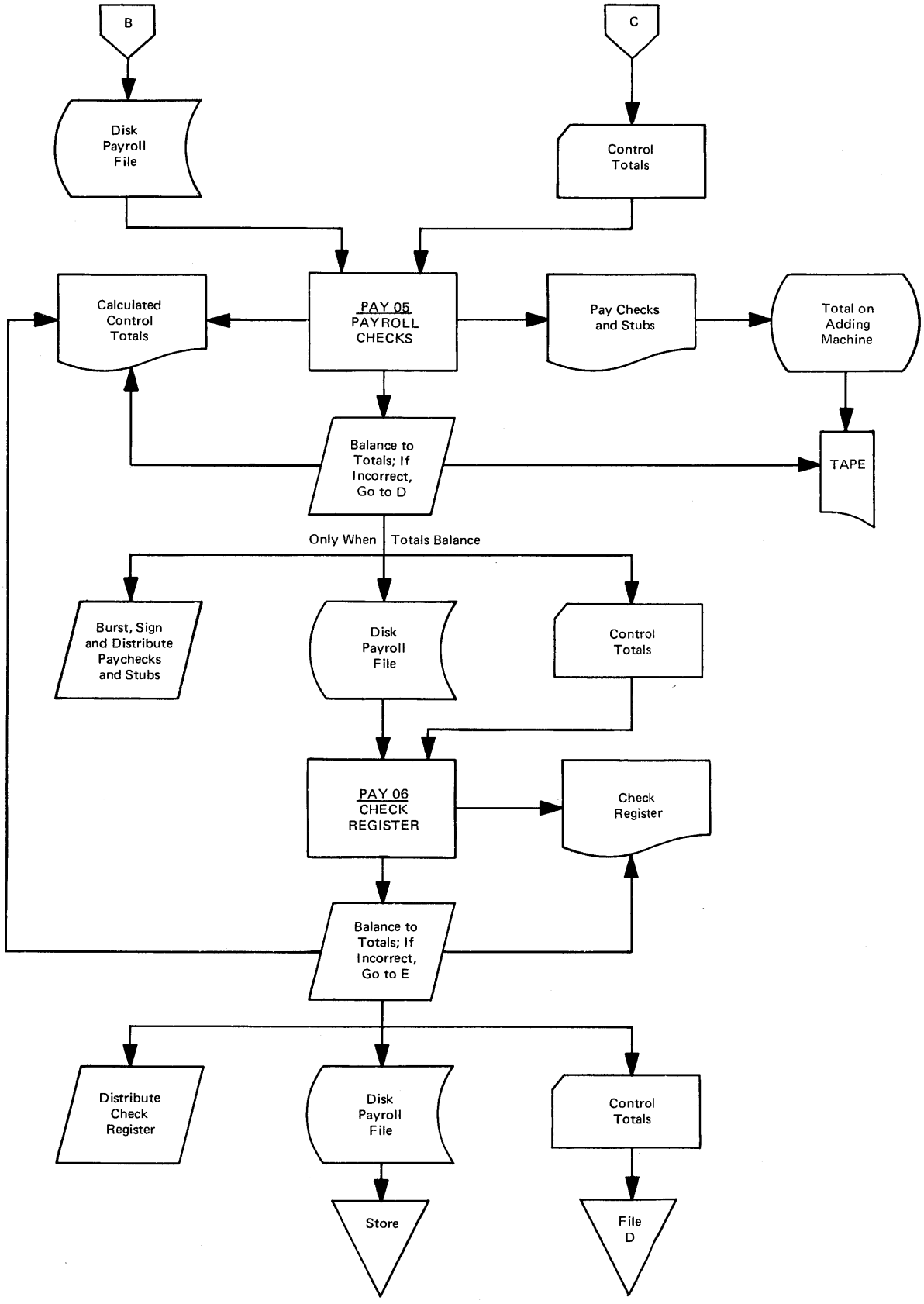
File create (initially and as necessary)



File changes (weekly)

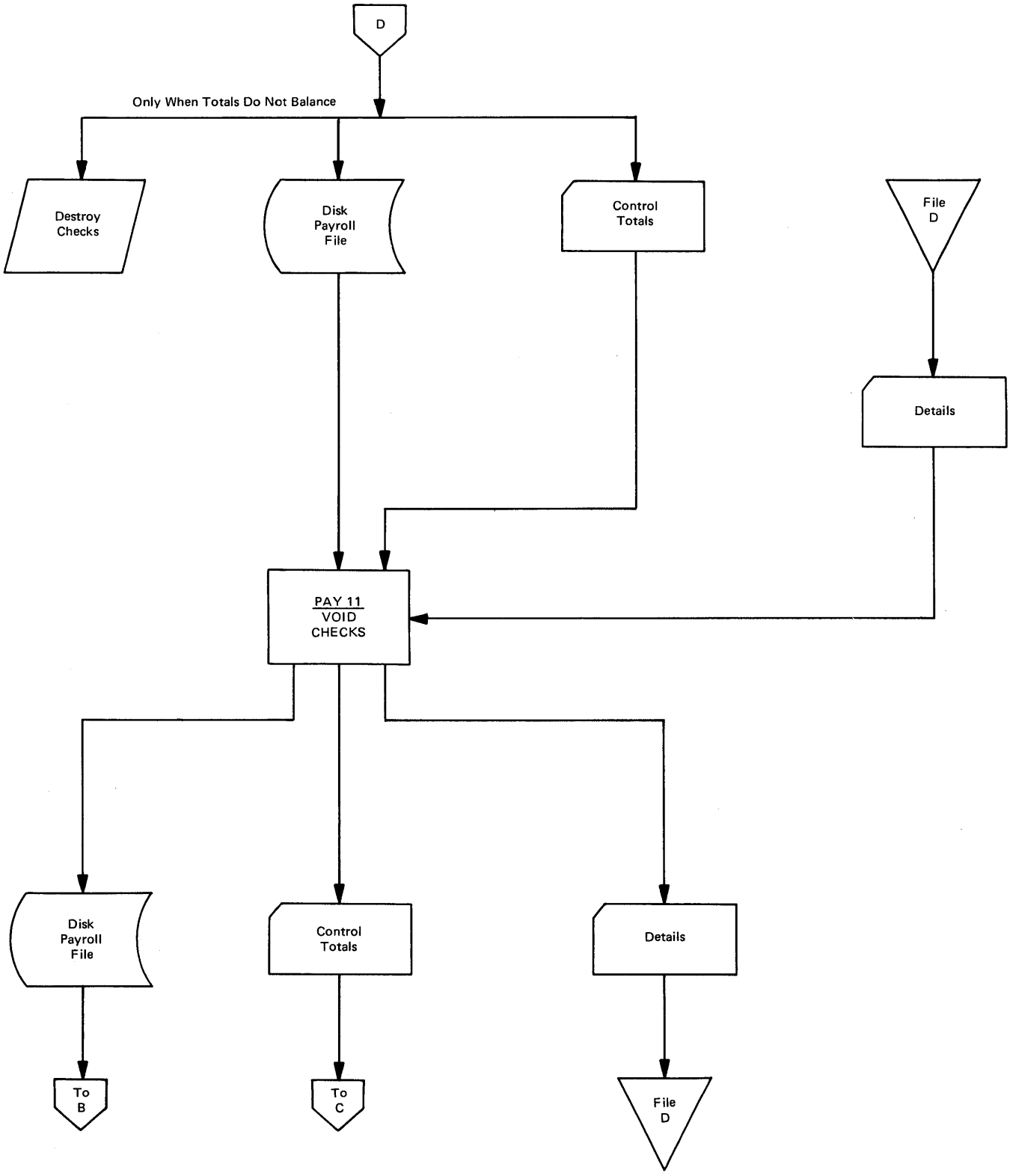


Payroll calculations and register (weekly)

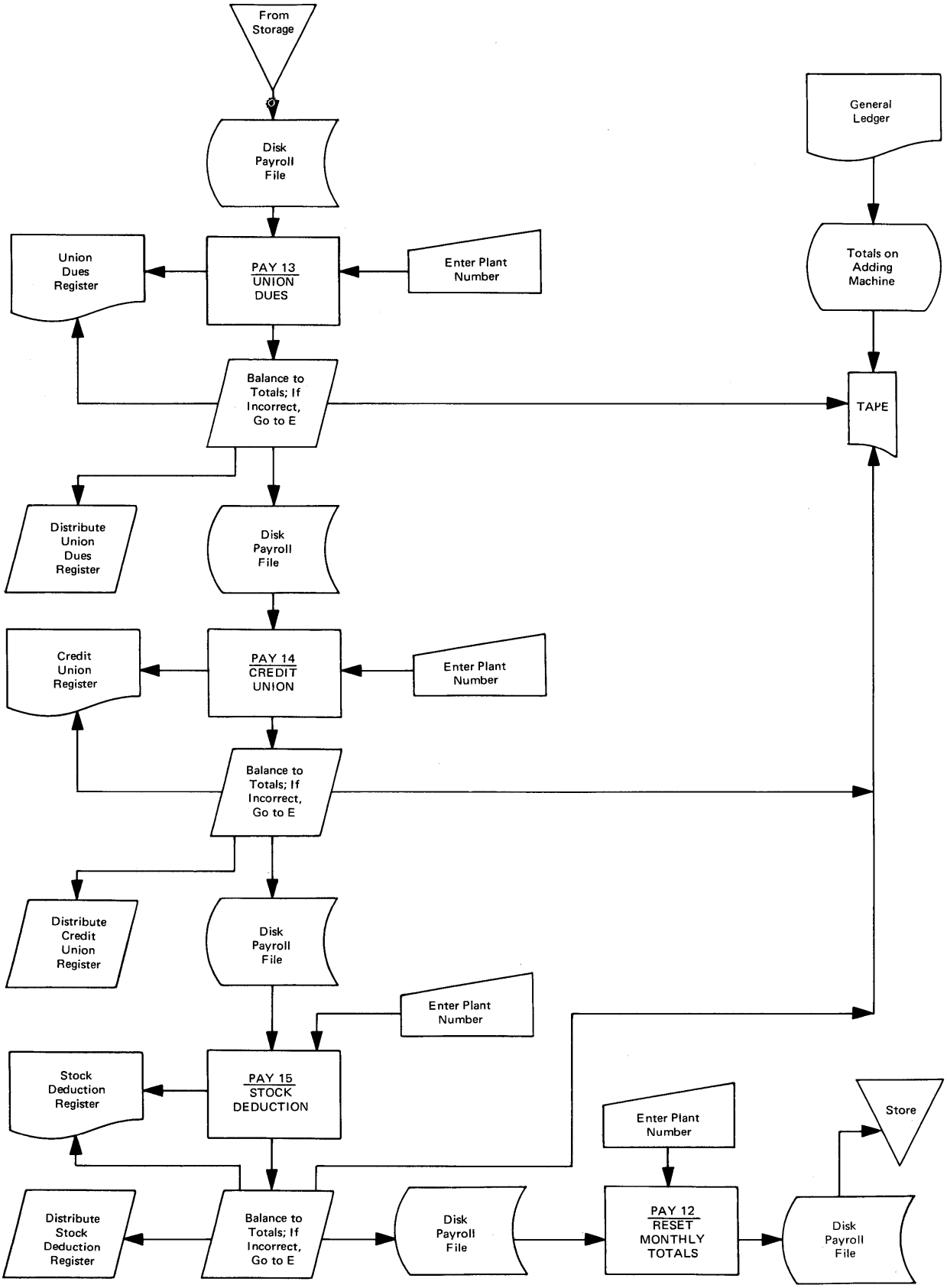


Print paychecks (weekly)

Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	50	05

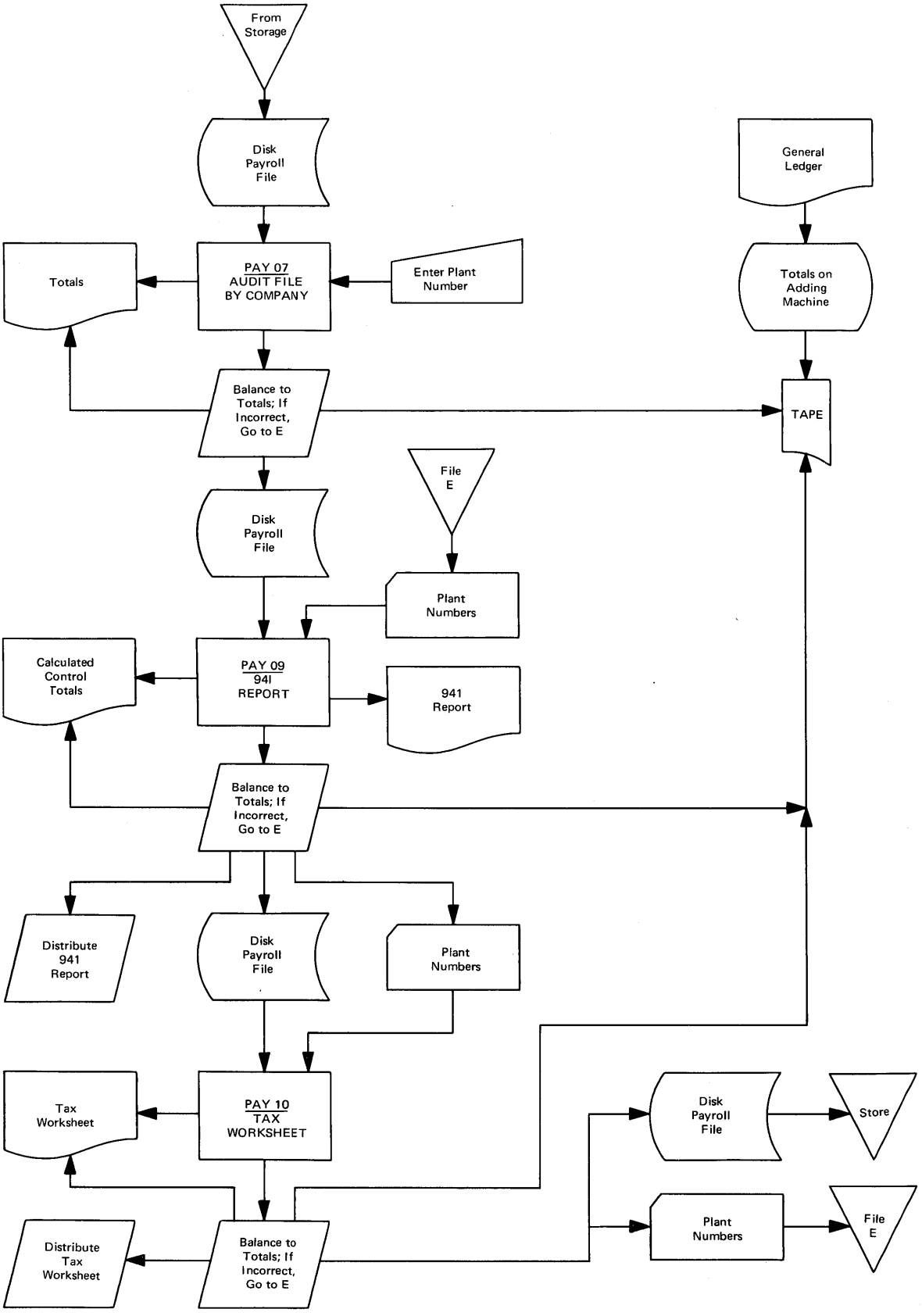


Payroll check voiding (as necessary)

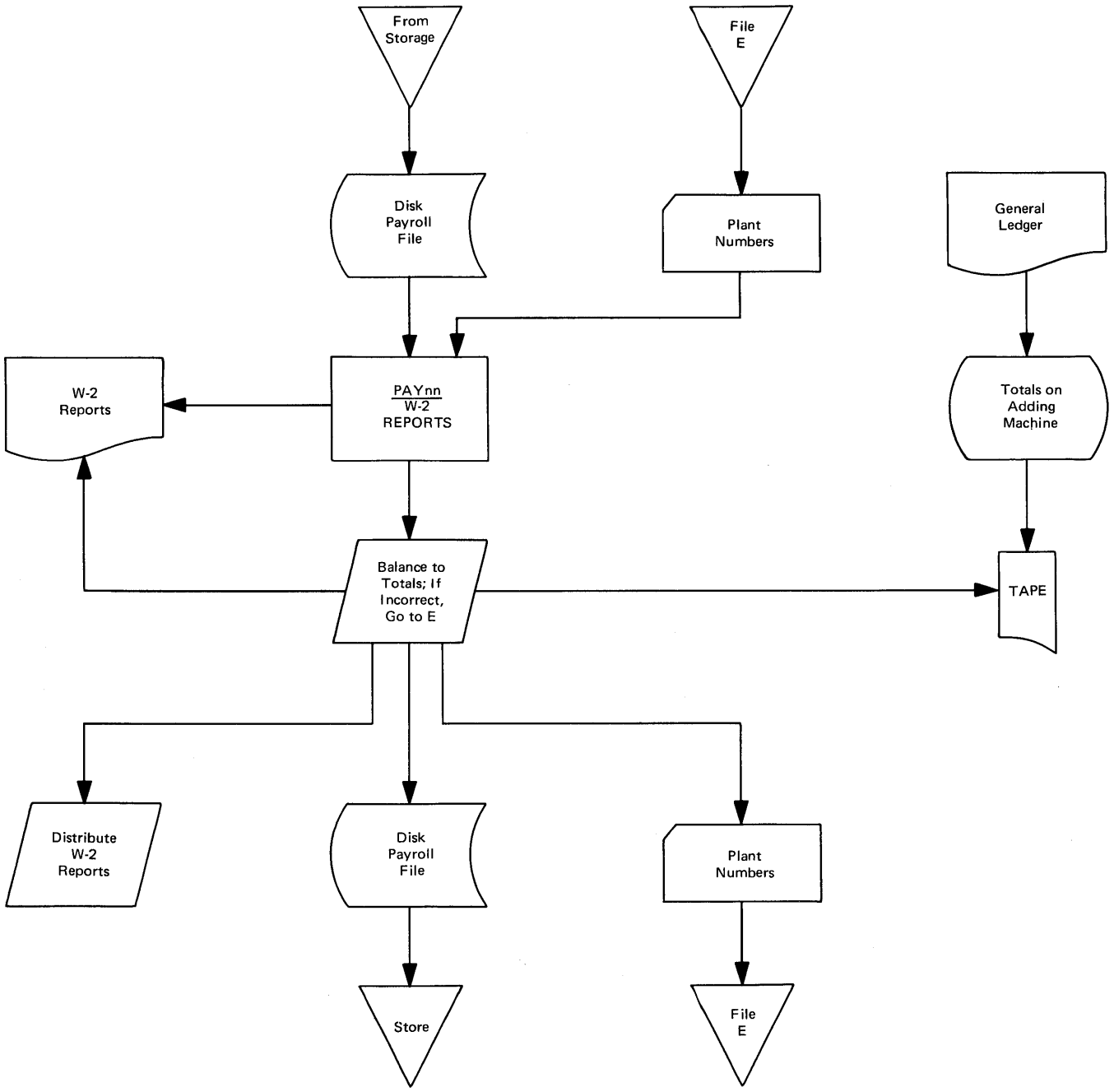


Payroll deduction registers (monthly)

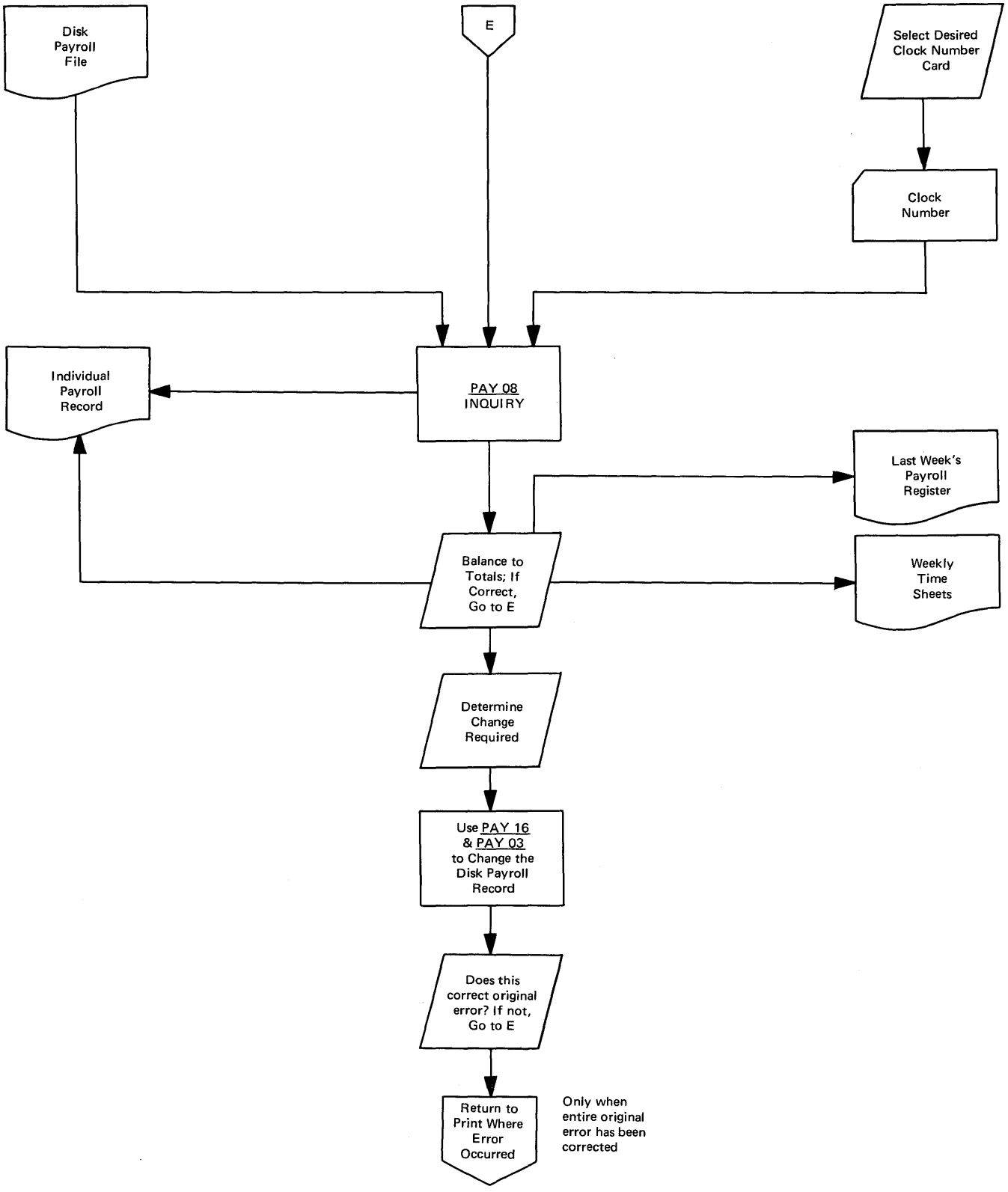
Section	Subsections		Page
20	50	50	07



Payroll file audit, 941, and tax worksheet (quarterly)



Print W-2 reports (annually)



Error detection and correction (as necessary)

Remember, all of these pages are developed by this point in your system design. In addition, they now become a part of your system documentation (see Section 35).

LANGUAGE SELECTION

Introduction

Now that your system has been specified, the implementation of the design must be considered. Since you will be writing a program, the logical question is "What language shall I use?"

IBM supplies and supports a wide variety of programming languages and application programs for the 1130 Computing System. Among the programming languages (Type I programs) are:

1130 Assembler Language

1130 FORTRAN

Some of the application programs (Type II programs) are:

- Continuous System Modeling Program (CSMP)
- Data Presentation System (DPS)
- Linear Programming - Mathematical Optimization Subroutine System (LPMOSS)
- Mechanism Design System - Gears and Springs
- Civil Engineering Coordinate Geometry (COGO)
- Numerical Surface Techniques and Contour Map Plotting
- Programs for Optical System Design (POSD)
- Programs for Petroleum Engineering and Exploration
- Project Control System (PCS)
- Route Accounting for Dairies and Bakeries
- Scientific Subroutine Package (SSP)
- Statistical System
- Structural Engineering Systems Solver (STRESS)
- Type Composition
- Work Measurement Aids
- Commercial Subroutine Package (CSP)

Your IBM representative can help you determine which programming language or application program should be used to implement your system.

In addition to these two types of programs, IBM's Program Information Department maintains a library of contributed programs and distributes these programs to interested parties. These are contributed to the library by:

1. IBM employees (Type III programs)
2. IBM customers (Type IV programs)

Type II and type IV programs have been submitted to the Program Information Department for general distribution in the expectation that they may prove useful to other members of the data processing community. The programs and documentation are, essentially, in the author's original form and have not been subjected to any formal testing. IBM serves only as the distribution agent. It is your responsibility to determine the usefulness and technical accuracy of the programs in your own environment. Unlike programming systems (Type I) and application programs (Type II), these programs are not part of the IBM support package.

The remainder of this section elaborates on each of the programming languages and application programs and discusses some of the considerations in answering "Which do I use?"

Programming Languages

Assembler Language

The IBM 1130 Assembler Language, while similar in structure to machine language, replaces binary instruction codes with symbols and uses labels for other fields of an instruction. Other features, such as pseudo operations, expand the programming facilities of machine language. Thus, the programmer has available, through an assembler language, all the flexibility and versatility of machine language, plus facilities that greatly reduce the machine language programming effort.

The IBM 1130 Assembler Language has two parts: the symbolic language used in writing a program and the assembler program that converts the symbolic language into machine language. An additional component is a library of relocatable I/O, arithmetic, and functional subroutines.

Symbolic language is the notation used by the programmer to write (code) the program. A program written in symbolic language is called a source program. It consists of systematically arranged mnemonic operation codes, special characters, addresses, and data, which symbolically describe the problem to be solved by the computer.

The use of symbolic language:

1. Makes a program independent of actual machine locations, thus allowing programs and routines to be relocated and combined as desired.
2. Allows routines within a program to be written independently and causes no loss of efficiency in the final program.
3. Permits instructions to be added to or deleted from a source program without the user having to reassign storage addresses.

The assembler program (processor), supplied to the user by IBM, operates from paper tape, from punched cards, or under control of the 1130 Disk Monitor Systems. It converts (assembles) a symbolic-language source program into a machine-language (object) program.

The conversion is one for one-- that is, the assembler produces one machine-language instruction for each symbolic-language instruction.

The IBM 1130 Assembler is a two-pass program. The processor is loaded into the computer and is followed by the first pass of the source program. During the first pass, source statements are read and a symbol table is generated. During the second pass, the source program is read again and the object program and/or error indications are punched into the first 20 columns of each source card. If paper tape is used, the second pass results in the punching of a new tape that contains both source statements and corresponding object information. If disk is used, this becomes a one-pass procedure, the disk being used for intermediate storage. Both card and tape object programs must be compressed (via a Compressor Program supplied with the assembler) into a relocatable binary deck (or tape) before they can be loaded into core storage for execution.

The output from the second pass is called the list deck (or tape) and can be used to obtain a program listing of source statements and corresponding ing object statements. Use of disk automatically compresses the object program into relocatable (loadable) form. A program listing is an option if the one-pass disk procedure is used.

A library of I/O, arithmetic, and functional subroutines is available for use with the IBM 1130 Assembler.

The user can incorporate any subroutine into his program by simply writing a statement referring to the subroutine name. The assembler generates the linkage necessary to provide a path to the subroutine and a return path to the user's program. The ability to use subroutines simplifies programming and reduces the time required to write a program.

A description of available subroutines is contained in the IBM 1130 Subroutine Library (C26-5929).

FORTRAN Language

FORTRAN (FORmula TRANslation) is a coding system with a language that closely resembles the language of mathematics. It is a system designed primarily for scientific and engineering computations. Since this system is essentially problem-oriented rather than machine-oriented, it provides scientists and engineers with a method of communication that is more familiar, easier to learn, and easier to use than actual computer language.

The IBM 1130 Basic FORTRAN IV Programming System consists of two parts: the language and the compiler. The language is a set of statements, composed of expressions and operators, that are used in writing the source program. The 1130 FORTRAN compiler, provided by IBM, is a program that translates the source program statements into a form suitable for execution on the IBM 1130 Computing System. The translated statements are known as the object program. The compiler detects

certain errors in the source program and writes appropriate messages on the console printer, 1132 Printer, or 1403 Printer. At the user's option, the compiler also produces a listing of the source program and storage allocation.

Application Programs

Continuous System Modeling Program

This program provides engineers and scientists with a simple but versatile tool for solving dynamic system simulation problems. For many problems, this program obviates the need to use an analog computer facility.

CSMP is a "digital analog simulator" program using a block-oriented input language in which the functional blocks represent the elements and organization of an analog computer. A total of 25 standard functional blocks plus the ability to define special functions are provided. The continuous system model may be developed and tested, and results observed in an online interactive mode by means of the console keyboard and output devices. The simplicity of the language statements enables a user to rapidly gain proficiency with the program and facilitates modification of the model via the console. In addition, via the console printer, the beginner is provided instructional comments that can be suppressed as experience is gained. Simplicity and flexibility are the foremost characteristics of the program.

Data Presentation System

This program can present a large variety of data in plotted forms such as graphs, charts, schematics, and modified drawings. It supplies high-quality, hard-copy, graphic output at exceptionally low cost. The system can be used independently as a Graphic Report Generator, or the user can choose one or two levels of subroutines from the system for inclusion in his own graphic output programs. These three levels of access are made even more flexible by several system modification and expansion features. The scope and flexibility of DPS make it valuable in almost every application of the IBM 1130 Computing System.

Linear Programming -- Mathematical Optimization Subroutine System

LP-MOSS provides the 1130 disk user with a simple, efficient means of solving linear programming problems and a means for implementing a variety of mathematical optimization applications.

Mathematical optimization is any mathematical technique for determining the optimum use of various resources such as capital, raw materials, manpower, and plant or other facilities. The technique seeks to attain a particular objective (for example, minimum costs or maximum profit) when there are alternate uses for the resources. Linear programming is the most widely used of these techniques, and has been used to allocate, assign, schedule, select, or evaluate the uses of limited resources for various jobs, such as blending, mixing, bidding, cutting, trimming, pricing, purchasing, planning, and the transportation and distribution of raw materials and finished products.

Mechanism Design System -- Gears and Springs

This program provides design and analysis for five distinct mechanical components used in a wide variety of machines in all industries. Spur and helical gears, compression, extension, and torsion springs are the components covered. The program provides the mechanical engineer and mechanism designer with a low-cost, flexible, easy-to-use program set which will design new parts or analyze existing parts.

The engineer is expected to furnish the problem description in terms of design restrictions and material parameters. This description is in a flexible problem language format which greatly simplifies man-machine communication. Operation can be either by a batch card input mode or in a conversational typewriter input mode. In the latter case, an engineer can readily evaluate parametric changes and truly use the computer as a design tool.

Civil Engineering Coordinate Geometry

COGO is a simple, efficient tool designed especially to assist the civil engineer with a wide variety of geometric calculations. With COGO, the engineer can state his problems using familiar terminology common to the engineering field. No knowledge of traditional programming is necessary.

The civil engineer requires a simple but efficient means to solve geometric problems now being done laboriously by hand. 1130 COGO provides the solution to his problem by allowing the engineer to (1) enter the data for the job into the computer by typewriter or punched cards, using a language with which he is familiar, and (2) to have solutions automatically printed out. COGO is especially useful because it provides the facility for the engineer to try many different methods of solving a problem.

COGO can be used for many different types of jobs, e.g., control surveys, highway design, right-of-way

surveys, bridge geometry, subdivision calculations, land surveying, construction layout.

COGO can, in fact, be used wherever geometric calculation is required.

Numerical Surface Techniques and Contour Map Plotting

This program provides a variety of techniques for describing and operating on surfaces. Surfaces may be described analytically by equations or numerically by sets of data points. In addition, various arithmetic and logical operations may be performed on these surfaces. These techniques may be carried out individually or in various combinations by storing intermediate data in the online disk storage. Final output is commonly in the form of maps drawn by the 1627 Plotter, but may optionally be in card form.

Optical System Design

POSD provides the optical designer with a convenient, efficient design tool. It is in the Computer Aided Design (CAD) category of programs, thus exhibiting a close man-machine relationship throughout the design task. The 1130 Computing System is ideal for this interaction, because it is fast, convenient, and inexpensive to use.

POSD removes the drudgery and error-proneness from the innumerable calculations required in the optical design and evaluation process and allows the designer to spend his time exercising creative and critical judgments. The program gives the designer step-by-step assistance from the very early stages of the design through to the final optimization process. In addition, the designer may evaluate the quality of his design at any time he chooses through many data plot or printout routines or both. Using this program, the optical designer can tackle virtually any lens system, including those requiring a high degree of sophistication, with the assurance that the lens performance will meet specifications in modeling and manufacture.

Programs for Petroleum Engineering and Exploration

Economic Evaluation of Petroleum Projects Program can be used to screen drilling proposals and rank them according to their profitability. Given the investment schedule and production forecast for an exploration and drilling prospect, the programs compute the payout period and rate of return using the discounted cash flow method.

Casing Design Program allows the user to design the most economical combination casing string, in terms of grade and weight, that will meet the requirements of a given well.

Decline Curve Analysis Program computes the coefficients in the equation best fitting past production data and the reserves associated with these data.

Tarner Material Balance Program is an aid in predicting the performance of a reservoir.

Schilthuis Material Balance Program for a reservoir that is subject to water influx, is evaluated at each past production data point (for up to 28 points). These values are weighted according to oil production and subjected to a least-squares solution to compute a most probable value of the original oil in place.

Two-Dimensional Waterflooding Program allows the user to determine the pressure distribution throughout a reservoir, taking into consideration the effect of water injection.

Gas Deliverability Program allows the user to project the annual rate at which volumes of gas reserves may be received into gathering systems.

Multi-State Flash Calculation Program is a general purpose flash claculation program that can be used for a variety of the computations made by the petroleum engineer. The program may be used to design surface separators or to determine the physical properties of the oil and gas from a surface facility. A laboratory differential liberation may be simulated.

Velocity Functions from Time-Depth Data Program permits a geophysicist to derive a velocity function and to prepare a tabulated time-depth chart from well velocity data.

Wave-Front Ray-Path Determination Program provides a flexible method to compute and tabulate a seismic wave-front ray-path chart; the geophysicist uses such a chart to restore seismic reflections to their true subsurface position.

Synthetic Seismogram Program computes and plots a one-dimensional seismic model from well log data.

Gravity and Magnetics Continuations, Derivatives, and Residual Program provides a method for computing (1) upward and downward continuations of gravity and magnetic fields, (2) first and second derivatives of these fields, (3) residuals of arbitrary type for gravity and magnetic values.

Theoretical Gravity of a 3-D Mass Program allows the user to establish a synthetic gravity anomaly by computing the theoretical gravity of an assumed mass.

Quantitive Log Analysis Program permits the user to compute the porosity and water saturation on prospective hydrocarbon zones in a well, using data from several log combinations.

Dipmeter Program is designed to assist in the analysis of the continuous dipmeter log by calculating the true dip of intervals in a well.

Project Control System

This program provides a basic tool needed by management to fulfill its responsibilities in the planning, supervising, and controlling of project-oriented work. In addition to critical path analysis, the system provides the capability for summarizing externally prepared resource and cost information.

For critical path networks, the 1130 PCS will process 2,000 activities either in the form of precedence lists or in ij/PERT/CPM notation. Its design allows for a simple approach to networking, but also offers many of the features normally found only in programs designed for large computers.

Route Accounting for Dairies and Bakeries

This is a set of programs offering the functions of route settlement and associated report preparation as required in the dairy and baking industry. Output includes order listings, production requirements, load listings, product load strips, route settlement, and statistical reports.

Scientific Subroutine Package

SSP is a collection of FORTRAN subroutines that provide a major addition to those built into FORTRAN. They are input/output-free, computational building blocks that can be combined with a user's input, output, or computational routines to meet his individual needs. The package has widespread application to the solution of problems in research, development, and design, in both science and engineering, wherever FORTRAN is used.

Statistical System

This is a collection of four major tools: stepwise regression analysis, factor analysis, analysis of variance, and orthogonal polynomial curve fitting. This flexible system accepts user-supplied control cards (and data) that instruct the system to perform one or more of the above analyses.

Structural Engineering Systems Solver

STRESS is a powerful tool for solving structural engineering problems. It is a problem-oriented language that enables the engineer to communicate with the computer even though he has had no previous programming experience.

This program covers many application areas in the field of structural analysis. Most buildings and bridges are designed by consulting engineers or government agencies, but many other types of structures in other industries can also be designed using 1130 STRESS. Some of the other industries and typical applications for each are:

Industry	Typical Application
Aerospace	Wing members
Manufacturing	Conveyor framing, plant design
Process	Supporting towers
Utilities	Transmission towers, culvert sections
Federal	Dam design, ship design

Type Composition

This program extends the speed and flexibility of a digital computer into the composing rooms of the printing industry. Type compositors can use this program to provide significant time savings in transcribing textual material into a form required by linecasting machines for setting type.

The program is designed to allow computer acceptance of perforated paper tape containing (1) the copy that is to appear in print and (2) instructions pertaining to a desired printing format. From the paper tape, a tape suitable for controlling the operations of a linecasting machine is produced and allocated to the proper point in the composing room. The output tape contains the original copy in the form of properly justified lines arranged according to the stylistic and graphic requirements described by the user with the format instructions. The programs are capable of producing justified lines in any format within the inherent limitations of the linecasting machine.

Work Measurement Aids

This program aids manufacturers who need to know the time it should take to manufacture a product. This task, often referred to as work measurement, has traditionally been very time-consuming and expensive. Work Measurement Aids provides two programs to assist in setting time standards. This information also forms the foundation for labor standards, cost estimates, machine operation instructions, and scheduling input. The two programs are:

Machinability, which determines optimum machine tool parameters such as speed, feed, horsepower, tool life, and process time for machining operations.

Work Measurement Sampling, which determines job standards for long cycle operations (over 15 minutes) and the distribution of time to job activities (conventional work sampling).

Commercial Subroutine Package

This program provides the scientific and engineering user with added capabilities for handling functions and techniques common to commercial programming. It is a set of 28 subroutines callable by the FORTRAN programmer in a similar manner to such standard functions as sine, cosine, square root, etc. The subroutines enable the 1130 user to add commercial applications such as payroll, cost accounting, and many others.

The additional functions supplied are variable length alphameric move, variable length alphameric compare, variable length alphameric edit, variable length conversion from EBCDIC to floating-point, variable length conversion from floating-point to EBCDIC, zone manipulation, fill an area with a specified character, stacker select, variable length decimal add, variable length decimal subtract, variable length decimal multiply, variable length decimal divide, variable length decimal compare, sign manipulation, overlapping printing and carriage control, overlapped reading of cards with conversion of card codes, overlapped printing on the console printer, and conversion from one character per word to two characters per word.

Which Programming Language or Application Program Should You Use?

In terms of coding ease and elapsed time from problem definition to operating program, the programming techniques available to you will generally rank as follows:

1. Application programs (except Commercial Subroutine Package and Scientific Subroutine Package)
2. FORTRAN, Commercial Subroutine Package, and Scientific Subroutine Package
3. Assembler Language

The Assembler Language is rarely used, because FORTRAN, augmented by the Commercial Subroutine Package and Scientific Subroutine Package, is more than capable of handling almost all applications, is easier to code, and produces efficient programs.

The brief descriptions given earlier will help you to select the best language in which to program your applications. A preview of the payroll programs given in Sections 25 and 35 will give you a clearer picture of the kind and amount of writing required to code some typical commercial jobs.

In addition, Section 70 discusses FORTRAN, the Commercial Subroutine Package, and how to use these two tools in implementing your system design.

Section 25: PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT

CONTENTS

Introduction 25.01.00
Programming and Documentation Standards 25.10.00
Program Change Authorization 25.20.00
Programming Aids 25.30.00
  Documenting Variable Usage 25.30.10
  Modular Programming 25.30.20
Programming Examples 25.40.00
  Introduction 25.40.01
  Example 1: File Creation 25.40.10
  Example 2: Add Name to the File ... 25.40.20
  Example 3: Changes to the File 25.40.30
  Example 4: Calculations and Payroll Register 25.40.40
  Example 5: Check Writing 25.40.50
  Example 6: Check Register 25.40.60
  Example 7: 941 Report 25.40.70

INTRODUCTION

This section is a workbook for the programmer. Primarily by example, and to some extent by narrative, he is furnished with a guide to coding.

First, suggestions are made for the adoption of certain standard practices that will make the programming job easier and the results more uniform. Then follows a series of programming aids.

The bulk of this section is occupied by the final part, a group of examples of coding required to implement a significant part of the payroll system discussed earlier. They will prove useful in providing a starting point for the programmer and illustrating proven programming techniques, rather than in being usable without change for any given installation's system. Note that programs are written at this point in the installation of your system. Also, Variable Summary Sheets are filled in and flowcharts are drawn. These last two items now become a part of your documentation (note references to Section 35).

PROGRAMMING AND DOCUMENTATION STANDARDS

For a discussion of the documentation that you should have upon completion of a program, see Section 35.

It is advisable to decide on and write down, perhaps following this page, your own standard procedures for handling the situations below. You should have some knowledge of programming before attempting to do this.

1. Alternative methods of handling standard types of errors (for example, missing date card):
   a. Assign a standard halt number.
   b. Assign a standard halt number and error message.
   c. Assign a standard error stacker; do not halt.
2. Standard error messages:
   a. Establish a log of error messages and halt numbers and their meaning.
   b. Standardize spacing, skipping, location, and whether to halt for each standard error message.
3. Standard FORTRAN labels:
   a. Assign a standard symbolic name for each I/O device.
   b. Assign standard field names for fields used frequently.
   c. Assign standard subroutine names for routines used frequently.
4. Record layout conventions:
   a. Define standard heading (for example, date to left, title in center, report number and page number to right).
   b. Define spacing (for example, when listing, single-space detail, double after minor, triple after intermediate and up; when tabbing, single-space after minor, double after intermediate, triple after major and up).
   c. Define how totals are to be indicated (with asterisks or message).
   d. Define how final totals and control totals are to be printed (for example, at bottom of page, on next page).
5. Specify when flowcharts are required for program logic:
   a. When a significant number of GO TO or IF statements are used.
   b. When a complex table lookup is performed.
   c. Whenever the logic of the computation is so complex that another person would have difficulty following it without the aid of a chart (decision tables may be best).
6. Describe how program changes are to be made:
   a. Require changes to be authorized.
   b. Assign all changes to a programmer through the manager of data processing.
   c. Keep track of time spent making program changes by application and by initiator of change.
   d. Require that all necessary documentation be brought up to date.
7. Outline methods of testing programs:
   a. Define conditions in which a test deck is sufficient.
   b. Define conditions in which a program must be production-tested before installation.
8. Standardize writing of specifications:
   a. Establish a standard identification (see the accompanying FORTRAN coding form).
   b. Use a standard form of program identification, such as a three-character application code followed by a two-digit program number (for instance, PAY10, PAY20, BIL10).

PROGRAM CHANGE AUTHORIZATION

All changes to an operating program should be controlled in order to avoid confusion and unauthorized changes. The following sheet is suggested as a means of maintaining control.

PROGRAM CHANGE AUTHORIZATION

Application_____ Program _____

Requested by:_____ Date__/__/____

Description of the Change _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Change Authorized by_____ Date Authorized__/__/__

Date Change to be Effective__/__/_____ Actual Effective Date__/__/__

Programmer:

Original_____ Assigned for Change _____

Date Assigned__/__/__ Date Completed__/__/__

Systems Design Hours Required_____

Coding/Debugging Hours Required_____

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program		Punching Instructions: Graphic / Punch	Page of
Programmer	Date	Card Form # *	Identification (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		JOB NAME
C		JOB NUMBER
C		
C		PROGRAMMER
C		DATE CODED
C		DATE UPDATED
C		
C		FILE NAME / FILE NUMBER / RECORD LENGTH / NO. OF RECORDS PER SECTOR
C		INPUT FILES 1.
C		2.
C		
C		OUTPUT FILES 1.
C		2.
C		3.
C		

THIS IS A STANDARD SUGGESTED SPECIFICATION SHEET, WHICH CAN BE USED FOR ALL FORTRAN PROGRAMS.

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

PROGRAMMING AIDS

Documenting Variable Usage

Especially when writing a large program in FORTRAN, it is difficult to remember the functions for which the variables have been used. This problem may arise during testing, particularly when several programs are being tested at one time. Again, program revision at a later date can be difficult, and the problem is intensified if the revision is being done by someone other than the original programmer.

The Variable Summary Sheet is a suggested form for recording the usage of variables.

The sample shown here is related to PAY01 shown later in this section. Both the variables used and the type (I, R, D, A) are indicated in the columns to the left of the form.

VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application Date

Program Name No. Programmer

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	10000.00	0.00	Maximum check amount for a file.
COMP	A2	16	I,O	-	—	Company name.
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	0.00	0.00	Trade association reports.
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	Set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks.
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Employee Files, set up by plant
IND	I	1	T	106	101	File number of index for a plant. P# +100
INDEX	I	250	T	XXXX	1000	Index to plant now being processed
INIT	I	1	O	0	0	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Indexes to Employee File
IN2	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IPD	I	1	O	0	0	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISUPP	I	13	O	0	0	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	0	Account number for posting to in General Ledger
IWEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of the month

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Modular Programming

General

Modular programming is used to divide your problem solution into its logical parts or routines so that each routine may be programmed independently. It enables your complex problems to be divided into many simple sections. A building block program is thereby created that is controlled by a single routine commonly known as the "main line".

A modular program utilizes the same communication system as established by an organization chart. Work assignment decisions are made by the main line routine, which is not concerned with the functions of the processing routines. If for some reason a routine is revised or eliminated, other processing routines within the program are not affected. However, a segment of the main line might be changed.

There are three primary design criteria of modular programming: ease of understanding, ease of program modification, standardization of program construction.

To prepare and use an operational program effectively and efficiently, you must be able to understand the content of the program readily. Ease of understanding is provided in the following three ways:

1. Modular flowcharts. A modular system flowchart gives an overall picture of the major components and structure of the routine; program flowcharts then progress to any desired level of detail, depending on the complexity of the routine. The program coding is referenced throughout.
2. Detailed narrative of each routine. The narrative of each routine states the purpose of the routine, describes the data processed by the routine, and explains each step of the program logic as portrayed by the modular flowchart of the routine.
3. Programming conventions. The use of standard labeling conventions and standard program documentation techniques enables a person unfamiliar with the program to readily understand the program content.

Years of experience have shown that, with 98% assurance, all of your operational programs will require modification and change during their useful life. Ease of program modification is of cardinal importance when your program must be converted to fit a specific new situation. This may be because of changing company policy, varied environmental parameters or different management objectives.

Your programmer, then, has the problem of creating a program that can be adjusted to each specific situation. There are two ways of handling this problem.

One is to try to anticipate every type of special situation that might be encountered and write a set of routines to handle each situation. This would require a fantastic ability to forecast the future and would lead to slow, cumbersome programs.

The other alternative is to create a program that can be quickly understood and easily modified to reflect changing conditions. Modular programming aims to accomplish the latter alternative.

Once again, you may more readily prepare and more quickly implement an operational program if all the runs (programs) within your application adhere to a standardized construction. As indicated above, the logical structure of your program must be such that modifications and additions can be easily made.

Consider the problem of multiple routines - for instance, three economic order quantity routines. The normal method of lumping these three routines into a program necessitates setting switches to tell the program which routine to excute at a given time. Any attempt to modify one of the existing routines necessitates trying to extract the routine, patching up the holes in the flow of the program created by the changes, and then fitting the modified routine back in. Anyone who has ever tried to modify a program written by someone else knows how difficult it is to dissect and patch another person's logic if the routines are intertwined.

Using modular programming, each routine is a separate entity. Your main line routine provides the master control that ties all of your individual processing routines together and coordinates their activity.

Modification of routines is simplified. Furthermore, new routines may be added by simply expanding the main line routine to transfer control to the new routine in the proper sequence.

Modular Programming Conventions

Modularity is accomplished by employing the following conventions:

1. The main line
   a. The main line routine makes all decisions governing the flow of data to the proper processing routines.
   b. No processing routine can direct data flow to another processing routine.

c. Input and output functions that are common to more than one processing routine are controlled by the main line routine.

2. Processing routines
   a. A separate processing routine is created for each logical segment of the program. It should accomplish one task in its totality.
   b. Each processing routine is complete within itself, with its own defined areas, when such areas are for the exclusive use of that routine. No decision made outside the segment should determine the processing within a segment, and likewise, no decision within a segment should determine the processing outside the segment.
   c. Each routine is designed so that it is, in effect, an out-of-line subroutine. Control is transferred to the processing routine from the main line routine, and when the routine has performed its function, it sends control back to the main line routine. Entrance to and exit from the routine never depends on a particular preceding or trailing segment.
   d. A processing routine may transfer control to a multiple-use subroutine. When that routine has performed its function, it transfers control back to the processing routine.
   e. Input or output functions that affect only one processing routine may be performed by that routine. All segments should contain their own initialization to ensure noninterference with other segments.
   f. A debugging aid that is sometimes useful is the inclusion of pauses at the exit of processing routines. During testing, the pause indicates that a particular processing routine has been executed. After the routine is checked out, the pause is removed. The insertion of GO TOs into the program at strategic points may also be used to bypass the testing of particular routines. Action to be taken regarding such PAUSEs and GO TOs must be known and documented before the testing session. This technique tends to make good use of test time.

3. Multiple-use subroutines
   a. If the same sequence of statements is used by two or more processing routines, these statements should be established as a multiple-use out-of-line subroutine.
   b. A multiple-use subroutine must be well documented for the purpose of program modification. Comments cards should be used to indicate which processing routines call upon each multiple-use routine and to document the linkage established.

Designing a Run

To design a modular program, determine the program variables. List the requirements, elements, and functions of the program as they come to mind, giving no attention to logical order.

Once the variables have been set down, reviewed, and revised, determine the logical order of the processing routines, and design the main line of your program. Construct your main line so that the largest volume of data is processed by the lowest number of instructions - that is, in the fastest possible way. A speedy main line contributes greatly to the throughput capabilities of your program.

Once you have established the logic of your main line, draw the overall, big-picture, system flowchart. Give careful attention to this diagram because it will tend to reveal most errors in logic.

The following components are generally found to be present in the main line of typical programs:

1. Beginning of item. Before obtaining a record, it is often necessary to initialize certain switches, counters, and areas. Generally, fewer instructions are required to initialize before entering a routine than after exiting from it, since routines commonly have several exits.

2. Obtain the item. This segment of the run retrieves the record, sequence-checks the file, and updates the input control.

3. Process the item. The processing of the record is accomplished. The main line transfers control to the proper processing routines in the proper sequence.

4. End of item. Generally, there are a few instructions to be executed just before disposing of a record. The instructions associated with the clean-up work for the present record should not be confused with initialization for the next record.

5. Dispose of the item. This segment of your run generally puts the record in an output file, updates the output controls, and transfers the program to the beginning-of-item routine to start the loop again.

Use the modular technique with a block wherever it simplifies the logic of the processing routine. Each routine should be as efficient as possible.

Look for opportunities to consolidate several in-line routines into one multiple-use subroutine. While sophisticated programming techniques are acceptable, the particular degree of skill and knowledge available to maintain and modify the program should be kept in mind.

The following suggestions may help when programming and documenting:

1. List the functions of your routine.
2. Plan the logic of your routine and sketch a flowchart.
3. Program your routine.
4. Draw the final modular flowcharts of your routine, shown to the necessary levels of detail.
5. Create the test data so that every leg of your routine will be thoroughly tested.
6. Write the detailed narrative of your routine.

It is easier to document your routine when the information is fresh in your mind; furthermore, the documentation thus produced is more meaningful and more comprehensive.

Summary

It has been found that programs employing the modular technique are efficient from the standpoint of both core storage utilization and program execution time. Section 90 illustrates the importance of these techniques.

Furthermore, extremely comprehensive and detailed applications, designed and documented with the use of modular techniques, may be readily understood by non-program-oriented personnel, ranging from company executives to novice programmers.

PROGRAMMING EXAMPLES

Introduction

The examples in this section show various basic programs in the payroll system. Note that these examples are programming illustrations and therefore may not be considered as complete, usable programs.

The programs are arranged in the order of their complexity, progressing from the simplest to a complex file-update run with exception reporting.

Example 1: File Creation

This program reads cards containing employee earnings information. The information is edited for reasonableness and then written onto the disk.

The program illustrates a simple single-file at a time run, with a minimum of calculations. The following programming techniques have been used:

1. Documenting with comments. Comment cards have been used to document the program logic. The program name and other indicative information are documented at the beginning of the program. Comment cards describing the processing to be performed are placed before each logical section of the program.

2. One-at-a-time input from the console keyboard. Data items to be read from the console keyboard are requested one at a time (statements 69+1, 69+2, and 69+3). This technique will reduce console input errors and will notify the operator when a requested field has been completed (the keyboard request light will go out).

3. Entering a partial record. Since the complete employee record requires more than 80 card columns, it cannot be punched in one card. The name, which requires 18 card columns, is punched on a second card. However, to prevent a name card and its associated employee record card from becoming separated, the employee name is stored on the disk by PAY02.

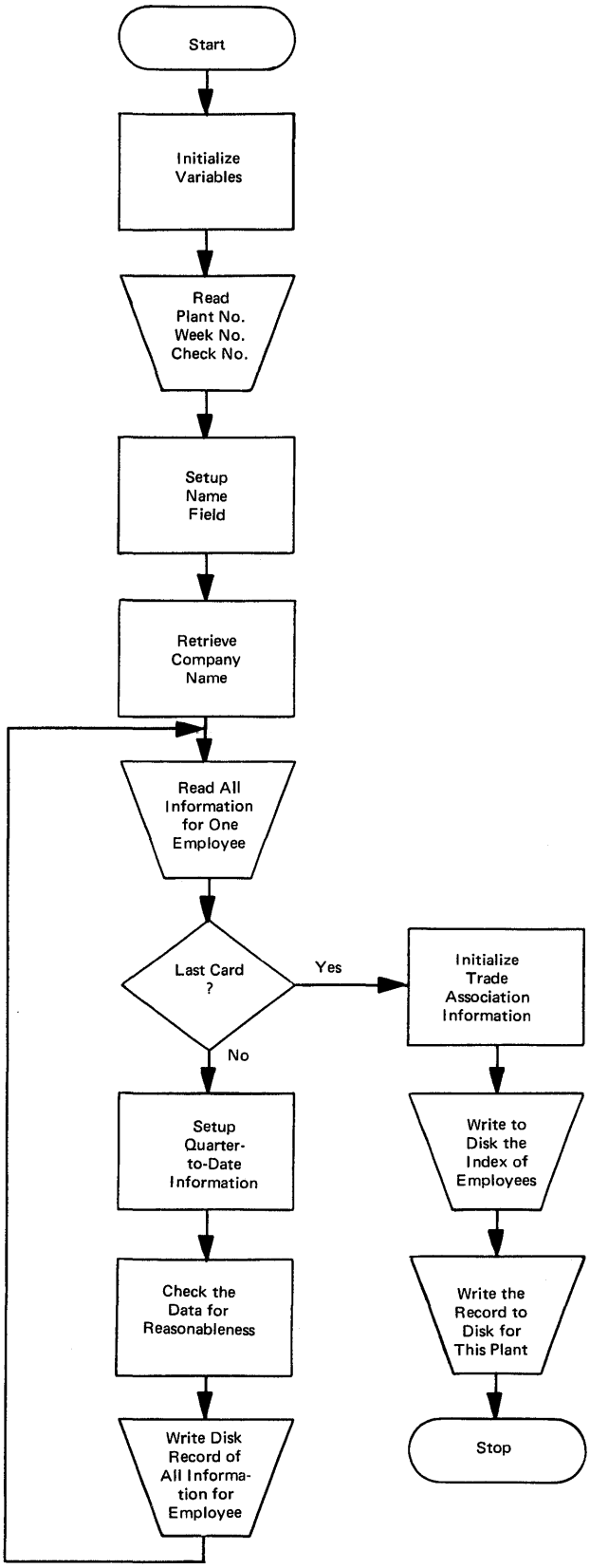
4. Editing for reasonableness. Fields on a card which have limits, or a range of values, are checked to ensure that they fall within the range (statements 100 through 109). This provides an effective control of the information being stored on the disk.

5. Program identification numbering. The program identification for the File Creation Program in the Payroll System is PAY01. This method of identification uses a three-character alphameric abbreviation of the application, followed by the two-digit run number in the application. Identifying programs and documentation in this manner facilitates an efficient system of organizing and filing the documentation and the various decks pertaining to each computer run.

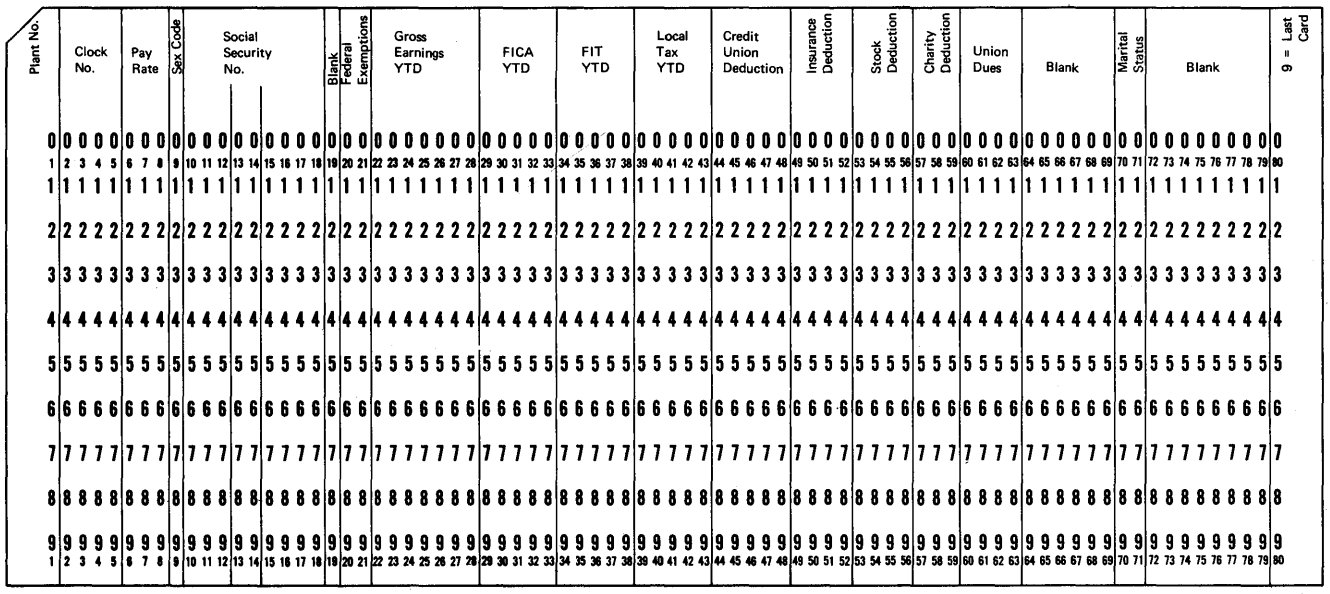
6. Using packed data. To take full advantage of the disk storage available, as much information as possible is packed. This includes the employee and plant name fields. In addition, where possible, some values are compressed by storing them as integers rather than real numbers.

7. Setting up for future reference to the file. The file organization scheme to be used in the payroll system is indexed sequential. This program must create the index, in addition to creating the file. Notice that there is an index entry for each employee. Later programs will be able to locate any employee by simply searching the index in core storage and then reading the employee record. The relative position of the employee number in the index is the record number of the employee in the file.

8. Variable Summary Sheets. These very important forms are present in the following pages. They have been prepared for this program and all other programs in the system.


Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No. Week No. Check No.
Setup Name Field
Retrieve Company Name
Read All Information for One Employee
Last Card ?
Yes
No
Initialize Trade Association Information
Write to Disk the Index of Employees
Write the Record to Disk for This Plant
Stop
Setup Quarter-to-Date Information
Check the Data for Reasonableness
Write Disk Record of All Information for Employee

Section	Subsections		Page
25	40	10	03



VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer

FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	100000	0.00	Maximum check amount for a file.
COMP	A2	16	I,O	–	—	Company name.
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	0.00	0.00	Trade association reports.
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	Set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks.
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Employee Files, set up by plant
IND	I	1	T	106	101	File number of index for a plant. P# +100
INDEX	I	250	T	xxxx	1000	Index to plant now being processed
INIT	I	1	O	0	0	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Indexes to Employee File
IN2	I	1	N	–	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	–	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	–	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IPD	I	1	O	0	0	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISUPP	I	13	O	0	0	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	0	Account number for posting to in General Ledger
IWEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of the month

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
25	40	10	05

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
IWVA	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
K	I	1	T	9	Ø	Last card test
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	Ø	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LST	I	1	T	250	250	Last record number in a file
LYRHR	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
M	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status - (1-single), (2-married)
MUNC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	I,O	–	–	Dummy area to allocated space for name
NCHCK	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Credit union deduction
NCUDD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Union dues deduction
NINS	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NOPLT	I	1	T	6	1	Plant number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.ØØ	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex-(1-female),(2-male),(3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	Always	9 digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status-(1-union),(2-trucker),(3-non-union, full time),(4-non-union, part time),(5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Stock deduction
NSTKD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	United appeal deductions
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1ØØØ	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	Ø	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	Ø	State exemptions
QRTD	R	6/18	O	XXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Quarter-to-date information (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) Loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay.
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Year-to-date information (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hrs., (10) OT hrs., (11) bonus hrs., (12) reg. erns, (13) OT erns., (14) bonus erns.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic ØO1IZ	Card Form # *
		Punch Ø X6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		JOB NAME -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - FILE CREATION
C		JOB NUMBER -- PAYØ1
C		
C		PROGRAMMER -- C.R.KLICK
C		DATE CODED -- 12/23/67
C		DATE UPDATED --
C		
C		FILE FILE RECORD NO. OF RECORDS
C		NAME NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTOR
C		INPUT FILES -- NONE
C		
C		OUTPUT FILES -- 1. COLFP 1 16Ø 25Ø 2
C		2. WVAFP 2 16Ø 9Ø 2
C		3. MNCFP 3 16Ø 2ØØ 2
C		4. LBOFP 4 16Ø 5Ø 2
C		5. LBTFP 5 16Ø 15Ø 2
C		6. LMCFP 6 11Ø 3Ø 2
C		7. PINFO 25 1Ø6 6 3
C		8. INDX1 1Ø1 1 25Ø 32Ø
C		9. INDX2 1Ø2 1 9Ø 32Ø
C		10. INDX3 1Ø3 1 2ØØ 32Ø

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic ØO1IZ	Card Form # *
		Punch Ø X6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		11. INDX4 104 1 50 320
C		12. INDX5 105 1 150 320
C		13. INDX6 106 1 30 320
C		

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:
Punching Instructions — Graphic: ϕ 0 1 I Z ; Punch: ϕ 6 1 12 9 ϕ 9
Card Form # *
Page of
Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		
C		ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE
C		
		INTEIGER COMP(116)
		DIMEWSION FIBRE(8), INDEX(25ϕ), ISUPP(113), ITOT(111), NAME(9),
	1	NSSAIN(3), QRTD(6), YTD(114)
C		
C		DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND
C		EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR NEXT RECORD NUMBER
C		
		DEFINE FILE 1(25ϕ,16ϕ,U,ICOL), 2(9ϕ,16ϕ,U,IWVA),
	1	3(2ϕϕ,16ϕ,U,MUNC), 4(5ϕ,16ϕ,U,LBO),
	2	5(15ϕ,16ϕ,U,LBT), 6(3ϕ,16ϕ,U,LMC), 25(6,1ϕ6,U,IC),
	3	1ϕ1(25ϕ,1,U,IN1), 1ϕ2(9ϕ,1,U,IN2), 1ϕ3(2ϕϕ,1,U,IN3),
	4	1ϕ4(5ϕ,1,U,IN4), 1ϕ5(15ϕ,1,U,IN5), 1ϕ6(3ϕ,1,U,IN6)
		EQUIVALENCE (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),
	1	(IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)
C		

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

Section	Subsections		Page
25	40	10	09

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:

Punching Instructions — Graphic: ϕ O 1 I 12 Z ; Punch: ϕ X 6 1 12 9 ϕ 9

Card Form # *

Page of

Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
		C-----
		C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES
		C-----
		CKMAX=2500.
		IC=1
		ICOL1=1
		INIT1=0
		IN1=1
		IPD=10
		DO 68 I=1,13
68		ISUPIP(I)=10
		ITOT1(1)=111
		ITOT1(2)=620
		ITOT1(3)=620
		ITOT1(5)=625
		ITOT1(6)=626
		ITOT1(7)=627
		ITOT1(8)=628
		ITOT1(9)=01
		ITOT1(11)=1635
		LYRHIR=0

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer: FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic: Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch: Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification: PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
		NADWH=Ø
		NCHCK=Ø
		NCUDID=Ø
		NMJSC=Ø
		NSTKID=Ø
		NWKMP=Ø
		NWKPD=Ø
		QRTD(5)=Ø.
		QRTD(6)=Ø.
		DO 69 M=1,14
69		YTD(M)=Ø.
C----		

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer: FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic: Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch: Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification: PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C----		
C----		READ PLANT NUMBER, WEEK NUMBER, AND CHECK NUMBER
C----		
		READ(6,4) NOPLT
		READ(6,4) IWEEK
		READ(6,5) ICHCK
4		FORMAT(I1)
5		FORMAT(I2)
C----		

IBM

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:
Punching Instructions — Graphic: ϕ 0 1 I Z
Punch: ϕ X 6 1 12 9 ϕ 9
Card Form # *
Page of
Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
	C	
	C	CALCULATIE THE1 FILE1 NUMBIER OF1 THE INDEX1 FOR THE CURRENT PLANT.
	C	FINISH INITIAILIZING VARIABLEIS - ITOT(41), ITIOT(1ϕ), LSIT
	C	
		IND=1ϕϕ +1 NOPLIT
		GO TIO (51,52,53,54,155,56),NOPILT
51		LST=125ϕ
		GO TIO 57
52		LST=19ϕ
		ITOTI(1ϕ)=1ϕ
		GO TIO 58
53		LST=12ϕϕ
		ITOTI(1ϕ)=1723
58		ITOTI(4)=6121
		GO TIO 6ϕ
54		LST=15ϕ
		GO TIO 57
55		LST=115ϕ
		ITOTI(4)=ϕ1
		GO TIO 59
56		LST=13ϕ

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

IBM

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:
Punching Instructions — Graphic: ϕ 0 1 I Z
Punch: ϕ X 6 1 12 9 ϕ 9
Card Form # *
Page of
Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
57		ITOTI(4)=ϕ
59		ITOTI(1ϕ)=1ϕ
	C	

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer: FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic: Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch: Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification: PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C----	-	
C----	-	SETUP THE NAME FIELD AND RETRIEVE THE COMPANY NAME
C----	-	
60		READ(6,3) NAME
3		FORMAT(9A2)
		READ(6,1) COMP
1		FORMAT(16A2)
C----	-	

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer: FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic: Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch: Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification: PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C----	-	
C----	-	READ ALL INFORMATION FOR ONE EMPLOYEE AND CHECK FOR LAST CARD
C----	-	
500		READ(2,2) NUM, NRATE, NSEX, NSSAN, NXMPF, YTD(1), YTD(2), YTD(3),
	1	YTD(8), MCU, MINS, NSTCK, NUA, NDUES, MAR, K
2		FORMAT(1X, I4, I3, I1, I3, I2, I4, 1X, I2, F7.Ø, 3F5.Ø, I5, 2I4, I3, I4, 6X, I2,
	1	8X, I1)
C----	-	
C----	-	IS THIS THE LAST CARD?
C----	-	YES - GO TO 6ØØ
C----	-	NO - GO TO 1Ø
C----	-	
		IF(K-9) 1Ø, 6ØØ, 1Ø
C----	-	

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:

Punching Instructions — Graphic: ϕ O 1 I Z
Punch: ϕ X 6 1 12 ϕ 9

Card Form #:

Page of

Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		
C		SETUP EMPLOYEE STATUS CODE, STATE EXEMPTIONS, AND Q-T-D INFORMATN
C		
		NSTATS=1
		NXMPS=NXMPF
		QRTDI(1)=YTD(1)
		QRTDI(2)=YTD(3)
		QRTDI(3)=YTD(2)
		QRTDI(4)=YTD(8)
C		

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Punching Instructions

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM
Programmer: FILE CREATION
Date:
Graphic: ϕ O 1 I Z
Punch: ϕ X 6 1 12 9 8 9
Card Form # *
Page of
Identification: PAYϕ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		
C		EDIT MARITAL STATUS, UNION DUES, DEDUCTION, SEX CODE, AND IF
C		NECESSARY, MODIFY EMPLOYEE STATUS CODE.
C		
		IF(MAR) 1ϕ1,1ϕ1,1ϕϕ
1ϕϕ		IF(MAR-2) 1ϕ2,1ϕ2,1ϕ1
1ϕ1		MAR=1
		CALL STACK
1ϕ2		IF(NDUES) 1ϕ3,1ϕ4,1ϕ6
1ϕ3		NDUES=ϕ
		CALL STACK
1ϕ4		NSTAS=3
1ϕ6		IF(NOPLT-3) 12ϕ,115,12ϕ
115		NDUES=ϕ
12ϕ		IF(NSEX) 1ϕ9,1ϕ9,1ϕ7
1ϕ7		IF(NSEX-3) 11ϕ,1ϕ8,1ϕ9
1ϕ8		NSTAS=2
		NSEX=2
		GO TO 11ϕ
1ϕ9		NSEX=2
		CALL STACK

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

Section	Subsections		Page
25	40	10	15

IBM FORTRAN CODING FORM

Form X28-7327-4 Printed in U.S.A.

Program: PAYROLL SYSTEM | Programmer: FILE CREATION | Date:

Punching Instructions — Graphic: Ø 0 1 I Z | Punch: Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9 | Card Form # * | Page of | Identification: PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C		
C		
C		CREATE THE INDEX ENTRY FOR THIS EMPLOYEE AND WRITE HIS RECORD
C		ONTO THE DISK. THEN GO BACK TO THE READ STATEMENT TO GET
C		INFORMATION ON THE NEXT EMPLOYEE.
C		
110		INDEX(ICOL)=NUM
C		
C		WRITE TO THE DISK.
C		
		WRITE(NOPLT'ICOL) NUM, MAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NMKPD,
	1	MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD,
	2	LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS,
	3	NMISC, NUA, NJTKD, ISUPP, INIT, IPD
C		
C		GO BACK FOR ANOTHER EMPLOYEE'S INFORMATION
C		
		GO TO 500
C		

* A standard card form, IBM electro 888157, is available for punching source statements from this form.

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page of
Programmer FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C----	-	
C----	-	LAST CARD HAS BEEN READ.
C----	-	INITIALIZE THE TRADE ASSOCIATION INFORMATION.
C----	-	
6ØØ		DO 65Ø I=1,8
65Ø		FIBRE(I)=Ø.
C----	-	

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

Program PAYROLL SYSTEM		Punching Instructions	Page 15 of 16
Programmer FILE CREATION	Date	Graphic Ø O 1 I Z	Card Form # *
		Punch Ø X 6 1 12 9 Ø 9	Identification PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C----	-	
C----	-	WRITE THE INDEX OF EMPLOYEES FOR THIS PLANT TO DISK.
C----	-	
		LAST=ICOL - 1
		WRITE(IND'1) (INDEX(I), I=1, LAST)
C----	-	

IBM

Form X28-7327-4
Printed in U.S.A.

FORTRAN CODING FORM

			Punching Instructions							Page of
Program	PAYROLL SYSTEM		Graphic	Ø	O	1	I	Z	Card Form # *	Identification
Programmer	FILE CREATION	Date	Punch	Ø	X 6	1	12 9	Ø 9		PAYØ1 (73–80)

C FOR COMMENT

STATEMENT NUMBER (1–5)	Cont. (6)	FORTRAN STATEMENT (7–72)
C-----	-	
C-----	-	WRITE THE RECORD FOR THIS PLANT TO DISK, THE NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES
C-----	-	IN THE PLANT TO THE INDEX AND STOP.
C-----	-	
		WRITE(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX
C-----	-	
		WRITE(IND'LST) LAST
C-----	-	
		CALL EXIT
C-----	-	
		END

Example 2: Add Name to the File

This program is an extension of PAY01, File Creation. Because the employee record contains more than 80 characters, one card is not sufficient. The name field for each employee appears on a second card which is processed by this program.

The dummy name field, set up in the disk record by PAY 01, is filled in with the actual name on the card.

The program illustrates a simple single-file update with no calculations. The following programming techniques have been used (see Section 35 for a listing of this program):

1. Updating masters. The master file is updated by changing the name field in the master record. Note that only the variable name in the output list has been changed.

2. Searching an Index. The index to the file contains an entry for each employee. The clock number is placed in the index at a location corresponding to the record number for the employee. Each index entry is examined to find a match with the clock number on the card (statements 120-125). When a match is found, the location of the match in the index is the employee record number in the disk file.

3. Indicating exceptional conditions. When the index is searched, it is possible that the clock number on the card will not match any index entry. If this occurs, the clock number is printed in the following message:

CLOCK NO XXXX NOT IN FILE.

Example 3: Changes to the File

This program illustrates a complex single-file update procedure. Any one of 16 different changes can be performed.

The master file is the file created by PAY01 and PAY02. The transaction file is on cards, where each card contains the clock number, a code indicating where the change should be applied, and the new or changed information.

The one important change this program will not perform is deletions from the file. However, this may be accomplished by changing the pay rate to zero.

The following programming techniques should be noted in this program (see Section 35 for a listing of this program):

1. Setting a switch rather than testing. The change code is a two-digit number form 01 to 16 (statements 105+1 and 106). When it has been validated, proven greater than zero and less than 16, the code is used as the index for a computed GO TO statement (statement 140). This saves the program a set of IF statements, each statement testing the code and deciding on an action.

2. Detailed data validation. Since PAY01 and PAY02 were so careful about building the file and making sure the data was correct, common sense indicates that the same care should be extended to any changes to it. This is done through checks, not only on the change code, but on the plant number, the clock number, and, where applicable, the change itself. Note that the addition to the file of a new employee causes a check to see whether that employee clock number is already in the index.

3. Use of the alternate stacker. Any time an error is detected, the card involved in the error is selected to the alternate stacker of the IBM 1442 (statements 3 + 1, 8 + 1, 5 + 1, and 7 + 1). This will save the operator the task of picking out those cards with errors.

Example 4: Calculations and Payroll Register

This program consists of extensive calculations and report writing. Payroll calculations are performed, including calculations of gross pay, taxes, voluntary deductions, and net pay. The report shown is the payroll register.

In addition, the calculations are balanced to control totals and each disk record is extended with the current period's calculations.

The following programming techniques have been used (see Section 35 for program listing):

1. Arithmetic Statement Function. Since the 1130 is a binary computer, decimal fractions may not be expressed exactly in binary. This inaccuracy may be avoided by performing all calculations with whole numbers. (See Section 70.10.20.) When calculations are complete, the result must be half-adjusted and the decimal point placed. Since there are many calculations in this program, it makes sense that the rounding procedure should be set up only once and accessed from many different places. The Arithmetic Statement Function, PHIL, will be used to do this.

2. Use of data switches. Since the check number, week number, and maximum check amount are not permanent, a facility must be built into the system to change them. By setting the console data switches appropriately (statements 3 + 5 and 71), each or all of these numbers can be changed. A hard-copy record of any changes is produced on the console printer.

3. Zero balance test. The control totals are compared with accumulations produced during the processing of the file. The original control totals, the accumulated totals, and the differences are printed. If the differences are not zero, the operator knows that further examination of the output is necessary. (See statements 15-18.)

4. A variety of calculations. The calculations performed with this program are more extensive than the other sample programs. The first set of calculations is used to initialize the program variables, while the second set initializes the plant variables. The third set initializes the variables for an individual.

The remaining detail calculations pertain to regular, overtime, and bonus earnings, taxes (including federal, state, and local), and voluntary deductions. Finally, the net amount is calculated and plant totals are accumulated.

5. Backup is built into the system. To provide a means of recovery when an error condition or an out-of-balance condition occurs, the calculated information (gross, net, tax, etc.) is punched into the employee's weekly card (see statement 9). A simple list of these cards will thus supply sufficient information to check or reconstruct portions of the file.

6. Another type of half-adjusting. In printing the payroll register the dollar and cents figures should appear with decimal points. To round off, reposition the decimal point, and clear fractions, the WHOLE Function (from the Commercial Subroutine Package) is used (see statements 515-515 + 11).

```
AMT = WHOLE (AMT + (AMT/ABS(AMT))*0.5)/100.
```

Example 5: Check Writing

This program demonstrates the use of the Commercial Subroutine Package (CSP) in preparing a report--namely, the check and check stub.

In this example, the employee file is accessed sequentially. If the paid indicator is set appropriately, a check is written. In either case, the next employee record is read.

Control totals are carried, and a zero-balance check is performed.

The following programming techniques should be noted in this program (see Section 35):

1. The use of subroutines. There are three specific operations which are used many times (see statements 91 + 9 - 95 + 5). These are PUT, MOVE, and EDIT. PUT converts from real format to A1 format, MOVE moves information, and EDIT inserts and removes characters. Rather than repeating the statements that perform these three operations each time, it is much simpler and shorter to make subroutines out of the statements. This, in addition to saving core storage, is much easier to test and document. All three subroutines are supplied with the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package.

2. Editing data for output. The use of the EDIT subroutine is a very powerful technique. It requires two kinds of data. The first is the data to be edited, and the second is a description of the result, the edit mask. As can be seen, the edit mask is treated as a constant and is initialized at the beginning of the program (see statement 4). The result of editing can be seen in the amount field of the check speciman shown.

Example 6: Check Register

This program illustrates a report in which detailed items are written, three up, (three items per line). A plant file is accessed for each employee (see statement 655), and a line containing check number, employee clock number, employee name, and net check amount is composed. When three employees have been placed on one line, the line is printed.

This technique will produce a very concise report, easily read, filed, and used. The technique also decreases printer time to produce the report by decreasing the number of lines to be printed.

Example 7: 941 Report

This program will process multiple files to produce the 941 report. One report is produced for each plant.

Note that a count of the lines printed on each page is kept (see statements 195 + 5 and 150). In this way, headings can be and are printed at the top of each page in the report.

Also, notice that the plant totals are reset only when a new plant is to be processed (see statements 2 + 1 thru 3 - 2), while page totals are reset when a new page is to be printed (see statements 4 + 4, 4 + 5).

Section 30: TESTING EFFECTIVELY

CONTENTS

Introduction 30.01.00
Testing Strategy 30.10.00
Testing Tactics 30.20.00
Testing Hints 30.30.00
Summary 30.40.00

INTRODUCTION

Now that programming is "finished", it is time to evaluate what you have in relation to your objectives. Do your programs and systems produce the results you want? To find this out you must test the programs -- but not until you have a plan.

Experience has shown that more time can be wasted in testing than has originally been allotted to testing.

In other words, testing must be performed effectively.

* * * * *

There is a great temptation to get a newly written program on a machine and see it run. A little extra effort before going to the machine can save a great deal of time and effort in the long run. If you must travel some distance to test a program before the installation of your own machine, it also means real money saving.

The chances are very good (99.99%) that your program contains errors of various types:

1. Programmer clerical errors. It is easy to make minor clerical errors when filling out the coding sheets. Although they are minor, the program will not work properly until they are corrected.
2. Programmer procedural errors. The number of procedural errors will depend on the experience and proficiency of the programmer. These are caused by not adhering to the programming rules as outlined in the language manuals.
3. Card punch errors. Errors may be introduced when the program is punched into cards. Punching programs into cards is very exacting, and the keypunch operator must be very careful. Because of the nature of the information on the program sheets, it is difficult to achieve speed and accuracy in punching.
4. Program logic errors. Logic errors may be caused by poor or incomplete analysis of the problem prior to programming, or by incorrect programming after correct analysis. In any event the program must be able to either process, or properly reject, all the various pieces of information that will be given. Someone who is intimately familiar with the procedure, as it is now being done, should review the logic of the program for completeness.

Most clerical errors, both programming and card punching, can be detected by a careful review of the material. Key verification should always be done, and it is essential to proofread coding sheets before they are punched. The most common errors occur in the use of 0 and O, 1 and I, 2 and Z. Standards should be adopted in which, for instance, alphabetic O is written O, zero is Ø, Z as Ƶ, I as a printed capital (I), and 1 as a straight line (|). It is wise to formally familiarize your keypunch operators with the adopted conventions.

Program procedural errors can often be detected by having someone other than the original programmer review the programming sheets. Even where the programmers are relatively inexperienced, they will often catch errors in syntax (grammar of forming statements). This review can also serve as an excellent way to improve programmer knowledge.

During a review of the program, program logic errors are more difficult to catch. This is particularly true when the person who is familiar with the procedure is not also familiar with programming. Logic errors are generally caught during testing when sample data is processed by the program. The sample data must be prepared so that all of the various exceptions, combinations, and ranges of information are introduced to the program, insofar as it is practical to do so. It should be remembered that any element or combination of elements that is not tested is very likely to appear eventually; if it can happen, it will.

At the time that your program is assembled or compiled on the system you are installing, a series of diagnostic tests is also made to detect many of the potential errors, and these errors are noted.

By properly prechecking your programs, you can materially reduce the amount of time to get a program compiled and tested successfully. Care in the preparation of test data will also detect logic errors so that they can be corrected before the processing of actual data.

The final test of any program is the successful processing of "live" data, after which the results can be compared against those obtained by the previous system.

Note: If the results of this last test do not agree with previous results, check again to be sure what the right answers should be. Sometimes the old system has not produced the correct solutions.

TESTING STRATEGY

Any good system is like a successful athletic team. Each member must do his job well, and all members must work together. These two things are what you must accomplish with your testing strategy. Each individual program is tested. When all programs give correct results, pairs are tested. When the first pair gives correct results, another run is added to the system. Finally, all runs are tested together, and the entire system is checked out.

The individual tests are the foundation of the system's test. A deck of test cards should be made up for each program (or subprogram) and kept for use in testing the program again in the future.

The ideal rule to follow in deciding what test data to include is this: include every field at least once under every condition in which it can occur, not only by itself, but with every possible combination of conditions in which all the other fields can occur. With a simple program this is easy enough to do, but where many fields appear under many conditions, the number of possible combinations can become enormous. Then your programmer must use his judgment in making up a limited set of test cards that covers the possibilities adaquately.

The test cards should be created, then listed. For each set of test data, a "prediction" of the results that will appear on the output forms or cards should be made. Then, when actual testing is performed, your programmer cannot be easily misled into believing that his output is correct when it is not.

The first data in the test deck should test only the ordinary, easiest, most straightforward conditions. Next, multiple conditions can be combined on one card or record. Finally, error conditions can be tried. The reason for this careful progression is that unless the simple situations are proved first, it is possible to spend many hours trying to determine which of several possible causes for a "bug" is the true one.

Avoid setting up your tests in such a way that you count on the output of one program to act as input to another. Have at least one independent set of test data for each program you are testing. "Merged" or "linked" testing is a valuable means of proving a system's overall validity, but it should not be done until each program is individually tested.

After a successful test, both the test input and output should be retained, as part of program documentation, to make future testing easier. Also, when testing program modifications, test not only the modifications but the entire program. In other words, your sample test data should expand with each modification, so that the entire system may be tested at any time.

TESTING TACTICS

Many techniques exist to assist your programmer during the checkout phase of a program. Each has its own advantages and disadvantages. The one to be used for a particular problem will depend on your programmer's thoughts as to what area of his program is in error. Some very useful techniques are:

1. Core Storage Dump. This is a printout of the contents of core storage. There are two methods of producing it.

The first is with one of the utility programs supplied with the 1130 Programming Systems. These utilities will produce a core storage dump in hexadecimal.

Since manual hexadecimal-to-decimal conversion is very tedious and time-consuming, this method is not recommended.

The recommended method of dumping core storage is with the dynamic DUMP facilities of FORTRAN and the Assembler Language. The information dumped with this method can appear in hexadecimal, integer, or real format.

In FORTRAN, the DUMP facility is accessed through use of the PDUMP subroutine. You would write CALL PDUMP (A1, B1, F1, . . . , An, Bn, Fn).

Blocks of core storage are dumped. A1 and B1 are variable data names, subscripted or nonsubscripted, indicating the inclusive limits of the first block of storage to be dumped. Similarly, An and Bn indicate the inclusive limits of the nth block of storage to be dumped.

The format of a block is determined by the Fx associated with that block. F1 through Fn are integers and are assigned in the following manner:

0 = Hexadecimal
4 = Integer
5 = Real

The Assembler Language dump facilities, DUMP and PDMP, are used in a similar fashion.

All of the core storage dump facilities will produce a printout of core storage, by address. You should use these facilities when a program "bug" requires, in the judgment of your programmer, an examination of all or part of core storage.

2. Arithmetic Trace. The use of this technique involves subroutines that are executed whenever a value is assigned to a variable on the left of an equal sign. If Console Entry Switch 15 is turned on at execution time, and the *ARITHMETIC TRACE FORTRAN control record is used, the value of the assigned variable is printed, as it is calculated, with one leading asterisk.

As an optional use, you can elect to trace only selected parts of the program by placing statements in the source program to start and stop tracing. This is done as follows:

```
CALL   TSTOP (to stop tracing)
CALL   TSTRT (to start tracing)
```

Thus, tracing occurs only if:

- The trace control record is compiled with the source program.
- Console Entry Switch 15 is on (can be turned off at any time).
- A CALL TSTOP has not been executed, or a CALL TSTRT has been executed since the last CALL TSTOP.

If tracing is requested, an *IOCS control record must also be present to indicate that either typewriter or printer is needed. If both typewriter and printer are indicated in the *IOCS record, the printer is used for tracing.

Use of this facility will increase execution time considerably. The trace facility should not be present in a production program; if it is, you should recompile the production program after testing is complete, leaving out the trace.

3. Transfer Trace. In this case, the FORTRAN compiler generates linkage to trace routines which are executed whenever an IF statement or Computed GO TO statement is encountered. If Console Entry Switch 15 is turned on at execution time and the *TRANSFER TRACE FORTRAN control record is used, the value of the IF expression or the value of the Computed GO TO index is printed. For the expression of an IF statement, the traced value is printed with two leading asterisks. The traced value for the index of a Computed GO TO statement is printed with three leading asterisks.

The optional use of trace explained under Arithmetic Trace also applies to Transfer Trace (use of TSTOP and TSTRT), as does the information following optional use.

4. Extensive Use of PAUSE. It may turn out that some parts of your program execute correctly and some incorrectly. What you would like to do is to check the progress of the program while it is running. A very useful technique is to place PAUSEs at strategic places throughout your program. In order to know where the program is at any point in time, number the PAUSEs consecutively:

```
C-----READ INPUT
      PAUSE 1
      CALL READ(IN,1,80,N)
C-----IDENTIFY INPUT
      PAUSE 2
```

```
      IF(IN(22)-1) 3, 4, 5
3     CALL MOVE(IN, 1, 27, IWK, 1)
C-----TYPE ZERO CARD
      PAUSE 3
      etc.
```

The PAUSE number will be displayed in the accumulator. Use of this technique will let you follow the logic of the program (IFs and GO TOs) without severely slowing its execution.

5. Additional Print Lines. This technique is sometimes called "selective tracing". Again, rather than severely slowing the execution of a program and printing the result of every replacement operation, only selected variables and/or fields will be printed. Use of the FORTRAN WRITE statement or the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package PRINT subroutine will allow you to follow the progress of variables and/or fields as their contents change during program execution.

6. Console Debugging. This technique should be used only as a last resort. It involves manual inquiry into the system via the console switches, dials, and keys. In most cases, the previously mentioned techniques will provide you with all the information necessary to debug.

TESTING HINTS

1. To test the logic in a program that uses Commercial Subroutine Package I/O, use standard FORTRAN READ and WRITE for I/O. This makes the trace facility available. When finished, use Commercial Subroutines READ and PRINT for overlapped I/O.

2. Ask yourself: What must be done to re-create information if the disk cartridge is lost? How long will it take?

3. Keep testing in mind when planning the development of various runs. That is, write the file creation and maintenance programs before the report programs that use the files.

SUMMARY

If program testing techniques are properly planned, a minimum amount of machine time is consumed during program checkout. Manual inquiry into a system via the console is extremely expensive in machine and operator cost; little is learned in return for dollars expended. Time spent desk checking is well invested, since most of the logical errors may be detected before the program actually enters the computer testing phase.

In trying to make the maximum number of runs during a test session, your programmer may be tempted to make rapid patches without pausing to annotate such changes thoroughly. Such urgency is seldom fruitful in the end.

The program testing phase should be carefully and thoroughly planned, executed, and documented. The following checklist should be used as a guide to ensure maximum productivity for program testing.

After coding the program and preparing revised flowcharts and other supporting documentation, the testing procedure begins.

1. Prepare test data and precalculate results.
2. Punch and verify program cards.
3. List program cards.
4. Desk-check the program. Look for:
   a. Errors in logic
   b. Endless loops
   c. Incorrect use of program switches
   d. Unsatisfied or incomplete coding for the problem definition
   e. Inefficient program (time and storage)
   f. Incorrect data field lengths
   g. Improperly signed fields
   h. A name for each variable
   i. Improper indexing
   j. Initialization of routines and storage
   k. Duplicate names
   l. Misspelling and punching errors
   m. Invalid operations
   n. Necessary control cards
   o. Improper alignment of card columns
5. Manually simulate the computer process using test data.
6. Compile the program.
7. Perform error analysis with error listing and program printout.
8. Correct the program.
   a. Card programs. Correct the source deck and recompile the program. To facilitate card handling with object decks, label the object deck with a marking pen. The first and last card of the object deck should be so labeled. The top edge of all such cards may also be marked.
   b. Disk programs. When the program is prepared on disk, corrections are made to the source deck. This is accomplished by placing the corrections in the source deck and then recompiling and restoring the program. Alter the program listing and update the program flowchart to reflect source deck corrections.
9. Prepare detailed instructions for machine operation during the test session.
10. Pre-test-session familiarization.
    a. Console operation
    b. Input/output devices
    c. IOCS
    d. Utility routines such as clear storage and load programs, file generators, trace programs, storage and disk print programs, sort and merge programs, and check point and restart programs.
11. Test documentation and materials. To reduce confusion, all materials should be clearly labeled with the name of your organization, program name, content, and date. Each person should have a list of items for which he is responsible:
    a. Program flowcharts
    b. Compiled program listings
    c. Test data decks and disks with test data listing (a duplicate copy may be desirable)
    d. Precalculated results of test data and listing of expected output with each test case
    e. Card and disk record layouts
    f. Internal storage map
    g. Printer carriage control tape
    h. Operator checklist, providing all the information the operator needs to set up the data processing system for the running of each program:

(1) Job or program name
(2) Operation name
(3) Machine setup
  (a) Disk cartridge assignment
  (b) Input cards or tapes
  (c) Output cards or tapes
  (d) Carriage tape
  (e) Sense switch settings
(4) The sequence of events to run the test
(5) Listing of all possible messages and halts
(6) Switch and index listings
(7) List of paper forms or card stock for auxiliary equipment

i. Object deck or disk cartridge
j. Blank forms, cards, disks
k. Source deck and listings

12. The test session

a. Plan the test session in advance. Decide upon the sequence in which programs shall be tested. Programs should take precedence in testing according to their importance, and the most important programs should be retested as often as possible until they are completely debugged. Schedule a workload greater than can be accomplished in the allotted test time. Assign duties (such as handling the card reader, punch, printer, disk cartridges, and console) to each person attending.

b. Arrive early. Confirm the testing schedule that was established in advance of actual testing. This schedule may best be laid out as a series of half-hour to full-hour sessions with one- to two-hour breaks in between.

c. Be familiar with the latest versions of all programming systems to be used.

d. Make certain that the test packet is organized properly. Test the higher-priority and larger programs first. Each program should have its own input test data; one program should not be dependent on another program that was run earlier in the same session.

e. Make sure that all units are in the proper initial status--for example, printer restored, disk units ready, no leftover cards in the reader or punch.

f. Debugging at the console is time-consuming, error-prone, and generally nonproductive. When the program hangs up, the following steps should be taken immediately:
(1) Note the console status--indicators, lights and registers.
(2) Take core storage dumps.
(3) Take disk dumps.
(4) Go on to next program or cease work.
Even if a program goes to end-of-job and appears correct, the above steps should be taken in order to simplify correcting errors discovered later. When a program hangs up, do not force it to continue without taking down status information, since the conditions causing the original hangup would then be destroyed.

g. Label all core storage dumps, disk dumps, console sheets, etc., with date, time, and program identification.

h. Debug off the console with deliberate speed. With the above items, there is more information to aid in locating the reason for the hangup than is available at the console. Do not make hurried corrections to a program in a false effort to maximize usage of test time. Do not, however, spend three hours at a desk to save five minutes on the system. Strive for a reasonable cost balance.

Before testing the program again, find all possible bugs, not just the one that caused the hangup. Step further through the program after each test to ensure that the program will not hang up on the next instruction or routine. Correct all errors in output content and format. Strive for perfect output from each test.

i. Note all corrections on the program listing. Corrections that affect the halt, switch, or index listings should be updated accordingly.

j. Note the reason for the correction adjacent to the card itself. Be sure to include number and date. A post-test listing of cards is desirable for reference when correcting the source deck.

k. Generate a new program listing after an appropriate number of cards have been added to the program. Update the program flowchart to reflect the current status of the program.

l. Keep documentation current. This eliminates the waste of time and effort trying to pick up changes during testing or debugging.

13. Post-test evaluation. Every test session should be followed by a thorough evaluation:

a. Was the pretest preparation adequate?

b. Were there any areas of preparation that could be improved to yield a more effective test?

c. Were there areas of preparation in which you spent too little?

d. Did the test point up any areas of weakness in the coding? If so, are these types of errors documented so that stronger emphasis can be placed on them during future coding and desk checking?

e. Was each machine session used effectively?

f. Are there any corrections to the testing techniques that would make the next test more fruitful?

g. What is the status of each program tested?

(1) Is it completely tested? That is, has every program loop been tested, and do you have any reservations about calling this program complete?

(2) Is it tested to the stage where the only changes left are in spacing and editing of the output data?

(3) Are there logic errors left in this program?

h. Did the test session achieve its objectives? If not, what adjustments in present scheduling are necessary?

Section 35: PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION

CONTENTS

Introduction 35.01.00
Installation Manuals 35.10.00
Program Information Manual 35.10.10
Operation Manual 35.10.20
Documentation Examples 35.20.00
Payroll System — Program Information Manual 35.20.10
Payroll System — Operation Manual 35.20.20

INTRODUCTION

The final step in your installation program is to document everything you have done. Let us quickly review the importance of adequate documentation before discussing the form that your documentation may take.

The package of materials describing each program will become:

1. A source of information for implementing future changes.
2. An education device for familiarizing new operators and management personnel with the procedures.
3. A means of describing control procedures to your auditors.

It is a modern but well proven adage that a well documented installation is a sure sign of a smooth-running operation.

You should develop two manuals: the program information manual and the operation manual. Your basic library will consist of these two manuals together with this 1130 User's Guide, physical planning manual, the 1130 functional characteristics manual, the programming system reference manuals for FORTRAN and Assembler Language, the machine reference manuals for the I/O units you have ordered, and operating procedures manual for FORTRAN, Assembler Language, and Disk Monitor System. If you use the Commercial Subroutine Package, you will also want reference manuals and operating procedures manuals for that system. Consult the 1130 SRL Bibliography for descriptions and form numbers of the manuals, and for information about other IBM publications that provide further details on the subjects covered in this guide.

INSTALLATION MANUALS

Program Information Manual

Each application should have its own binder, which will be used by management, systems analyst, or programmer, and will contain:

1. Job description. This is the same for all programs with a job or application. It is a brief abstract.
2. System flowchart. This is also the same for all programs within an application, and shows how each program fits into the larger picture.
3. Record layouts. All record formats for the application are shown.

The three items above appear once for the application, whereas the items below are necessary for each program (you may want to place dividers, labeled with the program names, in front of each group of these):

1. Form layout.
2. Variable Summary Sheet. The purpose for which program variables are used is apparent at the time of writing, but again, as with program logic (of which variables are an integral part), the programmer rapidly forgets how he used them. The Variable Summary Sheet (see Section 25) will serve as a testing and program modification aid.
3. Program flowchart. Experience has proved that logic which is clear to the programmer at the time of writing is difficult to recall a short time later. The logic must, therefore, be documented in such a manner that testing will be accomplished in a minimum amount of machine time. Well documented logic is also valuable when the program is changed from time to time, either by the author or by another programmer who may be completely unfamiliar with it.
4. Coding sheets or program listing. To avoid confusion, the coding sheets should be discarded after the program listing is produced.
5. Test data listing. Test data should be listed and retained. As changes to the program are made, they may unintentionally affect parts of the original program. All original test data, therefore, along with any additional test data necessary for the change, should be processed to ensure that the program is operating properly.
6. Test output. This includes sample reports or cards, as produced by the test data.
7. Machine setup sheet. This is a guide to the operator, describing machine setup, source of input, disposition of output, and actions to be taken at machine halts.
8. Detailed program flowcharts. These must be included if the programmer is using Assembler Language. Since programs written in Assembler Language are not as easily read, or as clearly related to the job as FORTRAN programs, it is vital that your programmer draw a detailed program flowchart that carefully documents the program steps he has taken. Each block should cover only a few program steps, and should be cross-referenced to the program. It is advisable in most cases to include a general program flowchart, which provides a quick means of introduction to the logic and is exploded by the detailed flowchart.

Operation Manual

Intended for use by the operator, the operation manual is arranged so that each application has its own section. Usually, these materials are all kept in one book, at the 1130 console. In addition to the materials suggested below, the operation manual should include a copy of the operating procedures manuals supplied by IBM for the programming system being used.

Dividers of two kinds should be used: one for applications and one for programs within applications.

Behind each application divider should be a job description followed by a system flowchart of the entire application.

Behind each program divider should be all instructions to the operator. These may include (1) procedures to be followed to accomplish accounting controls, such as recording totals on a control sheet, checking critical items, and noting cross-footing messages, (2) recovery procedures -- that is, procedures for reconstructing or continuing a run that has been interrupted as a result of an operator, machine, or program error, (3) initial switch settings and their meaning, (4) halts, error messages and their meaning, and (5) I/O considerations.

DOCUMENTATION EXAMPLES

The examples in this section show the necessary documentation for those runs in the Payroll System which were coded under Section 25. Note that these examples are illustrations and, therefore, may not be considered complete, usable programs.

PAYROLL SYSTEM

Program Information Manual

CONTENTS

Payroll Application 1
Job Description 1
System Flowchart 1
Narrative 1
Payroll File Create (PAY01, PAY02, PAY16) 2
Payroll File Changes (PAY03, PAY16) 3
Payroll Calculations and Register (PAY04, PAY16) 4
Print Payroll Checks (PAY05, PAY06) 5
Payroll Check Voiding (PAY11) 6
Payroll Deduction Registers (PAY12 thru PAY15) 7
Payroll File Audit, 941, and Tax (PAY07, PAY09, PAY10) 8
Print W-2 Reports (PAYnn) 9
Error Detection and Correction (PAY09) 10
Payroll Record Layouts 11
Card Forms and Console Keyboard Input 11
Console Printer and Line Printer Forms for Output 12
Disk Record Formats 12
Payroll Programs 34
PAY01: Payroll File Create 34
Variable Summary Sheet 34
PAY01 General Program Flowchart 37
Program Listing 38
Test Data Listing 43
Test Output 44
Machine Setup Sheet 45
PAY02: Add Names to the File 47
Variable Summary Sheet 47
PAY02 General Program Flowchart 50
Program Listing 51
Test Data Listing 55
Test Output 55
Machine Setup Sheet 56
PAY03: Changes to the File 57
Variable Summary Sheet 57
PAY03 General Program Flowchart 60
Program Listing 61
Test Data Listing 67
Test Output 68
Machine Setup Sheet 69
PAY04: Calculations and Payroll Register 70
Sample Payroll Register 70
Variable Summary Sheet 71
PAY04 General Program Flowchart 77
Program Listing 78
Test Data Listing 92
Test Output 93
Machine Setup Sheet 95

PAY05: Check Writing 96
Sample Check 96
Variable Summary Sheet 97
PAY05 General Program Flowchart 103
Program Listing 104
Test Data Listing 111
Test Output 112
Machine Setup Sheet 113
PAY06: Check Register 114
Sample Check Register 114
Variable Summary Sheet 115
PAY06 General Program Flowchart 121
Program Listing 122
Test Data Listing 126
Test Output 126
Machine Setup Sheet 127
PAY09: 941 Report 128
Sample 941 Report 128
Variable Summary Sheet 129
PAY09 General Program Flowchart 133
Program Listing 139
Test Data Listing 140
Test Output 140
Machine Setup Sheet 141

PAYROLL APPLICATION

JOB DESCRIPTION

The Payroll System is composed of 16 different runs. From the source documents, produced at the six plant sites, cards are punched. These cards are used to store the payroll information on the disk cartridge.

At this point the system uses cards only for transition between jobs. The input data, employee records, is read from the disk and updated before being written back. This gives a highly flexible system, in which I/O, because of the disk, is very fast.

The system produces the following reports:

- Checks and check stubs
- Check register
- Payroll register
- Deduction registers for
  1. Union dues
  2. Credit union
  3. Stock
- 941 quarterly report

SYSTEM FLOWCHART

Narrative

The system consists of 16 programs.

The Files Creation program is first. Data decks are keypunched for each individual, in sets, by plant. The data is edited and, when correct, loaded on the disk by PAY01. Three files are created: a master file, an index file, and a plant information file. A second data deck with employee clock number and name is loaded onto the master file by PAY02.

Changes to the disk information are made by PAY03. Documents, received from personnel departments at the individual plants, are checked, summarized, keypunched, and verified. Time sheets, submitted by the plant payroll departments, are keypunched and verified. All of these cards are processed by PAY16, which edits and generates control totals. PAY04 then processes these cards, performing all payroll calculations. Cards are read, pay computed, disk files updated, and cards extended with current pay figures. After all cards are processed, a payroll register is printed.

Checks are printed by PAY05. A header card is read and the checks are printed from the disk file. PAY06 lists the check register from the disk file. In the event of an error in computing pay, PAY11 provides the means of voiding checks. The extended time cards from PAY04 are read in and the affected employee records are reset. The above are weekly runs.

At month end, registers are prepared showing each individual's deductions for the month:

PAY13 writes union dues register.

PAY14 writes credit union register.

PAY15 writes stock deductions register.

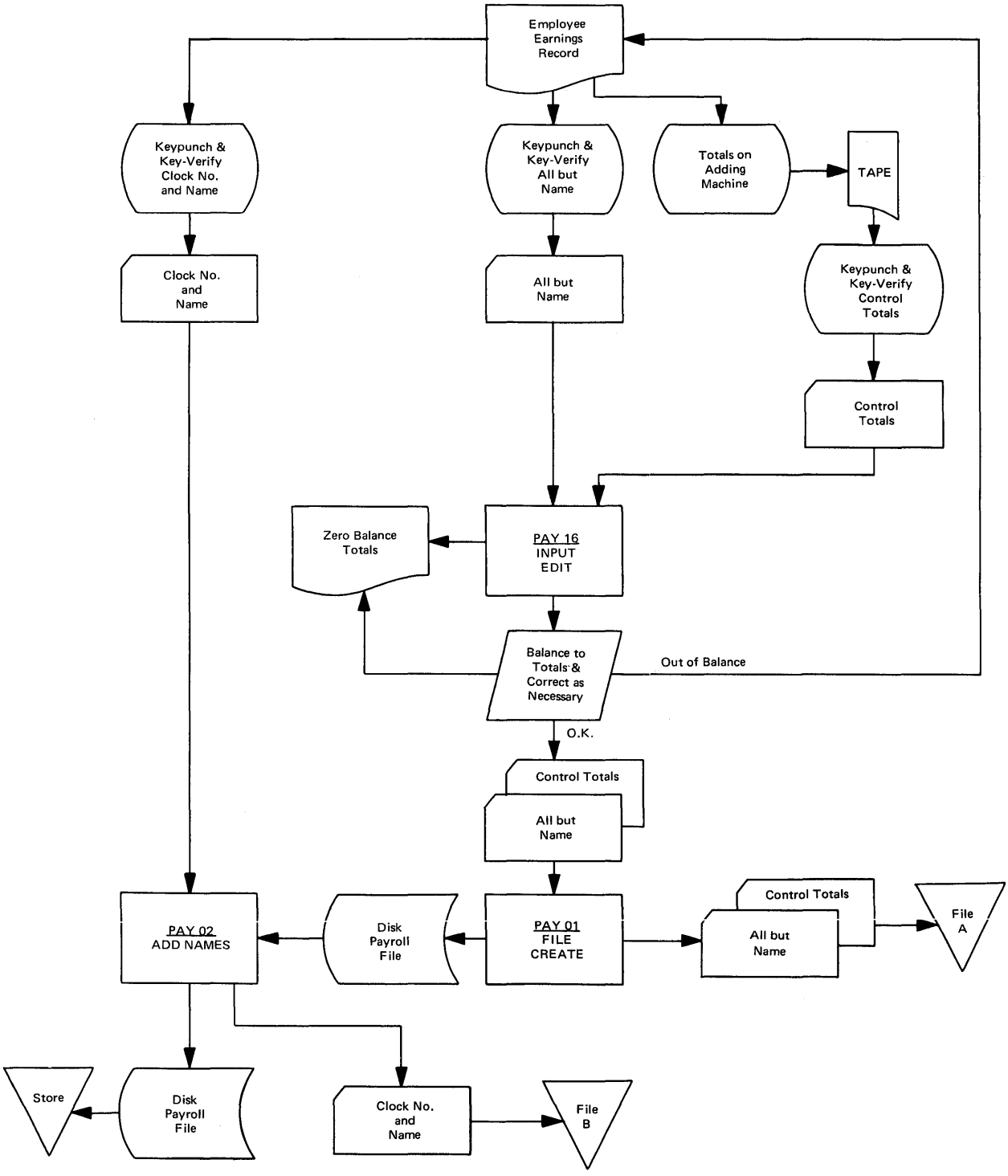
PAY12 resets charity deductions code.

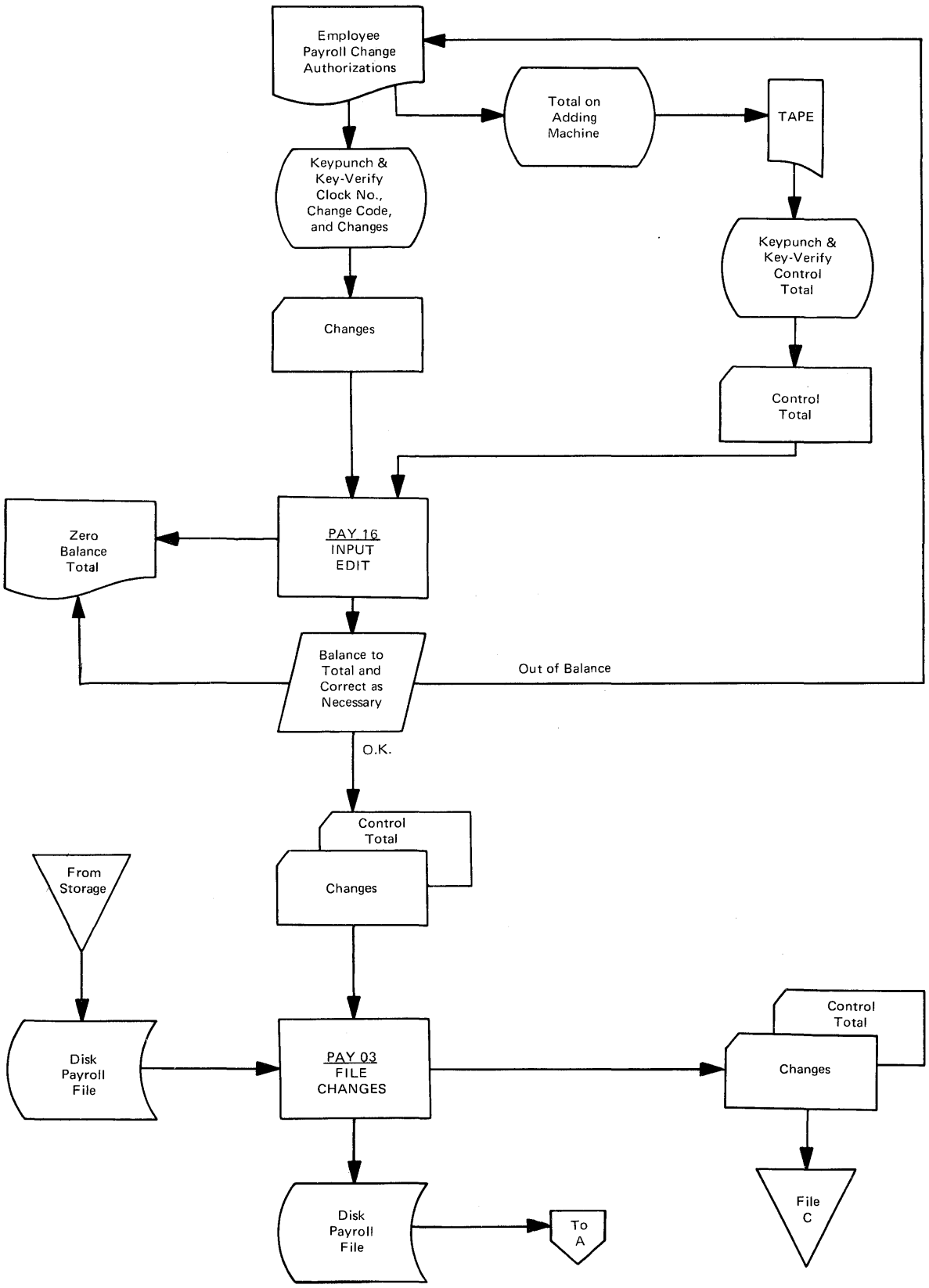
At the end of the quarter and at the end of the year PAY07 and PAY08 are used to balance the disk files to control totals.

PAY09 produces the 941 tax report.

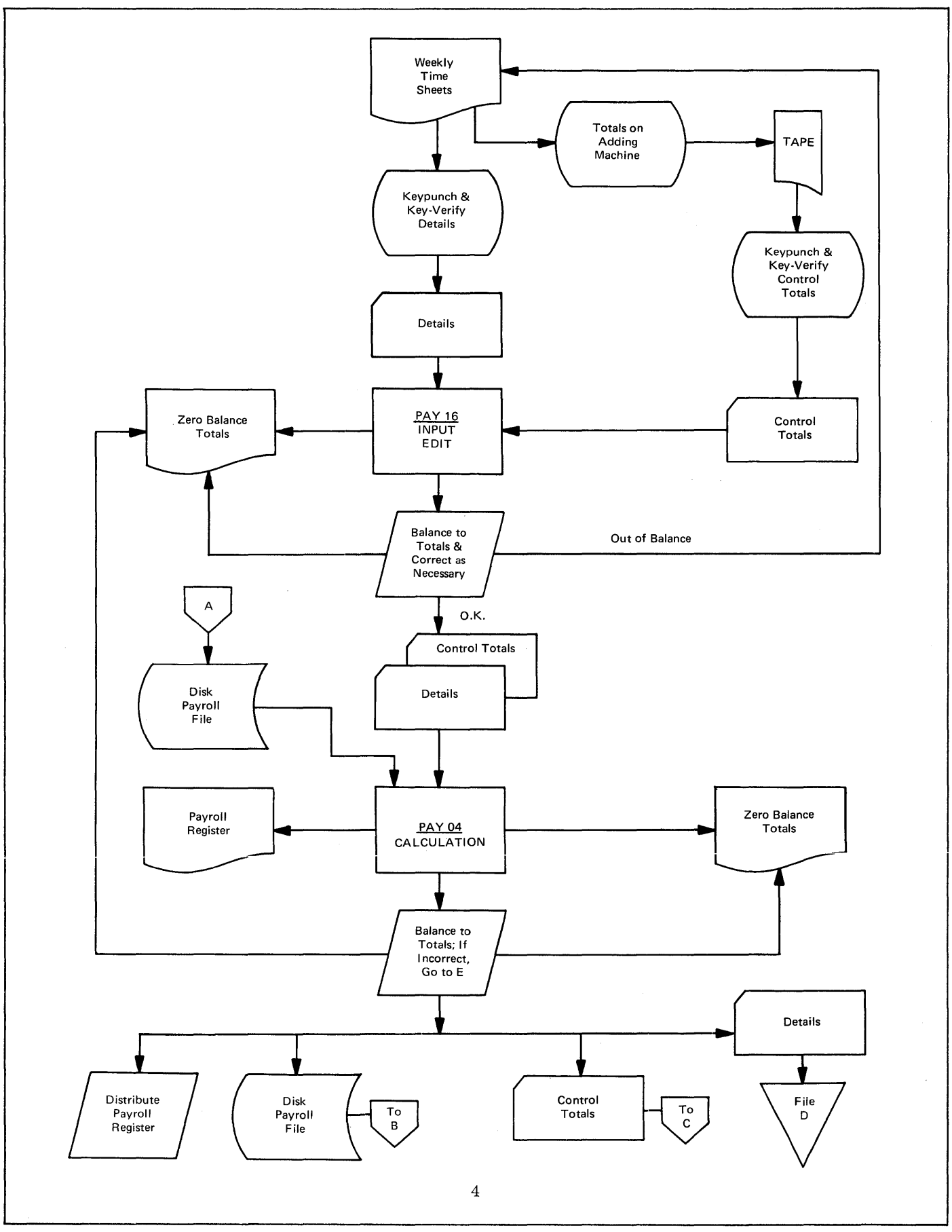
PAY10 produces a tax worksheet used to determine tax reliability.

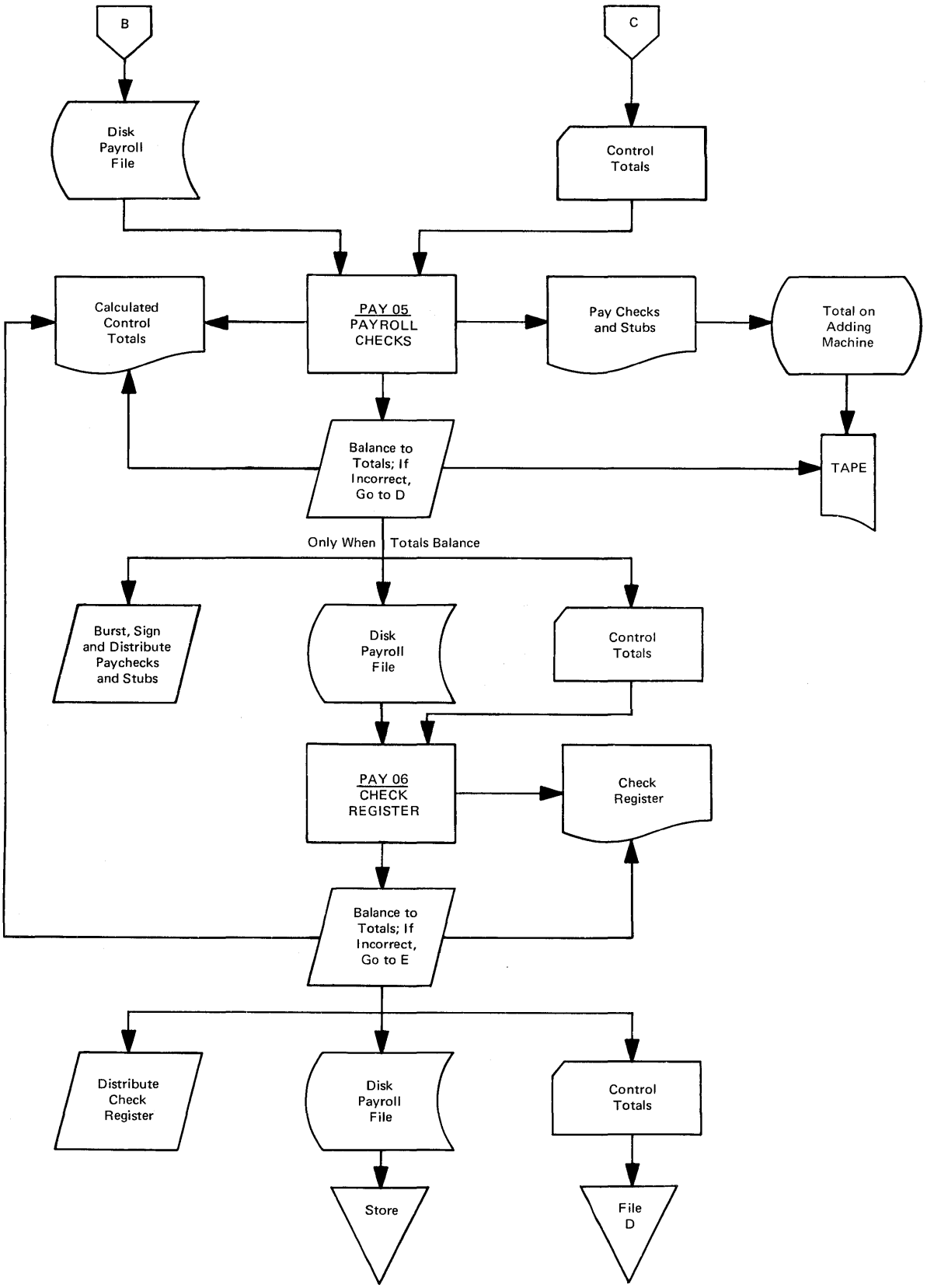
At the present time the program for W2 reports has not been written.

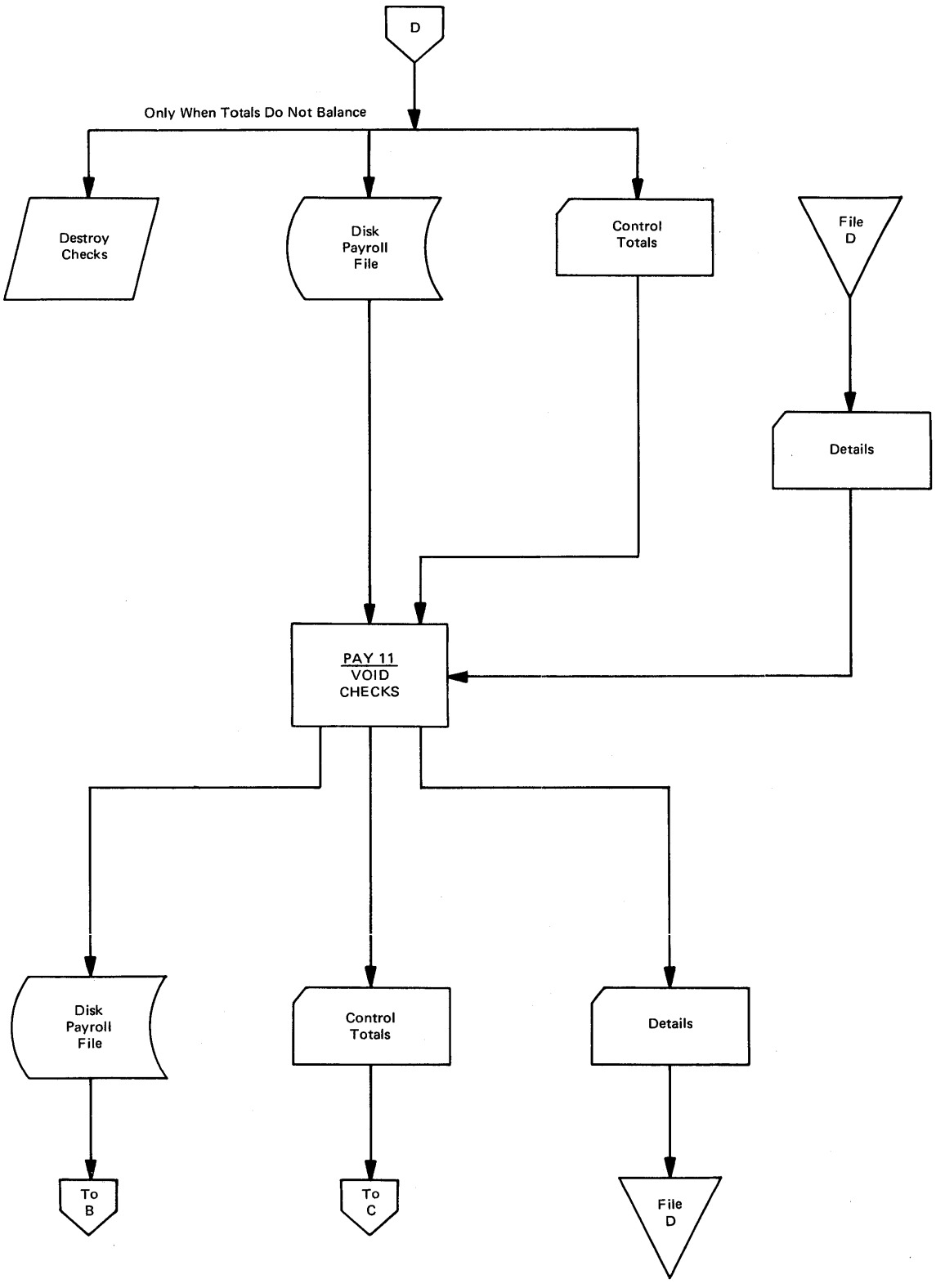

Employee Earnings Record
Keypunch & Key-Verify Clock No. and Name
Keypunch & Key-Verify All but Name
Totals on Adding Machine
TAPE
Clock No. and Name
All but Name
Keypunch & Key-Verify Control Totals
Control Totals
Zero Balance Totals
PAY 16 INPUT EDIT
Balance to Totals & Correct as Necessary
Out of Balance
O.K.
Control Totals
All but Name
PAY 02 ADD NAMES
Disk Payroll File
PAY 01 FILE CREATE
Control Totals
All but Name
File A
Store
Disk Payroll File
Clock No. and Name
File B

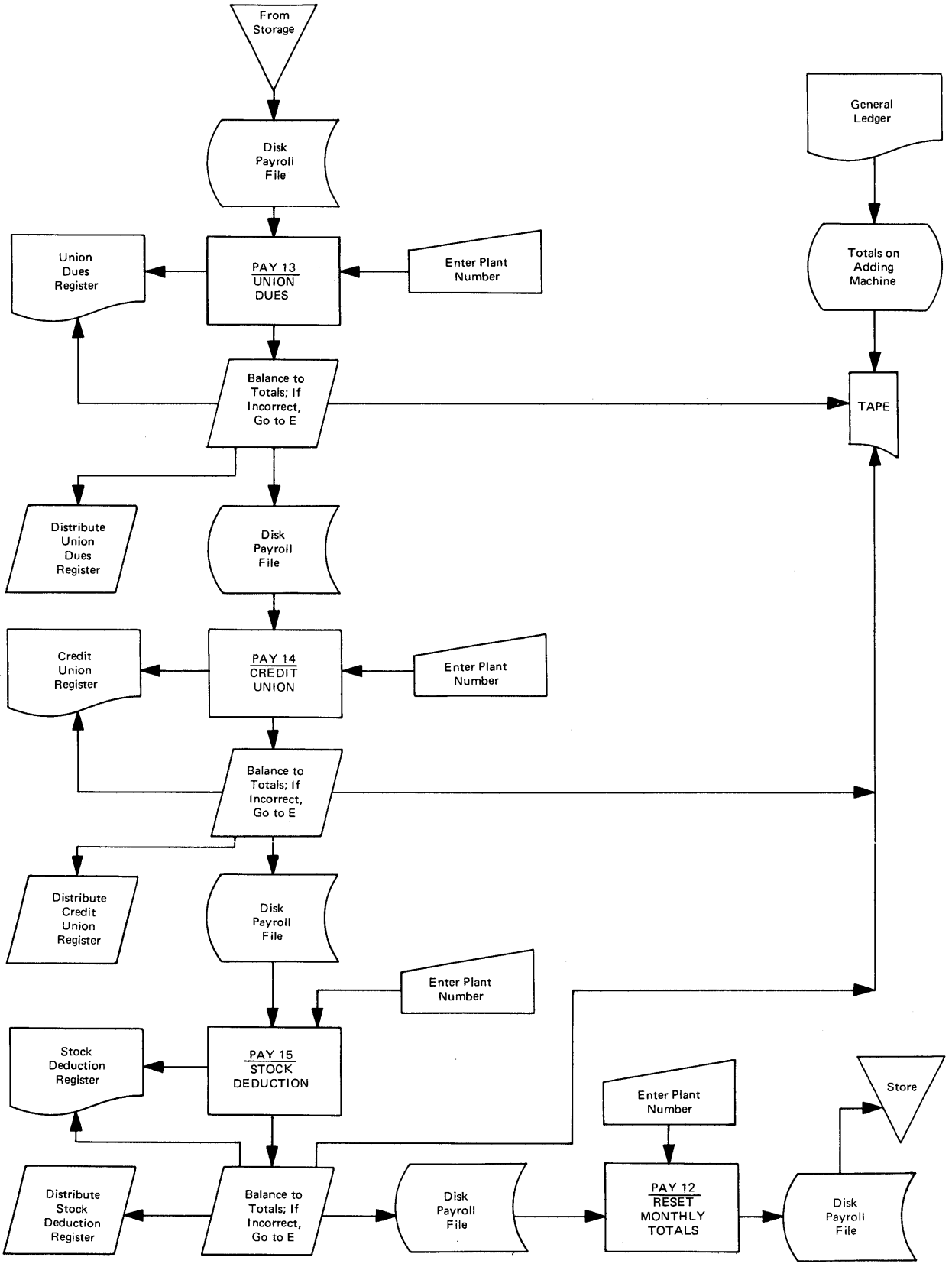

Employee Payroll Change Authorizations
Total on Adding Machine
TAPE
Keypunch & Key-Verify Clock No., Change Code, and Changes
Keypunch & Key-Verify Control Total
Changes
Control Total
Zero Balance Total
PAY 16 INPUT EDIT
Balance to Total and Correct as Necessary
Out of Balance
O.K.
Control Total
Changes
From Storage
Disk Payroll File
PAY 03 FILE CHANGES
Control Total
Changes
Disk Payroll File
To A
File C

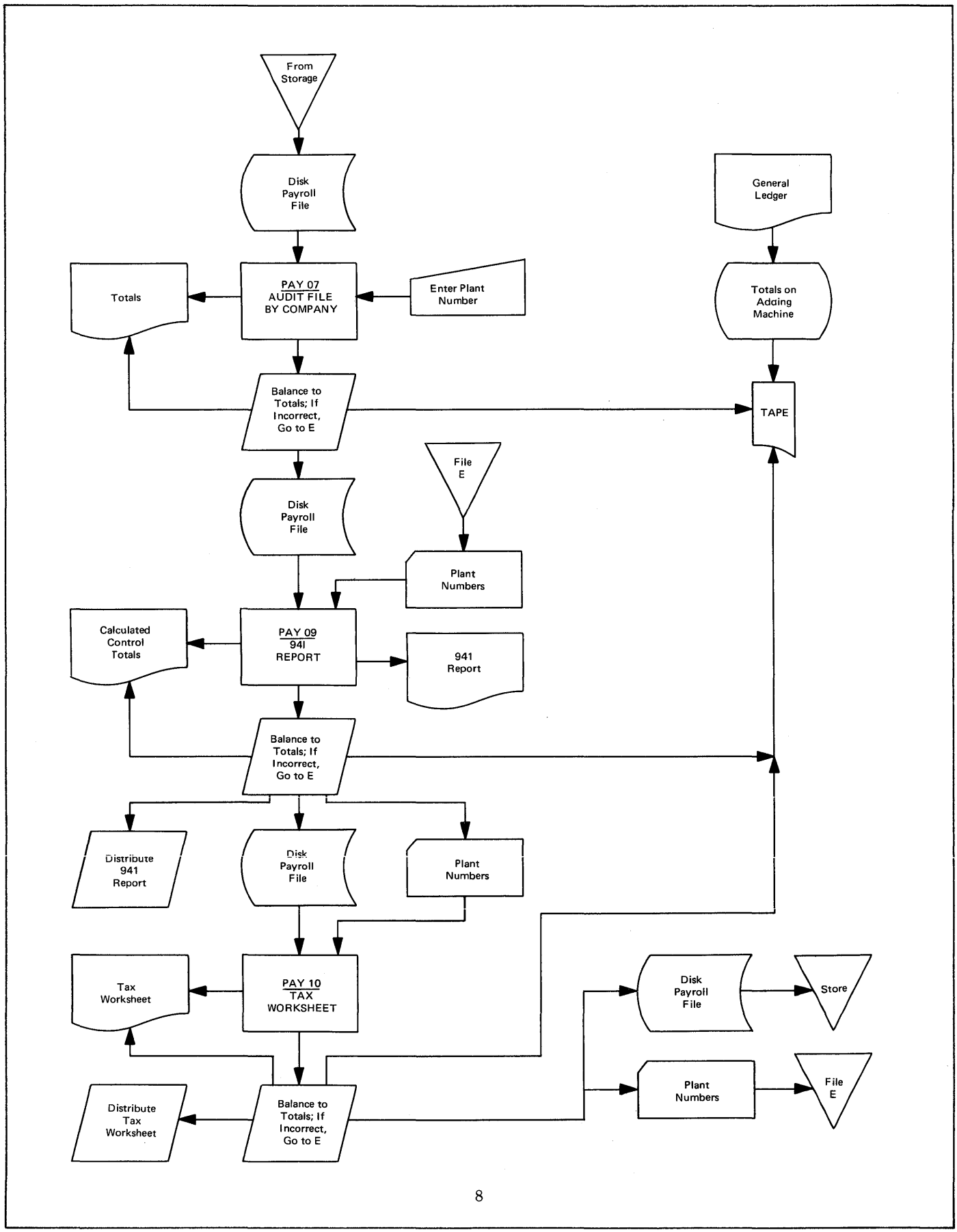
Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	08

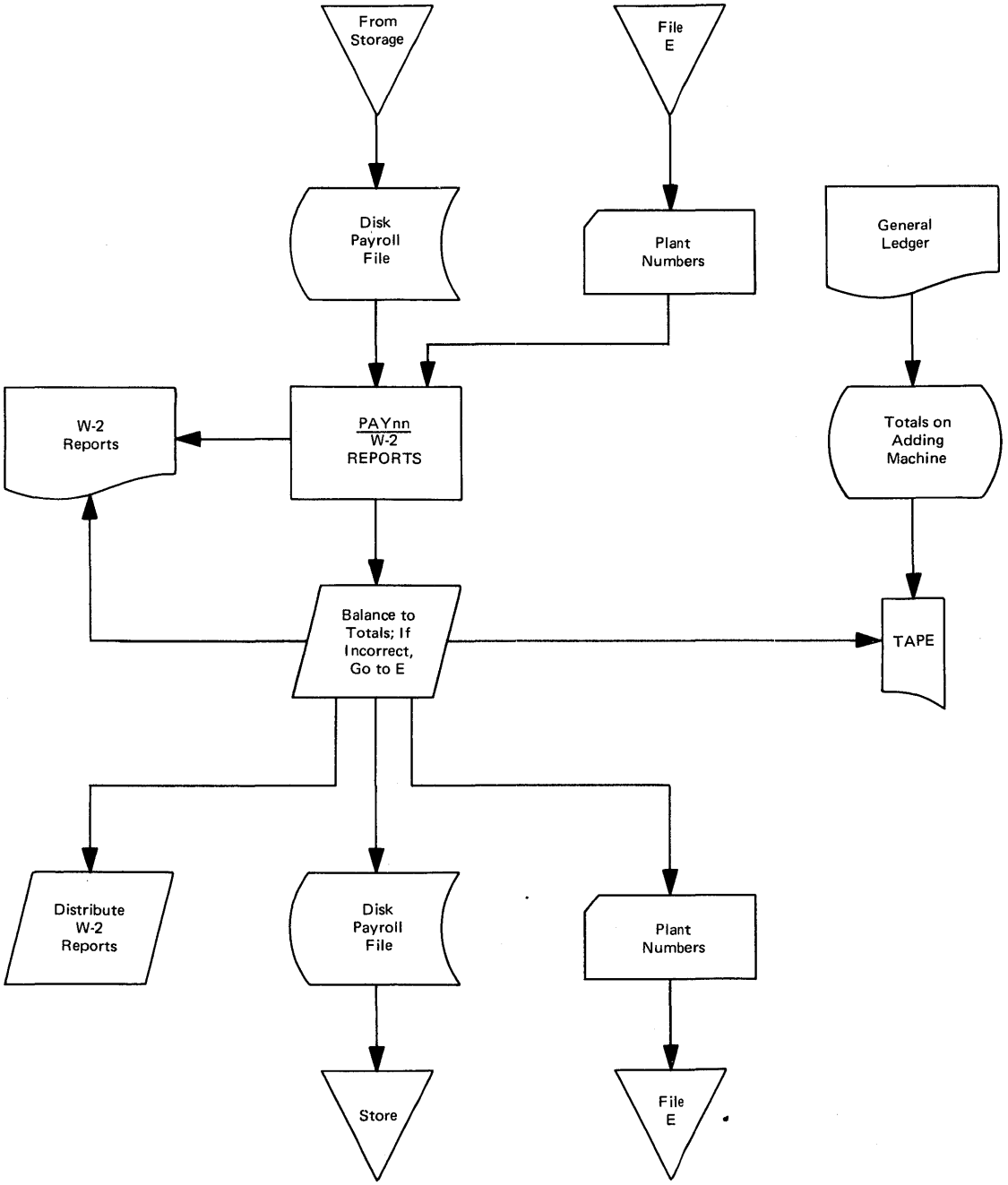


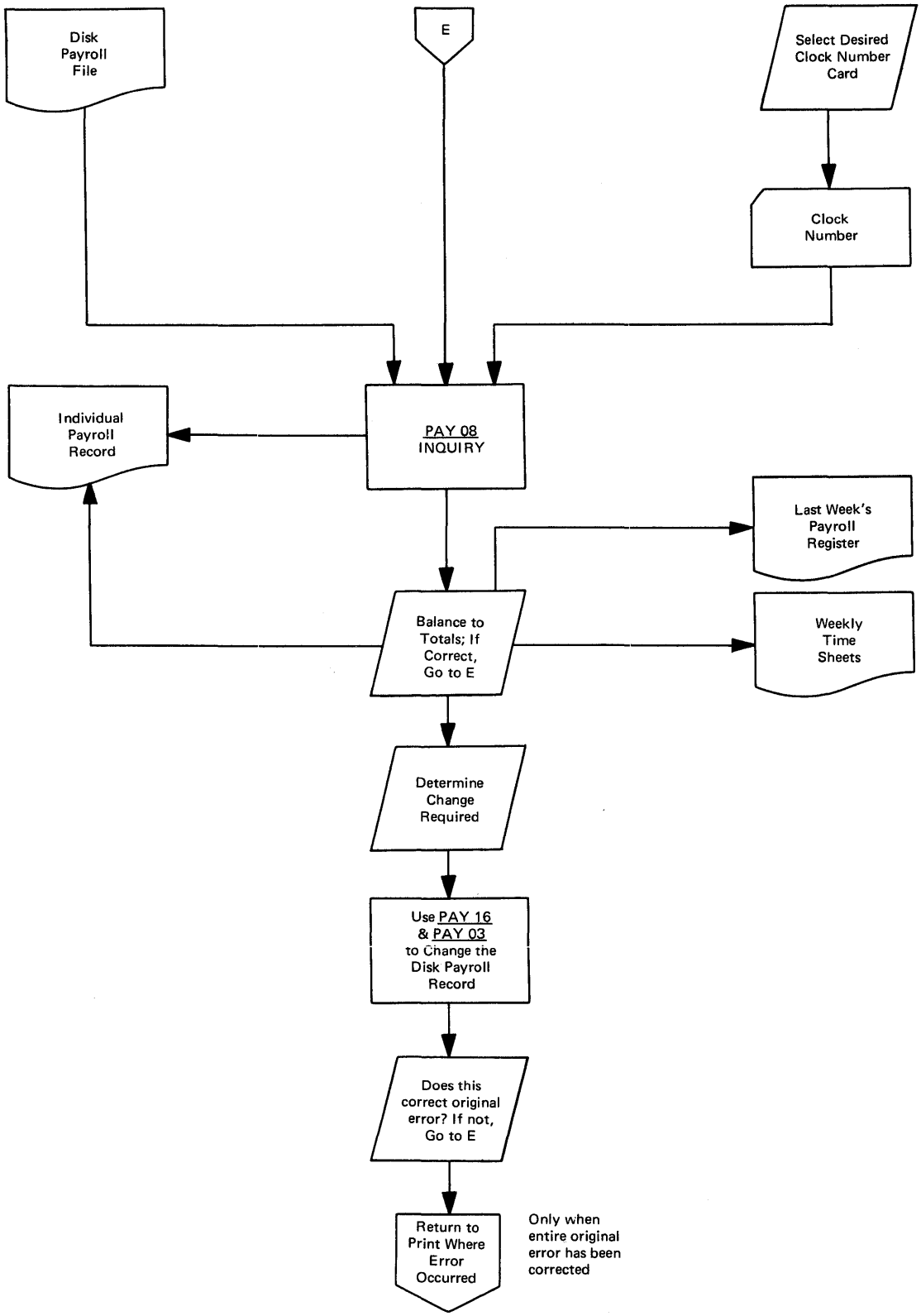

B
C
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Calculated Control Totals
PAY 05 PAYROLL CHECKS
Pay Checks and Stubs
Total on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to D
TAPE
Only When Totals Balance
Burst, Sign and Distribute Paychecks and Stubs
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
PAY 06 CHECK REGISTER
Check Register
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Distribute Check Register
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Store
File D


D
Only When Totals Do Not Balance
Destroy Checks
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
File D
Details
PAY 11
VOID CHECKS
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Details
To B
To C
File D


From Storage
Disk Payroll File
General Ledger
Union Dues Register
PAY 13 UNION DUES
Enter Plant Number
Totals on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
TAPE
Distribute Union Dues Register
Disk Payroll File
Credit Union Register
PAY 14 CREDIT UNION
Enter Plant Number
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Distribute Credit Union Register
Disk Payroll File
Enter Plant Number
Stock Deduction Register
PAY 15 STOCK DEDUCTION
Enter Plant Number
Store
Distribute Stock Deduction Register
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Disk Payroll File
PAY 12 RESET MONTHLY TOTALS
Disk Payroll File


From Storage
Disk Payroll File
General Ledger
Totals
PAY 07 AUDIT FILE BY COMPANY
Enter Plant Number
Totals on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
TAPE
File E
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
Calculated Control Totals
PAY 09 941 REPORT
941 Report
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Distribute 941 Report
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
Tax Worksheet
PAY 10 TAX WORKSHEET
Disk Payroll File
Store
Plant Numbers
File E
Distribute Tax Worksheet
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E


From Storage
File E
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
General Ledger
W-2 Reports
PAYnn W-2 REPORTS
Totals on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
TAPE
Distribute W-2 Reports
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
Store
File E


Disk Payroll File
E
Select Desired Clock Number Card
Clock Number
Individual Payroll Record
PAY 08 INQUIRY
Last Week's Payroll Register
Balance to Totals; If Correct, Go to E
Weekly Time Sheets
Determine Change Required
Use PAY 16 & PAY 03 to Change the Disk Payroll Record
Does this correct original error? If not, Go to E
Return to Print Where Error Occurred
Only when entire original error has been corrected

PAYROLL RECORD LAYOUTS

Card Forms and Console Keyboard Input

PAY01
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard
- Week no. of month — 1 digit — keyboard
- Check no. — 2 digits — keyboard
- Name — 18 blanks — keyboard
- Plant name — 32 characters maximum — keyboard
- Figure 2 — card

PAY02
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard
- Figure 3 — card

PAY03
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard
- Figure 1 — card
- Social Security Number, if changed — keyboard
- Figure 4 — card
- Figure 5 — card

PAY04
- Figure 6 — card
- Check no. — 5 digits — keyboard
- Week no. of month — 1 digit — keyboard
- Maximum check amount allowed — 5 digits — keyboard
- Figure 7 — card

PAY05
- Figure 6 — card
- Check no. — 5 digits — keyboard
- Check maximum amount — 5 digits — keyboard
- Clock no. (if requested) — 4 digits — keyboard

PAY06
- Figure 6 — card

PAY07
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard

PAY08
- Figure 9 — card
- Figure 10 — card
- Figure 5 — card

PAY09
- Figure 11 — card
- Figure 12 — card
- Figure 13 — card
- Figure 14 — card
- Figure 15 — card

PAY10
- Figure 9 — card
- Figure 5 — card

PAY11
- Figure 6 — card
- Figure 8 — card
- Figure 5 — card
- If requested:
- Insurance deduction — 4 digits — keyboard
- Stock deduction — 4 digits — keyboard
- Charity deduction — 4 digits — keyboard
- Miscellaneous deduction — 4 digits — keyboard

PAY12
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard

PAY13
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard
- Individual amount for a plant — 4 digits — keyboard

PAY14
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard

PAY15
- Plant no. — 1 digit — keyboard

PAY16
- Figure 6 — card
- Figure 7 — card

Console Printer and Line Printer Forms for Output

PAY01 — None
PAY02 — None
PAY03 — None
PAY04 — Figure 17
Figure 8
PAY05 — Figure 18
PAY06 — Figure 19
PAY07 — Figure 20
PAY08 — Figure 16
PAY09 — Figure 21
PAY10 — Figure 22
PAY11 — Figure 17
PAY12 — None
PAY13 — Figure 23
PAY14 — Figure 24
PAY15 — Figure 25
PAY16 — Figure 26

Disk Record Formats

Employee File — Figure 27
Index to Employee File — Figure 28
Company Record in the Corporation File — Figure 29

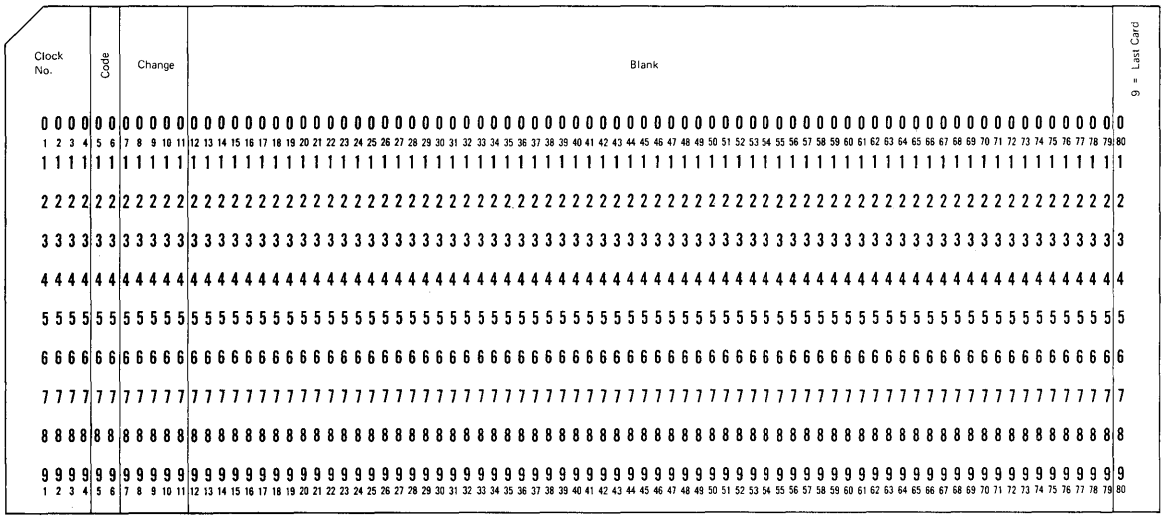


Figure 1.

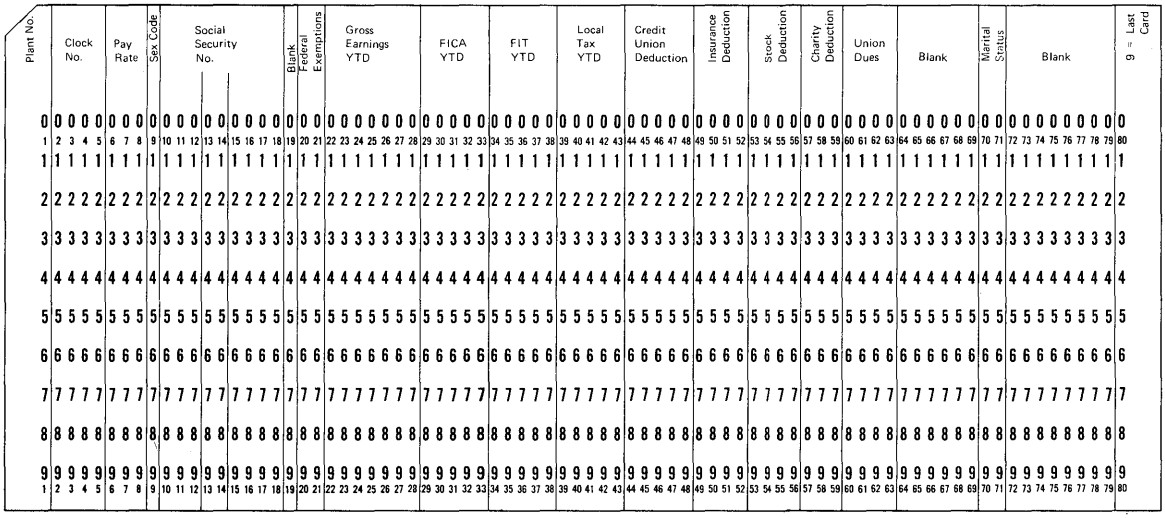


Figure 2.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	18

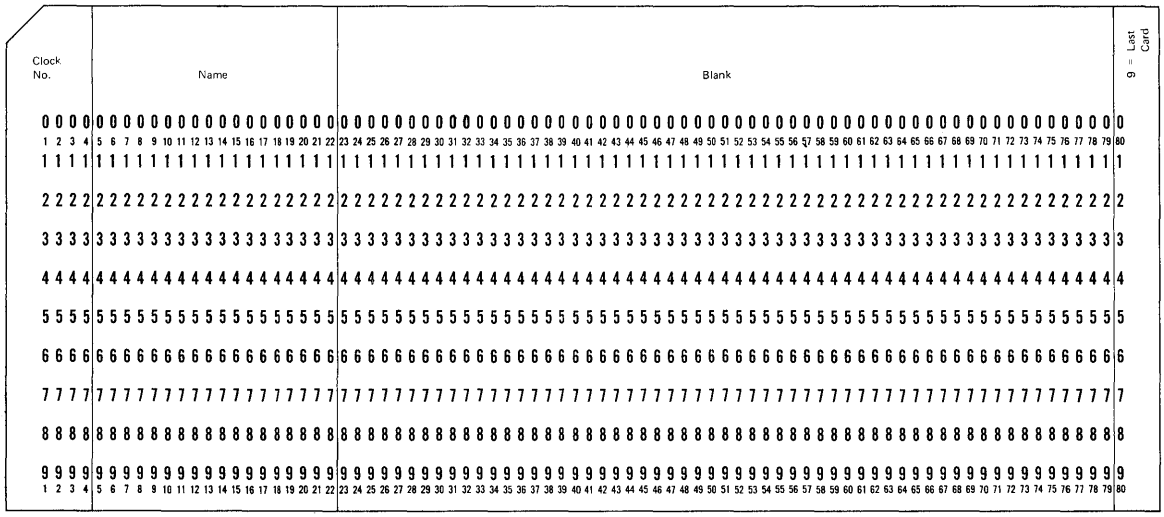


Figure 3.

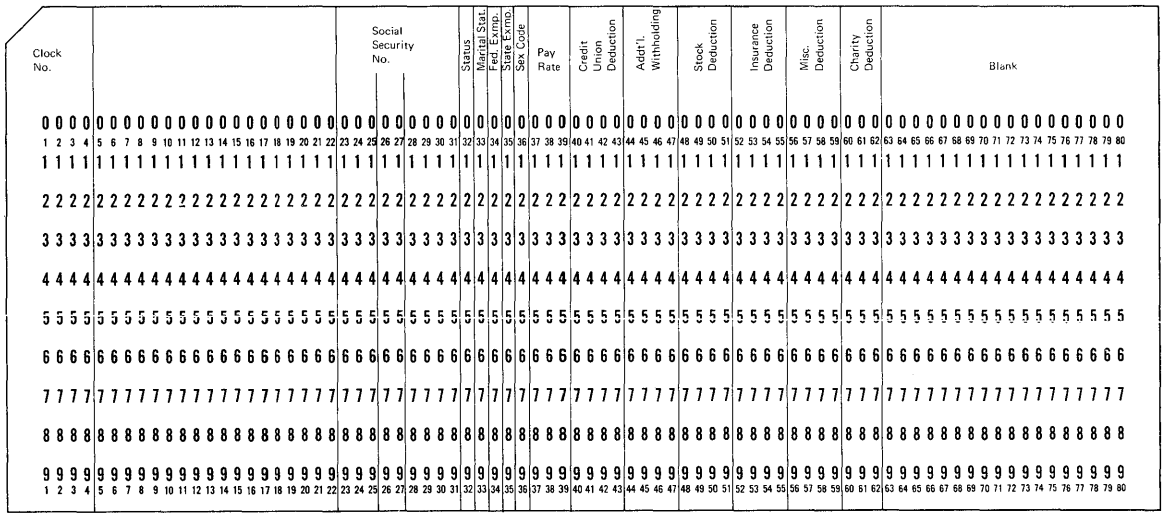


Figure 4.

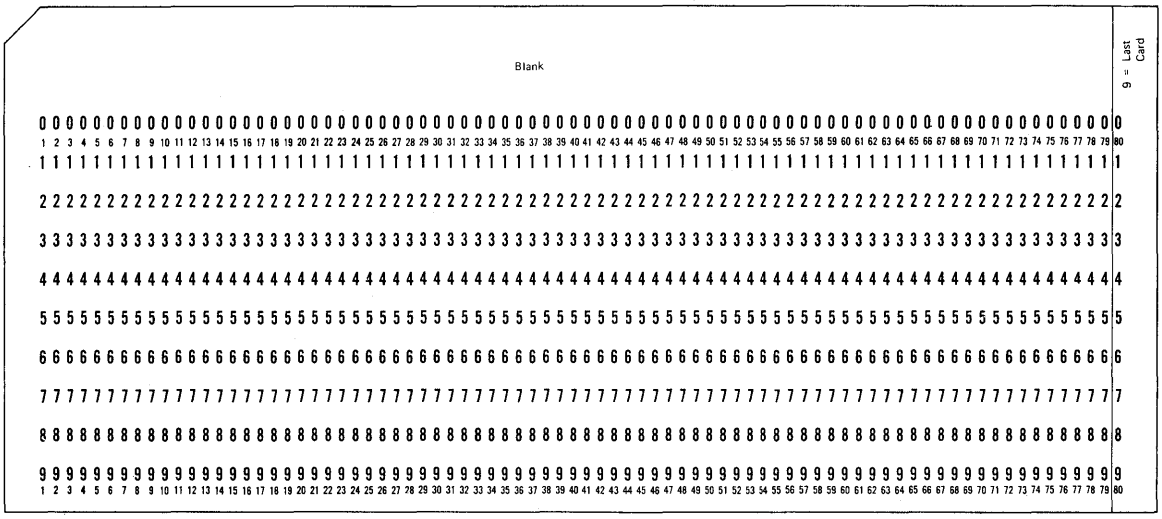


Figure 5.

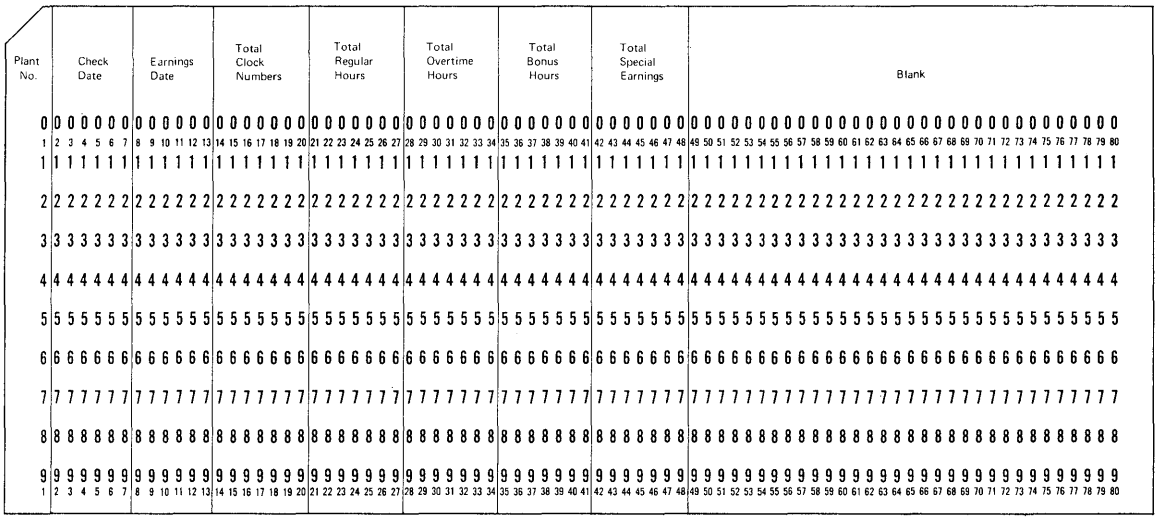


Figure 6.

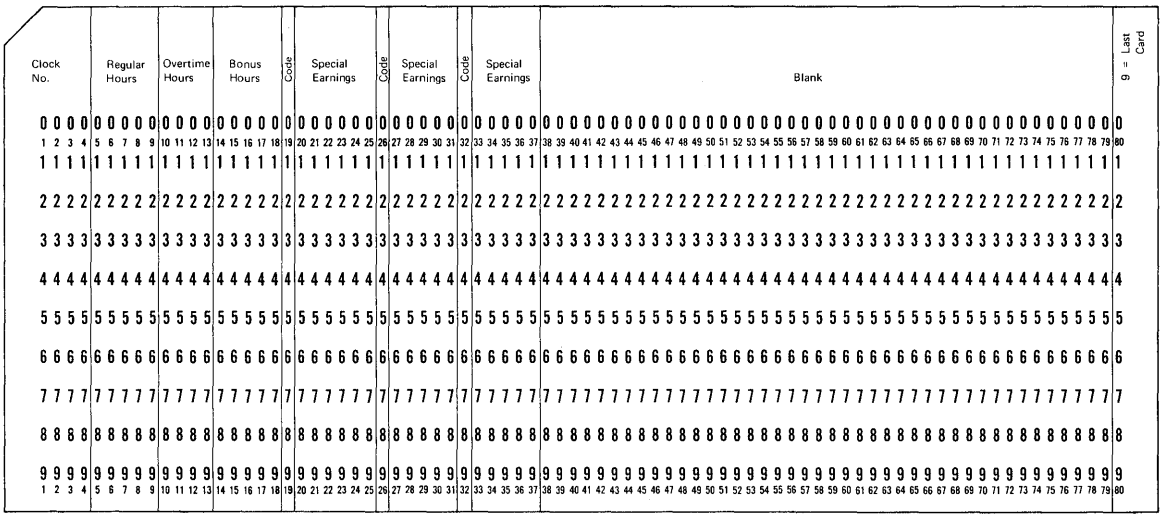


Figure 7.

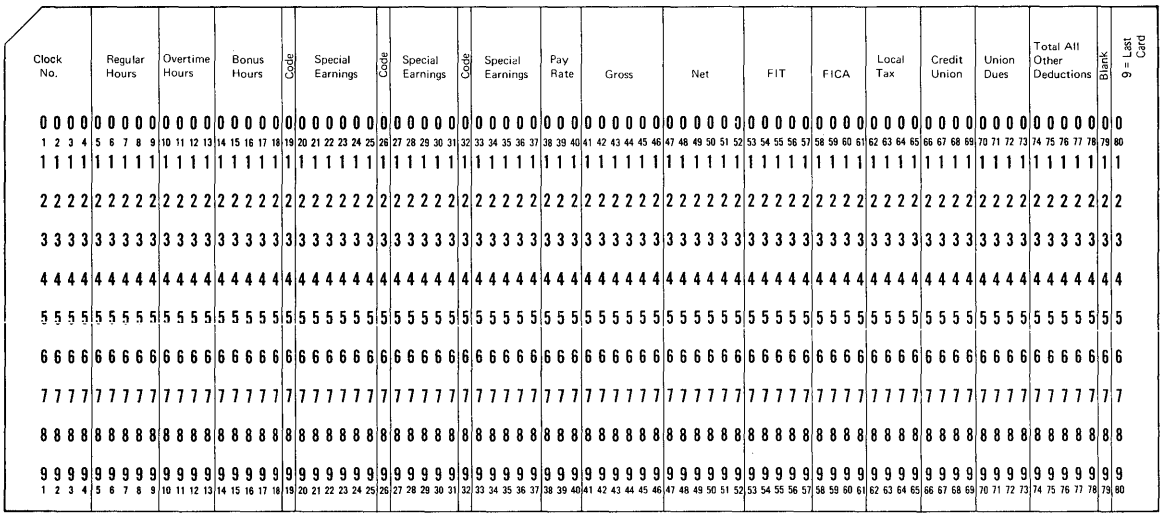


Figure 8.

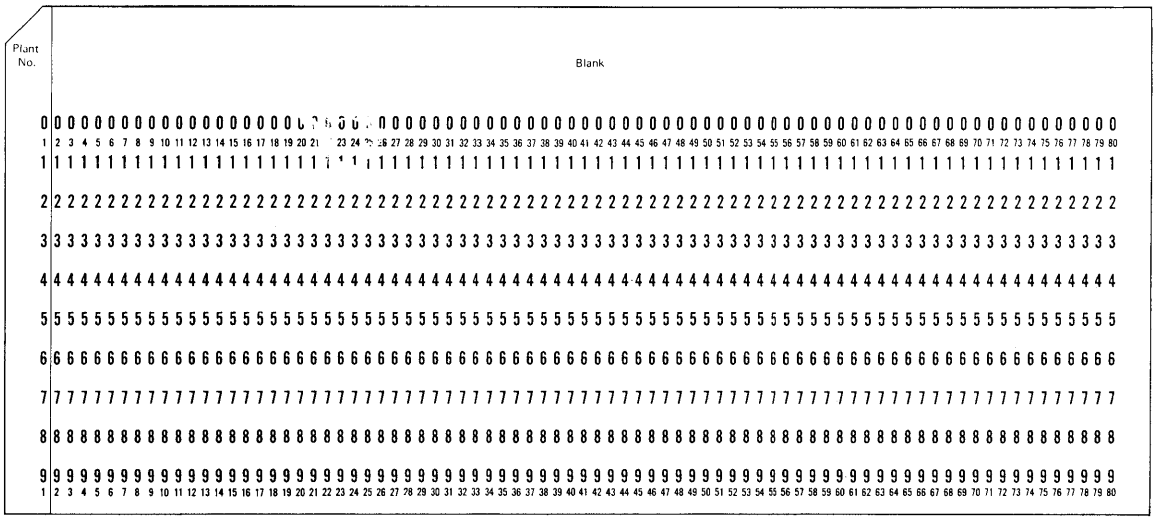


Figure 9.

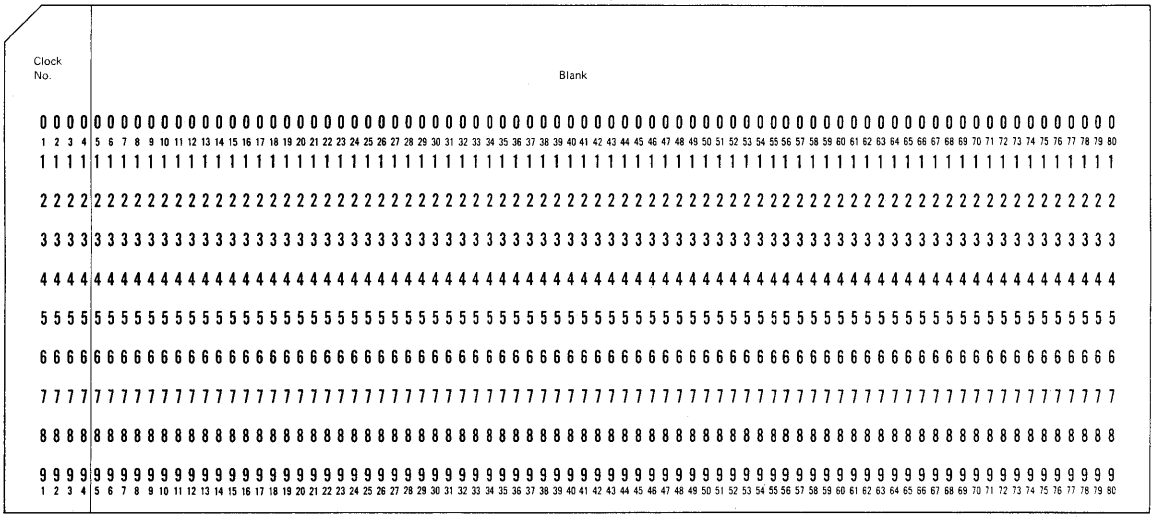


Figure 10.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	22

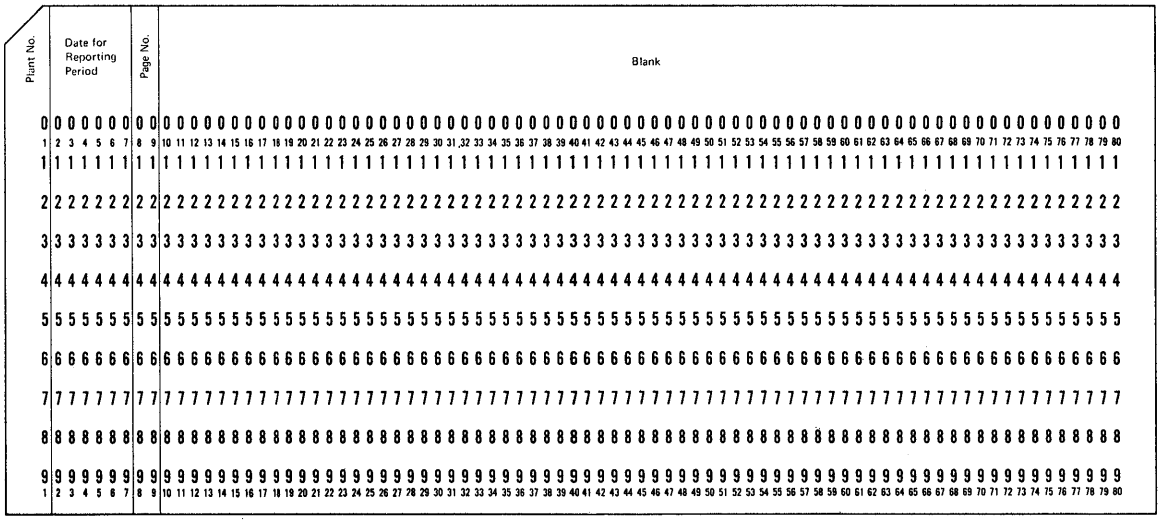


Figure 11.

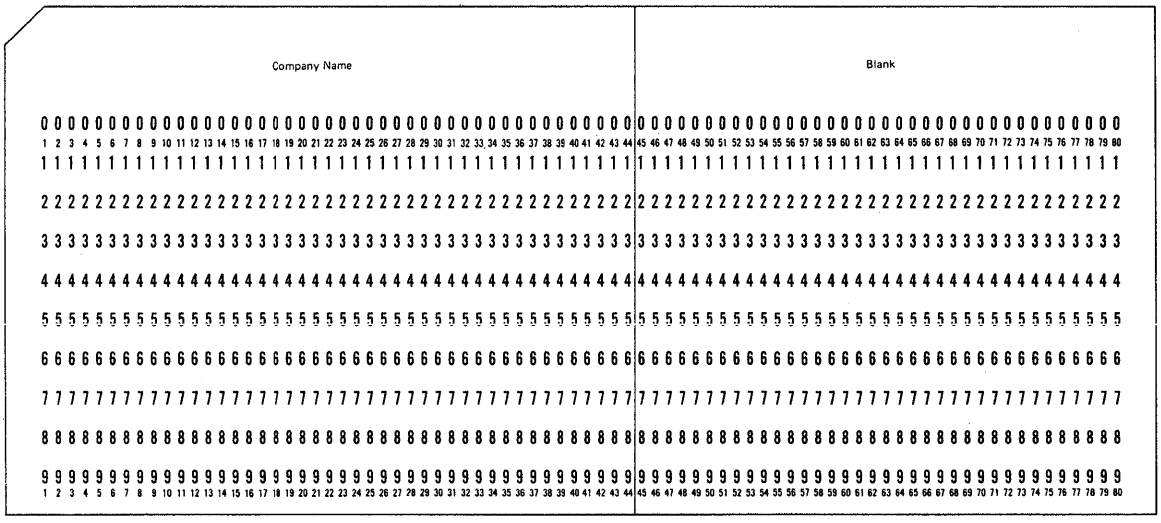


Figure 12.

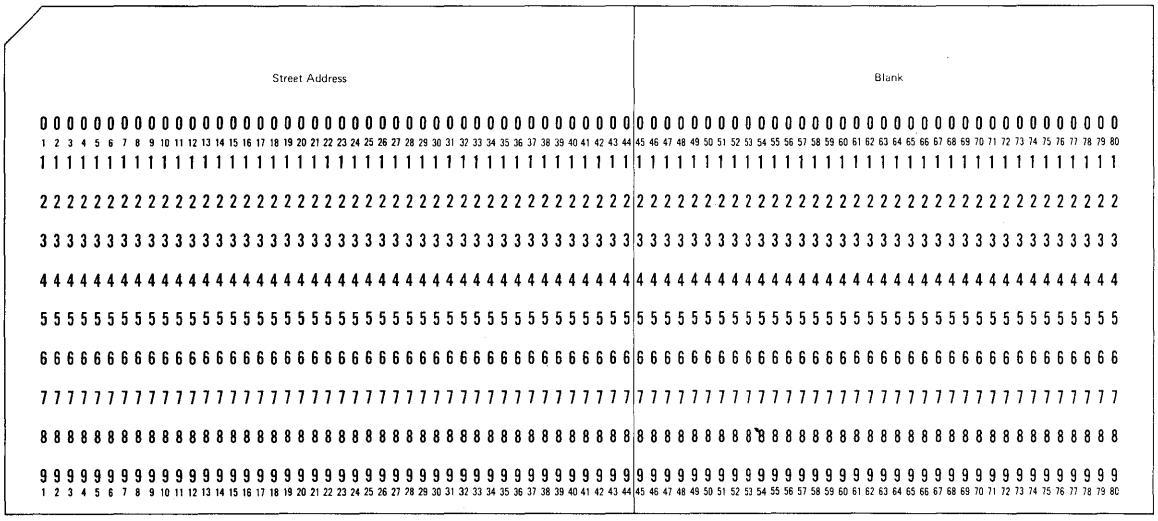


Figure 13.

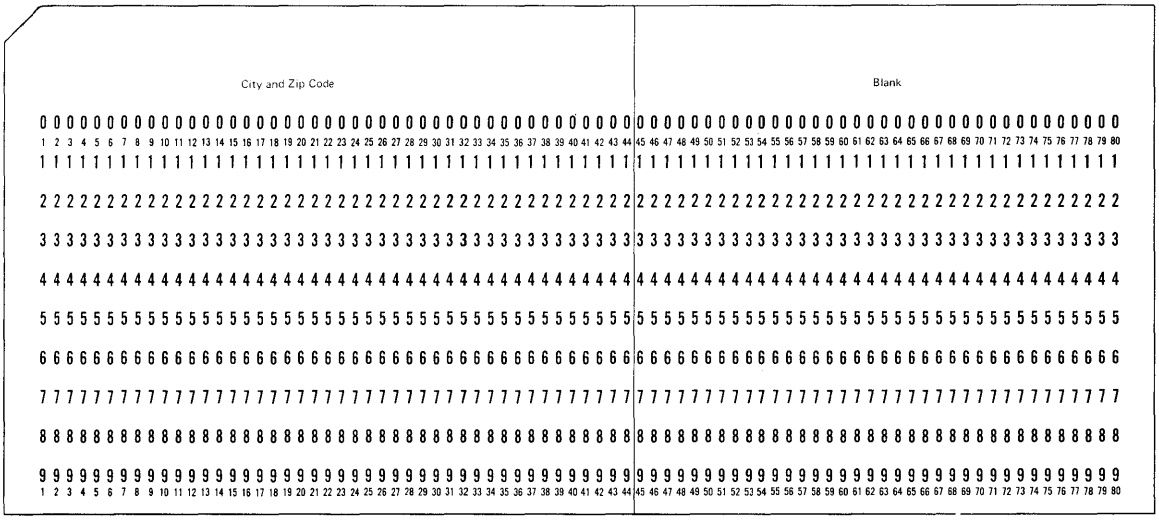


Figure 14.

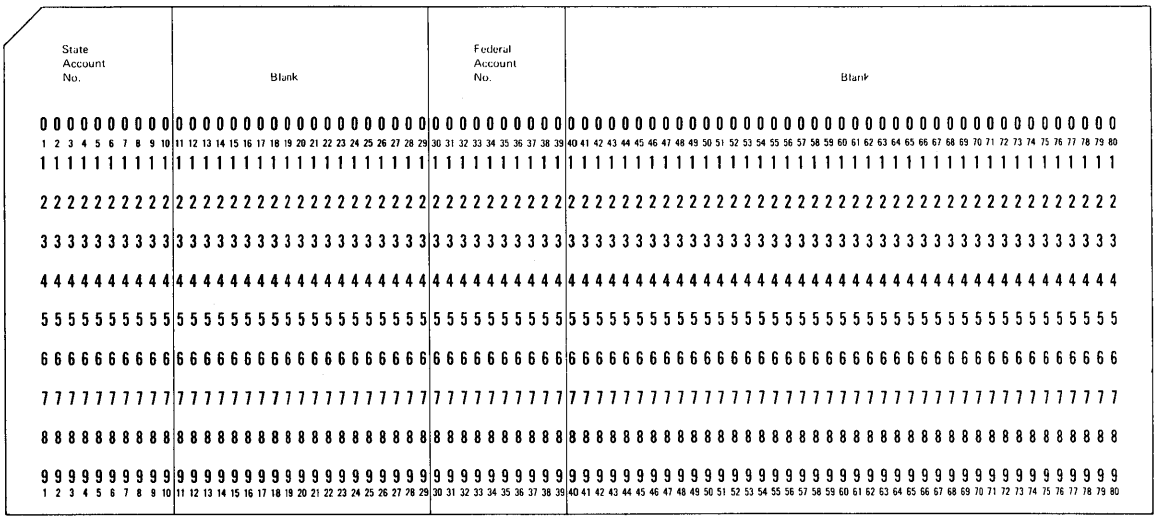


Figure 15.

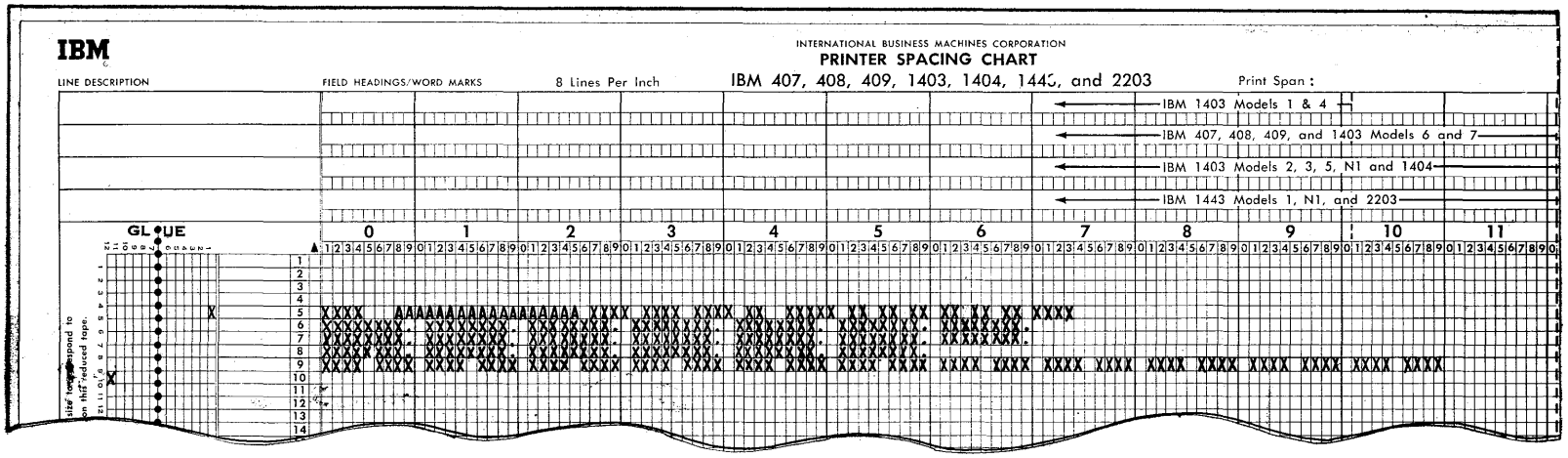


Figure 16.

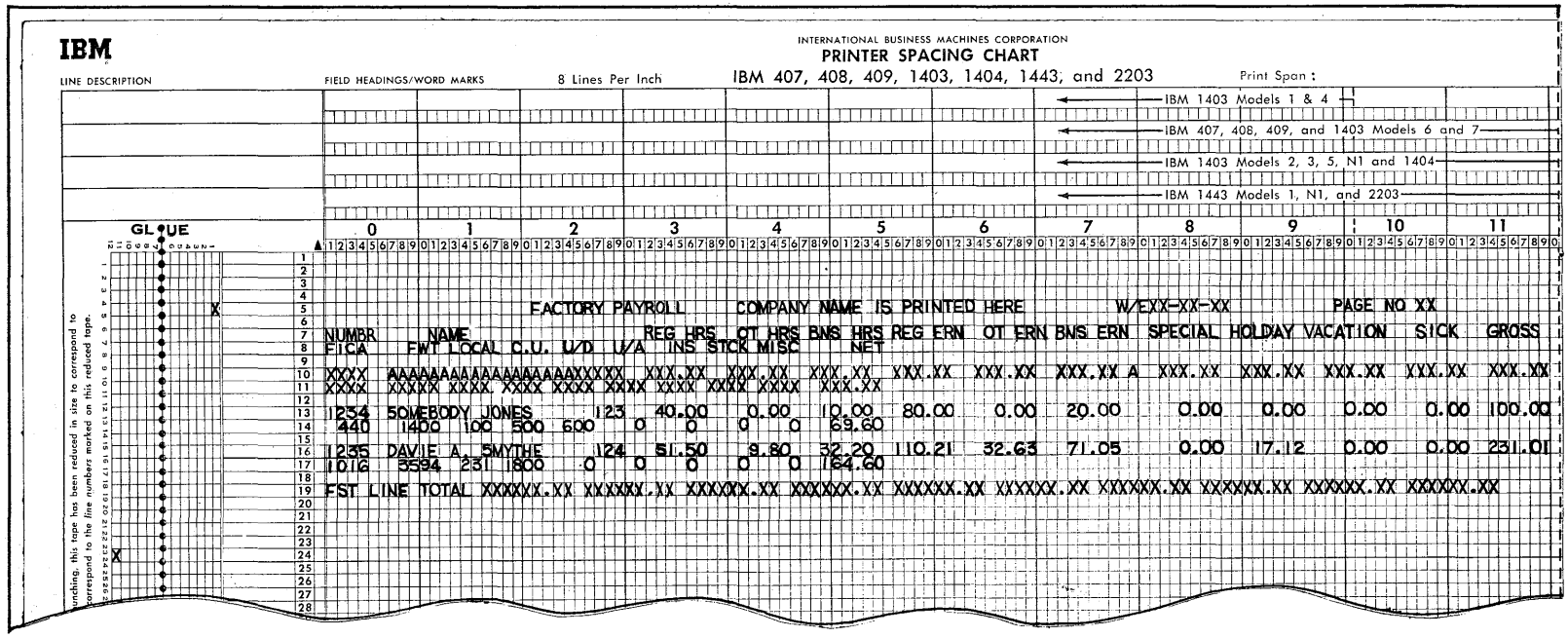


Figure 17

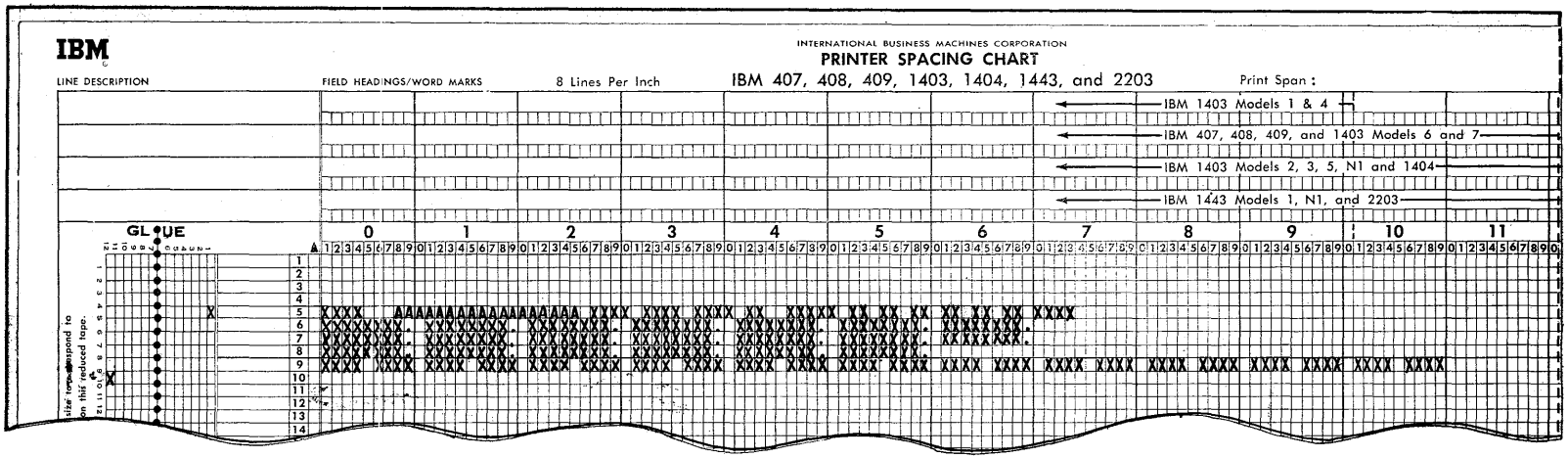


Figure 17. (Cont)

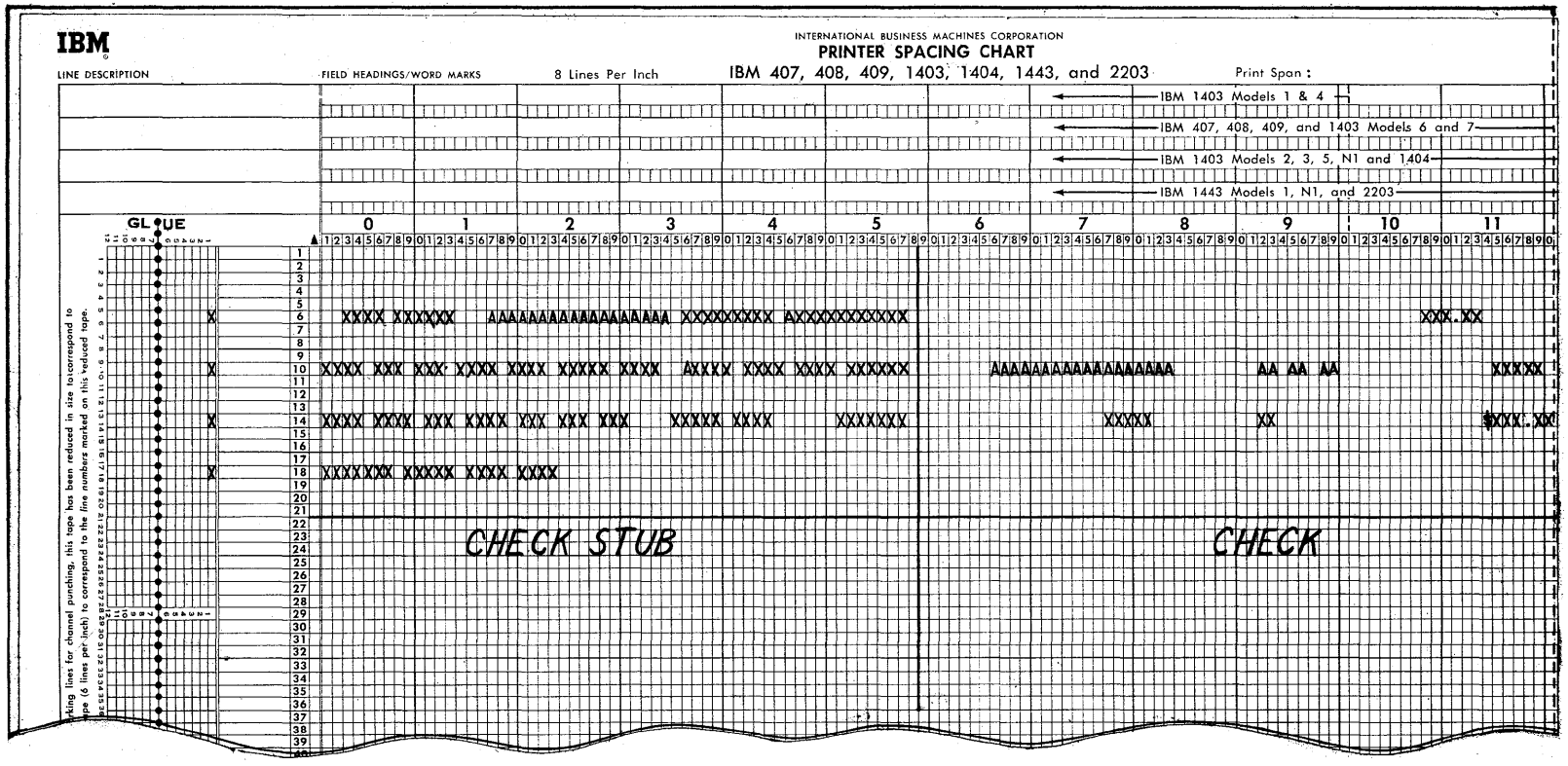

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
CHECK STUB
CHECK

Figure 18.

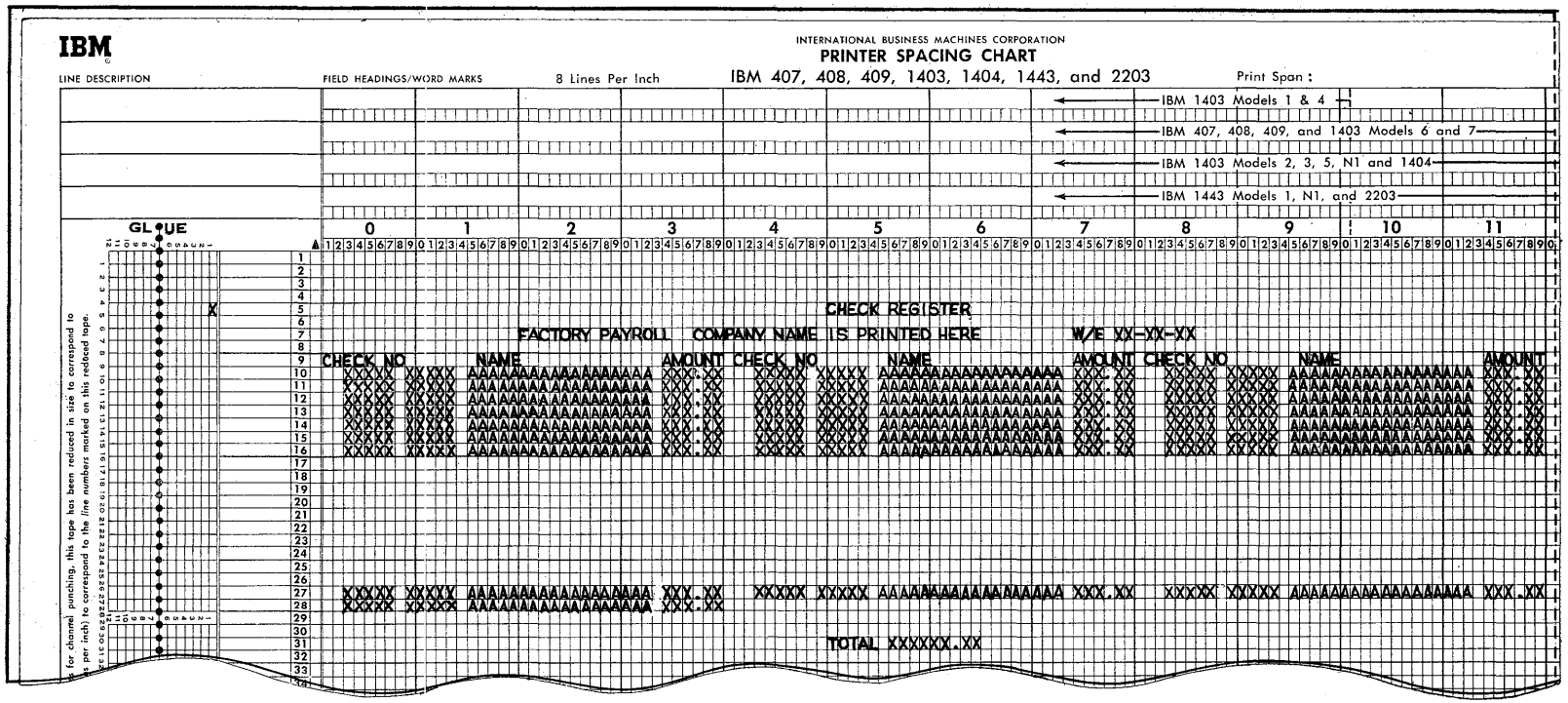

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
CHECK REGISTER
FACTORY PAYROLL COMPANY NAME IS PRINTED HERE
W/E XX-XX-XX
CHECK NO
NAME
AMOUNT
TOTAL XXXXXX.XX

Figure 19.

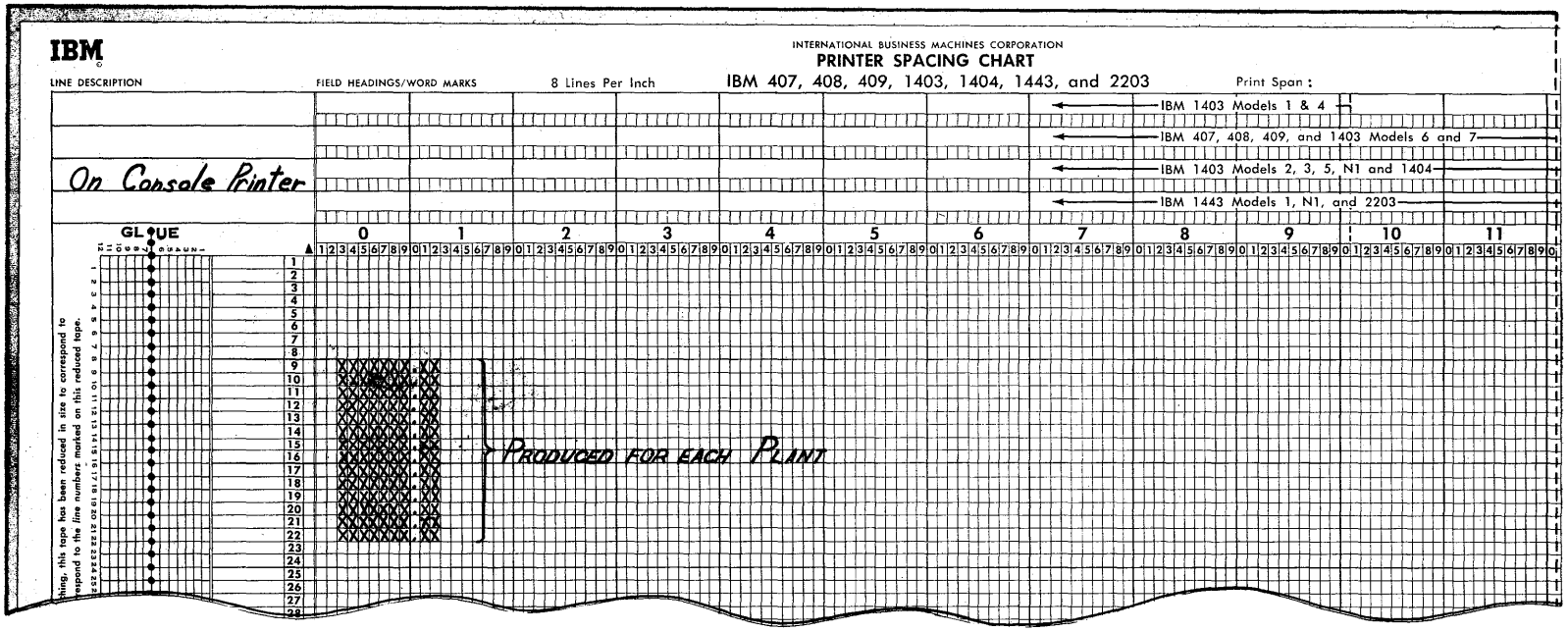

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
On Console Printer
GLUE
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
PRODUCED FOR EACH PLANT

Figure 20.

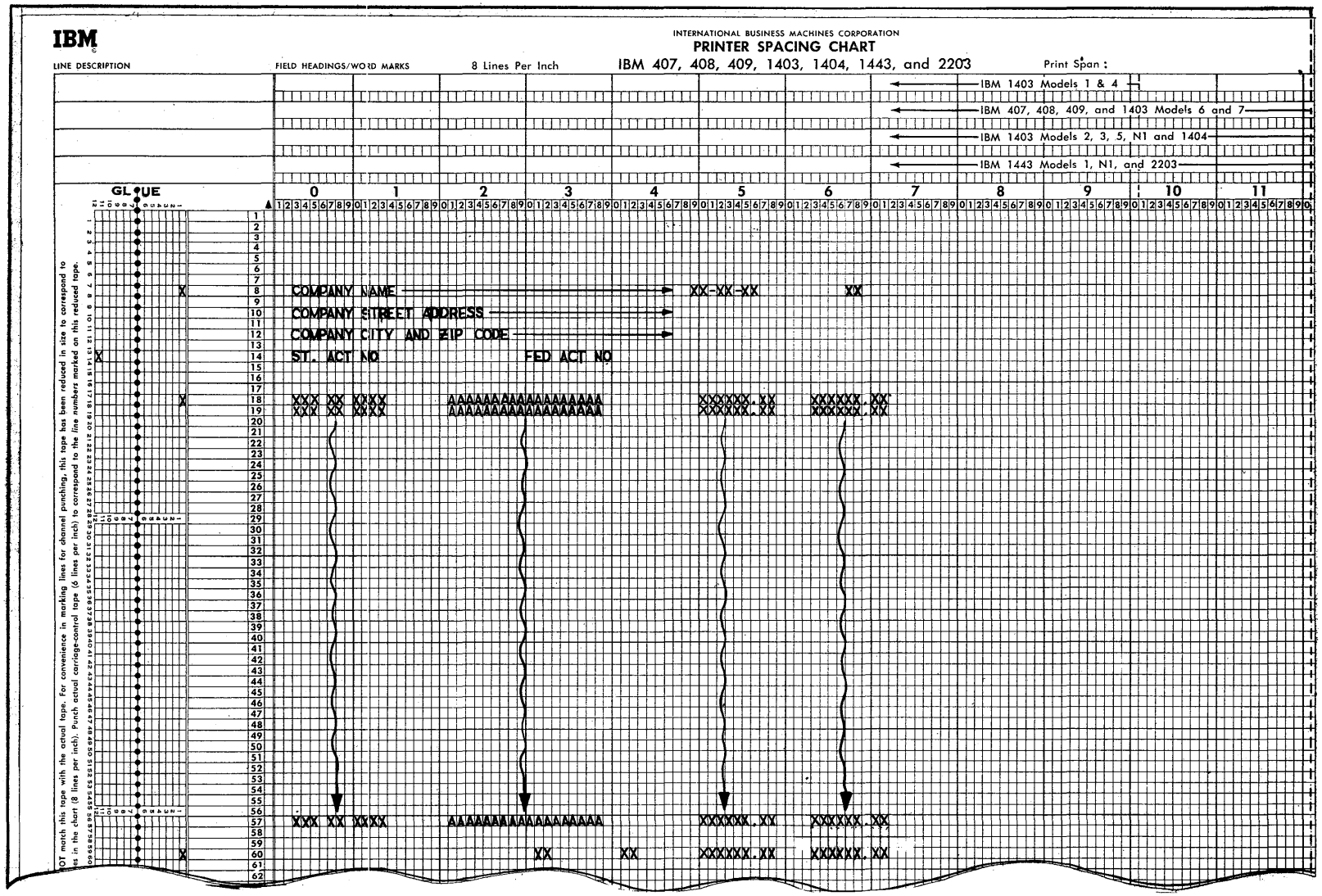

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
COMPANY NAME
COMPANY STREET ADDRESS
COMPANY CITY AND ZIP CODE
ST. ACT NO
FED ACT NO
XX-XX-XX
XX
XXX XX XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXXXX.XX
XXXXXX.XX
XX
XX
XXXXXX.XX
XXXXXX.XX

Figure 21.

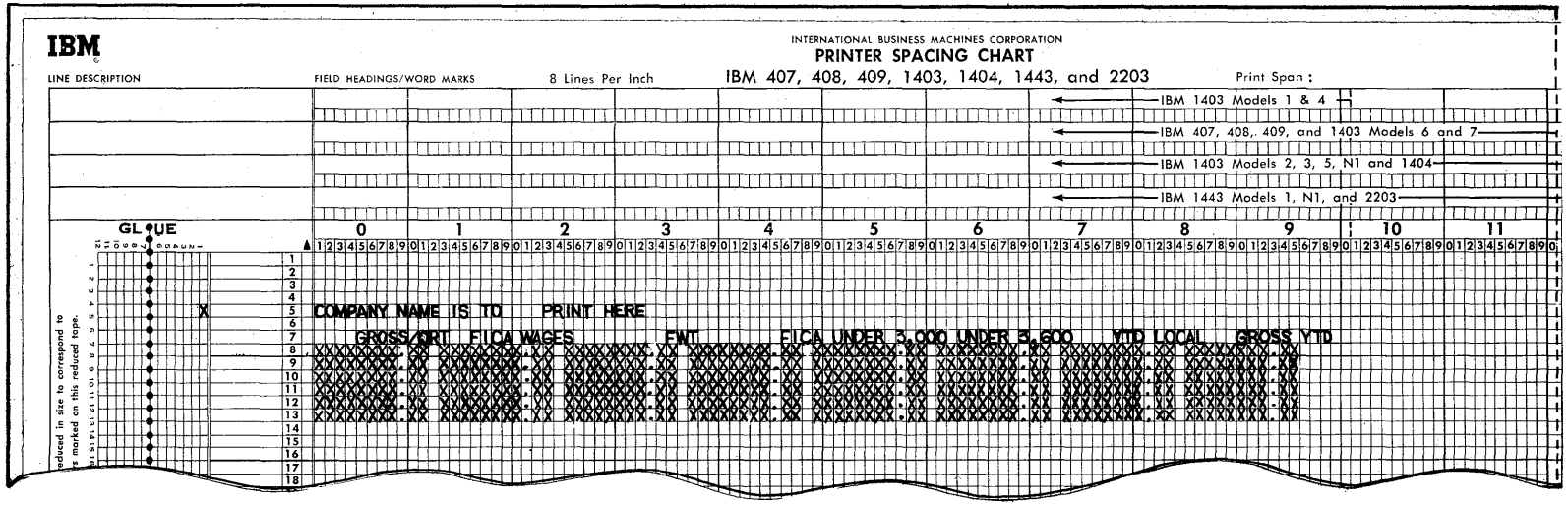

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span:
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
GROSS/RT FICA WAGES FWT FICA UNDER 3,000 UNDER 3,600 YTD LOCAL GROSS YTD

Figure 22.

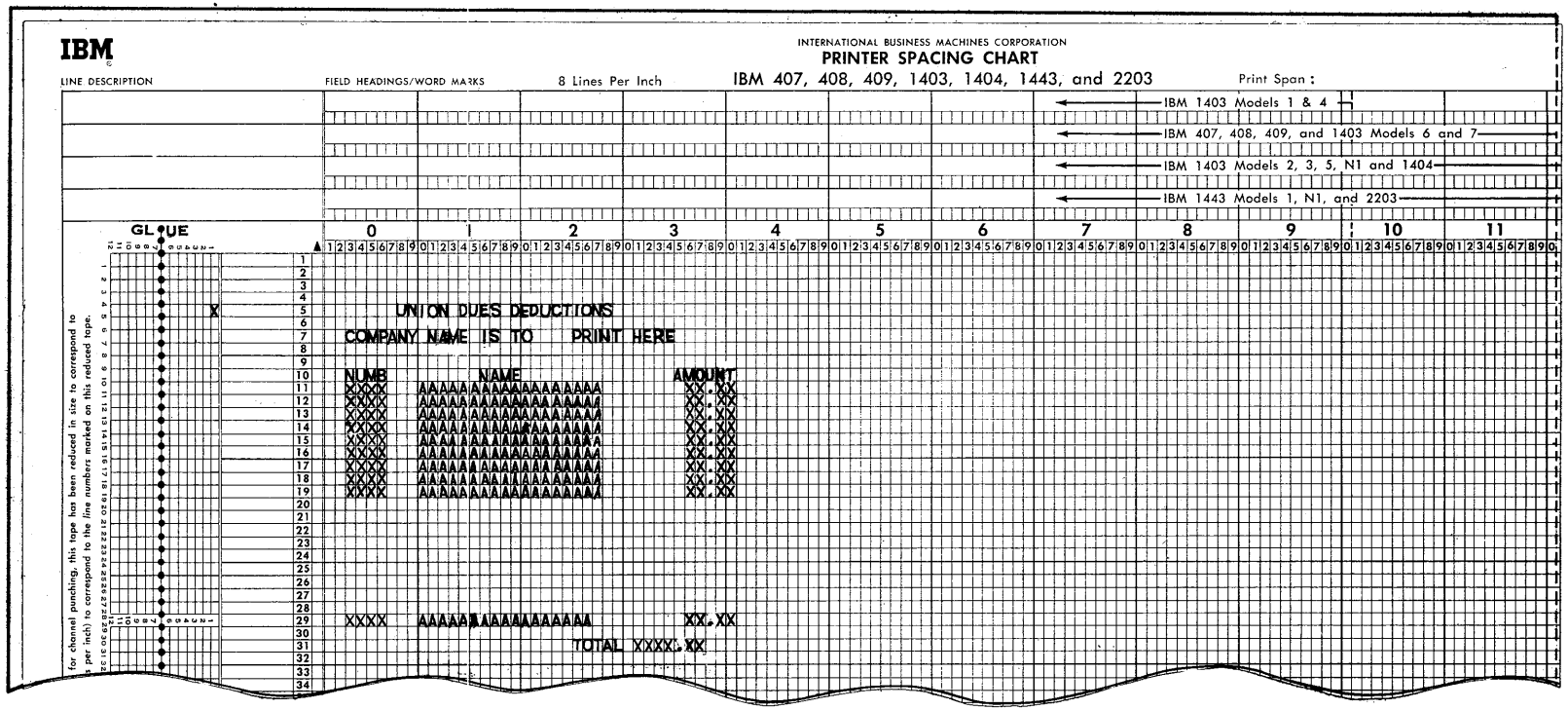

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
UNION DUES DEDUCTIONS
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
NUMB
NAME
AMOUNT
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XX.XX
TOTAL XXXX.XX
For channel punching, this tape has been reduced in size to correspond to 8 per inch) to correspond to the line numbers marked on this reduced tape.

Figure 23.

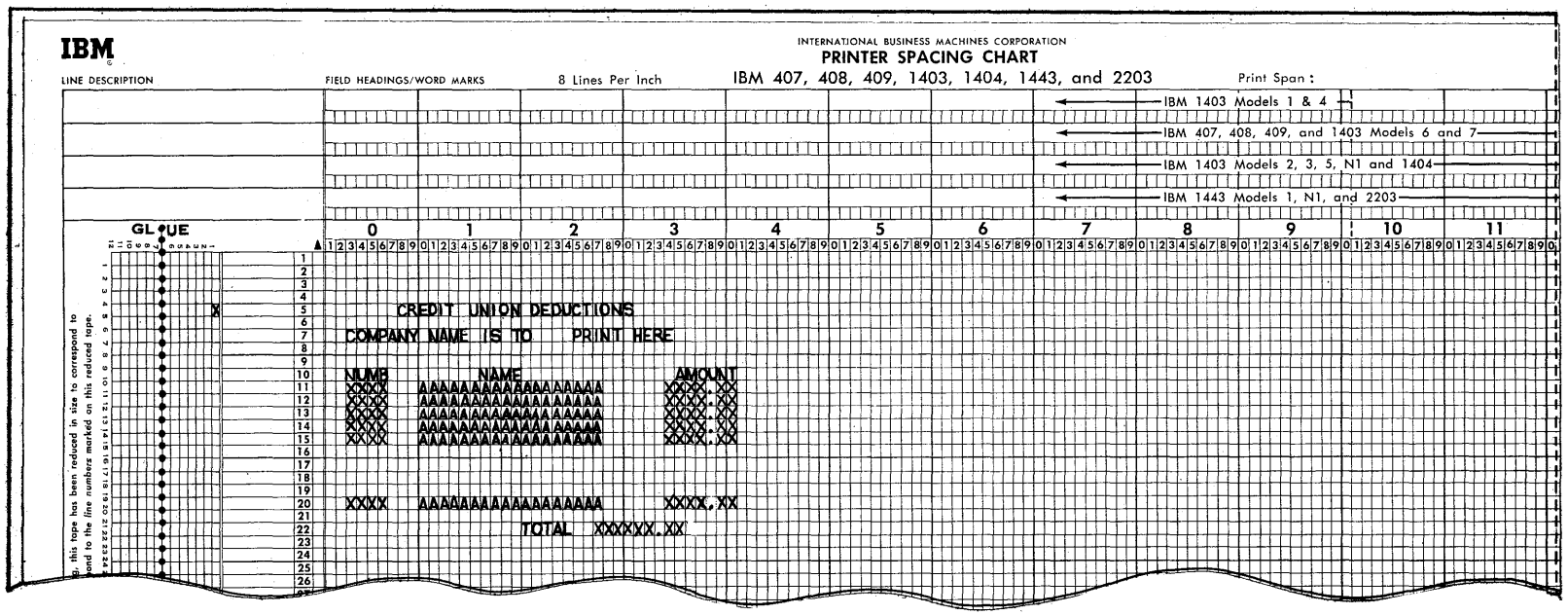

IBM
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION
PRINTER SPACING CHART
LINE DESCRIPTION
FIELD HEADINGS/WORD MARKS
8 Lines Per Inch
IBM 407, 408, 409, 1403, 1404, 1443, and 2203
Print Span :
IBM 1403 Models 1 & 4
IBM 407, 408, 409, and 1403 Models 6 and 7
IBM 1403 Models 2, 3, 5, N1 and 1404
IBM 1443 Models 1, N1, and 2203
GLUE
CREDIT UNION DEDUCTIONS
COMPANY NAME IS TO PRINT HERE
NUMB
NAME
AMOUNT
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
XXXX
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
XXXX.XX
TOTAL XXXXXX.XX

Figure 24.

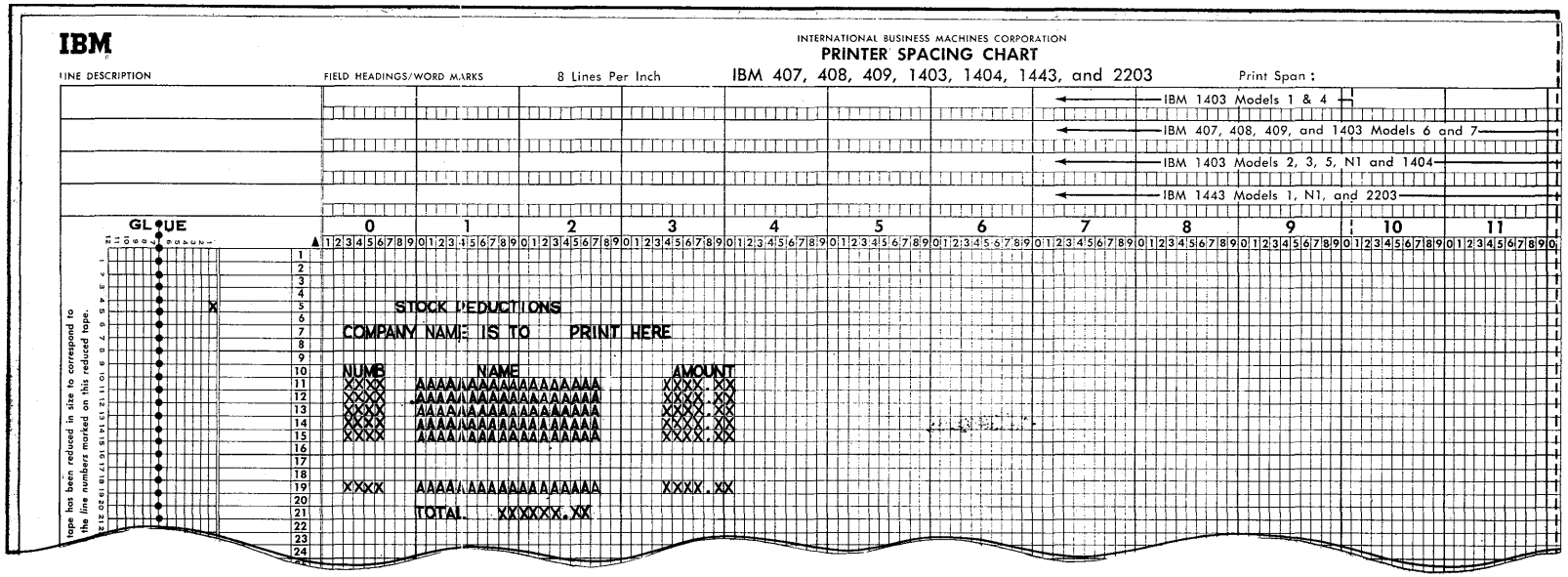


Figure 25.

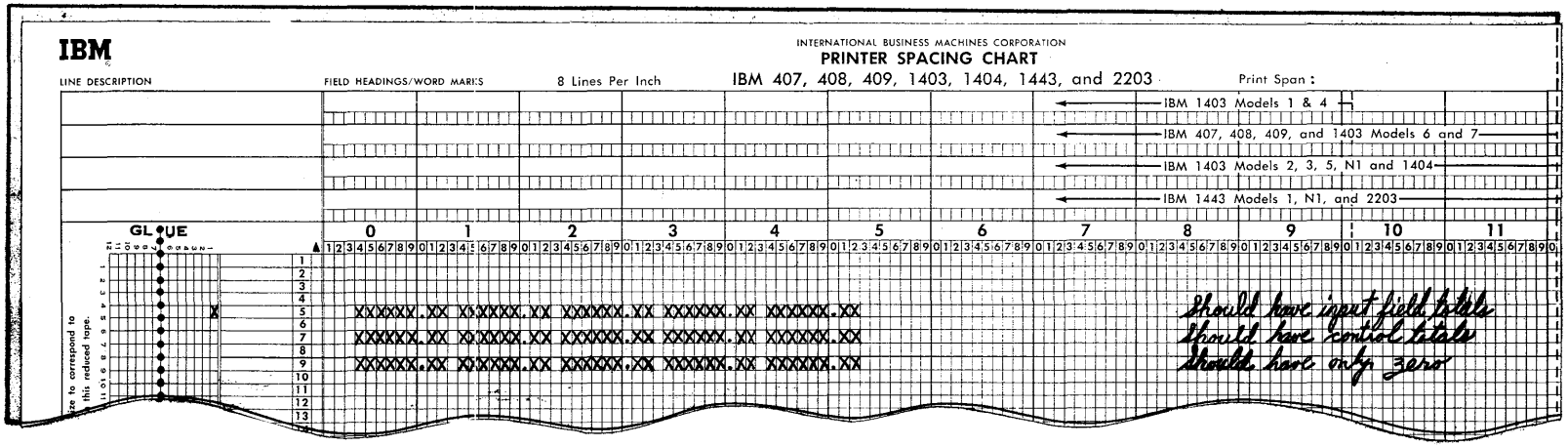


Figure 26.

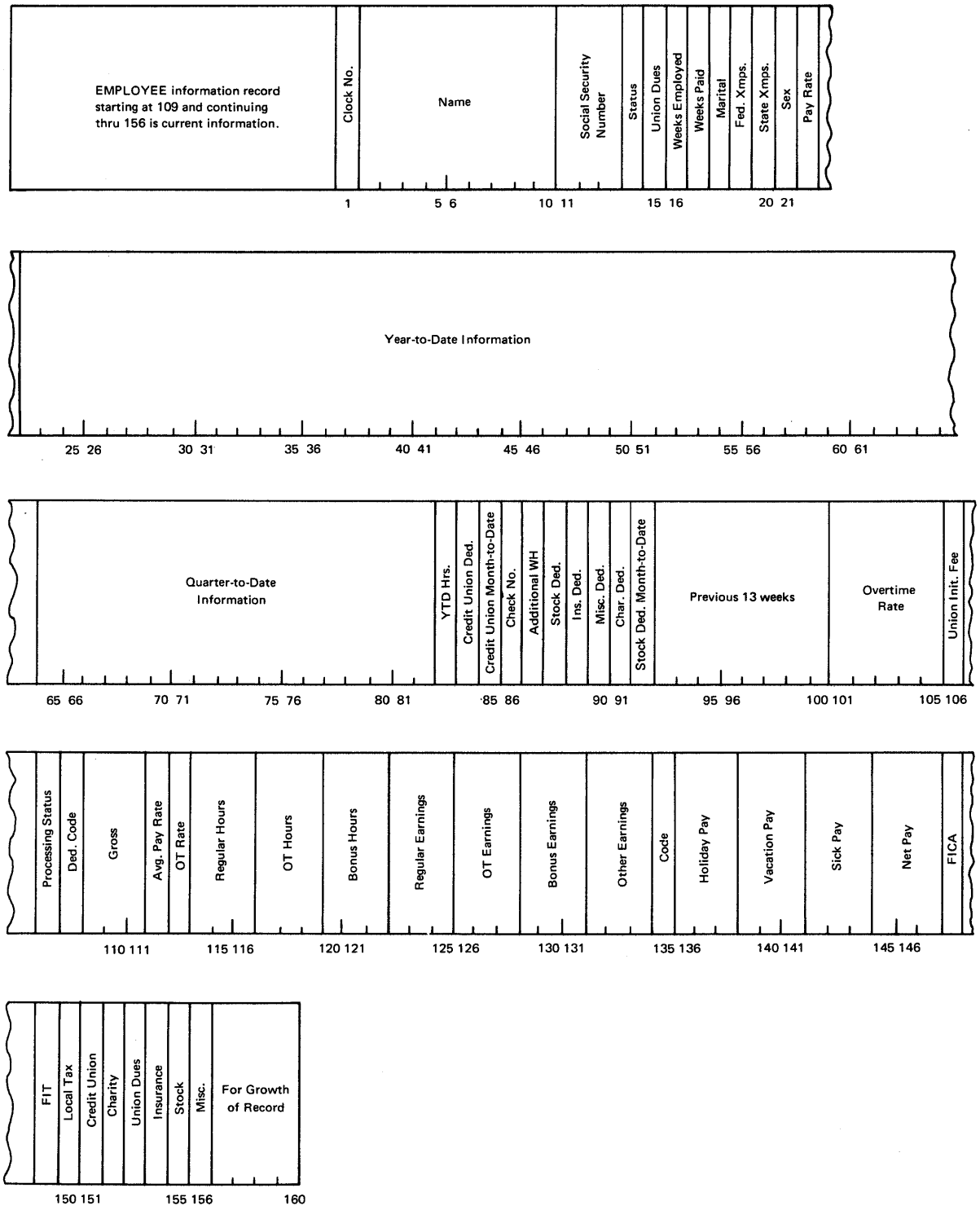

EMPLOYEE information record starting at 109 and continuing thru 156 is current information.
Clock No.
Name
Social Security Number
Status
Union Dues
Weeks Employed
Weeks Paid
Marital
Fed. Xmps.
State Xmps.
Sex
Pay Rate
1
5 6
10 11
15 16
20 21
Year-to-Date Information
25 26
30 31
35 36
40 41
45 46
50 51
55 56
60 61
Quarter-to-Date Information
YTD Hrs.
Credit Union Ded.
Credit Union Month-to-Date
Check No.
Additional WH
Stock Ded.
Ins. Ded.
Misc. Ded.
Char. Ded.
Stock Ded. Month-to-Date
Previous 13 weeks
Overtime Rate
Union Init. Fee
65 66
70 71
75 76
80 81
85 86
90 91
95 96
100 101
105 106
Processing Status
Ded. Code
Gross
Avg. Pay Rate
OT Rate
Regular Hours
OT Hours
Bonus Hours
Regular Earnings
OT Earnings
Bonus Earnings
Other Earnings
Code
Holiday Pay
Vacation Pay
Sick Pay
Net Pay
FICA
110 111
115 116
120 121
125 126
130 131
135 136
140 141
145 146
FIT
Local Tax
Credit Union
Charity
Union Dues
Insurance
Stock
Misc.
For Growth of Record
150 151
155 156
160

Figure 27.

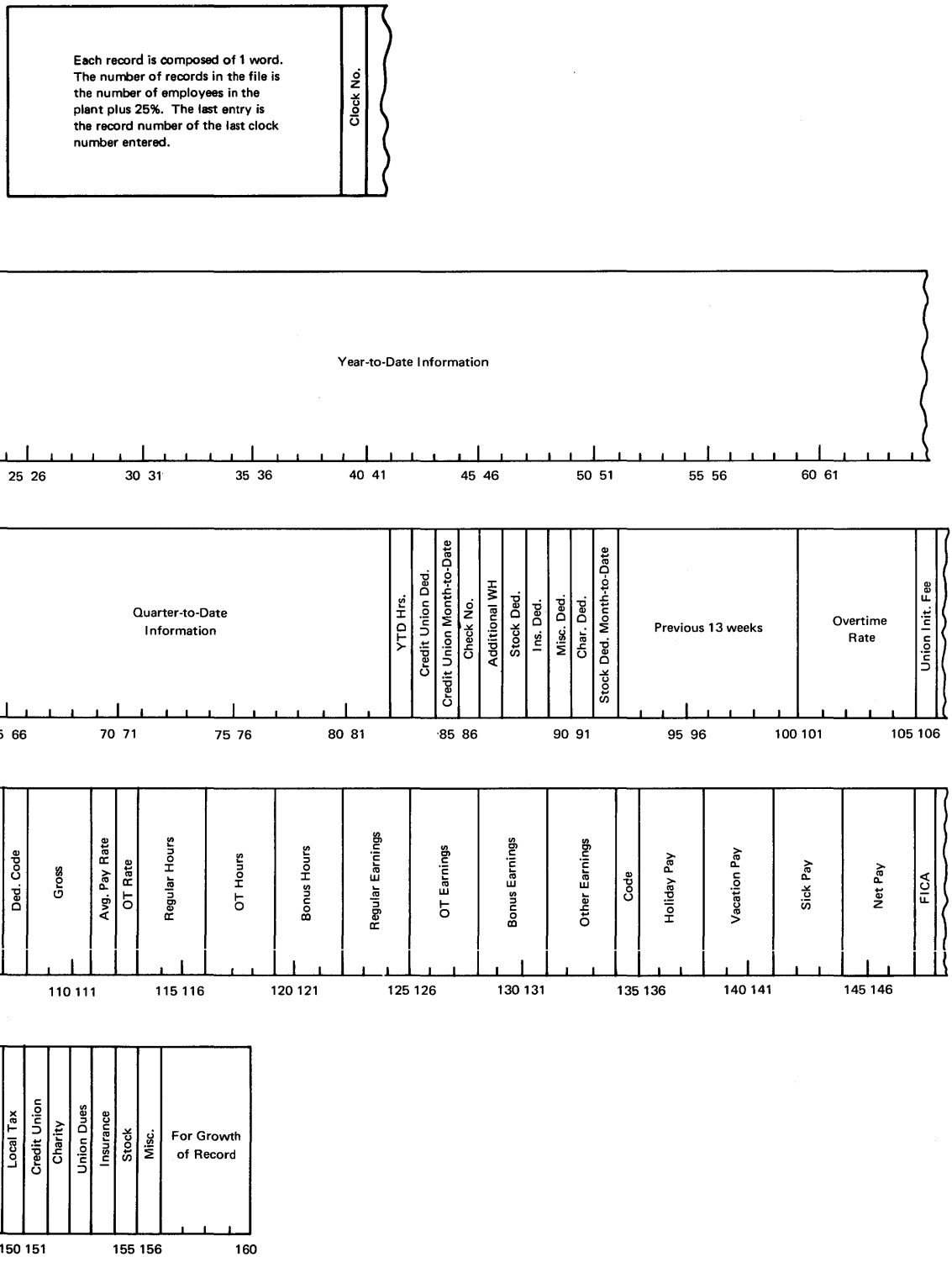

Each record is composed of 1 word. The number of records in the file is the number of employees in the plant plus 25%. The last entry is the record number of the last clock number entered.
Clock No.
Year-to-Date Information
25 26
30 31
35 36
40 41
45 46
50 51
55 56
60 61
Quarter-to-Date Information
YTD Hrs.
Credit Union Ded.
Credit Union Month-to-Date
Check No.
Additional WH
Stock Ded.
Ins. Ded.
Misc. Ded.
Char. Ded.
Stock Ded. Month-to-Date
Previous 13 weeks
Overtime Rate
Union Init. Fee
65 66
70 71
75 76
80 81
85 86
90 91
95 96
100 101
105 106
Processing Status
Ded. Code
Gross
Avg. Pay Rate
OT Rate
Regular Hours
OT Hours
Bonus Hours
Regular Earnings
OT Earnings
Bonus Earnings
Other Earnings
Code
Holiday Pay
Vacation Pay
Sick Pay
Net Pay
FICA
110 111
115 116
120 121
125 126
130 131
135 136
140 141
145 146
FIT
Local Tax
Credit Union
Charity
Union Dues
Insurance
Stock
Misc.
For Growth of Record
150 151
155 156
160

Figure 28.

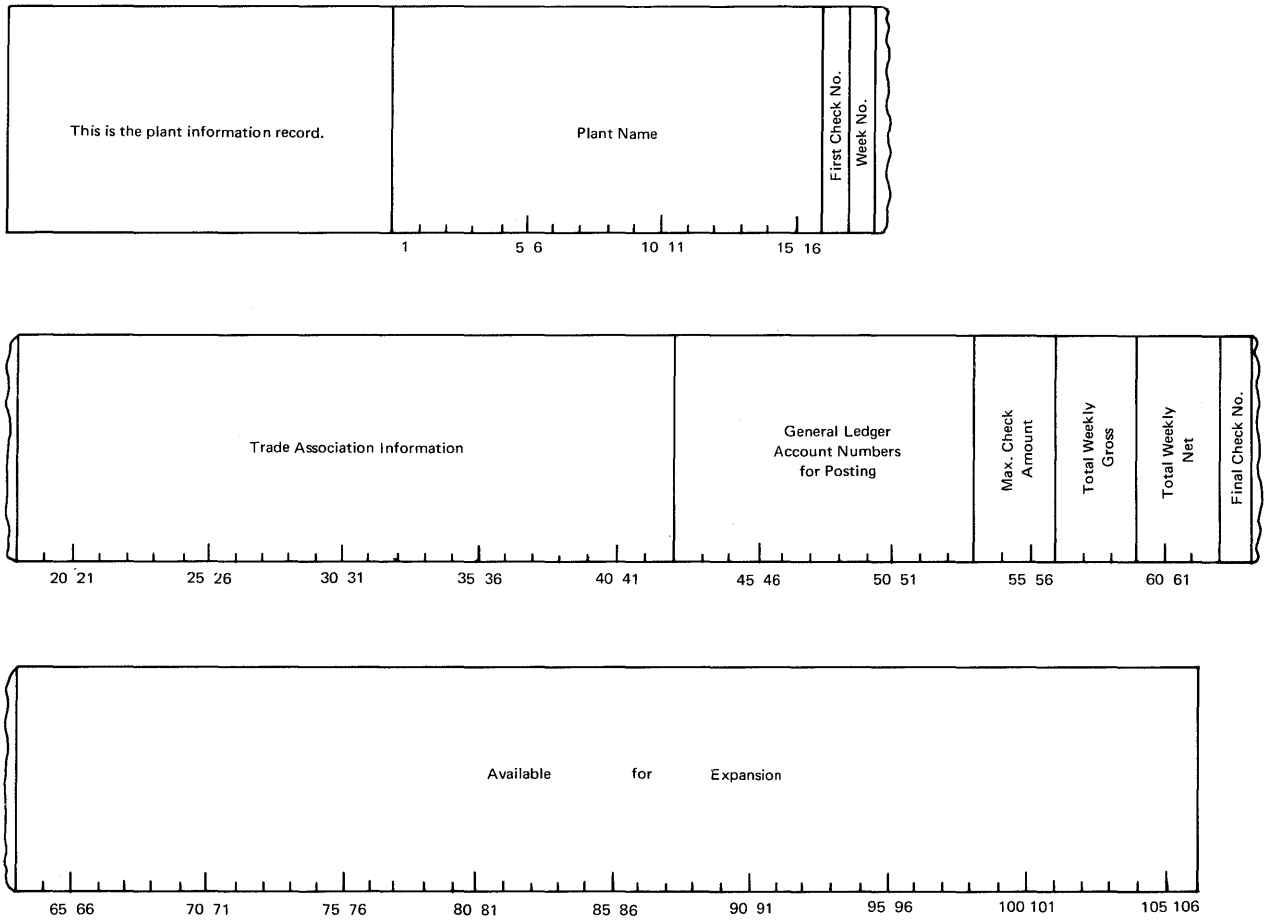

This is the plant information record.
Plant Name
First Check No.
Week No.
1
5 6
10 11
15 16
Trade Association Information
General Ledger Account Numbers for Posting
Max. Check Amount
Total Weekly Gross
Total Weekly Net
Final Check No.
20 21
25 26
30 31
35 36
40 41
45 46
50 51
55 56
60 61
Available for Expansion
65 66
70 71
75 76
80 81
85 86
90 91
95 96
100 101
105 106

Figure 29.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	38

PAYROLL PROGRAMS

PAY01: PAYROLL FILE CREATE

VARIABLES						IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67 Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	100000	0.00	Maximum check amount for a file.
COMP	A2	16	I,O	-	—	Company name.
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	0.000	0.00	Trade association reports.
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	Set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks.
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Employee Files, set up by plant
IND	I	1	T	106	101	File number of index for a plant. P# +100
INDEX	I	250	T	XXXX	1000	Index to plant now being processed
INIT	I	1	O	0	0	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in Indexes to Employee File
IN2	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	—	Equivalent to IN1
IPD	I	1	O	0	0	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISUPP	I	13	O	0	0	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	0	Account number for posting to in General Ledger
IWEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of the month

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
IWVA	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
K	I	1	T	9	Ø	Last card test
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	Ø	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL.
LST	I	1	T	250	250	Last record number in a file
LYRHR	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
M	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status-(1-single),(2-married)
MUNC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	I,O	–	–	Dummy area to allocated space for name
NCHCK	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Credit union deduction
NCUDD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly Credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Union dues deduction
NINS	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NOPLT	I	1	T	6	1	Plant number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	40

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

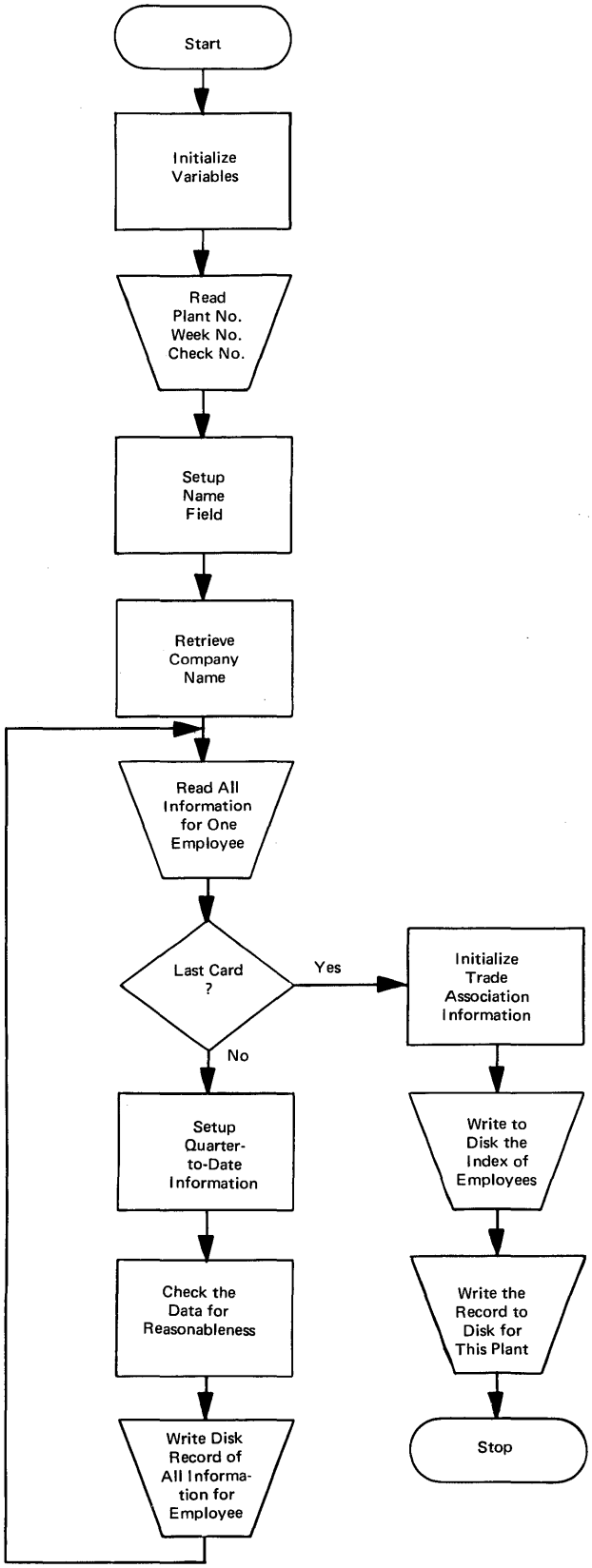
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/15/67

Program Name File Create No. PAY01 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.ØØ	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex-(1-female),(2-male),(3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	Always	9 digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status-(1-union),(2-trucker),(3-non-union, full time),(4-non-union, part time),(5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Stock deduction
NSTKD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	United appeal deductions
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1ØØØ	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	Ø	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	Ø	State exemptions
QRTD	R	6/18	O	XXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Quarter-to-date information (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) Loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay.
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Year-to-date information (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hrs., (10) OT hrs., (11) bonus hrs., (12) reg. ernS, (13) OT ernS., (14) bonus ernS.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

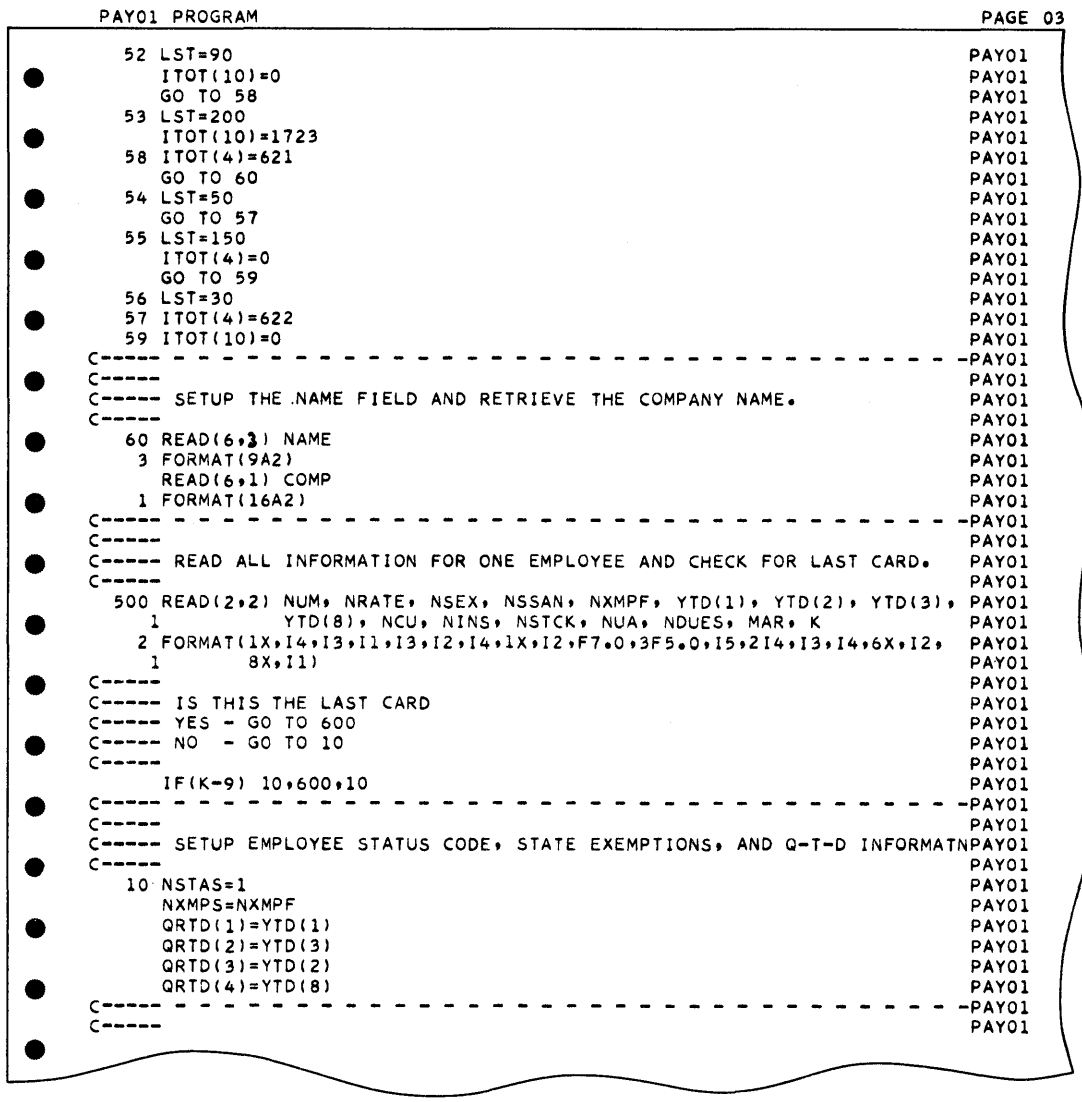

Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No. Week No. Check No.
Setup Name Field
Retrieve Company Name
Read All Information for One Employee
Last Card ?
Yes
No
Initialize Trade Association Information
Write to Disk the Index of Employees
Write the Record to Disk for This Plant
Stop
Setup Quarter-to-Date Information
Check the Data for Reasonableness
Write Disk Record of All Information for Employee

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY01
* IOCS(CARD,          KEYBOARD             ,DISK)                       PAY01
** PAY01 PROGRAM                                                       PAY01
* NAME PAY01                                                          PAY01
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                   PAY01
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                  PAY01
* LIST ALL                                                            PAY01
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - FILE CREATION                 PAY01
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY01                                          PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                      PAY01
C----- DATE CODED    -- 12/23/67                                       PAY01
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
C-----                        FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY01
C-----                        NAME        NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY01
C----- INPUT FILES  -- NONE                                           PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
C----- OUTPUT FILES --  1. COLFP           1    160    250        2    PAY01
C-----                  2. WVAFP           2    160     90        2    PAY01
C-----                  3. MNCFP           3    160    200        2    PAY01
C-----                  4. LBOFP           4    160     50        2    PAY01
C-----                  5. LBTFP           5    160    150        2    PAY01
C-----                  6. LMCFP           6    160     30        2    PAY01
C-----                  7. PINFO          25    106      6        3    PAY01
C-----                  8. INDX1         101      1    250      320    PAY01
C-----                  9. INDX2         102      1     90      320    PAY01
C-----                 10. INDX3         103      1    200      320    PAY01
C-----                 11. INDX4         104      1     50      320    PAY01
C-----                 12. INDX5         105      1    150      320    PAY01
C-----                 13. INDX6         106      1     30      320    PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                         PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
      INTEGER COMP(16)                                                 PAY01
      DIMENSION FIBRE(8), INDEX(250), ISUPP(13), ITOT(11), NAME(9),    PAY01
     1          NSSAN(3), QRTD(6), YTD(14)                             PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY01
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR NEXT RECORD NUMBER                PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY01
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),               PAY01
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 25(6,106,U,IC), PAY01
     3              101(250,1,U,IN1), 102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3),PAY01
     4              104(50,1,U,IN4), 105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6) PAY01
      EQUIVALENCE (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                        PAY01
     1            (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                          PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                 PAY01
```

PAY01 PROGRAM PAGE 02

```
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                              PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      CKMAX=25000.                                                       PAY01
      IC=1                                                               PAY01
      ICOL=1                                                             PAY01
      INIT=0                                                             PAY01
      IN1=1                                                              PAY01
      IPD=0                                                              PAY01
      DO 68 I=1,13                                                       PAY01
   68 ISUPP(I)=0                                                         PAY01
      ITOT(1)=111                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(2)=620                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(3)=620                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(5)=625                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(6)=626                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(7)=627                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(8)=628                                                        PAY01
      ITOT(9)=0                                                          PAY01
      ITOT(11)=635                                                       PAY01
      LYRHR=0                                                            PAY01
      NADWH=0                                                            PAY01
      NCHCK=0                                                            PAY01
      NCUDD=0                                                            PAY01
      NMISC=0                                                            PAY01
      NSTKD=0                                                            PAY01
      NWKMP=0                                                            PAY01
      NWKPD=0                                                            PAY01
      QRTD(5)=0.                                                         PAY01
      QRTD(6)=0.                                                         PAY01
      DO 69 M=1,14                                                       PAY01
   69 YTD(M)=0.                                                          PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- READ  PLANT NUMBER, WEEK NUMBER, AND CHECK NUMBER                 PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      READ(6,4) NOPLT                                                    PAY01
      READ(6,4) IWEEK                                                    PAY01
      READ(6,5) ICHCK                                                    PAY01
    4 FORMAT(I1)                                                         PAY01
    5 FORMAT(I2)                                                         PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- CALCULATE THE FILE NUMBER OF THE INDEX FOR THE CURRENT PLANT.     PAY01
C----- FINISH INITIALIZING VARIABLES - ITOT(4), ITOT(10), LST            PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      IND=100 + NOPLT                                                    PAY01
      GO TO (51,52,53,54,55,56),NOPLT                                    PAY01
   51 LST=250                                                            PAY01
      GO TO 57                                                           PAY01
```

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	44



```
PAY01 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 03

      52 LST=90                                                          PAY01
         ITOT(10)=0                                                      PAY01
         GO TO 58                                                        PAY01
      53 LST=200                                                         PAY01
         ITOT(10)=1723                                                   PAY01
      58 ITOT(4)=621                                                     PAY01
         GO TO 60                                                        PAY01
      54 LST=50                                                          PAY01
         GO TO 57                                                        PAY01
      55 LST=150                                                         PAY01
         ITOT(4)=0                                                       PAY01
         GO TO 59                                                        PAY01
      56 LST=30                                                          PAY01
      57 ITOT(4)=622                                                     PAY01
      59 ITOT(10)=0                                                      PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- SETUP THE NAME FIELD AND RETRIEVE THE COMPANY NAME.               PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      60 READ(6,3) NAME                                                  PAY01
       3 FORMAT(9A2)                                                     PAY01
         READ(6,1) COMP                                                  PAY01
       1 FORMAT(16A2)                                                    PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- READ ALL INFORMATION FOR ONE EMPLOYEE AND CHECK FOR LAST CARD.    PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
    500 READ(2,2) NUM, NRATE, NSEX, NSSAN, NXMPF, YTD(1), YTD(2), YTD(3), PAY01
        1          YTD(8), NCU, NINS, NSTCK, NUA, NDUES, MAR, K         PAY01
       2 FORMAT(1X,I4,I3,I1,I3,I2,I4,1X,I2,F7.0,3F5.0,I5,2I4,I3,I4,6X,I2,  PAY01
        1       8X,I1)                                                   PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- IS THIS THE LAST CARD                                            PAY01
C----- YES - GO TO 600                                                  PAY01
C----- NO  - GO TO 10                                                   PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      IF(K-9) 10,600,10                                                  PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- SETUP EMPLOYEE STATUS CODE, STATE EXEMPTIONS, AND Q-T-D INFORMATNPAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
   10 NSTAS=1                                                            PAY01
      NXMPS=NXMPF                                                        PAY01
      QRTD(1)=YTD(1)                                                     PAY01
      QRTD(2)=YTD(3)                                                     PAY01
      QRTD(3)=YTD(2)                                                     PAY01
      QRTD(4)=YTD(8)                                                     PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
```

```
PAY01 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 04

C----- EDIT MARITAL STATUS, UNION DUES DEDUCTION, SEX CODE, AND IF      PAY01
C----- NECESSARY, MODIFY EMPLOYEE STATUS CODE.                          PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
      IF(MAR) 101,101,100                                               PAY01
  100 IF(MAR-2) 102,102,101                                             PAY01
  101 MAR=1                                                             PAY01
      CALL STACK                                                        PAY01
  102 IF(NDUES) 103,104,106                                             PAY01
  103 NDUES=0                                                           PAY01
      CALL STACK                                                        PAY01
  104 NSTAS=3                                                           PAY01
  106 IF(NOPLT-3) 120,115,120                                           PAY01
  115 NDUES=0                                                           PAY01
  120 IF(NSEX) 109,109,107                                              PAY01
  107 IF(NSEX-3) 110,108,109                                            PAY01
  108 NSTAS=2                                                           PAY01
      NSEX=2                                                            PAY01
      GO TO 110                                                         PAY01
  109 NSEX=2                                                            PAY01
      CALL STACK                                                        PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
C----- CREATE THE INDEX ENTRY FOR THIS EMPLOYEE AND WRITE HIS RECORD    PAY01
C----- ONTO THE DISK. THEN GO BACK TO THE READ STATEMENT TO GET         PAY01
C----- INFORMATION ON THE NEXT EMPLOYEE.                                PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
  110 INDEX(ICOL)=NUM                                                   PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
C----- WRITE TO THE DISK.                                               PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
      WRITE(NOPLT'ICOL) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD,   PAY01
     1                  MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD,     PAY01
     2                  LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS,  PAY01
     3                  NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT, IPD            PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
C----- GO BACK FOR ANOTHER EMPLOYEE'S INFORMATION                       PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
      GO TO 500                                                         PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
C----- LAST CARD HAS BEEN READ.                                         PAY01
C----- INITIALIZE THE TRADE ASSOCIATION INFORMATION.                    PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
  600 DO 650 I=1,8                                                      PAY01
  650 FIBRE(I)=0.                                                       PAY01
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
C----- WRITE THE INDEX OF EMPLOYEES FOR THIS PLANT TO DISK.             PAY01
C-----                                                                  PAY01
```

```
      LAST=ICOL-1                                                        PAY01
      WRITE(IND'1) (INDEX(I),I=1,LAST)                                   PAY01
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- WRITE THE RECORD FOR THIS PLANT TO DISK, THE NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES PAY01
C----- IN THE PLANT TO THE INDEX AND STOP.                               PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      WRITE(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX             PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      WRITE(IND'LST) LAST                                                PAY01
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
C----- STOP                                                              PAY01
C-----                                                                   PAY01
      CALL EXIT                                                          PAY01
      END                                                                PAY01

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =005B  IWVA =0058  MUNC =005B  LBO  =005B  LBT  =005B  LMC  =005B  IN1  =005C  IN2  =005C  IN3  =005C  IN4  =005C
 IN5  =005C  IN6  =005C  FIBRE=0072  QRTD =0084  YTD  =00AE  CKMAX=00B1  INDEX=01AD  ISUPP=01BA  ITOT =01C5  NAME =01CE
 NSSAN=01D1  COMP =01E1  IC   =01E2  INIT =01E3  IPD  =01E4  I    =01E5  LYRHR=01E6  NADWH=01E7  NCHCK=01E8  NCUDD=01E9
 NMISC=01EA  NSTKD=01EB  NWKMP=01EC  NWKPD=01ED  M    =01EE  NOPLT=01EF  IWEEK=01F0  ICHCK=01F1  IND  =01F2  LST  =01F3
 NUM  =01F4  NRATE=01F5  NSEX =01F6  NXMPF=01F7  NCU  =01F8  NINS =01F9  NSTCK=01FA  NUA  =01FB  NDUES=01FC  MAR  =01FD
 K    =01FE  NSTAS=01FF  NXMPS=0200  LAST =0201

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 4    =022F  5    =0231  3    =0233  1    =0236  2    =0239  68   =0280  69   =02F7  51   =0327  52   =032D  53   =0339
 58   =0343  54   =034B  55   =0351  56   =035D  57   =0361  59   =0367  60   =036D  500  =0379  10   =03AB  100  =03D5
 101  =03DB  102  =03E1  103  =03E7  104  =03ED  106  =03F1  115  =03F7  120  =03FB  107  =03FF  108  =0407  109  =0411
 110  =0417  600  =0461  650  =0465

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 STACK   ELD     ELDX    ESTO    ESTOX   TYPEZ   SRED    SFIO    SIOAI   SIOFX   SIOI    SUBSC   CARDZ   SDFIO   SDWRT
 SDCOM   SDAI    SDAF    SDIX    SDF     SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .250000000E 05=020E     .000000000E 00=0211

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=0214      0=0215     13=0216    111=0217    620=0218    625=0219    626=021A    627=021B    628=021C    635=021D
    14=021E      6=021F    100=0220    250=0221     90=0222    200=0223   1723=0224    621=0225     50=0226    150=0227
    30=0228    622=0229      2=022A      9=022B      3=022C      8=022D     25=022E

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY01
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    526  PROGRAM    672

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY01    3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
 10012142013323060                                                    02
 10022613083284339                                                    02
 10032142712982119                                                    01
 10042613032244 378                                                   02
 10053722614638734                                                    02
 10162801541032308                                                    01
 11072613213710014                                                    02
 12182142782927112                                                    01
 13471711194511234                                                    01
 16033722822445678                                                    02
```

Listing of input cards

```
1
1
01
THE CONTAINER CORP.
THE CONTAINER CORP.
THE CONTAINER CORP.
```

Console Printer input and output

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY01    3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
```

Output on printer

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME:	PROGRAM NUMBER:
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER			

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:					

SWITCH SETTINGS

SWITCH _____	SWITCH _____	SWITCH _____
UP _____	UP _____	UP _____
DOWN _____	DOWN _____	DOWN _____

INPUT CARDS

SOURCE OF INPUT: _____

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: _____

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

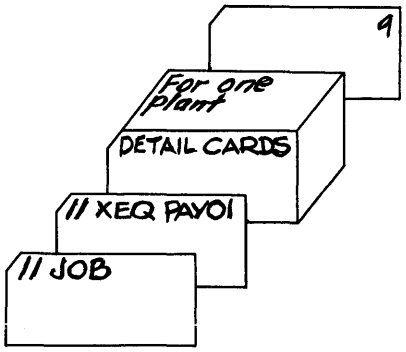
PROGRAM NAME: File Create	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY01
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH None UP DOWN	SWITCH UP DOWN	SWITCH UP DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run
2. Disk must be payroll disk with areas for each plant allocated.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Detail cards are filed in file A.
2. Disk to be used in PAY02, which should be run next.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY02: ADD NAMES TO THE FILE

VARIABLES						IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET Application PAYROLL Date 8/22/67 Program Name Add Names No. PAY02 Programmer CLICK
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
I	I	1	I	250	1	Used in DO Loop
ICLCK	I	1	I	XXXX	1000	Clock Number
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number
IND	I	1	T	250	1	Record number of an individual employee
INDEX	I	250	I	XXXX	1000	Index to plant now being processed
INIT	I	1	T	1600	0	Union initiation fee
INDX	I	1	T	106	101	Index file number (plant number + 100)
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee files
IN2	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
ISUPP	I	13	T	5000	0	Supplemental sick pay
IWVA	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to ICOL
K	I	1	T	9	0	Last-card test
LAST	I	1	T	250	0	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to ICOL

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	52

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL Date 8/22/67

Program Name Add Names No. PAY 02 Programmer CLICK

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
LST	I	1	T	250	3ϕ	Last record number in a file
LYRHR	I	1	T	3ϕϕϕ	ϕ	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	T	2	1	Marital status - (1- single), (2-married)
MUNC	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	T	—	—	Dummy area to allocated space for name
NCHCK	I	1	T	XXXXX	ϕ	Checked number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Credit union deduction amount
NCUDD	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Monthly credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Union dues deduction amount
NINS	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Insurance deduction amount
NMISC	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Miscellaneous deductions amount
NOPLT	I	1	I	6	1	Plant number
NRATE	I	1	T	3.ϕϕ	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	T	3	1	Sex-(2-Female), (2-Male), (3-Trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	T	Always	9 digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	T	5	1	Employee status - (1- union), (2- trucker) (3-non-union, full time), (4-non-union, part time), (5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Stock deduction amount
NSTKD	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	United appeal deduction amount

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

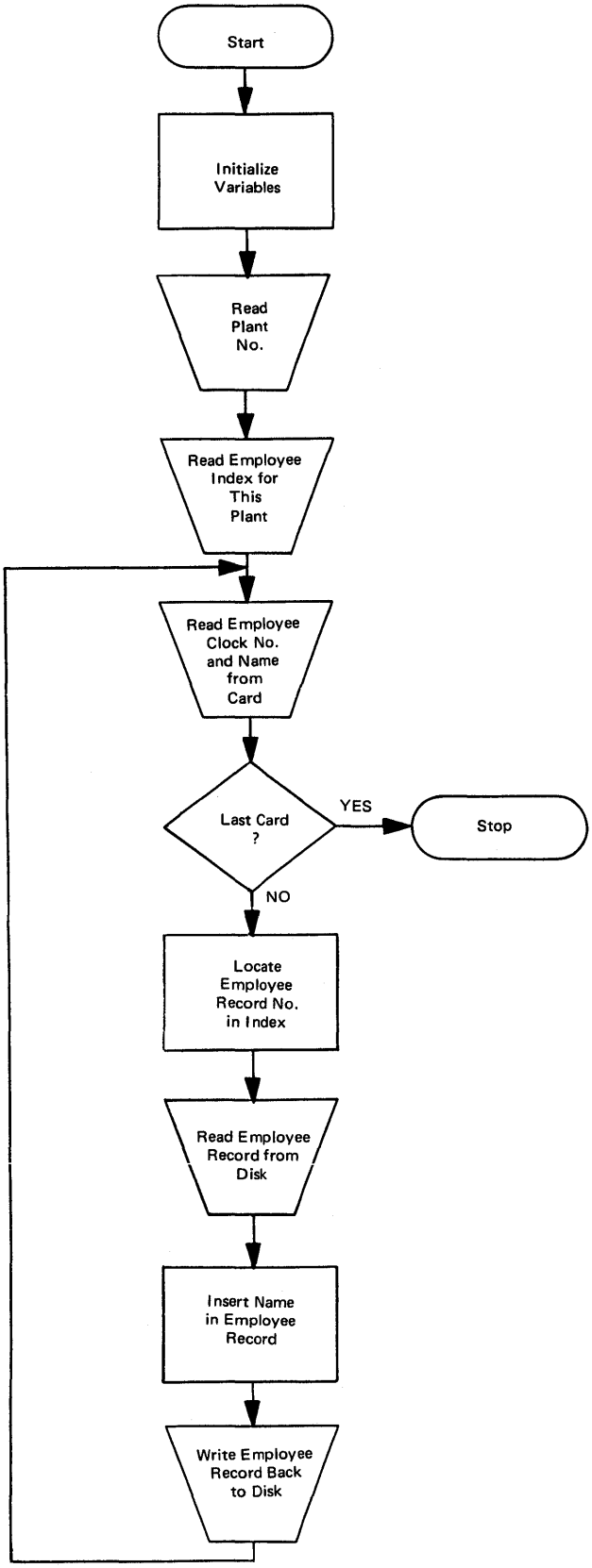
Application PAYROLL Date 8/22/67

Program Name Add Names No. PAY 02 Programmer CLICK

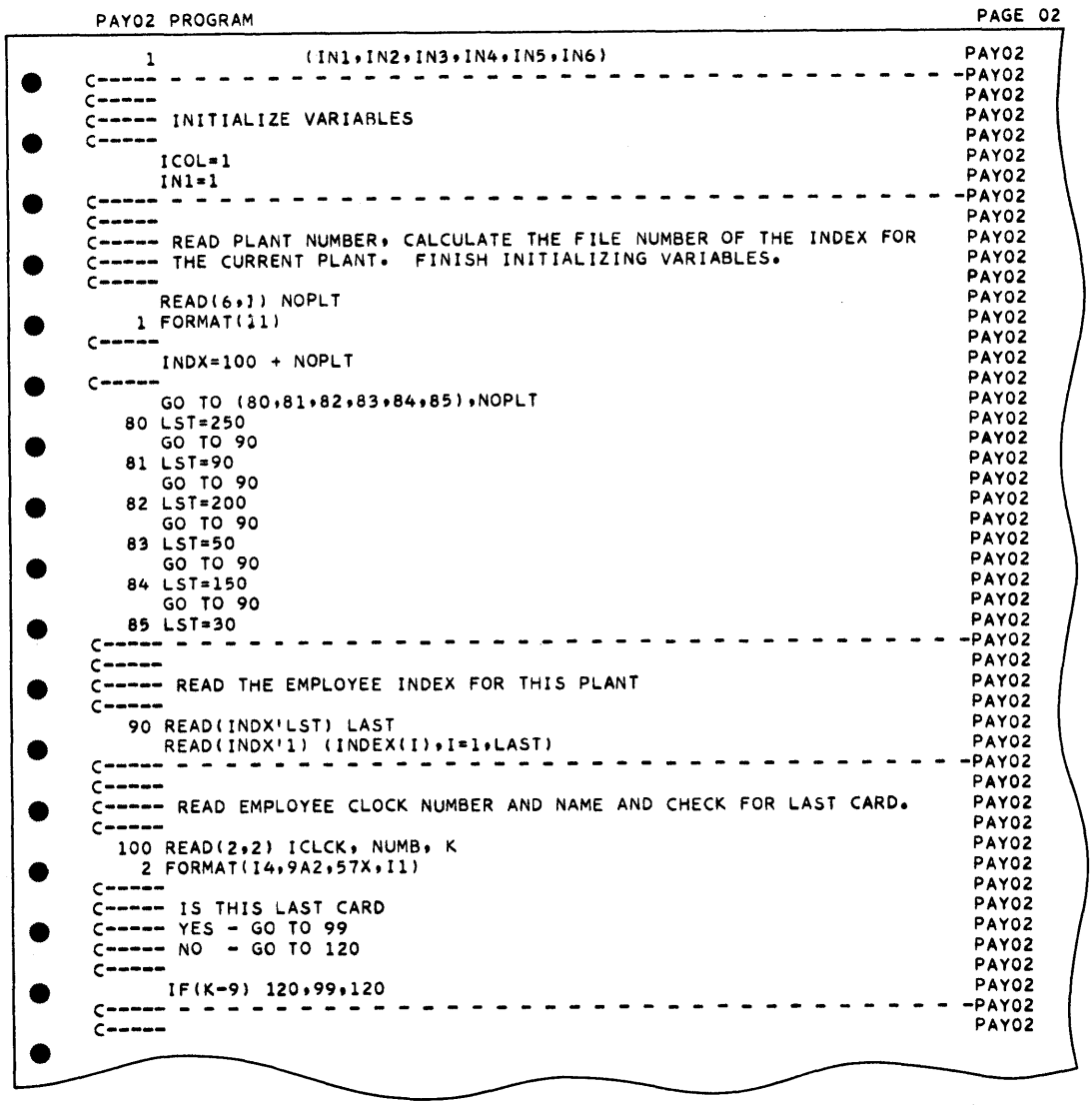
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1ϕϕϕ	Clock number in disk record
NUMB	A2	9	T	-	-	Employee name from card
NWKMP	I	1	T	XXXX	ϕ	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	T	5ϕ	ϕ	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	T	17	ϕ	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	T	17	ϕ	State exemptions
QRTD	R	6/8	T	XXXXXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Quarter to date information. (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay
YTD	R	14/48	T	XXXXXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	year to date information. (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc tax, (9) reg hours, (10) OT hours, (11) bonus hours, (12) reg erns, (13) OT erns, (14) bonus erns

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	54

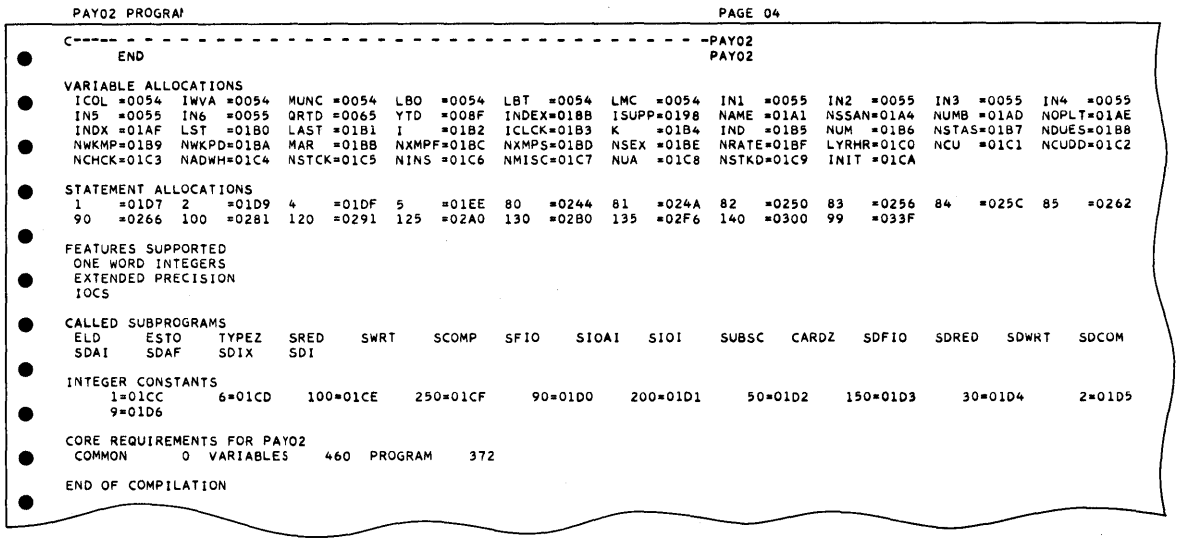


```
// FOR                                                                  PAY02
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,KEYBOARD              ,DISK)                     PAY02
** PAY02 PROGRAM                                                       PAY02
* NAME PAY02                                                           PAY02
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY02
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY02
* LIST ALL                                                            PAY02
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - ADD NAMES TO FILE              PAY02
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY02                                           PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                       PAY02
C----- DATE CODED    -- 12/30/67                                        PAY02
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                 PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
C-----                          FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY02
C-----                          NAME        NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY02
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. INDX1            101      1    250       320    PAY02
C-----                   2. INDX2            102      1     90       320    PAY02
C-----                   3. INDX3            103      1    200       320    PAY02
C-----                   4. INDX4            104      1     50       320    PAY02
C-----                   5. INDX5            105      1    150       320    PAY02
C-----                   6. INDX6            106      1     30       320    PAY02
C-----                   7. COLFP              1    160    250         2    PAY02
C-----                   8. WVAFP              2    160     90         2    PAY02
C-----                   9. MNCFP              3    160    200         2    PAY02
C-----                  10. LBOFP              4    160     50         2    PAY02
C-----                  11. LBTFP              5    160    150         2    PAY02
C-----                  12. LMCFP              6    160     30         2    PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
C----- OUTPUT FILES --  1. COLFP              1    160    250         2    PAY02
C-----                   2. WVAFP              2    160     90         2    PAY02
C-----                   3. MNCFP              3    160    200         2    PAY02
C-----                   4. LBOFP              4    160     50         2    PAY02
C-----                   5. LBTFP              5    160    150         2    PAY02
C-----                   6. LMCFP              6    160     30         2    PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                          PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
      DIMENSION INDEX(250), ISUPP(13), NAME(9), NSSAN(3), NUMB(9),     PAY02
     1          QRTD(6), YTD(14)                                       PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY02
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR THE NEXT RECORD NUMBER.           PAY02
C-----                                                                 PAY02
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY02
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),                PAY02
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 101(250,1,U,IN1),PAY02
     3              102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3), 104(50,1,U,IN4), PAY02
     4              105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6)                  PAY02
      EQUIVALENCE (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                        PAY02
```



```
PAY02 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 02

      1           (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                      PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                     PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
      ICOL=1                                                     PAY02
      IN1=1                                                      PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
C----- READ PLANT NUMBER, CALCULATE THE FILE NUMBER OF THE INDEX FOR  PAY02
C----- THE CURRENT PLANT.  FINISH INITIALIZING VARIABLES.        PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
      READ(6,1) NOPLT                                            PAY02
    1 FORMAT(I1)                                                 PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
      INDX=100 + NOPLT                                           PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
      GO TO (80,81,82,83,84,85),NOPLT                            PAY02
   80 LST=250                                                    PAY02
      GO TO 90                                                   PAY02
   81 LST=90                                                     PAY02
      GO TO 90                                                   PAY02
   82 LST=200                                                    PAY02
      GO TO 90                                                   PAY02
   83 LST=50                                                     PAY02
      GO TO 90                                                   PAY02
   84 LST=150                                                    PAY02
      GO TO 90                                                   PAY02
   85 LST=30                                                     PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
C----- READ THE EMPLOYEE INDEX FOR THIS PLANT                    PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
   90 READ(INDX'LST) LAST                                        PAY02
      READ(INDX'1) (INDEX(I),I=1,LAST)                           PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
C----- READ EMPLOYEE CLOCK NUMBER AND NAME AND CHECK FOR LAST CARD.  PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
  100 READ(2,2) ICLCK, NUMB, K                                   PAY02
    2 FORMAT(I4,9A2,57X,I1)                                      PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
C----- IS THIS LAST CARD                                         PAY02
C----- YES - GO TO 99                                            PAY02
C----- NO  - GO TO 120                                           PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
      IF(K-9) 120,99,120                                         PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                           PAY02
```

```
PAY02 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 03

C----- SEARCH INDEX FOR EMPLOYEE NUMBER                                  PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
  120 DO 125 I=1,LAST                                                    PAY02
      IF(INDEX(I) - ICLCK) 125,130,125                                   PAY02
  125 CONTINUE                                                           PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- IF THE PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE, THE CLOCK NO. IS NOT IN THE INDEXPAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
      WRITE(1,4) ICLCK                                                   PAY02
    4 FORMAT('CLOCK NO 'I4' NOT IN FILE')                                PAY02
      GO TO 100                                                          PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- READ EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK AND VALIDATE CLOCK NUMBERS         PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
  130 IND=I                                                              PAY02
      READ(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,PAY02
     1                NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, PAY02
     2                NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA,     PAY02
     3                NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT                                PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- VALIDATE                                                          PAY02
C----- MATCH    - 140                                                   PAY02
C----- NO MATCH - 135                                                   PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
      IF(NUM - ICLCK) 135,140,135                                        PAY02
  135 WRITE(1,5) NUM, ICLCK                                              PAY02
    5 FORMAT('CLOCK NO 'I4' IN FILE DOES NOT AGREE WITH CLOCK NUMBER 'I4PAY02
     1       ' IN CARD')                                                 PAY02
      GO TO 100                                                          PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- UPDATE THE EMPLOYEE NAME FIELD, WRITE HIS RECORD BACK TO THE DISKPAY02
C----- AND THEN GO BACK TO THE READ STATEMENT TO GET THE NAME OF THE    PAY02
C----- NEXT EMPLOYEE.                                                   PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
  140 WRITE(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NUMB, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD,    PAY02
     1                 MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR,PAY02
     2                 NCU, NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC,    PAY02
     3                 NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT                          PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- GO BACK FOR ANOTHER EMPLOYEE'S NAME.                             PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
      GO TO 100                                                          PAY02
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
C----- LAST CARD HAS BEEN READ. STOP.                                   PAY02
C-----                                                                   PAY02
   99 CALL EXIT                                                          PAY02
```



```
PAY02 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 04

C------ - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY02
      END                                                               PAY02

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =0054  IWVA =0054  MUNC =0054  LBO  =0054  LBT  =0054  LMC  =0054  IN1  =0055  IN2  =0055  IN3  =0055  IN4  =0055
 IN5  =0055  IN6  =0055  QRTD =0065  YTD  =008F  INDEX=01BB  ISUPP=0198  NAME =01A1  NSSAN=01A4  NUMB =01AD  NOPLT=01AE
 INDX =01AF  LST  =01B0  LAST =01B1  I    =01B2  ICLCK=01B3  K    =01B4  IND  =01B5  NUM  =01B6  NSTAS=01B7  NDUES=01B8
 NWKMP=01B9  NWKPD=01BA  MAR  =01BB  NXMPF=01BC  NXMPS=01BD  NSEX =01BE  NRATE=01BF  LYRHR=01C0  NCU  =01C1  NCUDD=01C2
 NCHCK=01C3  NADWH=01C4  NSTCK=01C5  NINS =01C6  NMISC=01C7  NUA  =01C8  NSTKD=01C9  INIT =01CA

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =01D7  2    =01D9  4    =01DF  5    =01EE  80   =0244  81   =024A  82   =0250  83   =0256  84   =025C  85   =0262
 90   =0266  100  =0281  120  =0291  125  =02A0  130  =02B0  135  =02F6  140  =0300  99   =033F

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 ELD     ESTO    TYPEZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI   SIOI    SUBSC   CARDZ   SDFIO   SDRED   SDWRT   SDCOM
 SDAI    SDAF    SDIX    SDI

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=01CC      6=01CD    100=01CE    250=01CF     90=01D0    200=01D1     50=01D2    150=01D3     30=01D4      2=01D5
     9=01D6

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY02
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    460  PROGRAM    372

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY02     2
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
```

```
013 32 3060      ROBT B BADEN                  1831.01      1831.01
083 28 4339      JOHN A HORN                   2202.84      2202.84
712 98 2119      ROBT L SHORES                 1906.65      1906.65
032 24 4378      JOHN W CUSSEN                 2286.25      2286.25
614 63 8734      JOSEPH MONTANO                3176.73      3176.73
541 03 2308      DONALD MILLER                 1342.00      1346.00
213 71 0014      A E TAYLOR                    2233.03      2241.03
782 92 7112      DAVID A HUBBARD               1923.58      1923.58
194 51 1234      FRANK T DOLEN                 1475.89      1475.89
822 44 5678      AL REYNOLDS                   3142.25      3142.25
```

Printer output

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY02     2
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
1001ROBT B BADEN
1002JOHN A HORN
1003ROBT L SHORES
1004JOHN W CUSSEN
1005JOSEPH MONTANO
1009THISISA MISTAKE
1016DONALD MILLER
1107A E TAYLOR
1218DAVID A HUBBARD
1347FRANK T DOLEN
1603AL REYNOLDS
                                                                    9
```

Input cards

```
1
CLOCK NO 1009 NOT IN FILE
CLOCK NO 1017 NOT IN FILE
```

Console Printer output

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

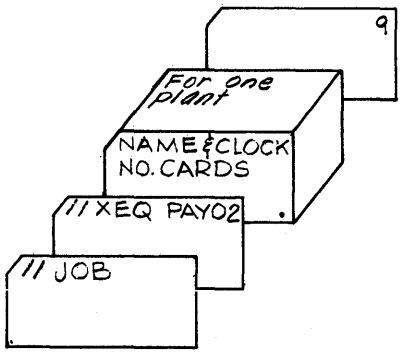
PROGRAM NAME: Add names to the file	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY02
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH NONE
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT: 1. Card input for a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from PAY01.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: 1. Name and Clock No. cards are filed in file B.
2. Disk to be used in PAY03, which should be run next.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY03: CHANGES TO THE FILE

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL Date 8/25/67

Program Name Changes to the File No. PAY03 Programmer C.R.Klick

FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
I	I	1	T	25ϕ	1	Used in DO loop
ICHNG	I	1	I	16	1	Change code
ICLCK	I	1	I	6	1	First digit of clock number
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in employee files, set up by plant
IND	I	1	T	25ϕ	1	Record number of an individual employee
INDEX	I	250	T	XXXX	1ϕϕϕ	Index to plant now being processed
INIT	I	1	T	16ϕϕ	ϕ	Union initiation fee
INDX	I	1	T	1ϕ6	1ϕ1	Index file number (plant no. +100)
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee files
IN2	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to IN1
ING	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to IN1
IPD	I	1	T		ϕ	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISUPP	I	13	T		ϕ	Supplemental sick pay
IWVA	I	1	N		–	Equivalent to ICOL
K	I	1	T		ϕ	Last-card test
LAST	I	1	T		ϕ	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N		–	Equivalent to ICOL

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	62

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL Date 8/25/67

Program Name Changes to the file No. PAY03 Programmer C.R.Klick

VARIABLES						FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
LBT	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
LST	I	1	T	250	3ϕ	Maximum number of records in a file
LYRHR	I	1	T	3ϕϕϕ	¢	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	T	2	1	Marital status – (1-single), (2-married)
MUNC	I	1	N	–	–	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	T	XXXX	ϕ	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	T	–	–	Employee name
NCHCK	I	1	T	XXXXX	ϕ	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Credit union deduction amount
NCUDD	I	1	T	XXX.XX	ϕ	Monthly credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Union dues deductions amount
NEW	I	1	I	XXX.XX	ϕ	New information used in change specified by code (ICHNG)
NINS	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Insurance deduction amount
NMISC	I	1	T	XXXX	ϕ	Miscellaneous deductions amount
NOPLT	I	1	I	6	1	Plant number
NRATE	I	1	T	3.ϕϕ	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	T	3	1	Sex – (1-female), (2-male), (3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	T	Always	9 digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	T	5	1	Employee status, (1-union), (2-trucker), (3-non-union, full time), (4-non-union, part time), (5-terminated)

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

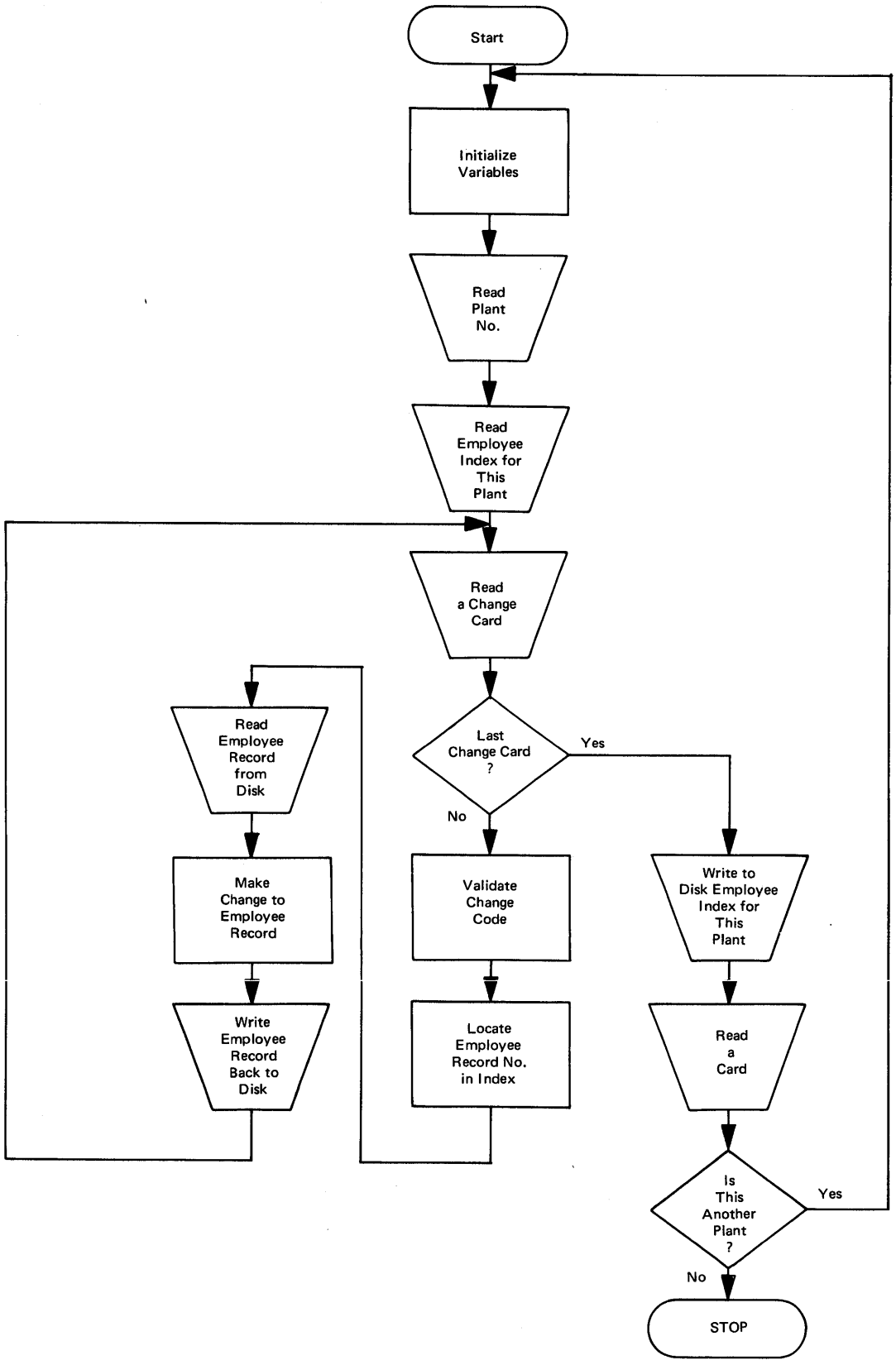
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL Date 8/25/67

Program Name Changes to the File No. PAY03 C.R Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NSTCK	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Stock deduction amount
NSTKD	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	T	XX.XX	ϕ	United appeal deduction amount
NUM	I	1	T	XX.XX	1ϕϕϕ	Clock number in disk record
NUMB	I	1	T	XXX	XXX	Last three digits of clock number
NWKMP	I	1	T	XXXX	ϕ	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	T	5ϕ	ϕ	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	T	17	ϕ	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	T	17	ϕ	State exemptions
QRTD	R	6/16	T	XXXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Quarter-to-date information. (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay
YTD	R	14/42	T	XXXXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Year-to-date information – (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hours, (10) OT hours, (11) bonus hours, (12) reg. erns, (13) OT erns, (14) bonus erns.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic


Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No.
Read Employee Index for This Plant
Read a Change Card
Last Change Card ?
Yes
No
Read Employee Record from Disk
Make Change to Employee Record
Write Employee Record Back to Disk
Validate Change Code
Locate Employee Record No. in Index
Write to Disk Employee Index for This Plant
Read a Card
Is This Another Plant ?
Yes
No
STOP

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY03
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,KEYBOARD              ,DISK)                    PAY03
* NAME PAY03                                                           PAY03
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY03
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY03
* LIST ALL                                                             PAY03
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - CHANGES TO THE FILE           PAY03
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY03                                          PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                      PAY03
C----- DATE CODED    -- 01/06/68                                       PAY03
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
C-----                          FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY03
C-----                          NAME        NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY03
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. COLFP             1    160    250         2    PAY03
C-----                   2. WVAFP             2    160     90         2    PAY03
C-----                   3. MNCFP             3    160    200         2    PAY03
C-----                   4. LBOFP             4    160     50         2    PAY03
C-----                   5. LBTFP             5    160    150         2    PAY03
C-----                   6. LMCFP             6    160     30         2    PAY03
C-----                   7. INDX1           101      1    250       320    PAY03
C-----                   8. INDX2           102      1     90       320    PAY03
C-----                   9. INDX3           103      1    200       320    PAY03
C-----                  10. INDX4           104      1     50       320    PAY03
C-----                  11. INDX5           105      1    150       320    PAY03
C-----                  12. INDX6           106      1     30       320    PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
C----- OUTPUT FILES --  1. COLFP             1    160    250         2    PAY03
C-----                   2. WVAFP             2    160     90         2    PAY03
C-----                   3. MNCFP             3    160    200         2    PAY03
C-----                   4. LBOFP             4    160     50         2    PAY03
C-----                   5. LBTFP             5    160    150         2    PAY03
C-----                   6. LMCFP             6    160     30         2    PAY03
C-----                   7. INDX1           101      1    250       320    PAY03
C-----                   8. INDX2           102      1     90       320    PAY03
C-----                   9. INDX3           103      1    200       320    PAY03
C-----                  10. INDX4           104      1     50       320    PAY03
C-----                  11. INDX5           105      1    150       320    PAY03
C-----                  12. INDX6           106      1     30       320    PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
      DIMENSION INDEX(250), ISUPP(13), NAME(9), NSSAN(3), QRTD(6),     PAY03
     1          YTD(14)                                                PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY03
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR THE NEXT RECORD NUMBER.           PAY03
C-----                                                                 PAY03
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY03
```

```
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),                    PAY03
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 101(250,1,U,IN1),PAY03
     3              102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3), 104(50,1,U,IN4), PAY03
     4              105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6)                       PAY03
      EQUIVALENCE (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                            PAY03
     1           (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                                PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C-----                                                                    PAY03
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                              PAY03
C-----                                                                    PAY03
 1000 ICOL=1                                                             PAY03
      IN1=1                                                              PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C-----                                                                    PAY03
C----- READ PLANT NUMBER, CALCULATE THE FILE NUMBER OF THE INDEX FOR     PAY03
C----- THE CURRENT PLANT. FINISH INITIALIZING VARIABLES.                 PAY03
C-----                                                                    PAY03
      READ(2,1) NOPLT                                                    PAY03
    1 FORMAT(I1)                                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
      INDX=100 + NOPLT                                                   PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
      GO TO (80,81,82,83,84,85),NOPLT                                    PAY03
   80 LST=250                                                            PAY03
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY03
   81 LST=90                                                             PAY03
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY03
   82 LST=200                                                            PAY03
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY03
   83 LST=50                                                             PAY03
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY03
   84 LST=150                                                            PAY03
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY03
   85 LST=30                                                             PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
C----- READ THE EMPLOYEE INDEX FOR THIS PLANT,  READ A CHANGE CARD,     PAY03
C----- CHECK FOR LAST CHANGE CARD, AND VALIDATE PLANT NUMBERS, CHANGE   PAY03
C----- CODE AND FIND CLOCK NUMBER IN INDEX.                             PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
   90 READ(INDX'LST) LAST                                                PAY03
      READ(INDX'1) (INDEX(I),I=1,LAST)                                   PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
  100 READ(2,2) ICLCK, NUMB, ICHNG, NEW, K                               PAY03
    2 FORMAT(I1,I3,I2,I5,68X,I1)                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                   PAY03
C----- IS THIS LAST CARD                                                 PAY03
C----- YES - GO TO 99                                                    PAY03
C----- NO  - GO TO 101                                                   PAY03
```

```
C-----                                                                  PAY03
      IF(K-9) 101,99,101                                                PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- DO PLANT NUMBERS AGREE                                          PAY03
C----- YES - GO TO 105                                                 PAY03
C----- NO  - GO TO 95                                                  PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  101 IF(NOPLT-ICLCK) 95,105,95                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- IF THE PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE, THE PLANT NUMBERS DO NOT AGREE.  PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
   95 WRITE(1,3) ICLCK, NUMB                                            PAY03
    3 FORMAT('PLANT NOS DISAGREE FOR CLOCK NUMBER 'I1,I3)               PAY03
      CALL STACK                                                        PAY03
      GO TO 100                                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- PUT PARTS OF CLOCK NUMBER TOGETHER AND CHECK CHANGE CODE         PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  105 ICLCK=ICLCK * 1000 + NUMB                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- ICHNG MUST BE BETWEEN 1 AND 16.                                 PAY03
C----- IF NOT GO TO 104                                                PAY03
C----- IF O.K. GO TO APPROPRIATE CHANGE ROUTINE.                       PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
      IF(ICHNG) 104,104,106                                             PAY03
  106 IF(ICHNG - 16) 110,120,104                                        PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- CODE 14 INDICATES NEW EMPLOYEE.  IF SO, GO TO 500.              PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  110 IF(ICHNG-14) 120,500,120                                          PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- IF THE PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE, THE CHANGE CODE IS INVALID.      PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  104 WRITE(1,8) ICLCK                                                  PAY03
    8 FORMAT('INVALID CHANGE CODE FOR 'I4)                              PAY03
      CALL STACK                                                        PAY03
      GO TO 100                                                         PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- LOCATE CLOCK NUMBER IN INDEX.                                   PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  120 DO 125 I=1,LAST                                                   PAY03
      IF(INDEX(I)-ICLCK) 125,130,125                                    PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- GO TO 125 IF NO MATCH, 130 IF FOUND.                            PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  125 CONTINUE                                                          PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- IF THE PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE, THE CLOCK NO. IS NOT IN THE INDEXPAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
```

```
        WRITE(1,4) ICLCK                                                    PAY03
      4 FORMAT('CLOCK NO 'I4' NOT IN FILE')                                 PAY03
        GO TO 100                                                           PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C-----                                                                      PAY03
C----- READ EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK AND VALIDATE CLOCK NUMBERS.           PAY03
C-----                                                                      PAY03
  130 IND=I                                                                 PAY03
        READ(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,PAY03
       1                NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, PAY03
       2                NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA,     PAY03
       3                NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT                                PAY03
C-----                                                                      PAY03
C----- VALIDATE                                                            PAY03
C----- MATCH    - 140                                                      PAY03
C----- NO MATCH - 135                                                      PAY03
C-----                                                                      PAY03
        IF(NUM - ICLCK) 135,140,135                                         PAY03
  135 WRITE(1,5) ICLCK                                                      PAY03
      5 FORMAT('CLOCK NUMBERS DO NOT AGREE FOR 'I4)                         PAY03
        CALL STACK                                                          PAY03
        GO TO 100                                                           PAY03
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY03
C----- GO TO THE APPROPIATE CHANGE ROUTINE.                                PAY03
C----- NRATE - 141   NXMPF - 146   NSTCK - 150   NSSAN - 156               PAY03
C----- NCU   - 142   NXMPS - 146   NINS  - 151   NEW EMPLOYEE - 500        PAY03
C----- NDUES - 143   NXMPS - 147   NMISC - 152                            PAY03
C----- NSTAS - 144   NSEX  - 148   NUA   - 153                            PAY03
C----- MAR   - 145   NADWH - 149   INIT  - 155                            PAY03
C-----                                                                      PAY03
  140 GO TO (141,142,143,144,145,146,147,148,149,150,151,152,153,104,      PAY03
     1       155,156),ICHNG                                                 PAY03
  141 NRATE=NEW                                                             PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  142 NCU=NEW                                                               PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  143 NDUES=NEW                                                             PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  144 NSTAS=NEW                                                             PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  145 MAR=NEW                                                               PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  146 NXMPF=NEW                                                             PAY03
  147 NXMPS=NEW                                                             PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  148 NSEX=NEW                                                              PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
  149 NADWH=NEW                                                             PAY03
        GO TO 550                                                           PAY03
```

```
     150 NSTCK=NEW                                                          PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     151 NINS=NEW                                                           PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     152 NMISC=NEW                                                          PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     153 NUA=NEW                                                            PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     155 INIT=NEW                                                           PAY03
         NSTAS=1                                                            PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     156 WRITE(1,11) NUM                                                    PAY03
      11 FORMAT('ENTER SSAN FOR 'I4)                                        PAY03
         READ(6,10) NSSAN                                                   PAY03
      10 FORMAT(I3,I2,I4)                                                   PAY03
         GO TO 550                                                          PAY03
     500 READ(2,6) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE,PAY03
        1          NCU, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA                     PAY03
       6 FORMAT(I4,9A2,I3,I2,I4,5I1,I3,5I4,I3)                              PAY03
    C-----                                                                  PAY03
    C----- IS THIS NUMBER, NUM, ALREADY IN INDEX                           PAY03
    C----- YES - 513                                                       PAY03
    C----- NO  - SET UP DISK RECORD                                        PAY03
    C-----                                                                  PAY03
         DO 504 I=1,LAST                                                    PAY03
         IF(INDEX(I)-NUM) 504,513,504                                       PAY03
     513 WRITE(1,7) NUM                                                     PAY03
       7 FORMAT('CLOCK NUMBER 'I4' IS DUPLICATED')                          PAY03
         CALL STACK                                                         PAY03
         GO TO 100                                                          PAY03
     504 CONTINUE                                                           PAY03
    C-----                                                                  PAY03
    C----- O.K. SET UP DISK RECORD AND CREATE INDEX ENTRY.                  PAY03
    C-----                                                                  PAY03
         IPD=0                                                              PAY03
         NSTKD=0                                                            PAY03
         INIT=0                                                             PAY03
         NDUES=0                                                            PAY03
         NWKMP=0                                                            PAY03
         NWKPD=0                                                            PAY03
         DO 501 I=1,14                                                      PAY03
     501 YTD(I)=0.                                                          PAY03
         DO 502 I=1,6                                                       PAY03
     502 QRTD(I)=0.                                                         PAY03
         DO 503 I=1,13                                                      PAY03
     503 ISUPP(I)=0                                                         PAY03
         LYRHR=0                                                            PAY03
         NCUDD=0                                                            PAY03
         NCHCK=0                                                            PAY03
```

```
      LAST=LAST + 1                                                     PAY03
      IND=LAST                                                          PAY03
      INDEX(LAST)=NUM                                                   PAY03
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- WRITE THE EMPLOYEE RECORD TO THE DISK.                           PAY03
C----- GO BACK TO THE READ STATEMENT TO GET ANOTHER CHANGE FOR THIS     PAY03
C----- PLANT.                                                           PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
  550 WRITE(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD,    PAY03
     1                 MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR,PAY03
     2                 NCU, NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC,    PAY03
     3                 NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT, IPD                     PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- GO BACK TO READ                                                  PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
      GO TO 1(0                                                         PAY03
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- WRITE BACK TO DISK THE EMPLOYEE INDEX FOR THIS PLANT.            PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
   99 WRITE(INDX'LST) LAST                                              PAY03
      WRITE(INDX'1) (INDEX(I),I=1,LAST)                                 PAY03
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- READ A CARD. IF K IS NOT 9 THERE ARE CHANGES TO ANOTHER PLANT.   PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
      READ(2,9) K                                                       PAY03
    9 FORMAT(79X,I1)                                                    PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- K NOT 9 MEANS MORE CHANGES. GO TO 1000.                          PAY03
C----- K EQUAL TO 9 MEANS END OF RUN. GO TO 1001.                       PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
      IF(K - 9) 1000,1001,1000                                          PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
C----- THIS IS END OF RUN. STOP.                                        PAY03
C-----                                                                  PAY03
 1001 CALL EXIT                                                         PAY03
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY03
      END                                                               PAY03

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =0054  IWVA =0054  MUNC =0054  LBO  =0054  LBT  =0054  LMC  =0054  IN1  =0055  IN2  =0055  IN3  =0055  IN4  =0055
 IN5  =0055  IN6  =0055  QRTD =0065  YTD  =008F  INDEX=018B  ISUPP=0198  NAME =01A1  NSSAN=01A4  NOPLT=01A5  INDX =01A6
 LST  =01A7  LAST =01A8  I    =01A9  ICLCK=01AA  NUMB =01AB  ICHNG=01AC  NEW  =01AD  K    =01AE  IND  =01AF  NUM  =01B0
 NSTAS=01B1  NDUES=01B2  NWKMP=01B3  NWKPD=01B4  MAR  =01B5  NXMPF=01B6  NXMPS=01B7  NSEX =01B8  NRATE=01B9  LYRHR=01BA
 NCU  =01BB  NCUDD=01BC  NCHCK=01BD  NADWH=01BE  NSTCK=01BF  NINS =01C0  NMISC=01C1  NUA  =01C2  NSTKD=01C3  INIT =01C4
 IPD  =01C5

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =01DB  2    =01DD  3    =01E4  8    =01FA  4    =0209  5    =0218  11   =022B  10   =0236  6    =023A  7    =0247
 9    =0259  1000 =0271  80   =028E  81   =0294  82   =029A  83   =02A0  84   =02A6  85   =02AC  90   =02B0  100  =02CB
 101  =02DE  95   =02E4  105  =02F0  106  =02FD  110  =0305  104  =030D  120  =0317  125  =0326  130  =0336  135  =037C
 140  =0386  141  =039A  142  =03A0  143  =03A6  144  =03AC  145  =03B2  146  =03B8  147  =03BC  148  =03C2  149  =03C8
 150  =03CE  151  =03D4  152  =03DA  153  =03E0  155  =03E6  156  =03F0  500  =03FE  513  =0430  504  =043A  501  =045E
 502  =0473  503  =0488  550  =04B8  99   =04F9  1001 =0521

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 STACK   ELD     ESTO    ESTOX   TYPEZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI   SIOI    SUBSC   CARDZ   SDFIO   SDRED
 SDWRT   SDCOM   SDAI    SDAF    SDIX    SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .000000000E 00=01C8

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=01CB      2=01CC    100=01CD    250=01CE     90=01CF    200=01D0     50=01D1    150=01D2     30=01D3      9=01D4
  1000=01D5     16=01D6     14=01D7      6=01D8      0=01D9     13=01DA

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY03
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    456  PROGRAM    858

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY03     2
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
1
10010100261
10040600004
10160500002
10170100261
                                                                    9
```

Input cards

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY03     2
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
```

Printer output

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

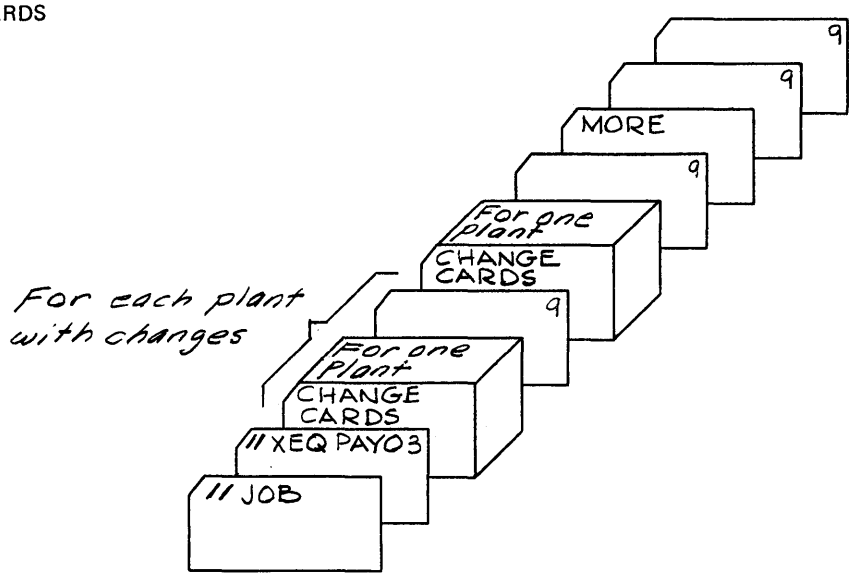
PROGRAM NAME: Changes to the file	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY03
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH None	SWITCH None	SWITCH None
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS

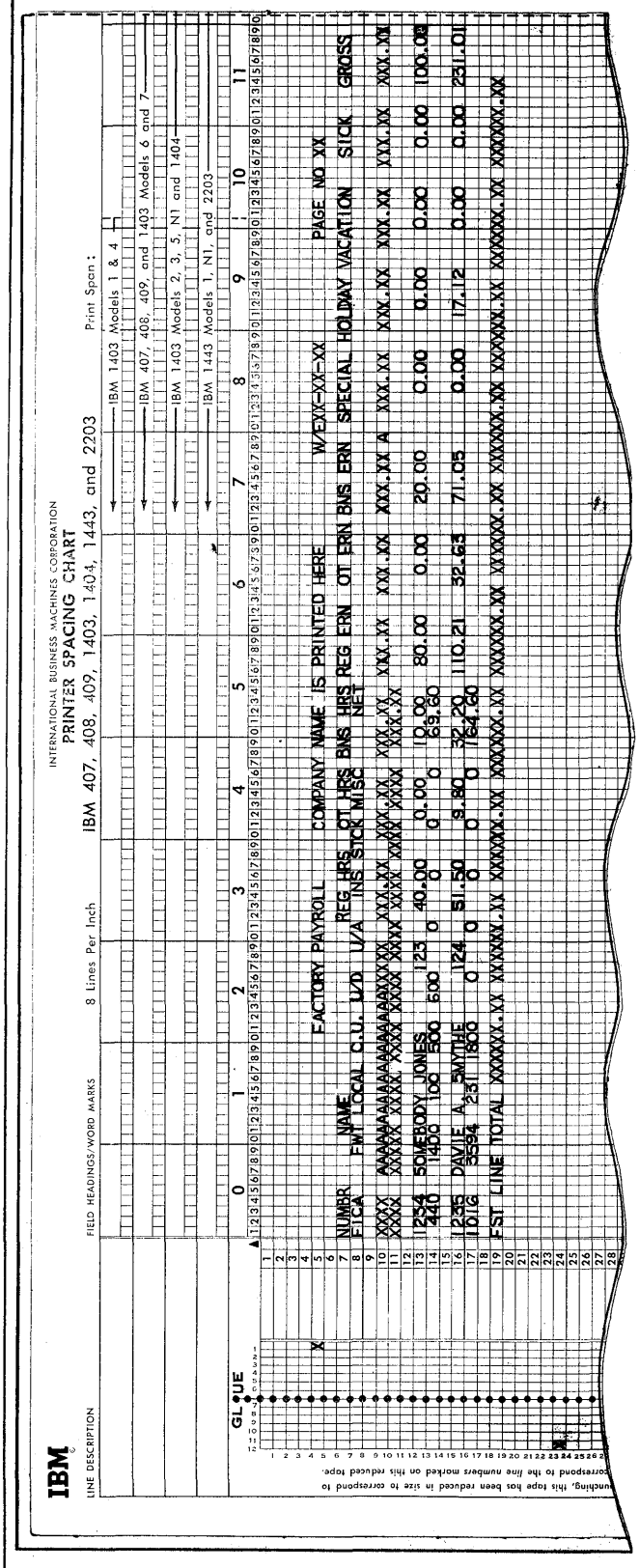


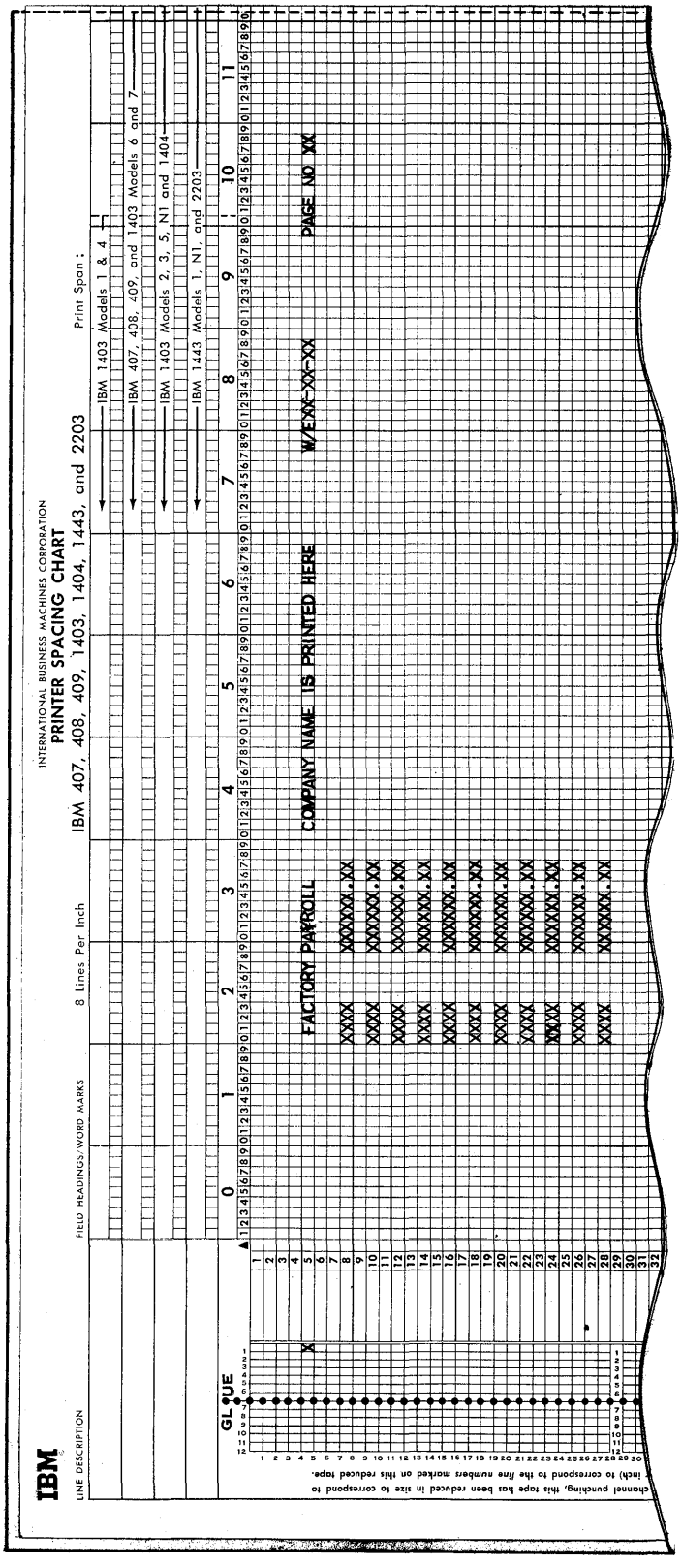
SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Change cards are filed in file C.
2. Disk is returned to storage for use with PAY04

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY04: CALCULATIONS AND PAYROLL REGISTER





VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
A	R	3	O	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero balance check
AD	R	3	T	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Used to calculate overtime rate
ADREG	R	3	T	xxx	ø.øø	Used to calculate overtime rate
ATAX	R	3	T	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	After-tax income
B	R	3	T	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero balance check
BNERN	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Bonus earnings
BNHRS	R	3	I,O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Bonus, hours
C	R	3	O	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero-balance check
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	øøø.øø	ø.øø	Maximum check amount for a file
CNET	R	3	O	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	Net amount of individual check
COMP	A2	16	I,O	-	-	Company name
D	R	3	O	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero-balance check
ERNGS	R	3	T	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Fica taxable wages
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	xxxxxxx.	ø.øø	Trade association reports
GROSS	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Gross amount of individual check
HOLDY	R	3	O	xx.xx	ø.øø	Individual's holiday pay
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks
ICLCK	I	1	T	6	1	First digit of clock number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	76

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
ICNT	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Sequence number for journal (should correspond to CK #)
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in employee files, setup by plant
ICU	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Individual's credit union deduction
IDATE	I	3/3	I,O			Pay date
IDED	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Total of individual's insurance, stock, charity and misc. deductions/pay period
IFICA	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Individual's fica tax
IFILL	I	1	T	7	ø	Indicates deduction not made
IINS	I	1	O	XX	ø	Individual's insurance deduction
ILST	I	1	T	250	5	Last record number in a file
IMISC	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Individual's misc. deduction
IND	I	1	T	1ø6	1ø1	File number of index for a plant: P#+100
INDEX	I	250	T	XXXX	1øøø	Index to plant now being processed
INDX	I	1	T	1ø6	1ø1	Index file number (plant no. +100)
INIT	I	1	T	16øø	ø	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee files
IN2	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
IOTRT	I	1	T	50Ø	Ø	Overtime pay rate
IPAGE	I	1	O	20	1	Page number
IPD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISTCK	I	1	O	2ØØØ	Ø	Individual's stock deduction
ISUPP	I	13	O	XXX.xx	Ø	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	Ø	Account number for posting to in general ledger
IUA	I	1	O	3ØØ	Ø	Individual's charity deduction
IUD	I	1	O	15ØØ	Ø	Individual's union dues deduction
IVRAT	I	1	O	5ØØ	Ø	Average pay rate
IWEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of month
IWVA	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
K	I	1	T	9	Ø	Last-card test
KARD	I	1	I	9	Ø	C.C. 8Ø for last-card test
KO	A	1	O	5	Ø	Special earnings code
KODE	I	3/3	I	9	Ø	Special earnings code
KPLNT	I	1	I	6	Ø	Plant number
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	Ø	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LINE	I	1	T	50	Ø	Line count

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	78

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
LMC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LOCAL	I	1	O	xxxx	ø	Local tax
LYRHR	I	1	O	O	ø	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status-(1-single), (2-married)
MUNC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	O	xxxx	ø	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	I,O	-	-	Employee name
NCHCK	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	I,O	xx.xx	ø	Credit union deduction
NCUDD	I	1	O	xxx.x	ø	Monthly credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	I,O	xx.xx	ø	Union dues deduction
NDWK	A2	3	I,O	-	-	Pay period date
NINS	I	1	I,O	xx.xx	ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	xxx.xx	ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NOPLT	I	1	T	6	1	Plant number
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.øø	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex (1-female), (2-male), (3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	Always	9 Digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status - (1-union), (2-trucker), (3-non-union, full-time), (4-non-union, part-time), (5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	xx.xx	ø	Stock deduction

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NSTKD	I	1	O	xx.xx	ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	xx.xx	ø	United Appeal deduction
NUM	I	1	I,O	xxxx	1øøø	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	xx	ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	xx	ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	ø	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	ø	State exemptions
OTERN	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Overtime earnings
OTHER	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Special earnings
OTHRS	R	3	I,O	xx.xx	ø.øø	Overtime hours
QRTD	R	6/18	O	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	Quarter-to-date information. (1) gross (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay
RGERN	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Regular earnings
RGHRS	R	3	I,O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Regular hours
SICK	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Sick pay
SPA	R	3	T	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	Special earnings accuml. per ind.
SPB	R	3	T	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	Special earnings accuml per ind.
SPECL	R	3/9	I	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Special earnings
T	R	3	O	xxxxxx.	ø.øø	Used to total special earnings
TAX	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø.øø	Federal withholding tax
TAXBL	R	3	T	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Taxable earnings

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	80

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

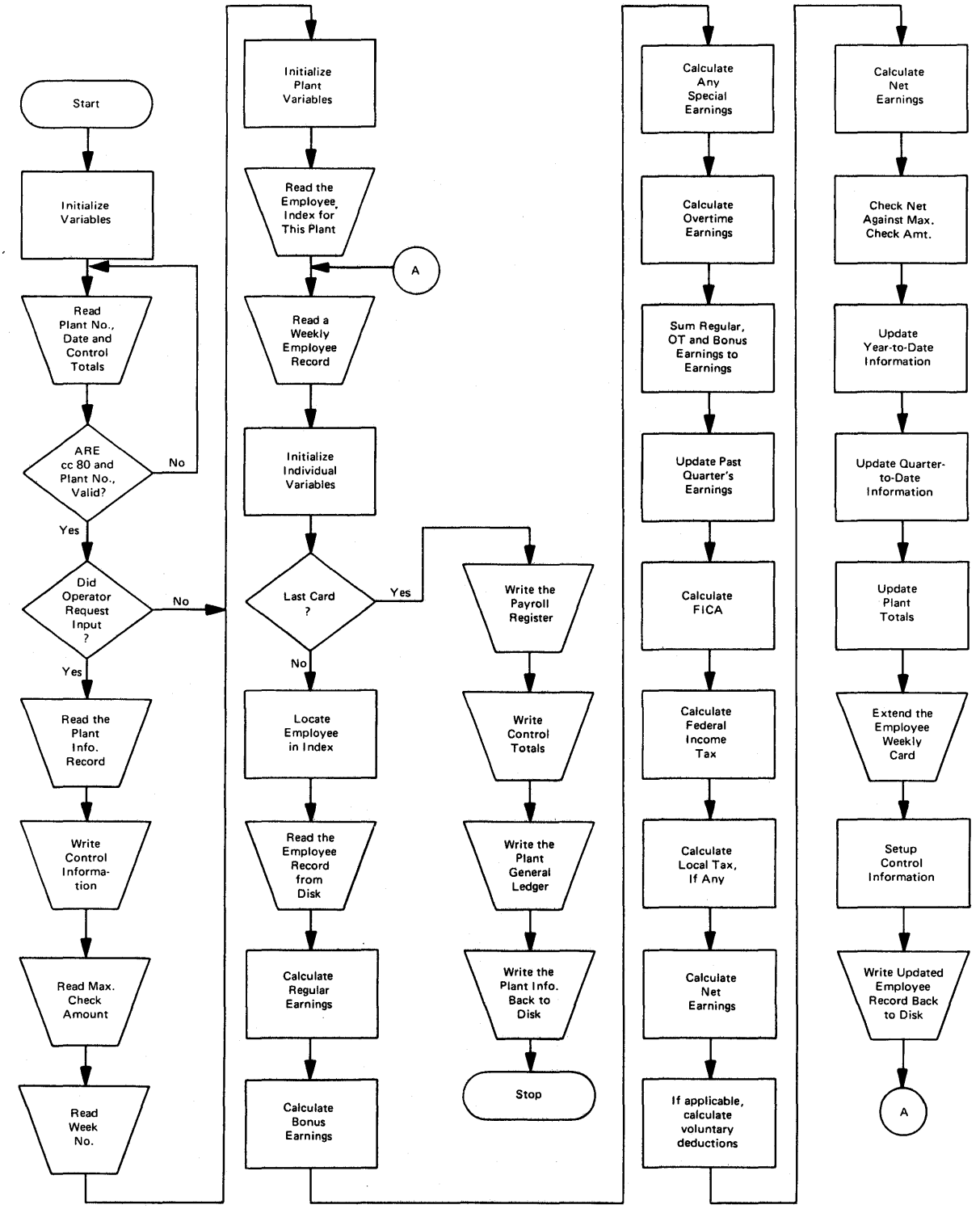
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 8/29/67

Program Name Calculations & P/R No. PAY04 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
TGRS	R	3	T	XXXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total gross
TNET	R	3	T	XXXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total net
TOT	R	21/63	O	XXXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total array
TOTBN	R	3	I	XXXXXXX.	Ø.ØØ	Bonus hour total from source doc.
TOTOT	R	3	I	XXXXXXX.	Ø.ØØ	OT hour total from source doc.
TOTRG	R	3	I	XXXXXXX.	Ø.ØØ	Reg. hour total from source doc.
TOTSP	R	3	I	XXXXXXX.	Ø.ØØ	Special earnings total from source doc.
VACA	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Vacation pay
XBN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Bonus hours error total
XOT	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Overtime hours error total
XREG	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Reg. hours error total
XSP	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Special earnings
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXXXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Year-to-date information. (1) gross, (2) fit, (3) FICA, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hrs, (10) OT hrs, (11) bonus hrs, (12) reg. erns, (13) OT erns, (14) bonus erns.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic


Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No., Date and Control Totals
ARE cc 80 and Plant No., Valid?
No
Yes
Did Operator Request Input ?
No
Yes
Read the Plant Info. Record
Write Control Informa-tion
Read Max. Check Amount
Read Week No.
Initialize Plant Variables
Read the Employee Index for This Plant
A
Read a Weekly Employee Record
Initialize Individual Variables
Last Card ?
Yes
No
Locate Employee in Index
Read the Employee Record from Disk
Calculate Regular Earnings
Calculate Bonus Earnings
Write the Payroll Register
Write Control Totals
Write the Plant General Ledger
Write the Plant Info. Back to Disk
Stop
Calculate Any Special Earnings
Calculate Overtime Earnings
Sum Regular, OT and Bonus Earnings to Earnings
Update Past Quarter's Earnings
Calculate FICA
Calculate Federal Income Tax
Calculate Local Tax, If Any
Calculate Net Earnings
If applicable, calculate voluntary deductions
Calculate Net Earnings
Check Net Against Max. Check Amt.
Update Year-to-Date Information
Update Quarter-to-Date Information
Update Plant Totals
Extend the Employee Weekly Card
Setup Control Information
Write Updated Employee Record Back to Disk
A

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY04
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,KEYBOARD,1132 PRINTER,DISK)                      PAY04
* LIST ALL                                                             PAY04
** PAY04 PROGRAM                                                       PAY04
* NAME PAY04                                                           PAY04
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY04
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY04
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - CALCULATIONS + PAYROLL REGISTER PAY04
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY04                                           PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                       PAY04
C----- DATE CODED    -- 01/13/68                                        PAY04
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                 PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C-----                          FILE         FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY04
C-----                          NAME        NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY04
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. COLFP            1    160    250         2    PAY04
C-----                   2. WVAFP            2    160     90         2    PAY04
C-----                   3. MNCFP            3    160    200         2    PAY04
C-----                   4. LBOFP            4    160     50         2    PAY04
C-----                   5. LBTFP            5    160    150         2    PAY04
C-----                   6. LMCFP            6    160     30         2    PAY04
C-----                   7. PINFO           25    106      6         3    PAY04
C-----                   8. INDX1          101      1    250       320    PAY04
C-----                   9. INDX2          102      1     90       320    PAY04
C-----                  10. INDX3          103      1    200       320    PAY04
C-----                  11. INDX4          104      1     50       320    PAY04
C-----                  12. INDX5          105      1    150       320    PAY04
C-----                  13. INDX6          106      1     30       320    PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- OUTPUT FILES --  1. COLFP            1    160    250         2    PAY04
C-----                   2. WVAFP            2    160     90         2    PAY04
C-----                   3. MNCFP            3    160    200         2    PAY04
C-----                   4. LBOFP            4    160     50         2    PAY04
C-----                   5. LBTFP            5    160    150         2    PAY04
C-----                   6. LMCFP            6    160     30         2    PAY04
C-----                   7. PINFO           25    106      6         3    PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE.                                        PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      INTEGER COMP(16), TAX                                            PAY04
      DIMENSION FIBRE(8), IDATE(3), INDEX(250), ISUPP(13), ITOT(11),   PAY04
     1          KODE(3), NAME(9), NDWK(3), NSSAN(3), QRTD(6), SPECL(3), PAY04
     2          TOT(21), YTD(14)                                       PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY04
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR NEXT RECORD NUMBER.               PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY04
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),                PAY04
```

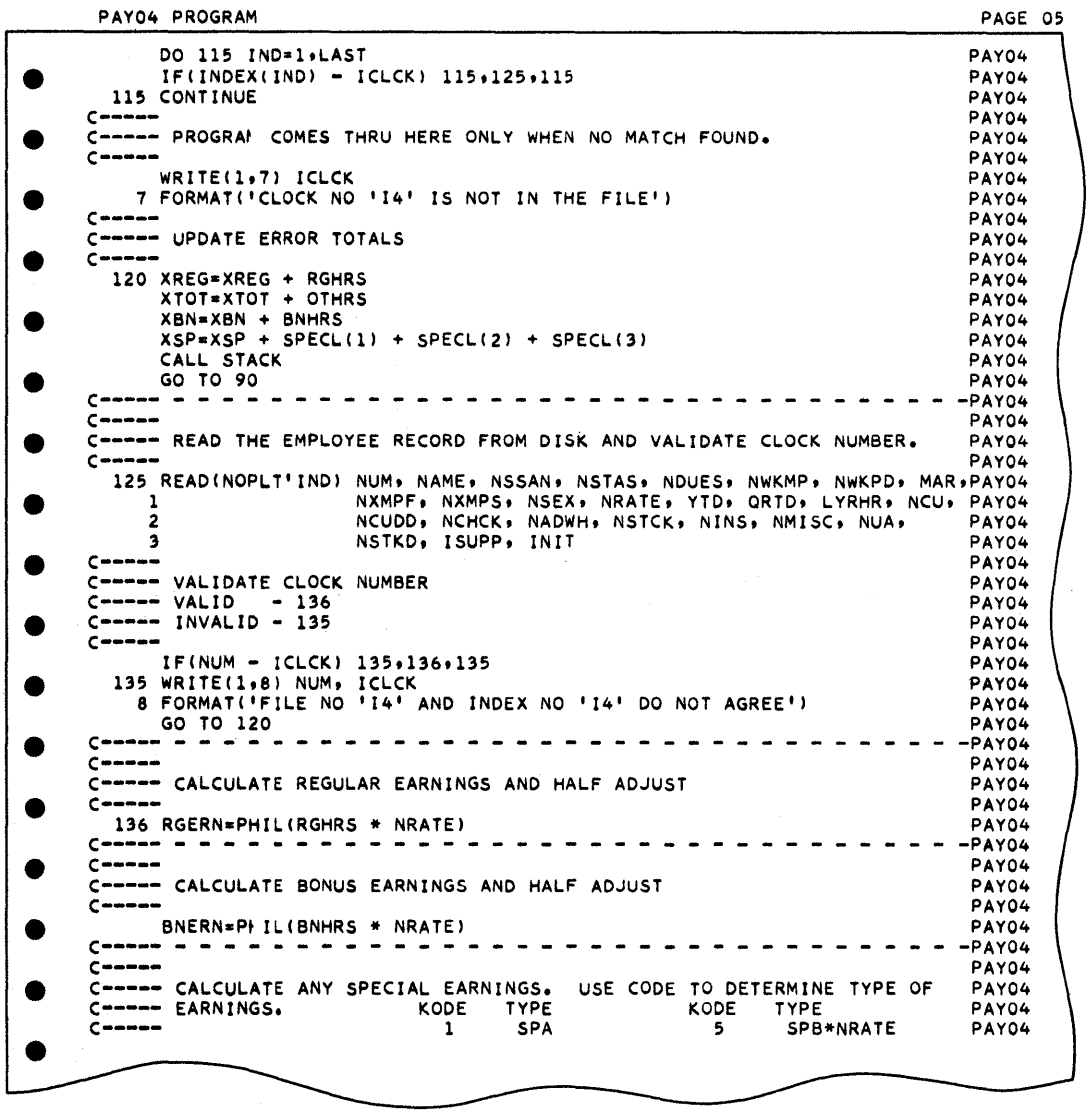
```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 02

     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 25(6,106,U,IC),  PAY04
     3              101(250,1,U,IN1), 102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3),PAY04
     4              104(50,1,U,IN4), 105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6)  PAY04
      EQUIVALENCE  (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                       PAY04
     1             (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                           PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- DEFINE AN ARITHMETIC STATEMENT FOR HALF ADJUSTING.              PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      PHIL(BET)=WHOLE( (BET + 5.) / 100.)                              PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                           PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      ICOL=1                                                           PAY04
      IN1=1                                                            PAY04
      T=0.                                                             PAY04
      XTOT=0.                                                          PAY04
      XBN=0.                                                           PAY04
      XREG=0.                                                          PAY04
      XSP=0.                                                           PAY04
      DO 50 I=1,21                                                     PAY04
   50 TOT(I)=0.                                                        PAY04
      IPAGE=0                                                          PAY04
      LINE=50                                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- READ PLANT NUMBER, DATE, AND CONTROL TOTALS                     PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
99999 READ(2,1) NOPLT, IDATE, NDWK, TOTRG, TOTOT, TOTBN, TOTSP, KARD  PAY04
    1 FORMAT(I1,6A2,7X,4F7.0,31X,I1)                                   PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- VALIDATE KARD AND NOPLT.                                       PAY04
C----- IF VALID   - 60                                                PAY04
C----- IF INVALID - 55                                                PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      IF(KARD) 55,51,55                                                PAY04
   51 IF(NOPLT) 55,55,52                                               PAY04
   52 IF(NOPLT-6) 60,60,55                                             PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- FIRST CARD IS INVALID.                                          PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
   55 WRITE(1,2)                                                       PAY04
    2 FORMAT('CHECK CC 1 AND 80 ON FIRST CARD')                        PAY04
      PAUSE 1                                                          PAY04
      GO TO 99999                                                      PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- READ THE PLANT INFORMATION RECORD FROM DISK.                    PAY04
```

PAY04 PROGRAM PAGE 03

```
C-----                                                                  PAY04
   60 READ(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX             PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- WRITE THE PLANT INFORMATION FOR CONTROL PURPOSES AND ACCEPT ANY  PAY04
C----- CHANGES TO IT THRU DATA SWITCH SETTINGS.                        PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
   62 WRITE(1,3) COMP, IDATE, ICHCK, IWEEK, NDWK, CKMAX                 PAY04
    3 FORMAT(//16A2,3A2/'CHECK NO 'I5/'WEEK NO 'I1/'W/E '3A2/'NET MAX'  PAY04
     1       F6.0//'MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED BY SWITCH 14.  'PAY04
     2   /  'SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NO AND THE WEEK NO.  SET ' PAY04
     3      'SWITCHES'/'REQUESTED AND PRESS START')                     PAY04
      PAUSE 1111                                                        PAY04
      CALL DATSW(15,I)                                                  PAY04
      GO TO (70,71),I                                                   PAY04
   70 WRITE(1,4)                                                        PAY04
    4 FORMAT('ENTER CHECK NO. FIVE DIGITS')                             PAY04
      READ(6,22) ICHCK                                                  PAY04
   22 FORMAT(I5)                                                        PAY04
      WRITE(1,23)                                                       PAY04
   23 FORMAT('ENTER WEEK NO. ONE DIGIT')                                PAY04
      READ(6,24) IWEEK                                                  PAY04
   24 FORMAT(I1)                                                        PAY04
      GO TO 62                                                          PAY04
   71 CALL DATSW(14,I)                                                  PAY04
      GO TO (72,75),I                                                   PAY04
   72 WRITE(1,25)                                                       PAY04
   25 FORMAT('ENTER MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT.  FIVE DIGITS')                PAY04
      READ(6,21) CKMAX                                                  PAY04
   21 FORMAT(F5.0)                                                      PAY04
      GO TO 62                                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- INITIALIZE PLANT VARIABLES                                       PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
   75 INDX=NOPLT + 100                                                  PAY04
      GO TO (76,77,78,79,80,81),NOPLT                                   PAY04
   76 ILST=250                                                          PAY04
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY04
   77 ILST=90                                                           PAY04
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY04
   78 ILST=200                                                          PAY04
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY04
   79 ILST=50                                                           PAY04
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY04
   80 ILST=150                                                          PAY04
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY04
   81 ILST=30                                                           PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
```

PAY04 PROGRAM PAGE 04

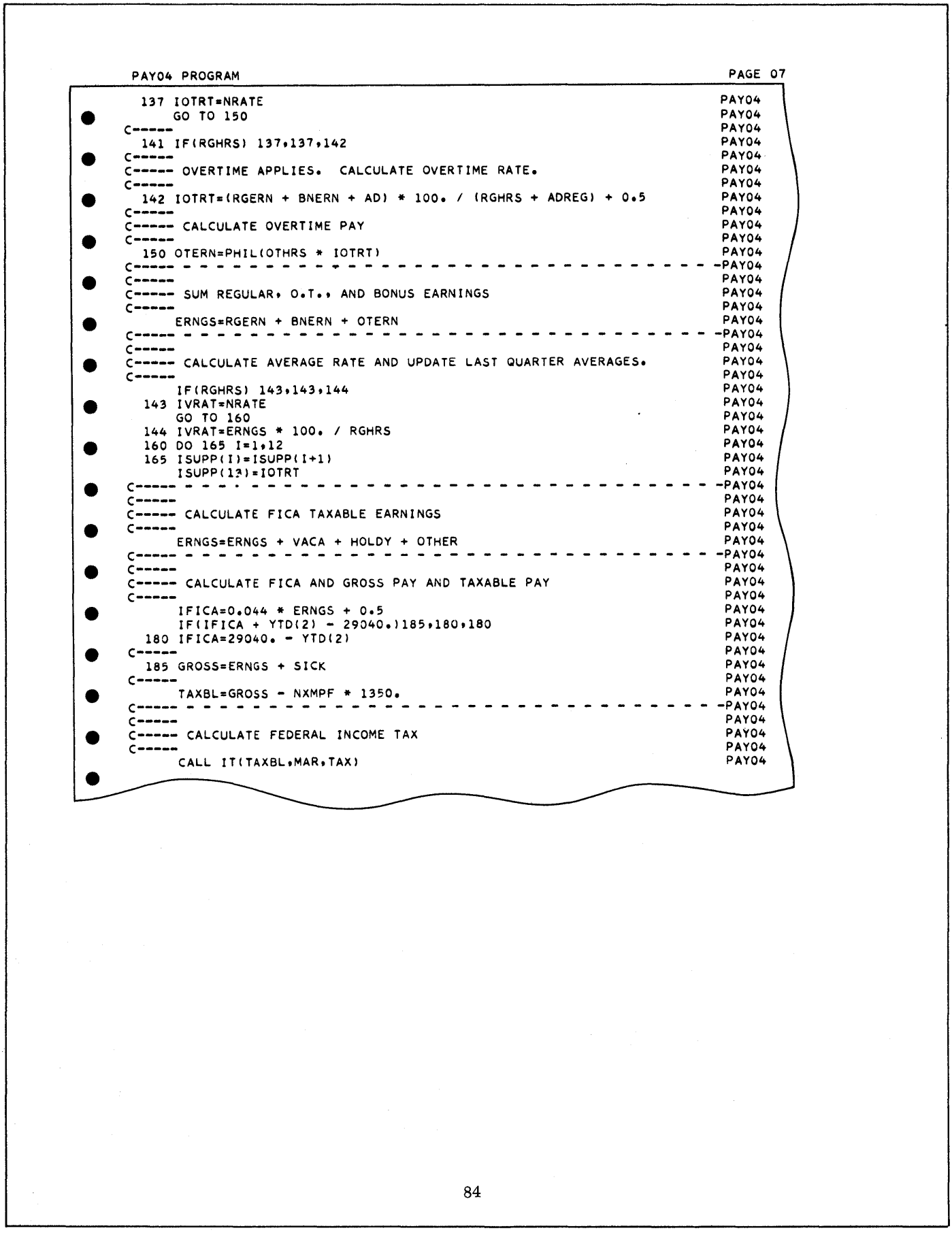
```
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- READ THE EMPLOYEE INDEX FOR THIS PLANT.                         PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
   83 READ(INDX'ILST) LAST                                              PAY04
      READ(INDX'1) (INDEX(I),I=1,LAST)                                  PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- READ A WEEKLY EMPLOYEE RECORD.                                  PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
   90 READ(2,5) KPLNT, ICLCK, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, (KODE(I),SPECL(I),   PAY04
     1          I=1,3), KARD                                           PAY04
    5 FORMAT(I1,I3,F5.0,F4.0,F5.0,I1,F6.0,2(I1,F5.0),42X,I1)            PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- INITIALIZE INDIVIDUAL VARIABLES                                 PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      ADREG=0.                                                          PAY04
      AD=0.                                                             PAY04
      HOLDY=0.                                                          PAY04
      IFILL=0                                                           PAY04
      KO=16448                                                          PAY04
      OTHER=0.                                                          PAY04
      SICK=0.                                                           PAY04
      SPA=0.                                                            PAY04
      SPB=0.                                                            PAY04
      TAX=0.                                                            PAY04
      VACA=0.                                                           PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- LAST CARD CHECK AND VALIDATE PLANT NUMBER                       PAY04
C----- IF KARD EQUALS 6, PROCESS IT.                                   PAY04
C----- IF KARI EQUALS 9, LAST CARD                                     PAY04
C----- OTHERWISE, ERROR                                                PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      IF(KARD - 6) 100,110,103                                          PAY04
  103 IF(KARD - 9) 100,500,100                                          PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- PLANT NUMBER                                                    PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
  110 IF(KPLNT - NOPLT) 100,105,100                                     PAY04
  100 WRITE(1,6) KPLNT, ICLCK                                           PAY04
    6 FORMAT('CHECK CARD WITH CLOCK NUMBER 'I1,I3)                      PAY04
      PAUSE 100                                                         PAY04
      GO TO 90                                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- LOCATE EMPLOYEE IN INDEX                                        PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
  105 ICLCK=ICLCK + KPLNT * 1000                                        PAY04
```



```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 05

      DO 115 IND=1,LAST                                                  PAY04
      IF(INDEX(IND) - ICLCK) 115,125,115                                 PAY04
  115 CONTINUE                                                           PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE ONLY WHEN NO MATCH FOUND.                 PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
      WRITE(1,7) ICLCK                                                   PAY04
    7 FORMAT('CLOCK NO 'I4' IS NOT IN THE FILE')                         PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- UPDATE ERROR TOTALS                                               PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
  120 XREG=XREG + RGHRS                                                  PAY04
      XTOT=XTOT + OTHRS                                                  PAY04
      XBN=XBN + BNHRS                                                    PAY04
      XSP=XSP + SPECL(1) + SPECL(2) + SPECL(3)                           PAY04
      CALL STACK                                                         PAY04
      GO TO 90                                                           PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- READ THE EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK AND VALIDATE CLOCK NUMBER.     PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
  125 READ(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,PAY04
     1                NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, PAY04
     2                NCUDD, NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA,     PAY04
     3                NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT                                PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- VALIDATE CLOCK NUMBER                                            PAY04
C----- VALID   - 136                                                    PAY04
C----- INVALID - 135                                                    PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
      IF(NUM - ICLCK) 135,136,135                                        PAY04
  135 WRITE(1,8) NUM, ICLCK                                              PAY04
    8 FORMAT('FILE NO 'I4' AND INDEX NO 'I4' DO NOT AGREE')              PAY04
      GO TO 120                                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- CALCULATE REGULAR EARNINGS AND HALF ADJUST                        PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
  136 RGERN=PHIL(RGHRS * NRATE)                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- CALCULATE BONUS EARNINGS AND HALF ADJUST                          PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
      BNERN=PHIL(BNHRS * NRATE)                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C----- CALCULATE ANY SPECIAL EARNINGS.  USE CODE TO DETERMINE TYPE OF    PAY04
C----- EARNINGS.          KODE   TYPE          KODE   TYPE               PAY04
C-----                      1     SPA            5     SPB*NRATE         PAY04
```

```
C-----                          2     SPB              6     VACA          PAY04
C-----                          3     SPB*NRATE        7     SICK          PAY04
C-----                          4     SPB*NRATE        8     HOLDY         PAY04
C-----                                                 9     HOLDY * 2     PAY04
C-----                                                                     PAY04
      DO 139 I=1,3                                                         PAY04
      K=KODE(I)                                                            PAY04
      IF(K) 100,139,600                                                    PAY04
  600 GO TO (601,602,603,604,605,606,607,608,609),K                        PAY04
  601 AD=SPECL(I)                                                          PAY04
      OTHER=OTHER + AD                                                     PAY04
      SPA=SPA + AD                                                         PAY04
      KO=-3776                                                             PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  602 OTHER=OTHER + SPECL(I)                                               PAY04
      SPB=SPA + SPECL(I)                                                   PAY04
      KO=-352(                                                             PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  603 KO=-3264                                                             PAY04
  610 OTHER=PHIL(SPECL(I) * NRATE)                                         PAY04
      SPB=SPB + SPECL(I)                                                   PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  604 KO=-3008                                                             PAY04
      GO TO 610                                                            PAY04
  605 KO=-2752                                                             PAY04
      GO TO 610                                                            PAY04
  606 VACA=SPECL(I)                                                        PAY04
      SPB=SPB + VACA                                                       PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  607 SICK=SPECL(I)                                                        PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  608 HOLDY=8. * NRATE                                                     PAY04
      AD=AD + HOLDY                                                        PAY04
  611 SPB=SPB + HOLDY                                                      PAY04
      ADREG=800.                                                           PAY04
      GO TO 139                                                            PAY04
  609 HOLDY=16. * NRATE                                                    PAY04
      AD=AD + HOLDY / 2.                                                   PAY04
      GO TO 611                                                            PAY04
  139 CONTINUE                                                             PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                     PAY04
C----- CALCULATE OVERTIME EARNINGS IF APPLICABLE.  USE STATUS AND HOURS PAY04
C----- TO DETERMINE APPLICABILITY.                                         PAY04
C-----                                                                     PAY04
      IF(NSTAS-2) 141,137,141                                              PAY04
C-----                                                                     PAY04
C----- NOT APPLICABLE. USE STANDARD RATE.                                  PAY04
C-----                                                                     PAY04
```

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	88



```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 07
  137 IOTRT=NRATE                                                PAY04
      GO TO 150                                                  PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
  141 IF(RGHRS) 137,137,142                                      PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- OVERTIME APPLIES.  CALCULATE OVERTIME RATE.               PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
  142 IOTRT=(RGERN + BNERN + AD) * 100. / (RGHRS + ADREG) + 0.5  PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- CALCULATE OVERTIME PAY                                    PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
  150 OTERN=PHIL(OTHRS * IOTRT)                                  PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- SUM REGULAR, O.T., AND BONUS EARNINGS                     PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      ERNGS=RGERN + BNERN + OTERN                                PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- CALCULATE AVERAGE RATE AND UPDATE LAST QUARTER AVERAGES.  PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      IF(RGHRS) 143,143,144                                      PAY04
  143 IVRAT=NRATE                                                PAY04
      GO TO 160                                                  PAY04
  144 IVRAT=ERNGS * 100. / RGHRS                                 PAY04
  160 DO 165 I=1,12                                              PAY04
  165 ISUPP(I)=ISUPP(I+1)                                        PAY04
      ISUPP(13)=IOTRT                                            PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- CALCULATE FICA TAXABLE EARNINGS                           PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      ERNGS=ERNGS + VACA + HOLDY + OTHER                         PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- CALCULATE FICA AND GROSS PAY AND TAXABLE PAY              PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      IFICA=0.044 * ERNGS + 0.5                                  PAY04
      IF(IFICA + YTD(2) - 29040.)185,180,180                     PAY04
  180 IFICA=29040. - YTD(2)                                      PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
  185 GROSS=ERNGS + SICK                                         PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      TAXBL=GROSS - NXMPF * 1350.                                PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
C----- CALCULATE FEDERAL INCOME TAX                              PAY04
C-----                                                           PAY04
      CALL IT(TAXBL,MAR,TAX)                                     PAY04
```

```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 08

      TAX=TAX + NADWH                                                PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
C----- COMPUTE LOCAL TAX BY PLANT LOCATION                          PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
      GO TO (230,235,240,230,246,230),NOPLT                          PAY04
  230 LOCAL=PHIL(GROSS)                                              PAY04
      GO TO 250                                                      PAY04
  235 I=1280. * NXMPS + 0.5                                          PAY04
      LOCAL=0.0108 * (GROSS-I)                                       PAY04
      GO TO 250                                                      PAY04
  240 IF(NXMPS) 241,241,242                                          PAY04
  241 LOCAL=0.02 * GROSS                                             PAY04
      GO TO 250                                                      PAY04
  242 I=NXMPS * 1538.5 + 961.5                                       PAY04
      LOCAL=(GROSS - I) * 0.02                                       PAY04
  250 IF(LOCAL) 246,247,247                                          PAY04
  246 LOCAL=0                                                        PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
C----- CALCULATE NET EARNINGS                                       PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
  247 ATAX=GROSS - TAX - LOCAL - IFICA                               PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
C----- CALCULATE VOLUNTARY DEDUCTIONS.                              PAY04
C-----  INITIALIZE.                                                  PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
      IUD=0                                                          PAY04
      IUA=0                                                          PAY04
      ISTCK=0                                                        PAY04
      IINS=0                                                         PAY04
      ICU=0                                                          PAY04
      IMISC=0                                                        PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
C----- IF THE EMPLOYEE RECEIVES SICK PAY, VOLUNTARY DEDUCTIONS ARE NOT PAY04
C----- TAKEN.                                                        PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
      IF(SICK) 252,253,252                                           PAY04
  252 CNET=ATAX                                                      PAY04
      GO TO 3(5                                                      PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
C----- OTHERWISE, DEDUCTIONS NECESSARY ARE TAKEN.                    PAY04
C----- TAKE UNION DUES ACCORDING TO PLANT                            PAY04
C-----                                                               PAY04
  253 IF(IWEEK - 3) 255,255,251                                      PAY04
  251 IF(NOPLT - 3) 280,255,280                                      PAY04
  255 IF(NSTAS - 2) 260,260,282                                      PAY04
  260 IF(GROSS - VACA) 261,295,261                                   PAY04
```

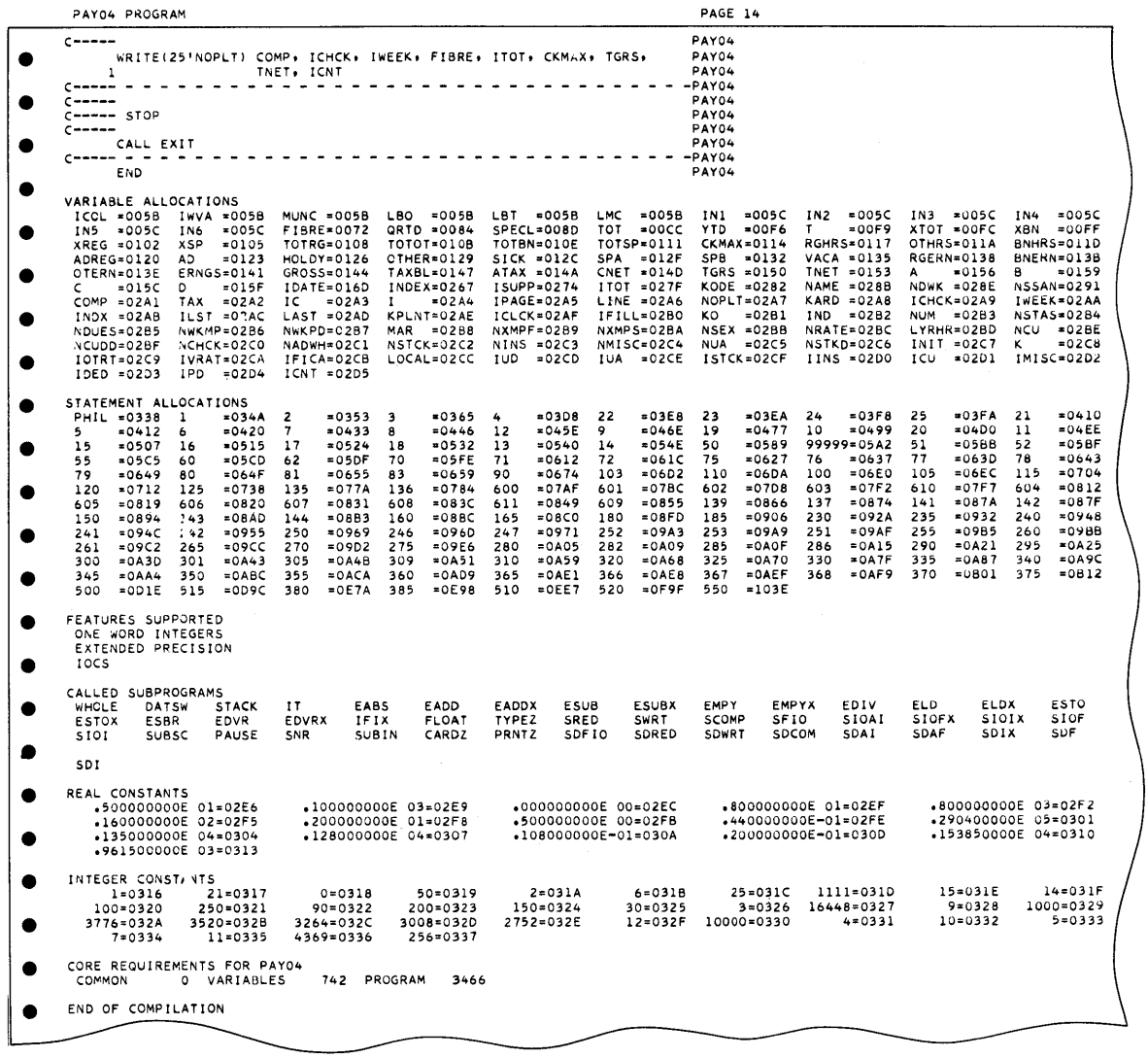
```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                          PAGE 09
  261 GO TO (265,265,275,265,265,280),NOPLT                            PAY04
  265 IF(NDUES - 10000) 270,270,280                                    PAY04
  270 IUD=NDUES + INIT                                                 PAY04
      NDUES=NDUES + INIT + 10000                                       PAY04
      INIT=0                                                           PAY04
      GO TO 290                                                        PAY04
  275 IUD=PHIL(GROSS - VACA) + INIT                                    PAY04
      NDUES=NDUES + IUD                                                PAY04
      INIT=0                                                           PAY04
      GO TO 282                                                        PAY04
  280 IUD=0                                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- CHARITABLE CONTRIBUTIONS                                        PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
  282 IF(.WEEK - 2) 290,285,285                                        PAY04
  285 IF(NUA - 10000) 286,290,290                                      PAY04
  286 IUA=NUA                                                          PAY04
      NUA=NUA + 10000                                                  PAY04
      GO TO 295                                                        PAY04
  290 IUA=0                                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- TAKE STOCK, INSURANCE, CREDIT UNION, AND MISCELLANEOUS DEDUCTIONSPAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
  295 ISTCK=NSTCK                                                      PAY04
      IINS=NINS                                                        PAY04
      ICU=NCU                                                          PAY04
      IMISC=NMISC                                                      PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- CALCULATE NET, AT ALL TIMES CHECKING THAT NET IS NOT NEGATIVE.  PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      IF(ATAX - IUD) 300,310,310                                       PAY04
  300 IF(NOPLT - 3) 305,301,305                                        PAY04
  301 NDUES= NDUES - IUD                                               PAY04
      GO TO 309                                                        PAY04
  305 NDUES=NDUES - 10000                                              PAY04
  309 IUD=0                                                            PAY04
      IFILL=1                                                          PAY04
  310 CNET=ATAX - IUD                                                  PAY04
      IF(CNET - IINS) 320,325,325                                      PAY04
  320 IINS=0                                                           PAY04
      IFILL=2                                                          PAY04
  325 CNET=CNET - IINS                                                 PAY04
      IF(CNET - ISTCK) 330,335,335                                     PAY04
  330 ISTCK=0                                                          PAY04
      IFILL=3                                                          PAY04
  335 CNET=CNET - ISTCK                                                PAY04
      NSTKD=NSTKD + ISTCK                                              PAY04
      IF(CNET - ICU) 340,345,345                                       PAY04
```

```
      340 ICU=0                                                          PAY04
          IFILL=4                                                        PAY04
      345 CNET=CNET - ICU                                                PAY04
          NCUDD=NCUDD + (ICU / 10)                                       PAY04
          IF(CNET - IUA) 350,355,355                                     PAY04
      350 IUA=0                                                          PAY04
          IFILL=5                                                        PAY04
          NUA=NUA - 10000                                                PAY04
      355 CNET=CNET - IUA                                                PAY04
          IF(CNET - IMISC) 360,365,365                                   PAY04
      360 IMISC=0                                                        PAY04
          IFILL=6                                                        PAY04
      365 CNET=CNET - IMISC                                              PAY04
C-----  - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C-----  CHECK NET AGAINST MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT AND AGAINST A MINIMUM OF  PAY04
C-----  ONE DOLLAR                                                       PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
      366 IF(CKMAX - CNET) 367,368,368                                   PAY04
      367 WRITE(1,12) CNET, ICLCK                                        PAY04
       12 FORMAT('NET OF ' F7.0' FOR CLOCK NO 'I4)                       PAY04
          GO TO 120                                                      PAY04
      368 IF(CNET - 100) 370,375,375                                     PAY04
      370 TAX=TAX + CNET                                                 PAY04
          CNET=0                                                         PAY04
          IFILL=7                                                        PAY04
C-----  - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C-----  UPDATE YEAR-TO-DATE INFORMATION                                  PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
      375 YTD(1)=YTD(1) + GROSS                                          PAY04
          YTD(2)=YTD(2) + IFICA                                          PAY04
          YTD(3)=YTD(3) + TAX                                            PAY04
          YTD(4)=YTD(4) + ERNGS                                          PAY04
          YTD(5)=YTD(5) + SICK                                           PAY04
          YTD(6)=YTD(6) + SPA                                            PAY04
          YTD(7)=YTD(7) + SPB                                            PAY04
          YTD(8)=YTD(8) + LOCAL                                          PAY04
          YTD(9)=YTD(9) + RGHRS                                          PAY04
          YTD(10)=YTD(10) + OTHRS                                        PAY04
          YTD(11)=YTD(11) + BNHRS                                        PAY04
          YTD(12)=YTD(12) + RGERN                                        PAY04
          YTD(13)=YTD(13) + OTERN                                        PAY04
          YTD(14)=YTD(14) + BNERN                                        PAY04
C-----  - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                   PAY04
C-----  UPDATE QUARTER-TO-DATE INFORMATION                               PAY04
          QRTD(1)=QRTD(1) + GROSS                                        PAY04
          QRTD(2)=QRTD(2) + TAX                                          PAY04
```

```
      QRTD(3)=QRTD(3) + IFICA                                          PAY04
      QRTD(4)=QRTD(4) + LOCAL                                          PAY04
      QRTD(5)=QRTD(5) + ERNGS                                          PAY04
      QRTD(6)=QRTD(6) + SICK                                           PAY04
C---------- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- UPDATE PLANT TOTALS                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      TOT(1)=TOT(1) + RGHRS                                            PAY04
      TOT(2)=TOT(2) + RGERN                                            PAY04
      TOT(3) = TOT(3) + OTHRS                                          PAY04
      TOT(4)=TOT(4) + OTERN                                            PAY04
      TOT(5)=TOT(5) + BNHRS                                            PAY04
      TOT(6)=TOT(6) + BNERN                                            PAY04
      TOT(7)=TOT(7) + OTHER                                            PAY04
      TOT(8)=TOT(8) + HOLDY                                            PAY04
      TOT(9)=TOT(9) + VACA                                             PAY04
      TOT(10)=TOT(10) + SICK                                           PAY04
      TOT(11)=TOT(11) + CNET                                           PAY04
      TOT(12)=TOT(12) + TAX                                            PAY04
      TOT(13)=TOT(13) + IFICA                                          PAY04
      TOT(14)=TOT(14) + LOCAL                                          PAY04
      TOT(15)=TOT(15) + ICU                                            PAY04
      TOT(16)=TOT(16) + IUD                                            PAY04
      TOT(17)=TOT(17) + IUA                                            PAY04
      TOT(18)=TOT(18) + ISTCK                                          PAY04
      TOT(19)=TOT(19) + IMISC                                          PAY04
      TOT(20)=TOT(20) + IINS                                           PAY04
      TOT(21)=TOT(21) + GROSS                                          PAY04
C---------- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- SUM SPECIAL EARNINGS, SUM DEDUCTIONS, AND EXTEND THE EMPLOYEE   PAY04
C----- WEEKLY CARD                                                    PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      T=T + SPECL(1) + SPECL(2) + SPECL(3)                             PAY04
      IDED=IINS + ISTCK + IUA + IMISC                                  PAY04
      WRITE(2,9) NRATE, GROSS, CNET, TAX, IFICA, LOCAL, ICU, IUD, IDED PAY04
    9 FORMAT(' ',7X,I3,2F6.0,I5,4I4,I5)                                PAY04
C---------- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
C----- SETUP CONTROL INFORMATION, AND WRITE UPDATED EMPLOYEE RECORD BACKPAY04
C----- TO THE DISK.                                                   PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      LYRHR=LYRHR + RGHRS                                              PAY04
      NWKPD=NWKPD + 1                                                  PAY04
      IPD=1                                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                 PAY04
      WRITE(NOPLT'IND) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD,   PAY04
     1    MAR, NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD, PAY04
```

```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 12

     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT,    PAY04
     3    IPD, IFILL, GROSS, IVRAT, IOTRT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN,  PAY04
     4    OTERN, BNERN, OTHER, KO, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, CNET, IFICA, TAX, PAY04
     5    LOCAL, ICU, IUA, IUD, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC                       PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- GO BACK FOR ANOTHER WEEKLY EMPLOYEE CHECK.                       PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      GO TO 90                                                          PAY04
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- WRITE THE PAYROLL REGISTER.                                      PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
  500 ICNT=ICHCK                                                        PAY04
      DO 510 I=1,LAST                                                   PAY04
      READ(NOPLT'I) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,  PAY04
     1    NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD,      PAY04
     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT,    PAY04
     3    IPD, IFILL, GROSS, IVRAT, IOTRT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN,  PAY04
     4    OTERN, BNERN, OTHER, KO, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, CNET, IFICA, TAX, PAY04
     5    LOCAL, ICU, IUA, IUD, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC                       PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- CHECK PAID INDICATOR TO SEE IF COMPUTATIONS WERE PERFORMED.      PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      IF(IPD - 1) 510,515,510                                           PAY04
  515 RGHRS=WHOLE(RGHRS + (RGHRS / ABS(RGHRS)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      OTHRS=WHOLE(OTHRS + (OTHRS / ABS(OTHRS)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      BNHRS=WHOLE(BNHRS + (BNHRS / ABS(BNHRS)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      RGERN=WHOLE(RGERN + (RGERN / ABS(RGERN)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      OTERN=WHOLE(OTERN + (OTERN / ABS(OTERN)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      BNERN=WHOLE(BNERN + (BNERN / ABS(BNERN)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      OTHER=WHOLE(OTHER + (OTHER / ABS(OTHER)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      HOLDY=WHOLE(HOLDY + (HOLDY / ABS(HOLDY)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      VACA=WHOLE(VACA + (VACA / ABS(VACA)) * 0.5) / 100.                PAY04
      SICK=WHOLE(SICK + (SICK / ABS(SICK)) * 0.5) / 100.                PAY04
      GROSS=WHOLE(GROSS + (GROSS / ABS(GROSS)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY04
      CNET=WHOLE(CNET + (CNET / ABS(CNET)) * 0.5) / 100.                PAY04
      IF(LINE - 50) 385,380,380                                         PAY04
  380 IPAGE=IPAGE + 1                                                   PAY04
      WRITE(3,19) COMP, NDWK, IPAGE                                     PAY04
   19 FORMAT('1'20X,'FACTORY PAYROLL',5X,16A2,5X,'W/E ',A2,2('-',A2),   PAY04
     1       10X,'PAGE NO ',I2/)                                        PAY04
      WRITE(3,10)                                                       PAY04
   10 FORMAT(' NUMBR'5X,'NAME'17X,'REG HRS  OT HRS BNS HRS REG ERN  OT  PAY04
     1ERN BNS ERN  SPECIAL HOLDAY VACATION   SICK   GROSS')             PAY04
      WRITE(3,20)                                                       PAY04
   20 FORMAT(' FICA    FWT LOCAL C.U. U/D  U/A  INS STCK MISC     NET') PAY04
      LINE=0                                                            PAY04
  385 WRITE(3,11) NUM, NAME, ICNT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN, OTERN,   PAY04
     1            BNERN, KO, OTHER, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, GROSS, IFICA,    PAY04
```

```
     2            TAX, LOCAL, ICU, IUD, IUA, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC, CNET   PAY04
11    FORMAT(/,1X,I4,2X,9A2,I5,6(2X,F6.2),1X,A1,5(2X,F6.2)/1X,I5,2X,8I5,PAY04
     1       F8.2)                                                      PAY04
      FIBRE(NSEX)=FIBRE(NSEX) + 1                                       PAY04
      LINE=LINE + 3                                                     PAY04
      ICNT=ICNT + 1                                                     PAY04
  510 CONTINUE                                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- WRITE CONTROL TOTALS                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      TGRS=TOT(21)                                                      PAY04
      TNET=TOT(11)                                                      PAY04
      WRITE(1,15) TOTRG, TOTOT, TOTBN, TOTSP                            PAY04
   15 FORMAT('INPUT TOTALS   ',4(3X,F8.0))                              PAY04
      WRITE(1,16) TOT(1), TOT(3), TOT(5), T                             PAY04
   16 FORMAT('PROCESSED TOTALS  ',4(F8.0,3X))                           PAY04
      WRITE(1,17) XREG, XTOT,XBN, XSP                                   PAY04
   17 FORMAT('ERROR TOTALS   ',4(3X,F8.0))                              PAY04
      A=TOTRG - TOT(1) - XREG                                           PAY04
      B=TOTOT - TOT(3) - XTOT                                           PAY04
      C=TOTBN - TOT(5) - XBN                                            PAY04
      D=TOTSP - T - XSP                                                 PAY04
      WRITE(1,18) A, B, C, D                                            PAY04
   18 FORMAT('THE DIFFERENCES',4(3X,F8.0))                              PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- WRITE THE PLANT GENERAL LEDGER INFORMATION AFTER THE TOTAL LINE  PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      FIBRE(3)=FIBRE(3) + TOT(1)                                        PAY04
      FIBRE(4)=FIBRE(4) + TOT(2)                                        PAY04
      FIBRE(5)=FIBRE(5) + TOT(3)                                        PAY04
      FIBRE(6)=FIBRE(6) + TOT(4)                                        PAY04
      FIBRE(7)=FIBRE(7) + TOT(9)                                        PAY04
      FIBRE(8)=FIBRE(8) + TOT(8)                                        PAY04
      DO 520 I=1,10                                                     PAY04
  520 TOT(I)=WHOLE(TOT(I) + (TOT(I) / ABS(TOT(I))) * 0.5) / 100.        PAY04
      WRITE(3,13) (TOT(I),I=1,10)                                       PAY04
13    FORMAT(/,' ','FST LINE TOTAL',10F10.2)                            PAY04
      TOT(21)=-TOT(21)                                                  PAY04
      IPAGE=IPAGE + 1                                                   PAY04
      WRITE(3,19) COMP, NDWK, IPAGE                                     PAY04
      DO 550 I=1,11                                                     PAY04
      TOT(I+10)=-WHOLE(TOT(I+10) + (TOT(I+10)/ABS(TOT(I+10)))*0.5)/100. PAY04
  550 WRITE(3,14) ITOT(I), TOT(I+10)                                    PAY04
   14 FORMAT(/,20X,I4,5X,F9.2)                                          PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- WRITE THE PLANT INFORMATION BACK TO DISK.                        PAY04
```



```
PAY04 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 14

C-----                                                                  PAY04
      WRITE(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX, TGRS,     PAY04
     1                TNET, ICNT                                        PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
C----- STOP                                                            PAY04
C-----                                                                  PAY04
      CALL EXIT                                                         PAY04
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY04
      END                                                               PAY04

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =005B  IWVA =005B  MUNC =005B  LBO  =005B  LBT  =005B  LMC  =005B  IN1  =005C  IN2  =005C  IN3  =005C  IN4  =005C
 IN5  =005C  IN6  =005C  FIBRE=0072  QRTD =0084  SPECL=008D  TOT  =00CC  YTD  =00F6  T    =00F9  XTOT =00FC  XBN  =00FF
 XREG =0102  XSP  =0105  TOTRG=0108  TOTOT=010B  TOTBN=010E  TOTSP=0111  CKMAX=0114  RGHRS=0117  OTHRS=011A  BNHRS=011D
 ADREG=0120  AD   =0123  HOLDY=0126  OTHER=0129  SICK =012C  SPA  =012F  SPB  =0132  VACA =0135  RGERN=0138  BNERN=013B
 OTERN=013E  ERNGS=0141  GROSS=0144  TAXBL=0147  ATAX =014A  CNET =014D  TGRS =0150  TNET =0153  A    =0156  B    =0159
 C    =015C  D    =015F  IDATE=016D  INDEX=0267  ISUPP=0274  ITOT =027F  KODE =0282  NAME =028B  NDWK =028E  NSSAN=0291
 COMP =02A1  TAX  =02A2  IC   =02A3  I    =02A4  IPAGE=02A5  LINE =02A6  NOPLT=02A7  KARD =02A8  ICHCK=02A9  IWEEK=02AA
 INDX =02AB  ILST =02AC  LAST =02AD  KPLNT=02AE  ICLCK=02AF  IFILL=02B0  KO   =02B1  IND  =02B2  NUM  =02B3  NSTAS=02B4
 NDUES=02B5  NWKMP=02B6  NWKPD=02B7  MAR  =02B8  NXMPF=02B9  NXMPS=02BA  NSEX =02BB  NRATE=02BC  LYRHR=02BD  NCU  =02BE
 NCUDD=02BF  NCHCK=02C0  NADWH=02C1  NSTCK=02C2  NINS =02C3  NMISC=02C4  NUA  =02C5  NSTKD=02C6  INIT =02C7  K    =02C8
 IOTRT=02C9  IVRAT=02CA  IFICA=02CB  LOCAL=02CC  IUD  =02CD  IUA  =02CE  ISTCK=02CF  IINS =02D0  ICU  =02D1  IMISC=02D2
 IDED =02D3  IPD  =02D4  ICNT =02D5

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 PHIL =0338  1    =034A  2    =0353  3    =0365  4    =03D8  22   =03E8  23   =03EA  24   =03F8  25   =03FA  21   =0410
 5    =0412  6    =0420  7    =0433  8    =0446  12   =045E  9    =046E  19   =0477  10   =0499  20   =04D0  11   =04EE
 15   =0507  16   =0515  17   =0524  18   =0532  13   =0540  14   =054E  50   =0589  99999=05A2  51   =05BB  52   =05BF
 55   =05C5  60   =05CD  62   =05DF  70   =05FE  71   =0612  72   =061C  75   =0627  76   =0637  77   =063D  78   =0643
 79   =0649  80   =064F  81   =0655  83   =0659  90   =0674  103  =06D2  110  =06DA  100  =06E0  105  =06EC  115  =0704
 120  =0712  125  =0738  135  =077A  136  =0784  600  =07AF  601  =07BC  602  =07D8  603  =07F2  610  =07F7  604  =0812
 605  =0819  606  =0820  607  =0831  608  =083C  611  =0849  609  =0855  139  =0866  137  =0874  141  =087A  142  =087F
 150  =0894  243  =08AD  144  =08B3  160  =08BC  165  =08C0  180  =08FD  185  =0906  230  =092A  235  =0932  240  =0948
 241  =094C  242  =0955  250  =0969  246  =096D  247  =0971  252  =09A3  253  =09A9  251  =09AF  255  =09B5  260  =09BB
 261  =09C2  265  =09CC  270  =09D2  275  =09E6  280  =0A05  282  =0A09  285  =0A0F  286  =0A15  290  =0A21  295  =0A25
 300  =0A3D  301  =0A43  305  =0A4B  309  =0A51  310  =0A59  320  =0A68  325  =0A70  330  =0A7F  335  =0A87  340  =0A9C
 345  =0AA4  350  =0ABC  355  =0ACA  360  =0AD9  365  =0AE1  366  =0AE8  367  =0AEF  368  =0AF9  370  =0B01  375  =0B12
 500  =0D1E  515  =0D9C  380  =0E7A  385  =0E98  510  =0EE7  520  =0F9F  550  =103E

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 WHOLE   DATSW   STACK   IT      EABS    EADD    EADDX   ESUB    ESUBX   EMPY    EMPYX   EDIV    ELD     ELDX    ESTO
 ESTOX   ESBR    EDVR    EDVRX   IFIX    FLOAT   TYPEZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI   SIOFX   SIOIX   SIOF
 SIOI    SUBSC   PAUSE   SNR     SUBIN   CARDZ   PRNTZ   SDFIO   SDRED   SDWRT   SDCOM   SDAI    SDAF    SDIX    SDF

 SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .500000000E 01=02E6     .100000000E 03=02E9     .000000000E 00=02EC     .800000000E 01=02EF     .800000000E 03=02F2
   .160000000E 02=02F5     .200000000E 01=02F8     .500000000E 00=02FB     .440000000E-01=02FE     .290400000E 05=0301
   .135000000E 04=0304     .128000000E 04=0307     .108000000E-01=030A     .200000000E-01=030D     .153850000E 04=0310
   .961500000E 03=0313

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=0316     21=0317      0=0318     50=0319      2=031A      6=031B     25=031C   1111=031D     15=031E     14=031F
   100=0320    250=0321     90=0322    200=0323    150=0324     30=0325      3=0326  16448=0327      9=0328   1000=0329
  3776=032A   3520=032B   3264=032C   3008=032D   2752=032E     12=032F  10000=0330      4=0331     10=0332      5=0333
     7=0334     11=0335   4369=0336    256=0337

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY04
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    742  PROGRAM   3466

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY04    3
*FILES 101,INDX1 , 102,INDX2 , 103,INDX3 , 104,INDX4 , 105,INDX5 , 106,INDX6
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
1022168021568       0044000000165000010500013900
1001040000000001001000800200400                                          6
1002040000000000002000800300400                                          6
1003040000250000003000800400400                                          6
1005040000300002005000800600300                                          6
1004040000000000004000800500400                                          6
1006040000000000004000800500400                                          8
1016040000500000006001600700400                                          6
1107040000000002507000800800500                                          6
1218040000500000008000800900600                                          6
1347040000000003009000800100700                                          6
1603040000100002001000400200200                                          6
                                                                         9
```

Input cards

```
THE CONTAINER CORP.   022168
CHECK NO      1
WEEK NO  1
W/E 021568
NET MAX 25000.

MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED BY SWITCH 14.
SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NO AND THE WEEK NO.  SET SWITCHES
REQUESTED AND PRESS START
CHECK CARD WITH CLOCK NUMBER 1  6
INPUT TOTALS          44000.      1650.      1050.      13900.
PROCESSED TOTALS      40000.      1650.      1050.      12700.
ERROR TOTALS              0.         0.         0.          0.
THE DIFFERENCES        4000.         0.         0.       1200.
```

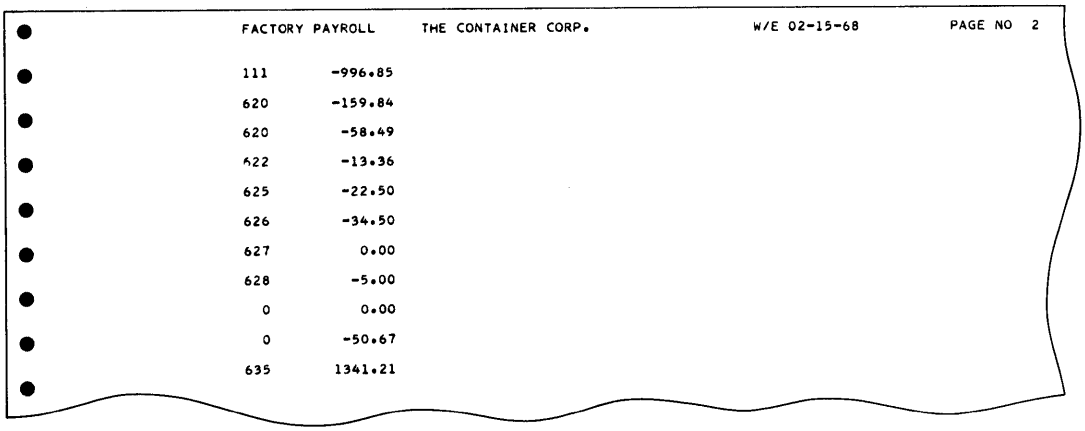
Console Printer output

```
// XEQ PAY04     3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
```

Test output

```
                    FACTORY PAYROLL     THE CONTAINER CORP.                W/E 02-15-68          PAGE NO  1

NUMBR     NAME                    REG HRS  OT HRS BNS HRS REG ERN  OT  ERN BNS ERN  SPECIAL HOLDAY VACATION   SICK   GROSS
FICA    FWT LOCAL C.U. U/D  U/A  INS STCK MISC     NET

1001  ROBT B BADEN          1   40.00    0.00    1.00  104.40    0.00    2.61 2   12.00    0.00    0.00    0.00  119.01
  524   1774  119    0  600    0  276    0    0   86.08

1002  JOHN A HORN           2   40.00    0.00    0.00  104.40    0.00    0.00 3   10.44    0.00    0.00    0.00  114.84
  505   1473  114    0  625    0  412    0    0   83.55

1003  ROBT L SHORES         3   40.00    2.50    0.00   85.60    5.35    0.00 4    8.56    0.00    0.00    0.00   99.51
  438    658   99 1000  600    0 1012    0    0   61.44

1004  JOHN W CUSSEN         4   40.00    0.00    0.00  104.40    0.00    0.00 5   10.44    0.00    0.00    0.00  114.84
  505    833  114    0  625    0  581  200    0   86.26

1005  JOSEPH MONTANO        5   40.00    3.00    2.00  148.80   11.73    7.44 5   29.76    0.00    3.00    0.00  200.73
  883   3258  200  750    0    0  724    0    0  142.58

1016  DONALD MILLER         6   40.00    5.00    0.00  112.00   14.00    0.00      0.00    0.00   16.00    4.00  146.00
  625    896  146    0    0    0    0    0    0  129.33

1107  A E TAYLOR            7   40.00    0.00    2.50  104.40    0.00    6.52      0.00   20.88    0.00    8.00  139.80
  580   1898  139    0    0    0    0    0    0  113.63

1218  DAVID A HUBBARD       8   40.00    5.00    0.00   85.60   12.50    0.00      0.00   34.24    0.00    0.00  132.34
  582   2276  132  500  600    0  296    0    0   88.48

1347  FRANK T DOLEN         9   40.00    0.00    3.00   68.40    0.00    5.13 1    7.00   27.36    0.00    0.00  107.89
  475   1030  107    0  400    0  624    0    0   81.53

1603  AL REYNOLDS          10   40.00    1.00    2.00  148.80    4.01    7.44 2    6.00    0.00    0.00    0.00  166.25
  732   1888  166    0    0    0 1142  300    0  123.97

FST LINE TOTAL    400.00   1066.80     16.50     47.59     10.50     29.14     84.20     82.48     19.00     12.00
```

Printer output, part 1



FACTORY PAYROLL THE CONTAINER CORP. W/E 02-15-68 PAGE NO 2

111	-996.85
620	-159.84
620	-58.49
622	-13.36
625	-22.50
626	-34.50
627	0.00
628	-5.00
0	0.00
0	-50.67
635	1341.21

Printer output, part 2

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME: Calculations & Payroll Register	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY04
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

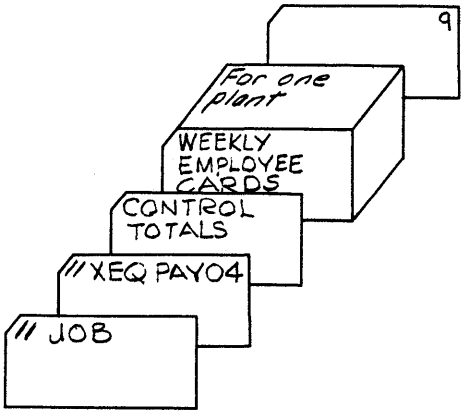
	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS			
SWITCH	14	15	None
UP	✓	✓	
DOWN			

INPUT CARDS

Switch 14 to change maximum check amount (and turn off) switch 15 to change check number and week number (and turn off)

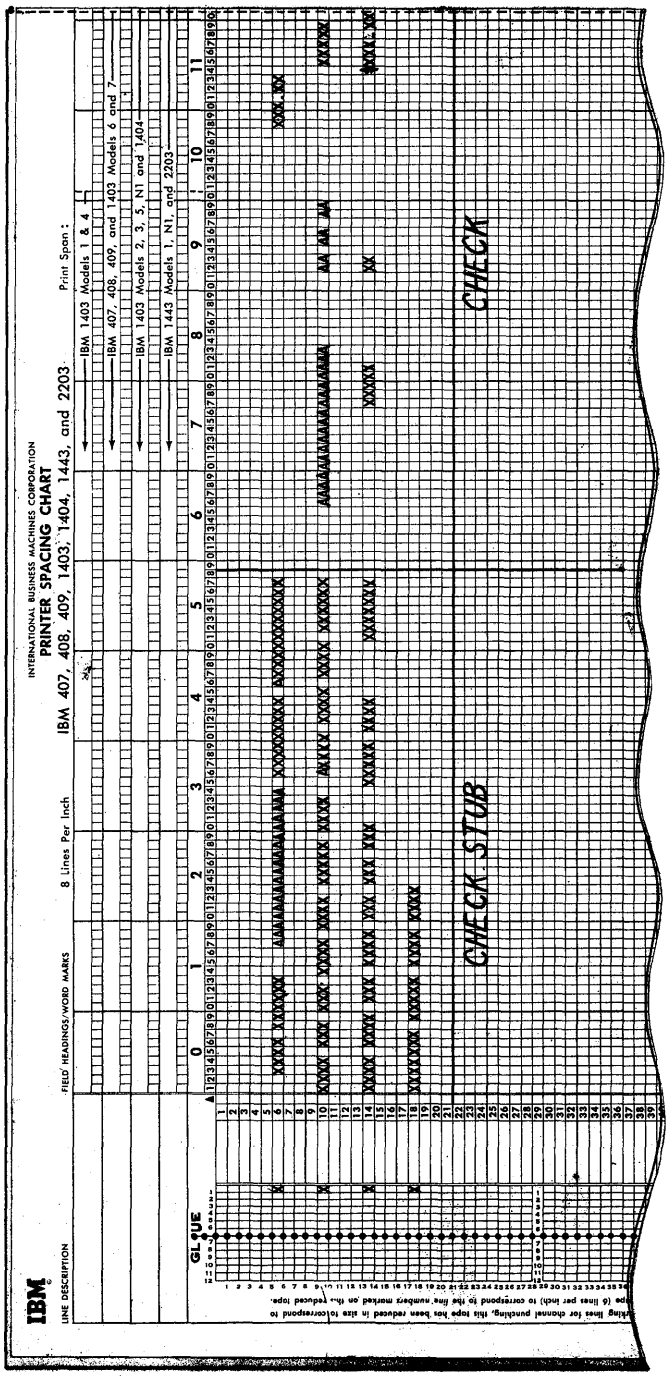


SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Control totals to file D
2. Details to file D
3. Disk to storage
4. Payroll register to payroll section.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY05: CHECK WRITING



VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
A	R	3	O	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero balance check
B	R	3	T	ø.øø	ø.øø	Used for zero balance check
BNERN	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Bonus earnings
BNHRS	R	3	I,O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Bonus hours
BR	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Print out of maximum check amount
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	1000.øø	ø.øø	Maximum check amount for a file
CNET	R	3	O	xxxx.xx	ø.øø	Net amount of individual check
COMP	A2	16	I,O	-	-	Company name
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	xxxxxx.	ø.øø	Trade assoc. reports
GROSS	R	3	O	xxx.xx	ø.øø	Gross amount of individual check
HOLDY	R	3	O	xx.xx	ø.øø	Individual's holiday pay
I	I	1	T	-	-	Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks
ICNT	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	Sequence number for Journal (should correspond to check #)
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number by employee file, set up by plant
ICU	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	Individual's credit union deduction
IDATE	A2	3/3	I,O	-	-	Pay date
ID1	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	1st check number
ID2	I	1	O	xxxx	ø	1st clock number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	102

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
IFICA	I	1	O	XXXXX	Ø	Individual's FICA tax
IFILL	I	1	T	7	Ø	Indicates deduction not made
IINS	I	1	O	XX	Ø	Individual's insurance deduction
ILST	I	1	T	250	5Ø	Last record number in a file
IMISC	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Individual's misc. deductions
INDX	I	1	T	1Ø6	1Ø1	Index file number (plant no. +1.00)
INIT	I	1	O	XXX.XX	Ø	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee file
IN2	I	1	N	—	—	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IOTRT	I	1	T	5ØØ	Ø	Overtime pay rate
IPD	I	1	O	2	Ø	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
IPNT	I	1	T	2	1	Set by data switch, controls pauses between prints
ISTCK	I	1	O	2ØØØ	Ø	Individual's stock deduction
ISUPP	I	13	O	XXX.XX	Ø	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	Ø	Account number for posting to in general ledger
IUA	I	1	O	300	Ø	Individual's charity deduction

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
IUD	I	1	O	150Ø	Ø	Individual's union dues deduction
IVRAT	I	1	O	50Ø	Ø	Average pay rate
IWEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of the month
IWVA	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
I1	I	1	O	XXXXX	Ø	Convert regular hours to printable form
I2	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert overtime hours to printable form
I3	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert bonus hours to printable form
I4	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert regular earnings to printable form
I5	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert overtime earnings to printable form
I6	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert bonus earnings to printable form
I7	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert other earnings to printable form
I8	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert holiday pay to printable form
I9	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	Convert sick pay to printable form
JGROS	A1	7	T	ØØXXXX	O	For moved gross
JOUT1	A1	5	O	XXXX	-	For edited vacation pay
JOUT2	A1	7	O	ØØXXXX	-	For edited gross pay
JVACA	A1	5	T	XXXX	O	For moved vacation
KARD	I	1	I	9	Ø	c.c. 8Ø for last card test
KO	A1	1	O	5	Ø	Special earnings
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	Ø	Last record number in file

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	104

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
LBO	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LOCAL	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	local tax
LYRHR	I	1	O	XXXX	Ø	This years accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status - (1-single), (2-married)
MASK	A1	7	T	-	-	Edit mask ($.)
MASK2	A1	7	T	-	-	Edit mask (zero suppress)
MUNC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	O	XX.XX	Ø	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	I,O	-	-	Employee name
NCHCK	I	1	O	XXXXX	Ø	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Credit union deduction.
NCUDO	I	1	O	XXX.X	Ø	Monthly credit union deductions (in dimes)
NDUES	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Union dues deduction
NDWK	A2	3	I,O	-	-	Pay period date
NETO	A1	7	O	$XXX.XX	$.00	Edited net
NET1	A1	7	O	$XXXXX	-	Edited net
NET2	A1	7	O	$XXXXX	-	Edited net
NET4	A1	7	T	$XXXXX	0	Moved net

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Klick Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NINS	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	XXX.XX	ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NOPLT	I	1	T	6	1	Plant number
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.øø	1.25	Employee pay rate
NRITE	I	1	I,T	XXXX	ø	Clock number for repeat printing
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex - (1-female), (2-male), (3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	Always	9 digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status - (1-union), (2-trucker), (3-non-union full time), (4-non-union, part-time), (5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Stock deduction
NSTKO	I	1	O	XX.XX	ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	United Appeal deduction
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1øøø	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	XX	ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	XX	ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	ø	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	ø	State exemptions
OTERN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Overtime earnings
OTHER	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Special earnings
OTHRS	R	3	I,O	XX.XX	ø.øø	Overtime hours
QRTD	R	6/18	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Quarter-to-date information (1) gross (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	106

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

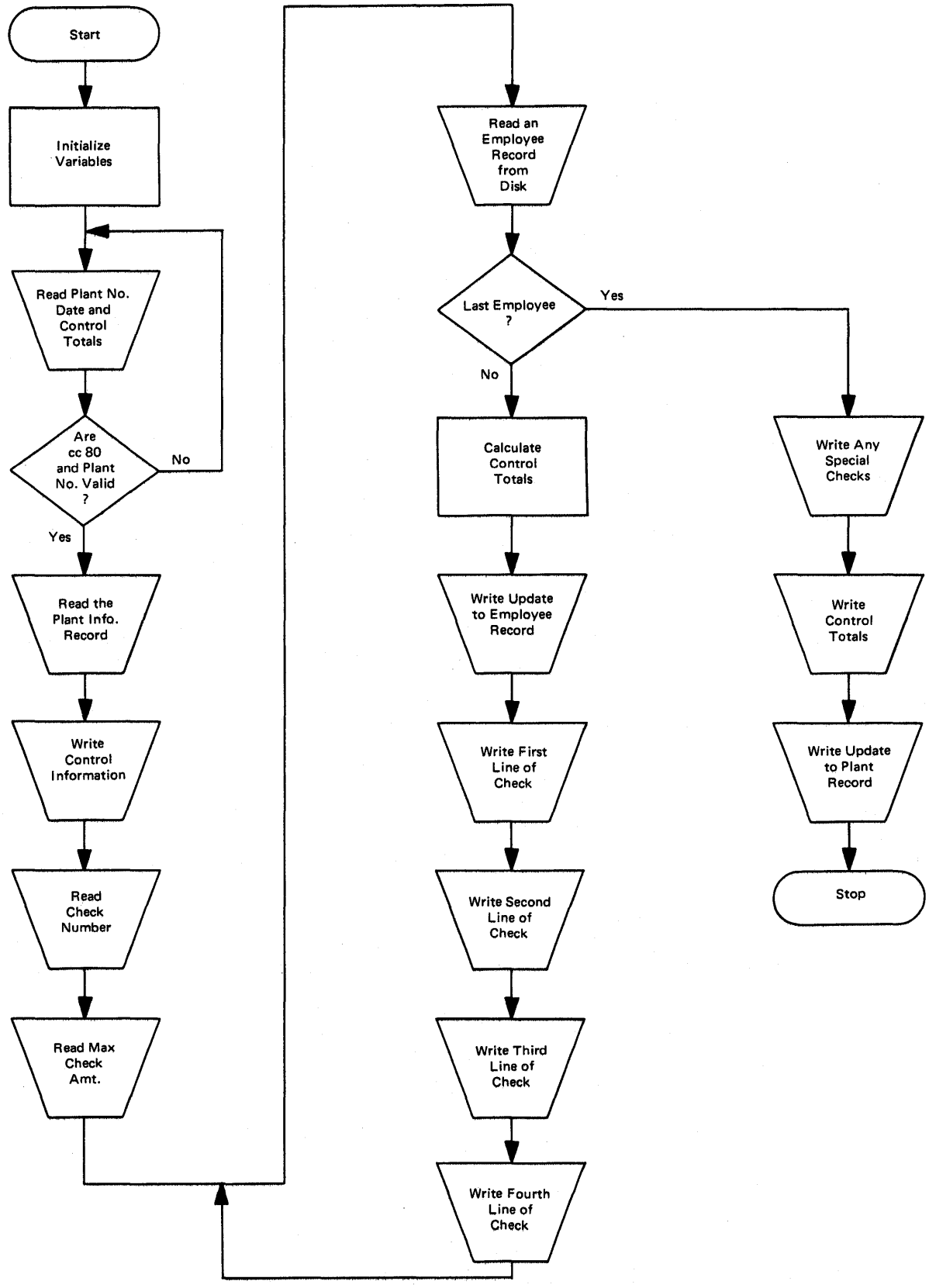
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/6/67

Program Name Check Writing No. PAY05 Programmer Klick

VARIABLES						FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
RGERN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Regular earnings
RGHRS	R	3	I,O	XXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Regular hours
SICK	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Sick pay
TA	R	3	O	XXXX.XXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Total gross by company
TAX	I	1	O	XXXXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Federal Withholding Tax
TB	R	3	O	XXXXXXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Total net by company
TGRS	R	3	T	XXXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Total gross
TNET	R	3	T	XXXXXXX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Total net
TOTBN	A	3	I	XXXXXX.	ϕ.ϕϕ	Bonus hours total from source doc.
TOTOT	R	3	I	XXXXXX.	ϕ.ϕϕ	OT hours total from source doc.
TOTRG	R	3	I	XXXXXX.	ϕ.ϕϕ	Reg. hours total from source doc.
TOTSP	R	3	I	XXXXXX.	ϕ.ϕϕ	Special earnings total from source doc.
VACA	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Vacation pay
YIN1	AI	7	T	XXXXXX	-	Moved gross YTD
YIN2	AI	6	T	XXXXX	-	Moved Federal Tax YTD
YOUT1	AI	7	O	XXXXX	-	Edited gross YTD
YOUT2	AI	6	O	XXXXX	-	Edited Federal Tax YTD
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXXX.XX	ϕ.ϕϕ	Year-to-date information-(1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hours, (10) OT hours, (11) bonus hours, (12) Reg. erns, (13) OT erns, (14) bonus erns.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

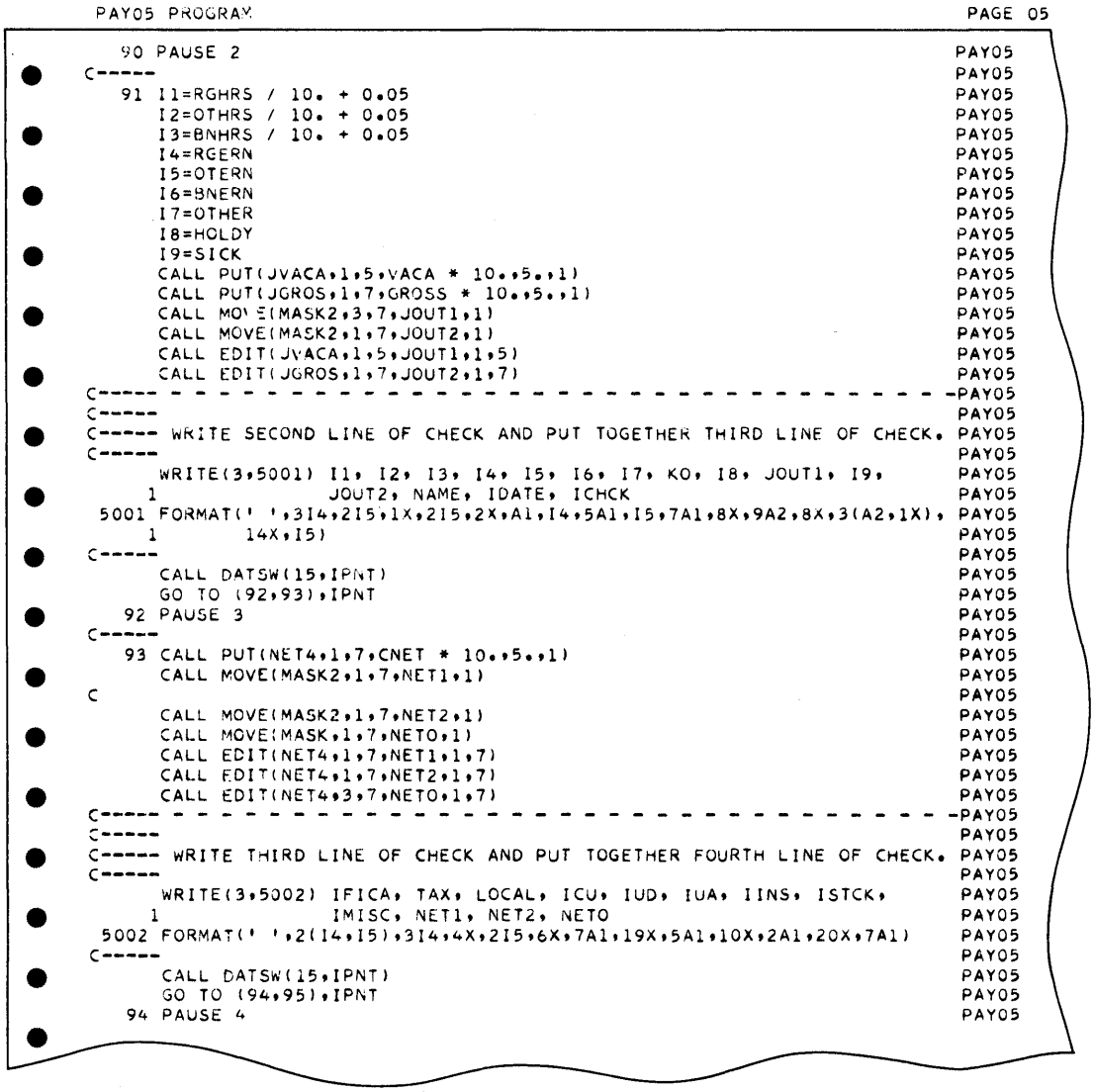

Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No. Date and Control Totals
Are cc 80 and Plant No. Valid ?
No
Yes
Read the Plant Info. Record
Write Control Information
Read Check Number
Read Max Check Amt.
Read an Employee Record from Disk
Last Employee ?
Yes
No
Calculate Control Totals
Write Update to Employee Record
Write First Line of Check
Write Second Line of Check
Write Third Line of Check
Write Fourth Line of Check
Write Any Special Checks
Write Control Totals
Write Update to Plant Record
Stop

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY05
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,KEYBOARD,1132 PRINTER,DISK)                      PAY05
*LIST ALL                                                              PAY05
** PAY05 PROGRAM                                                       PAY05
* NAME PAY05                                                           PAY05
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY05
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY05
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - CHECK WRITING                  PAY05
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY05                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                       PAY05
C----- DATE CODED    -- 01/20/68                                        PAY05
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                 PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C-----                          FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY05
C-----                          NAME         NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY05
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. COLFP              1    160    250         2    PAY05
C-----                   2. WVAFP              2    160     90         2    PAY05
C-----                   3. MNCFP              3    160    200         2    PAY05
C-----                   4. LBOFP              4    160     50         2    PAY05
C-----                   5. LBTFP              5    160    150         2    PAY05
C-----                   6. LMCFP              6    160     30         2    PAY05
C-----                   7. PINFO             25    106      6         3    PAY05
C-----                   8. INDX1            101      1    250       320    PAY05
C-----                   9. INDX2            102      1     90       320    PAY05
C-----                  10. INDX3            103      1    200       320    PAY05
C-----                  11. INDX4            104      1     50       320    PAY05
C-----                  12. INDX5            105      1    150       320    PAY05
C-----                  13. INDX6            106      1     30       320    PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- OUTPUT FILES --  1. COLFP              1    160    250         2    PAY05
C-----                   2. WVAFP              2    160     90         2    PAY05
C-----                   3. MNCFP              3    160    200         2    PAY05
C-----                   4. LBOFP              4    160     50         2    PAY05
C-----                   5. LBTFP              5    160    150         2    PAY05
C-----                   6. LMCFP              6    160     30         2    PAY05
C-----                   7. PINFO             25    106      6         3    PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                          PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
      INTEGER COMP(16), TAX, YIN1(7), YIN2(6), YOUT1(7), YOUT2(6)      PAY05
      DIMENSION FIBRE(8), IDATE(3), ISUPP(13), ITOT(11), JGROS(7),     PAY05
     1          JOUT1(5), JOUT2(7), JVACA(5), MASK(7), MASK2(7),       PAY05
     2          NAME(9), NDWK(3), NETO(7), NET1(7), NET2(7), NET4(7),  PAY05
     3          NSSAN(3), QRTD(6), YTD(14)                             PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- DEFINE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND EQUIVALENCEPAY05
C----- THE VARIABLES FOR THE NEXT RECORD NUMBER.                       PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY05
```

```
PAY05 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 02

     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),                  PAY05
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 25(6,106,U,IC),   PAY05
     3              101(250,1,U,IN1), 102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3),PAY05
     4              104(50,1,U,IN4), 105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6)   PAY05
      EQUIVALENCE  (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                        PAY05
     1             (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                           PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
      DO 4 I=1,7                                                       PAY05
      MASK2(I)=16448                                                   PAY05
    4 MASK(I)=16448                                                    PAY05
      MASK2(7)=-4032                                                   PAY05
      MASK(4)=23360                                                    PAY05
      MASK(5)=19264                                                    PAY05
      ICOL=1                                                           PAY05
      IN1=1                                                            PAY05
      TA=0.                                                            PAY05
      TB=0.                                                            PAY05
      NRITE=0                                                          PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- READ PLANT NO., DATE, AND CONTROL TOTALS, AND VALIDATE CC 80 AND PAY05
C----- THE PLANT NUMBER.                                              PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
99999 READ(2,1) NOPLT, IDATE, NDWK, TOTRG, TOTOT, TOTBN, TOTSP, KARD   PAY05
    1 FORMAT(I1,6A2,4F7.0,38X,I1)                                      PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- VALIDATE KARD AND NOPLT                                        PAY05
C----- IF VALID   - 60                                                PAY05
C----- IF INVALID - 55                                                PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
      IF(KARD) 55,51,55                                                PAY05
   51 IF(NOPLT) 55,55,52                                               PAY05
   52 IF(NOPLT - 6) 60,60,55                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
   55 WRITE(1,2)                                                       PAY05
    2 FORMAT('CHECK CC 1 AND CC80 ON FIRST CARD')                      PAY05
      PAUSE 1                                                          PAY05
      GO TO 99999                                                      PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- READ THE PLANT INFORMATION RECORD FROM DISK.                   PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
   60 READ(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX, TGRS, TNET,PAY05
     1               ICNT                                              PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- WRITE THE PLANT INFORMATION FOR CONTROL PURPOSES AND ACCEPT ANY  PAY05
```

```
C----- CHANGES TO IT THRU DATA SWITCH SETTINGS.                        PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
   62 WRITE(1,3) COMP, IDATE, ICHCK, IWEEK, NDWK, CKMAX                PAY05
3     FORMAT(/16A2' '3A2/'CHECK NO 'I5/'WEEK NO 'I1/'W/E  '3A2/, 'CHECK PAY05
     1MAX',F8.0//'MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED BY SWITCH 14.'/  'PAY05
     2SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NUMBER'/'SET SWITCHES REQUESTED ANPAY05
     3D PRESS START')                                                  PAY05
      PAUSE 1111                                                       PAY05
      BR=WHOLE(CKMAX + (CKMAX / ABS(CKMAX)) * 0.5) / 100.              PAY05
      CALL DATSW(15,I)                                                 PAY05
      GO TO (70,71),I                                                  PAY05
   70 WRITE(1,21)                                                      PAY05
   21 FORMAT('ENTER CHECK NO - FIVE DIGITS')                           PAY05
      READ(6,22) ICHCK                                                 PAY05
   22 FORMAT(I5)                                                       PAY05
      GO TO 62                                                         PAY05
   71 CALL DATSW(14,I)                                                 PAY05
      GO TO (72,75),I                                                  PAY05
   72 WRITE(1,23)                                                      PAY05
   23 FORMAT('ENTER MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT - FIVE DIGITS')               PAY05
      READ(6,24) CKMAX                                                 PAY05
   24 FORMAT(F5.0)                                                     PAY05
      GO TO 62                                                         PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- COMPLETE VARIABLE INITIALIZATION                                PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
   75 INDX=NOPLT + 100                                                 PAY05
      GO TO (76,77,78,79,80,81),NOPLT                                  PAY05
   76 ILST=250                                                         PAY05
      GO TO 83                                                         PAY05
   77 ILST=90                                                          PAY05
      GO TO 83                                                         PAY05
   78 ILST=200                                                         PAY05
      GO TO 83                                                         PAY05
   79 ILST=50                                                          PAY05
      GO TO 83                                                         PAY05
   80 ILST=150                                                         PAY05
      GO TO 83                                                         PAY05
   81 ILST=30                                                          PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
C----- READ AN EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK, AND USE THE PAID INDICATOR TO PAY05
C----- DECIDE IF A CHECK SHOULD BE WRITTEN.                            PAY05
C-----                                                                 PAY05
   83 READ(INDX'ILST) LAST                                             PAY05
      ICHCK=ICHCK - 1                                                  PAY05
  870 DO 700 I=1,LAST                                                  PAY05
      READ(NOPLT'I) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR, PAY05
     1    NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD,     PAY05
```

```
PAY05 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 04

     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT,    PAY05
     3    IPD, IFILL, GROSS, IVRAT, IOTRT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN,  PAY05
     4    OTERN, BNERN, OTHER, KO, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, CNET, IFICA, TAX,  PAY05
     5    LOCAL, ICU, IUA, IUD, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC                       PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      IF(IPD - 1) 700,505,860                                           PAY05
  860 IF(NRITE - NUM) 700,875,700                                       PAY05
  875 WRITE(1,25)                                                       PAY05
   25 FORMAT('ENTER CLOCK NO.')                                         PAY05
      READ(6,26) NRITE                                                  PAY05
   26 FORMAT(I4)                                                        PAY05
      GO TO 500                                                         PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- CALCULATE CONTROLS                                             PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
  505 TA=TA + GROSS                                                     PAY05
      TB=TB + CNET                                                      PAY05
  500 IPD=2                                                             PAY05
      ICHCK=ICHCK + 1                                                   PAY05
      NCHCK=ICHCK                                                       PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE UPDATED EMPLOYEE RECORD BACK TO DISK.                    PAY05
C----- CHECK FOR DEDUCTIONS AND MARITAL STATUS                        PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      WRITE(NOPLT'I) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR, PAY05
     1    NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD,      PAY05
     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT,    PAY05
     3    IPD, IFILL, GROSS, IVRAT, IOTRT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN,  PAY05
     4    OTERN, BNERN, OTHER, KO, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, CNET, IFICA, TAX,  PAY05
     5    LOCAL, ICU, IUA, IUD, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC                       PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      IF(IFILL) 550,550,510                                             PAY05
  510 WRITE(1,20) IFILL, NUM                                            PAY05
   20 FORMAT('DEDUCTION NO 'I1' NOT MADE FOR 'I4)                       PAY05
  550 IF(MAR - 1) 5,10,5                                                PAY05
   10 MAR=-7616                                                         PAY05
      GO TO 15                                                          PAY05
    5 MAR=-11200                                                        PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE FIRST LINE OF CHECK AND PUT TOGETHER SECOND LINE OF CHECK. PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
   15 WRITE(3,5000) NUM, NDWK, NAME, NSSAN, MAR, NXMPF, NRATE, IOTRT,   PAY05
     1              IVRAT, BR                                          PAY05
 5000 FORMAT(3H1   ,I4,1X,3A2,3X,9A2,1X,I3,I2,I4,1X,A1,I2,3I3,50X,F6.2) PAY05
      CALL DATSW(15,IPNT)                                               PAY05
      GO TO (90,91),IPNT                                                PAY05
```




```
   90 PAUSE 2                                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
   91 I1=RGHRS / 10. + 0.05                                             PAY05
      I2=OTHRS / 10. + 0.05                                             PAY05
      I3=BNHRS / 10. + 0.05                                             PAY05
      I4=RGERN                                                          PAY05
      I5=OTERN                                                          PAY05
      I6=BNERN                                                          PAY05
      I7=OTHER                                                          PAY05
      I8=HOLDY                                                          PAY05
      I9=SICK                                                           PAY05
      CALL PUT(JVACA,1,5,VACA * 10.,5.,1)                               PAY05
      CALL PUT(JGROS,1,7,GROSS * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,3,7,JOUT1,1)                                      PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,1,7,JOUT2,1)                                      PAY05
      CALL EDIT(JVACA,1,5,JOUT1,1,5)                                    PAY05
      CALL EDIT(JGROS,1,7,JOUT2,1,7)                                    PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE SECOND LINE OF CHECK AND PUT TOGETHER THIRD LINE OF CHECK. PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      WRITE(3,5001) I1, I2, I3, I4, I5, I6, I7, KO, I8, JOUT1, I9,      PAY05
     1              JOUT2, NAME, IDATE, ICHCK                            PAY05
 5001 FORMAT(' ',3I4,2I5,1X,2I5,2X,A1,I4,5A1,I5,7A1,8X,9A2,8X,3(A2,1X), PAY05
     1        14X,I5)                                                   PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      CALL DATSW(15,IPNT)                                               PAY05
      GO TO (92,93),IPNT                                                PAY05
   92 PAUSE 3                                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
   93 CALL PUT(NET4,1,7,CNET * 10.,5.,1)                                PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,1,7,NET1,1)                                       PAY05
C                                                                       PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,1,7,NET2,1)                                       PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK,1,7,NETO,1)                                        PAY05
      CALL EDIT(NET4,1,7,NET1,1,7)                                      PAY05
      CALL EDIT(NET4,1,7,NET2,1,7)                                      PAY05
      CALL EDIT(NET4,3,7,NETO,1,7)                                      PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE THIRD LINE OF CHECK AND PUT TOGETHER FOURTH LINE OF CHECK. PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      WRITE(3,5002) IFICA, TAX, LOCAL, ICU, IUD, IUA, IINS, ISTCK,      PAY05
     1              IMISC, NET1, NET2, NETO                             PAY05
 5002 FORMAT(' ',2(I4,I5),3I4,4X,2I5,6X,7A1,19X,5A1,10X,2A1,20X,7A1)    PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      CALL DATSW(15,IPNT)                                               PAY05
      GO TO (94,95),IPNT                                                PAY05
   94 PAUSE 4                                                           PAY05
```

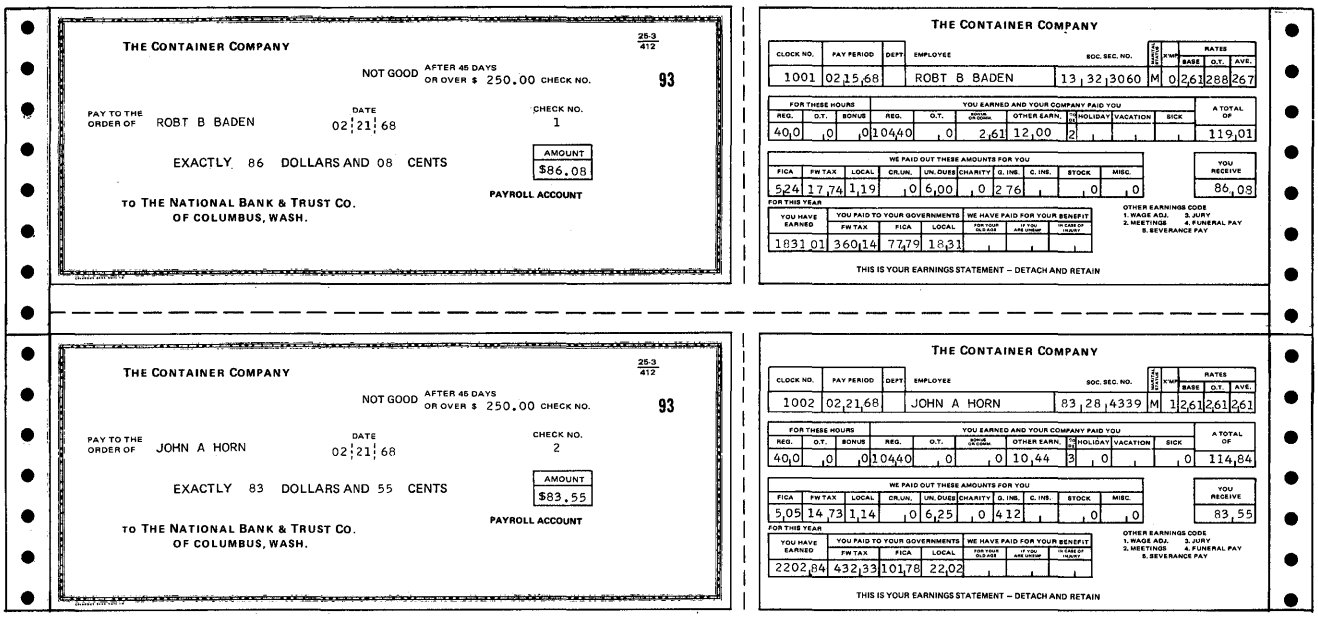
PAY05 PROGRAM PAGE 06

```
C-----                                                                  PAY05
   95 CALL PUT(YIN1,1,7,YTD(1) * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY05
      CALL PUT(YIN2,1,6,YTD(3) * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,1,7,YOUT1,1)                                      PAY05
      CALL MOVE(MASK2,2,7,YOUT2,1)                                      PAY05
      CALL EDIT(YIN1,1,7,YOUT1,1,7)                                     PAY05
      CALL EDIT(YIN2,1,6,YOUT2,1,6)                                     PAY05
      ID1=YTD(2)                                                        PAY05
      ID2=YTD(8)                                                        PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE FOURTH LINE OF CHECK AND GO BACK FOR ANOTHER EMPLOYEE.     PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      WRITE(3,5004) YOUT1, YOUT2, ID1, ID2                              PAY05
 5004 FORMAT(' ',13A1,2I5)                                              PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      CALL DATSW(15,IPNT)                                               PAY05
      GO TO (96,700),IPNT                                               PAY05
   96 PAUSE 5                                                           PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- GO BACK                                                          PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
  700 CONTINUE                                                          PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE ANY SPECIAL CHECKS.  SIGNAL THIS CONDITION WITH DATA SWITCHPAY05
C----- ZERO.                                                            PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      CALL DATSW(0,I)                                                   PAY05
      GO TO (850,855),I                                                 PAY05
  850 WRITE(1,25)                                                       PAY05
      READ(6,26) NRITE                                                  PAY05
      GO TO 870                                                         PAY05
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C----- WRITE CONTROL TOTALS                                             PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
  855 ICNT=ICNT - 1                                                     PAY05
      IF(ICHCK - ICNT) 800,801,800                                      PAY05
  800 WRITE(1,100) ICNT, ICHCK                                          PAY05
  100 FORMAT('REGISTER CHECK NO 'I5' DOES NOT AGREE WITH THIS RUN CHECK PAY05
     1NO 'I5)                                                           PAY05
      GO TO 802                                                         PAY05
  801 WRITE(1,101)                                                      PAY05
  101 FORMAT('CHECK NUMBERS AGREE')                                     PAY05
  802 A=TGRS - TA                                                       PAY05
      B=TNET - TB                                                       PAY05
      WRITE(1,102) TGRS, TNET, TA, TB, A, B                             PAY05
  102 FORMAT('REGISTER TOTALS'2(3X,F9.0)/'CHECK TOTALS   '2(3X,F9.0)/   PAY05
```

```
PAY05 PROGRAM                                                    PAGE 07

      1       'DIFFERENCES    '2(3X,F9.0))                              PAY05
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C-----  WRITE UPDATED PLANT RECORD TO DISK                              PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      IWEEK=IWEEK + 1                                                   PAY05
      WRITE(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX            PAY05
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
C-----  STOP                                                            PAY05
C-----                                                                  PAY05
      CALL EXIT                                                         PAY05
C-----------------------------------------------------------------------PAY05
      END                                                               PAY05

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =005B  IWVA =005B  MUNC =005B  LBO  =005B  LBT  =005B  LMC  =005B  IN1  =005C  IN2  =005C  IN3  =005C  IN4  =005C
 IN5  =005C  IN6  =005C  FIBRE=0072  QRTD =0084  YTD  =00AE  TA   =00B1  TB   =00B4  TOTRG=00B7  TOTOT=00BA  TOTBN=00BD
 TOTSP=00C0  CKMAX=00C3  TGRS =00C6  TNET =00C9  BR   =00CC  GROSS=00CF  RGHRS=00D2  OTHRS=00D5  BNHRS=00D8  RGERN=00DB
 OTERN=00DE  BNERN=00E1  OTHER=00E4  HOLDY=00E7  VACA =00EA  SICK =00ED  CNET =00F0  A    =00F3  B    =00F6  IDATE=00FE
 ISUPP=010B  ITOT =0116  JGROS=011D  JOUT1=0122  JOUT2=0129  JVACA=012E  MASK =0135  MASK2=013C  NAME =0145  NDWK =0148
 NETO =014F  NET1 =0156  NET2 =015D  NET4 =0164  NSSAN=0167  COMP =0177  TAX  =0178  YIN1 =017F  YIN2 =0185  YOUT1=018C
 YOUT2=0192  IC   =0193  I    =0194  NRITE=0195  NOPLT=0196  KARD =0197  ICHCK=0198  IWEEK=0199  ICNT =019A  INDX =019B
 ILST =019C  LAST =019D  NUM  =019E  NSTAS=019F  NDUES=01A0  NWKMP=01A1  NWKPD=01A2  MAR  =01A3  NXMPF=01A4  NXMPS=01A5
 NSEX =01A6  NRATE=01A7  LYRHR=01A8  NCU  =01A9  NCUDD=01AA  NCHCK=01AB  NADWH=01AC  NSTCK=01AD  NINS =01AE  NMISC=01AF
 NUA  =01B0  NSTKD=01B1  INIT =01B2  IPD  =01B3  IFILL=01B4  IVRAT=01B5  IOTRT=01B6  KO   =01B7  IFICA=01B8  LOCAL=01B9
 ICU  =01BA  IUA  =01BB  IUD  =01BC  IINS =01BD  ISTCK=01BE  IMISC=01BF  IPNT =01C0  I1   =01C1  I2   =01C2  I3   =01C3
 I4   =01C4  I5   =01C5  I6   =01C6  I7   =01C7  I8   =01C8  I9   =01C9  ID1  =01CA  ID2  =01CB

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =01FC  2    =0204  3    =0217  21   =0283  22   =0293  23   =0295  24   =02AB  25   =02AD  26   =02B7  20   =02B9
 5000 =02CC  5001 =02E2  5002 =02FE  5004 =0316  100  =031D  101  =033F  102  =034B  4    =0397  99999=03CC  51   =03E5
 52   =03E9  55   =03EF  60   =03F7  62   =040F  70   =0440  71   =044B  72   =0455  75   =0460  76   =0470  77   =0476
 78   =047C  79   =0482  80   =0488  81   =048E  83   =0492  870  =049D  860  =0519  875  =051F  505  =052A  500  =0536
 510  =05B9  550  =05C1  10   =05C7  5    =05CE  15   =05D3  90   =05F8  91   =05FA  92   =069D  93   =069F  94   =0703
 95   =0705  96   =0769  700  =076B  850  =077D  855  =0788  800  =0794  801  =079E  802  =07A2

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 WHOLE   EABS    DATSW   PUT     MOVE    EDIT    EADD    ESUB    EMPY    EDIV    ELD     ELDX    ESTO    EDVR    IFIX
 TYPEZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI   SIOF    SIOI    SUBSC   PAUSE   CARDZ   PRNTZ   SDFIO   SDRED   SDWRT
 SDCOM   SDAI    SDAF    SDF     SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .000000000E 00=01D0     .500000000E 00=01D3     .100000000E 03=01D6     .100000000E 02=01D9     .500000000E-01=01DC

   .500000000E 01=01DF

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=01E2       7=01E3  16448=01E4   4032=01E5  23360=01E6  19264=01E7      0=01E8      2=01E9      6=01EA     25=01EB
  1111=01EC      15=01ED     14=01EE    100=01EF    250=01F0     90=01F1    200=01F2     50=01F3    150=01F4     30=01F5
  7616=01F6  11200=01F7      3=01F8      5=01F9      4=01FA   4369=01FB

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY05
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    464  PROGRAM   1544

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY05     3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
1022168021568        00400000001650000105000127009
```

Input cards



THE CONTAINER COMPANY 25-3/412

NOT GOOD AFTER 45 DAYS OR OVER $ 250.00 CHECK NO. 93

PAY TO THE ORDER OF ROBT B BADEN DATE 02 21 68 CHECK NO. 1

EXACTLY 86 DOLLARS AND 08 CENTS AMOUNT $86.08

PAYROLL ACCOUNT

TO THE NATIONAL BANK & TRUST CO. OF COLUMBUS, WASH.

THE CONTAINER COMPANY

CLOCK NO.	PAY PERIOD	DEPT	EMPLOYEE	SOC. SEC. NO.	MARITAL STATUS	X'MP	RATES BASE	O.T.	AVE.
1001	02 15 68		ROBT B BADEN	13 32 3060	M	0	2 61	288	267

FOR THESE HOURS REG.	O.T.	BONUS	YOU EARNED AND YOUR COMPANY PAID YOU REG.	O.T.	BONUS OR COMM.	OTHER EARN.	NO. OF HOLIDAY	VACATION	SICK	A TOTAL OF
40 0	0	0	104 40	0	2 61	12 00	2			119 01

WE PAID OUT THESE AMOUNTS FOR YOU FICA	FW TAX	LOCAL	CR.UN.	UN. DUES	CHARITY	G. INS.	C. INS.	STOCK	MISC.	YOU RECEIVE
5 24	17 74	1 19	0	6 00	0	2 76		0	0	86 08

FOR THIS YEAR

YOU HAVE EARNED	YOU PAID TO YOUR GOVERNMENTS FW TAX	FICA	LOCAL	WE HAVE PAID FOR YOUR BENEFIT FOR YOUR OLD AGE	IF YOU ARE UNEMP.	IN CASE OF INJURY
1831 01	360 14	77 79	18 31			

OTHER EARNINGS CODE
1. WAGE ADJ. 3. JURY
2. MEETINGS 4. FUNERAL PAY
5. SEVERANCE PAY

THIS IS YOUR EARNINGS STATEMENT – DETACH AND RETAIN

THE CONTAINER COMPANY 25-3/412

NOT GOOD AFTER 45 DAYS OR OVER $ 250.00 CHECK NO. 93

PAY TO THE ORDER OF JOHN A HORN DATE 02 21 68 CHECK NO. 2

EXACTLY 83 DOLLARS AND 55 CENTS AMOUNT $83.55

PAYROLL ACCOUNT

TO THE NATIONAL BANK & TRUST CO. OF COLUMBUS, WASH.

THE CONTAINER COMPANY

CLOCK NO.	PAY PERIOD	DEPT	EMPLOYEE	SOC. SEC. NO.	MARITAL STATUS	X'MP	RATES BASE	O.T.	AVE.
1002	02 21 68		JOHN A HORN	83 28 4339	M	1	2 61	2 61	2 61

FOR THESE HOURS REG.	O.T.	BONUS	YOU EARNED AND YOUR COMPANY PAID YOU REG.	O.T.	BONUS OR COMM.	OTHER EARN.	NO. OF HOLIDAY	VACATION	SICK	A TOTAL OF
40 0	0	0	104 40	0	0	10 44	3	0	0	114 84

WE PAID OUT THESE AMOUNTS FOR YOU FICA	FW TAX	LOCAL	CR.UN.	UN. DUES	CHARITY	G. INS.	C. INS.	STOCK	MISC.	YOU RECEIVE
5 05	14 73	1 14	0	6 25	0	4 12		0	0	83 55

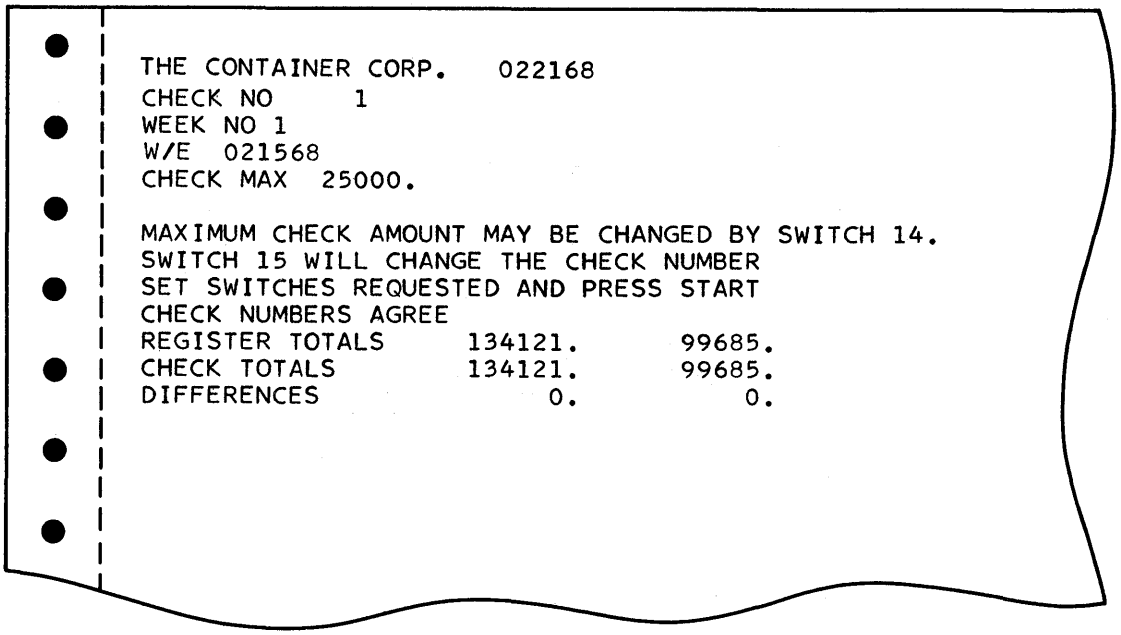
FOR THIS YEAR

YOU HAVE EARNED	YOU PAID TO YOUR GOVERNMENTS FW TAX	FICA	LOCAL	WE HAVE PAID FOR YOUR BENEFIT FOR YOUR OLD AGE	IF YOU ARE UNEMP.	IN CASE OF INJURY
2202 84	432 33	101 78	22 02			

OTHER EARNINGS CODE
1. WAGE ADJ. 3. JURY
2. MEETINGS 4. FUNERAL PAY
5. SEVERANCE PAY

THIS IS YOUR EARNINGS STATEMENT – DETACH AND RETAIN

Printer output



```
THE CONTAINER CORP.    022168
CHECK NO      1
WEEK NO 1
W/E  021568
CHECK MAX  25000.

MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED BY SWITCH 14.
SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NUMBER
SET SWITCHES REQUESTED AND PRESS START
CHECK NUMBERS AGREE
REGISTER TOTALS      134121.       99685.
CHECK TOTALS         134121.       99685.
DIFFERENCES               0.           0.
```

Console Printer output

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME: Check Writing	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY05
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

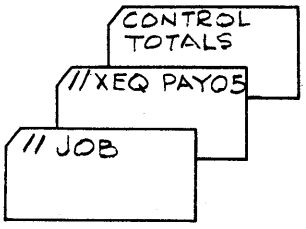
	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Checks	—	Checks

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll	X	X	X	X

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH 0	SWITCH 14	SWITCH 15
	UP ✓	UP ✓	UP ✓
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS

Switch 0 is used to make checks reprint when they are not correct.
Switch 14 is used to set the maximum check amount.
Switch 15 is used to set the check number to start with, and to stop the system to align the printer.

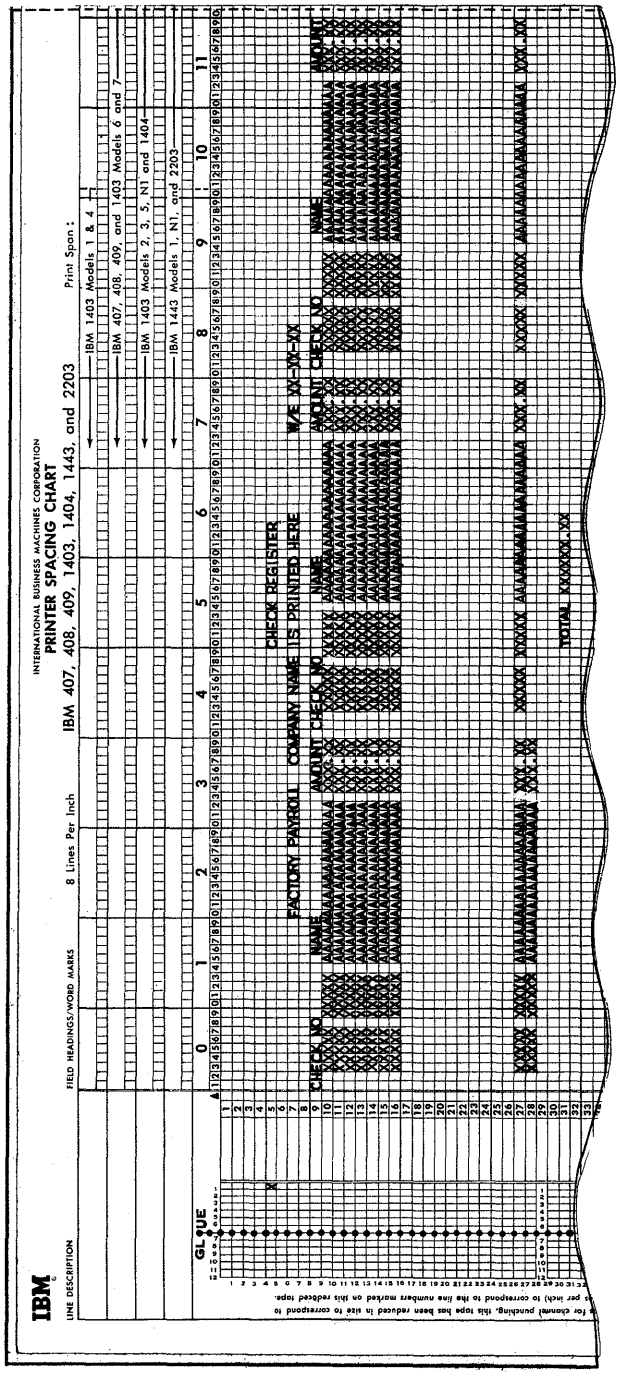


SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Control totals from file D.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Paychecks to employees
2. Disk & control totals to be used with PAY06

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY06: CHECK REGISTER



VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Programmer KLICK

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
BNERN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Bonus earnings
BNHRS	R	3	I,O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Bonus hours
CKMAX	R	1/3	T	1øøøøø	ø.øø	Maximum check amount for a file
CNET	R	3	O	XXXX.XX	ø.øø	Net amount of individual check
COMP	A2	16	I,O	—	—	Company name
FIBRE	R	8/24	O	XXXXXX	ø.øø	Trade association reports
GROSS	R	3	O	XXX.XX	øøø	Gross amount of individual check
HOLDY	R	3	O	XX.XX	ø.øø	Individual's holiday pay
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
ICHCK	I	1	T	set each	for run	Beginning check number when writing checks
ICNT	I	1	O	XXXXX	0	Sequence number for Journal (should correspond to ck#)
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in employee files, set up by plant
ICU	I	1	O	XXXXX	0	Individual's credit union deduction
IDATE	I	3/3	O	XXXXX	0	Total of individual's insurance, stock, charity & misc. deductions, per pay period
ID1	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	1st check number
ID2	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	1st clock number
ID3	A2	9/9	O	—	—	1st name
ID4	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	2nd check number
ID5	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	2nd clock number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	120

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Programmer Klick

VARIABLES						FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
ID6	A2	9/9	O	-	-	2nd name
ID7	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	3rd check number
ID8	I	1	O	xxxx	ø	3rd clock number
ID9	A2	9/9	O	-	-	3rd name
IFICA	I	1	O	xxxxx	O	Individual's FICA tax
IFILL	I	1	T	7	O	Indicates deduction not made
IINS	I	1	O	xx	O	Individual's insurance deduction
ILST	I	1	T	250	30	Last record number in a file
IMISC	I	1	O	xxxxx	O	Individual's misc. deduction
INDX	I	1	T	106	101	Index file number (plant no. + 100)
INIT	I	1	O	xxxxx	ø	Union initiation fee
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee files
IN2	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IOTRT	I	1	T	50ø	ø	Overtime pay rate
IPD	I	1	O	2	ø	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISTCK	I	1	O	2øøø	ø	Individual's stock deduction

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Programmer Klick

FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
ISUPP	I	13	O	XXXX	ø	Supplemental sick pay
ITOT	I	11	T	1723	ø	Account number for posting to in general
IUA	I	1	O	3øø	ø	Individual's charity deduction
IUD	I	1	O	15øø	ø	Individual's union dues deduction
IVRAT	I	1	O	5øø	ø	Average pay rate
I WEEK	I	1	T	5	1	Week of the month
IWVA	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
J	I	1	T	9	1	Index for DO loop
KCARD	I	1	I	9	ø	C.C. 8ø for last card test
KO	A1	1	O	5	ø	Special earnings code
L	I	1	T	25ø	ø	Counter to access records
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	ø	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LMC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LOCAL	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	Local tax
LYRHR	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	This years accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status - (1- single), (2- married)
MUNC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
NADWH	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	Additional withholding amount

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	122

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Klick Programmer

VARIABLES						FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
NAME	A2	9	I,O	-	-	Employee name
NCHCK	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø	Check number used for this employee.
NCU	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Credit union deduction
NCUDD	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	Monthly credit union deductions
NDUES	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Union dues deduction
NDWK	A2	3	I,O	-	.	Pay period date
NINS	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NOPLT	I	1	T	6	1	Plant number
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.øø	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex. (1-female), (2-male), (3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	Always	9digits	Social Security number
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status-(1-union), (2-trucker), (3-non-union, fulltime), (4-non-union, part time), (5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	Stock deduction
NSTKD	I	1	O	XXXX	ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	ø	United Appeal deductions
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1øøø	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	XX	ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	XX	ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	ø	Federal exemptions

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Programmer Rlick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	ø	State exemptions
OTERN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Overtime Earnings
OTHER	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Special earnings
OTHRS	R	3	I,O	XX.XX	ø.øø	Overtime hours
QRTD	R	6/18	O	XXXX.XX	ø.øø	Quarter-to-date information (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA, (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay
RGERN	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Reg. earnings
RGHRS	R	3	I,O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Reg. hours
RNET1	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø	1ST net
RNET2	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø	2nd net
RNET3	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø	3rd net
SICK	R	3	O	XXX.XX	ø.øø	Sick pay
T	R	3	O	XXXXXX.	ø.øø	Used to total special earnings
TAX	I	1	O	XXXXX	ø.øø	Federal Withholding Tax
TGRS	R	3	T	XXXXXX.XX	ø.øø	Total gross
TNET	R	3	T	XXXXXX.XX	ø.øø	Total net
TOTBN	R	3	I	XXXX XXX.	ø.øø	Bonus hours total from source doc.
TOTOT	R	3	I	XXXX XXX.	ø.øø	OT hours total from source doc.
TOTRG	R	3	I	XXXX XXX.	ø.øø	Reg. hours total from source doc.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	124

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

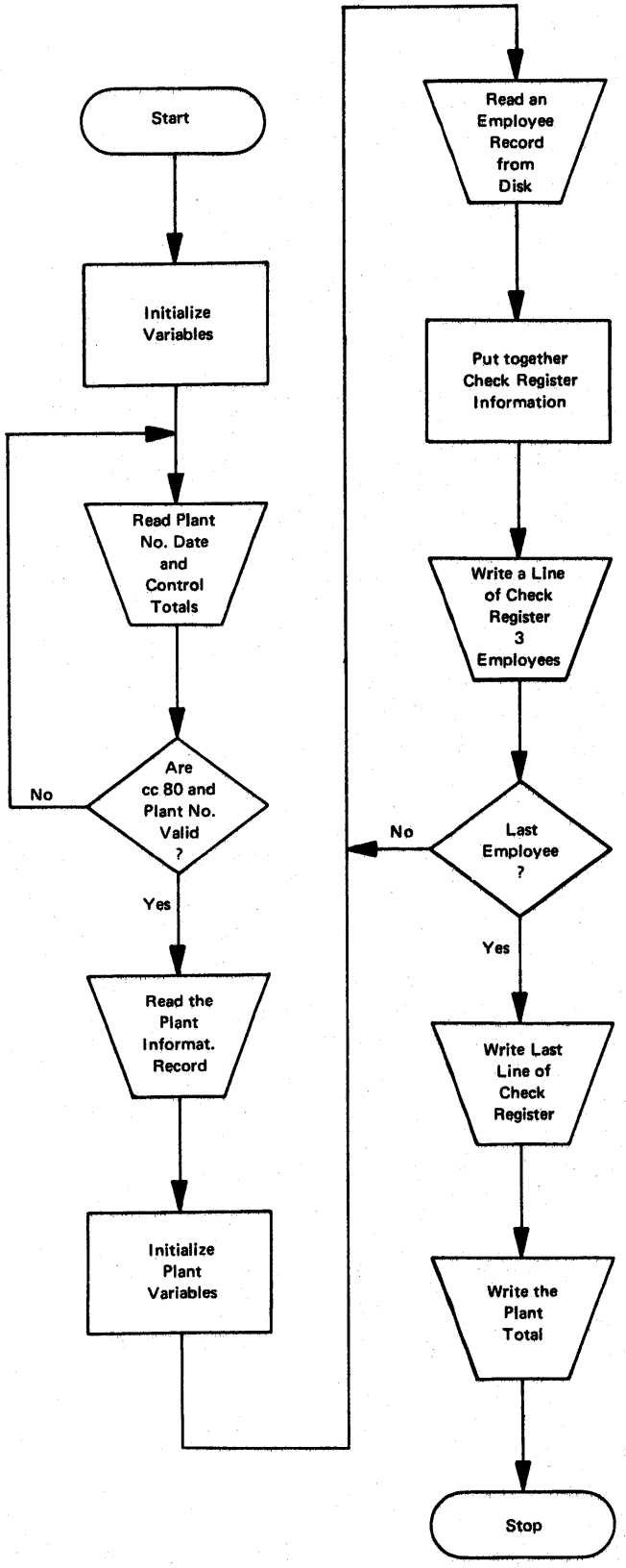
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/13/67

Program Name Check Register No. PAY06 Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
TOTSP	R	3	I	XXXX XXX.	Ø.ØØ	Special earnings total from source doc.
VACA	R	3	O	XXX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Vacation pay
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXXXX. XX	Ø.ØØ	Year to-date information, (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B, (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hrs, (10) OT hrs, (11) bonus hrs (12) reg. earns, (13) OT erns, (14) bonus erns.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic


Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No. Date and Control Totals
Are cc 80 and Plant No. Valid ?
No
Yes
Read the Plant Informat. Record
Initialize Plant Variables
Read an Employee Record from Disk
Put together Check Register Information
Write a Line of Check Register 3 Employees
Last Employee ?
No
Yes
Write Last Line of Check Register
Write the Plant Total
Stop

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	126

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY06
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,          1132 PRINTER,DISK)                     PAY06
* NAME PAY06                                                           PAY06
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY06
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY06
* LIST ALL                                                             PAY06
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - CHECK REGISTER                 PAY06
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY06                                           PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                       PAY06
C----- DATE CODED    -- 01/27/68                                        PAY06
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                 PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C-----                          FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY06
C-----                          NAME        NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY06
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. COLFP             1    160    250        2    PAY06
C-----                   2. WVAFP             2    160     90        2    PAY06
C-----                   3. MNCFP             3    160    200        2    PAY06
C-----                   4. LBOFP             4    160     50        2    PAY06
C-----                   5. LBTFP             5    160    150        2    PAY06
C-----                   6. LMCFP             6    160     30        2    PAY06
C-----                   7. PINFO            25    106      6        3    PAY06
C-----                   8. INDX1           101      1    250      320    PAY06
C-----                   9. INDX2           102      1     90      320    PAY06
C-----                  10. INDX3           103      1    200      320    PAY06
C-----                  11. INDX4           104      1     50      320    PAY06
C-----                  12. INDX5           105      1    150      320    PAY06
C-----                  13. INDX6           106      1     30      320    PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- OUTPUT FILES -- NONE                                           PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                         PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
      INTEGER COMP(16), TAX                                            PAY06
      DIMENSION FIBRE(8), IDATE(3), ID3(9), ID6(9), ID9(9), ISUPP(13),  PAY06
     1          ITOT(11), NAME(9), NDWK(3), NSSAN(3), QRTD(6), YTD(14)  PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY06
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR THE NEXT RECORD NUMBER.           PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY06
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),                 PAY06
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC), 25(6,106,U,IC),  PAY06
     3              101(250,1,U,IN1), 102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3),PAY06
     4              104(50,1,U,IN4), 105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6)  PAY06
      EQUIVALENCE  (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                       PAY06
     1             (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                           PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES                                           PAY06
```

```
C-----                                                                  PAY06
      ICOL=1                                                            PAY06
      IN1=1                                                             PAY06
      TA=0.                                                             PAY06
      TB=0.                                                             PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- READ PLANT NO., DATE, AND CONTROL TOTALS, AND VALIDATE CC 80 AND PAY06
C----- THE PLANT NUMBER.                                               PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
99999 READ(2,1) NOPLT, IDATE, NDWK, TOTRG, TOTOT, TOTBN, TOTSP, KARD    PAY06
    1 FORMAT(I1,6A2,4F7.0,38X,I1)                                       PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- VALIDATE KARD AND NOPLT                                         PAY06
C----- IF VALID   = 60                                                 PAY06
C----- IF INVALID = 55                                                 PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
      IF(KARD) 55,51,55                                                 PAY06
   51 IF(NOPLT) 55,55,52                                                PAY06
   52 IF(NOPLT - 6) 60,60,55                                            PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
   55 WRITE(1,2)                                                        PAY06
    2 FORMAT('CHECK CC 1 AND CC 80 ON FIRST CARD')                      PAY06
      PAUSE 1                                                           PAY06
      GO TO 99999                                                       PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- READ PLANT INFORMATION RECORD FROM DISK, AND FINISH INITIALIZING.PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
   60 READ(25'NOPLT) COMP, ICHCK, IWEEK, FIBRE, ITOT, CKMAX, TGRS, TNET,PAY06
     1                ICNT                                             PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
      INDX=NOPLT + 100                                                  PAY06
      GO TO (76,77,78,79,80,81),NOPLT                                   PAY06
   76 ILST=250                                                          PAY06
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY06
   77 ILST=90                                                           PAY06
C                                                                       PAY06
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY06
   78 ILST=200                                                          PAY06
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY06
   79 ILST=50                                                           PAY06
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY06
   80 ILST=150                                                          PAY06
      GO TO 83                                                          PAY06
   81 ILST=30                                                           PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- INITIALIZE PLANT VARIABLES AND READ AN EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK.PAY06
```

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	128


```
C-----                                                                  PAY06
   83 READ(INDX'ILST) LAST                                              PAY06
      WRITE(3,5) COMP, NDWK                                             PAY06
5     FORMAT('1',50X,'CHECK REGISTER'//20X,'FACTORY PAYROLL  ',16A2,5X,  PAY06
     1 'W/E ',2(A2,'-'),A2//3(' CHECK NO'7X'NAME'14X'AMOUNT')/)          PAY06
      T=0.                                                              PAY06
      L=1                                                               PAY06
      I=0                                                               PAY06
  655 READ(NOPLT'L) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,  PAY06
     1    NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD,       PAY06
     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT,     PAY06
     3    IPD, IFILL, GROSS, IVRAT, IOTRT, RGHRS, OTHRS, BNHRS, RGERN,   PAY06
     4    OTERN, BNERN, OTHER, KO, HOLDY, VACA, SICK, CNET, IFICA, TAX,  PAY06
     5    LOCAL, ICU, IUA, IUD, IINS, ISTCK, IMISC                       PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- CHECK PAID INDICATOR TO SEE IF CHECK WRITTEN.                    PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
      IF(IPD - 2) 650,651,650                                           PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- PUT TOGETHER CHECK REGISTER INFORMATION.                         PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
  651 T=T + CNET                                                        PAY06
      I=I+ 1                                                            PAY06
      GO TO (601,602,603),I                                             PAY06
  601 ID1=NCHCK                                                         PAY06
      ID2=NUM                                                           PAY06
      CALL MOVE(NAME,1,9,ID3,1)                                         PAY06
      RNET1=WHOLE(CNET + (CNET / ABS(CNET)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY06
      GO TO 650                                                         PAY06
  602 ID4=NCHCK                                                         PAY06
      ID5=NUM                                                           PAY06
      CALL MOVE(NAME,1,9,ID6,1)                                         PAY06
      RNET2=WHOLE(CNET + (CNET / ABS(CNET)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY06
      GO TO 650                                                         PAY06
  603 ID7=NCHCK                                                         PAY06
      ID8=NUM                                                           PAY06
      CALL MOVE(NAME,1,9,ID9,1)                                         PAY06
      RNET3=WHOLE(CNET + (CNET / ABS(CNET)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
C----- WRITE A LINE OF CHECK REGISTER FOR THREE EMPLOYEES.              PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
      WRITE(3,110) ID1, ID2, ID3, RNET1, ID4, ID5, ID6, RNET2, ID7, ID8,PAY06
     1             ID9, RNET3                                           PAY06
  110 FORMAT(3(3X,I5,1X,I5,1X,9A2,1X,F6.2))                            PAY06
      I=0                                                               PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                  PAY06
```

```
C----- HAVE WE PROCESSED THE LAST EMPLOYEE RECORD                      PAY06
C----- YES - 657                                                       PAY06
C----- NO  - 655                                                       PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
  650 L=L + 1                                                          PAY06
      IF(L - LAST) 655,655,657                                         PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- IF THERE IS A PARTIAL LINE TO WRITE (615), WRITE IT.           PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
  657 IF(I) 604,604,615                                                PAY06
  615 GO TO (605,606),I                                                PAY06
  605 WRITE(3,110) ID1, ID2, ID3, RNET1                                PAY06
      GO TO 604                                                        PAY06
  606 WRITE(3,110) ID1, ID2, ID3, RNET1, ID4, ID5, ID6, RNET2          PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- WRITE THE PLANT TOTAL                                          PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
  604 T=WHOLE(T + (T / ABS(T)) * 0.5) / 100.                           PAY06
      WRITE(3,111) T                                                   PAY06
  111 FORMAT(//50X,'TOTAL ',F9.2)                                      PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
C----- STOP                                                           PAY06
C-----                                                                 PAY06
      CALL EXIT                                                        PAY06
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY06
      END                                                              PAY06

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =005B  IWVA =005B  MUNC =005B  LBO  =005B  LBT  =005B  LMC  =005B  IN1  =005C  IN2  =005C  IN3  =005C  IN4  =005C
 IN5  =005C  IN6  =005C  FIBRE=0072  QRTD =0084  YTD  =00AE  TA   =00B1  TB   =00B4  TOTRG=00B7  TOTOT=00BA  TOTHN=00BD
 TOTSP=00C0  CKMAX=00C3  TGRS =00C6  TNET =00C9  T    =00CC  GROSS=00CF  RGHRS=00D2  OTHRS=00D5  BNHRS=00D8  RGERN=00DB
 OTERN=00DE  BNERN=00E1  OTHER=00E4  HOLDY=00E7  VACA =00EA  SICK =00ED  CNET =00F0  RNET1=00F3  RNET2=00F6  RNET3=00F9
 IDATE=0101  ID3  =010A  ID6  =0113  ID9  =011C  ISUPP=0129  ITOT =0134  NAME =013D  NDWK =0140  NSSAN=0143  COMP =0153
 TAX  =0154  IC   =0155  NOPLT=0156  KARD =0157  ICHCK=0158  IWEEK=0159  ICNT =015A  INDX =015B  ILST =015C  LAST =015D
 L    =015E  I    =015F  NUM  =0160  NSTAS=0161  NDUES=0162  NWKMP=0163  NWKPD=0164  MAR  =0165  NXMPF=0166  NXMPS=0167
 NSEX =0168  NRATE=0169  LYRHR=016A  NCU  =016B  NCUDD=016C  NCHCK=016D  NADWH=016E  NSTCK=016F  NINS =0170  NMISC=0171
 NUA  =0172  NSTKD=0173  INIT =0174  IPD  =0175  IFILL=0176  IVRAT=0177  IOTRT=0178  KO   =0179  IFICA=017A  LOCAL=017B
 ICU  =017C  IUA  =017D  IUD  =017E  IINS =017F  ISTCK=0180  IMISC=0181  ID1  =0182  ID2  =0183  ID4  =0184  ID5  =0185
 ID7  =0186  ID8  =0187

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =019F  2    =01A7  5    =01BA  110  =01F3  111  =01FF  99999=022D  51   =0246  52   =024A  55   =0250  60   =025C
 76   =0280  77   =0286  78   =028C  79   =0292  80   =0298  81   =029E  83   =02A2  655  =028D  651  =0333  601  =0346
 602  =0369  603  =038C  650  =03D0  657  =03DC  615  =03E0  605  =03E6  606  =03F5  604  =040B

FEATURES SUPPORTED

 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 MOVE    WHOLE   EABS    EADD    EMPY    EDIV    ELD     ESTO    EDVR    WRTYZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI
 SIOF    SIOI    PAUSE   CARDZ   PRNTZ   SDFIO   SDRED   SDAI    SDAF    SDF     SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .000000000E 00=0188     .500000000E 00=018B     .100000000E 03=018E

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=0191      2=0192      6=0193     25=0194    100=0195    250=0196     90=0197    200=0198     50=0199    150=019A
    30=019B      3=019C      0=019D      9=019E

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY06
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    392  PROGRAM    668

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY06    3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
1022168021568        0040000000165000010500012700
```

Input cards

```
                                                CHECK REGISTER

                    FACTORY PAYROLL  THE CONTAINER CORP.                W/E 02-15-68

CHECK NO        NAME                AMOUNT CHECK NO        NAME                AMOUNT CHECK NO        NAME                AMOUNT

     1  1001 ROBT B BADEN          86.08       2  1002 JOHN A HORN           83.55       3  1003 ROBT L SHORES         61.44
     4  1004 JOHN W CUSSEN         86.26       5  1005 JOSEPH MONTANO       142.58       6  1016 DONALD MILLER        129.33
     7  1107 A E TAYLOR           113.63       8  1218 DAVID A HUBBARD       88.48       9  1347 FRANK T DOLEN         81.53
    10  1603 AL REYNOLDS          123.97

                                                TOTAL     996.85
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY06    3
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(25,PINFO),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
```

Output on printer

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

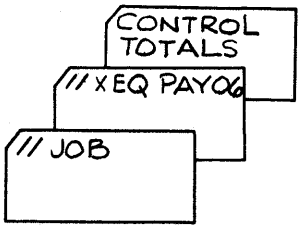
PROGRAM NAME: Check Register	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY06
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH None	SWITCH	SWITCH
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS

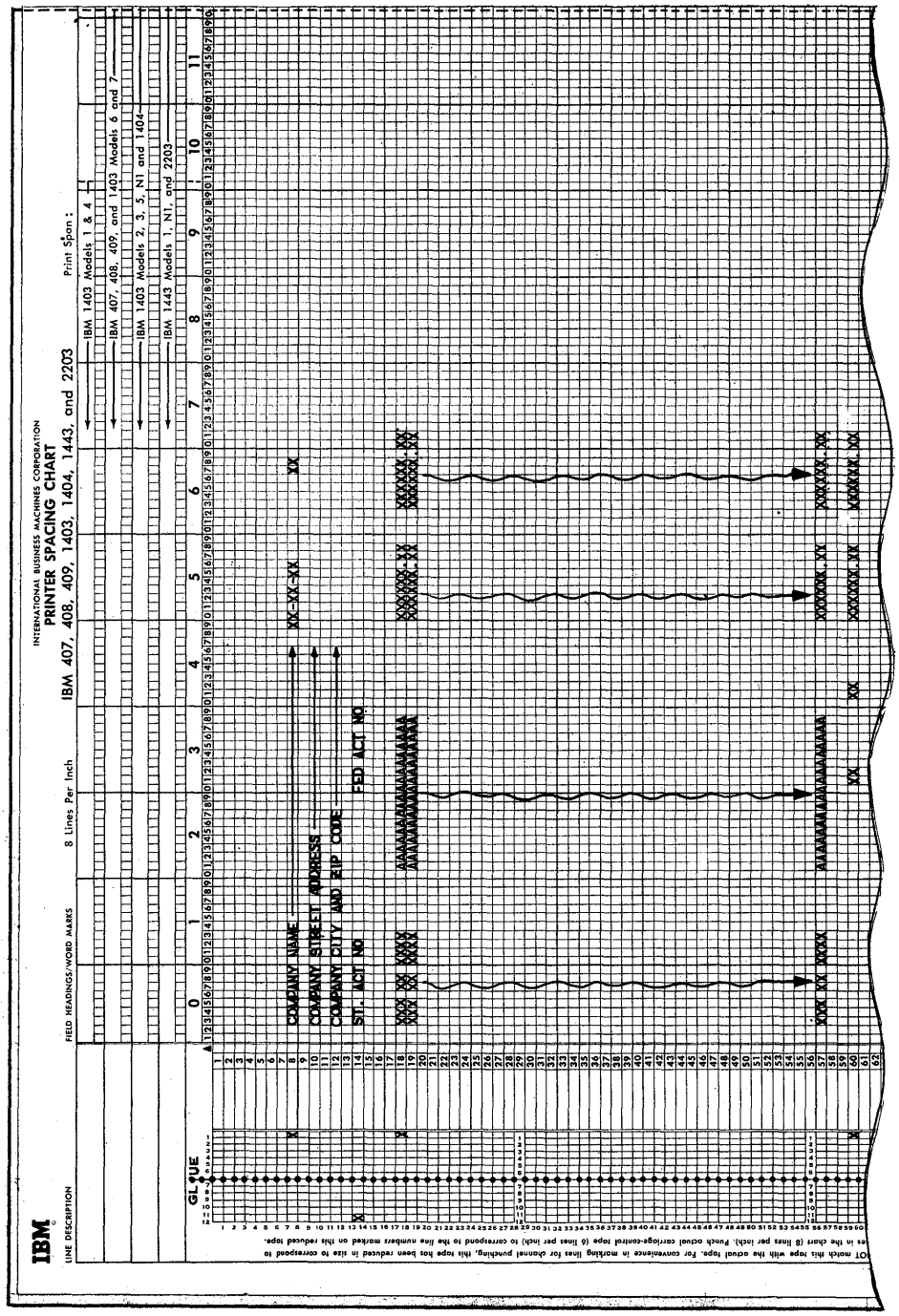


SOURCE OF INPUT: 1. Disk & control totals from PAY05

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: 1. Check register to payroll section
2. Control totals to file D
3. Disk is returned to storage.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY09: 941 REPORT



VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/20/67

Program Name 941 No. PAY09 Programmer RTick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
A	R	3	O	666666.	Ø.ØØ	Used to calculate overtime rate
FICA	R	3	O	XXXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	FICA taxable wages
I	I	1	T			Used in DO loop
IC	I	1	T	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
ICOL	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in employee file set up by plant
IDATE	I	3/3	I,O	-	-	Pay date
IHD1	A2	22	I,O	-	-	1st line of heading
IHD2	A2	22	I,O	-	-	2nd line of heading
IHD3	A2	22	I,O	-	-	3rd line of heading
IHD4	A2	22	I,O	-	-	4th line of heading
IL	A1	1	O	1	6	Carriage control
INDX	I	1	T	106	101	Index file number (plant no. + 100)
INIT	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Union initiation fees
IN1	I	1	T	250	1	Record number in indexes to employee files
IN2	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN3	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN4	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN5	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IN6	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to IN1
IPAGE	I	1	O	20	1	Page number

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/20/67

Program Name 941 No. PAY09 Programmer Klick

VARIABLES						FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
IPD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Indicates status of record in processing cycle
ISSAN	A1	9	O	ALWAYS 9 DIGITS		Social Security
ISUPP	I	13	O	Ø	Ø	Supplemental sick pay
IWYA	I	1	T	25Ø	1	Equivalent to ICOL
LAST	I	1	T	XXX	Ø	Last record number in file
LBO	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LBT	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LINE	I	1	T	50	Ø	Line count
LMC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
LST	I	1	T	250	25Ø	Last record number in a file
LYRHR	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	This year's accumulation of hours worked for vacation pay
MAR	I	1	I,O	2	1	Marital status - (1-single), (2-married)
MPCO	I	1	O	2ØØ	Ø	Number of employees reported per company
MPLY	I	1	O	41	Ø	Number of employees reported per page
MUNC	I	1	N	-	-	Equivalent to ICOL
N	I	1	I	6	1	Plant number
NADWH	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Additional withholding amount
NAME	A2	9	I,O	-	-	Dummy area to allocated space for name
NCHCK	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Check number used for this employee
NCU	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Credit union deduction

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/20/67

Program Name 941 No. PAY09 Programmer Klick

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
NCUDD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly credit
NDUES	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Union dues deduction
NINS	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Insurance deduction
NMISC	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Miscellaneous deductions
NRATE	I	1	I,O	3.ØØ	1.25	Employee pay rate
NSEX	I	1	I,O	3	1	Sex-(1-female),(2-male),(3-trucker)
NSSAN	I	3	I,O	ALWAYS	9 DIGITS	Employee status-(1-union),(2-trucker)
NSTAS	I	1	O	5	1	Employee status-(1-union),(2 trucker)(3-non-union, full time),(4-non-union, part time),(5-terminated)
NSTCK	I	1	I,O	XX.XX	Ø	Stock deduction
NSTKD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Monthly stock deductions
NUA	I	1	I,O	XXXX	Ø	United Appeal deductions
NUM	I	1	I,O	XXXX	1ØØØ	Clock number
NWKMP	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks employed
NWKPD	I	1	O	Ø	Ø	Number of weeks paid
NXMPF	I	1	I,O	17	Ø	Federal exemptions
NXMPS	I	1	O	17	Ø	State exemptions
QRTD	R	6/18	O	XXXXXX	Ø.ØØ	Quarter-to-Date information (1) gross, (2) FIT, (3) FICA (4) loc. tax, (5) FICA wages, (6) sick pay
TOTA	R	3	O	XXXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total FICA wages per page
TOTB	R	3	O	XXXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total wages per page
TOTC	R	3	O	XXXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total FICA wages per company

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	10	136

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

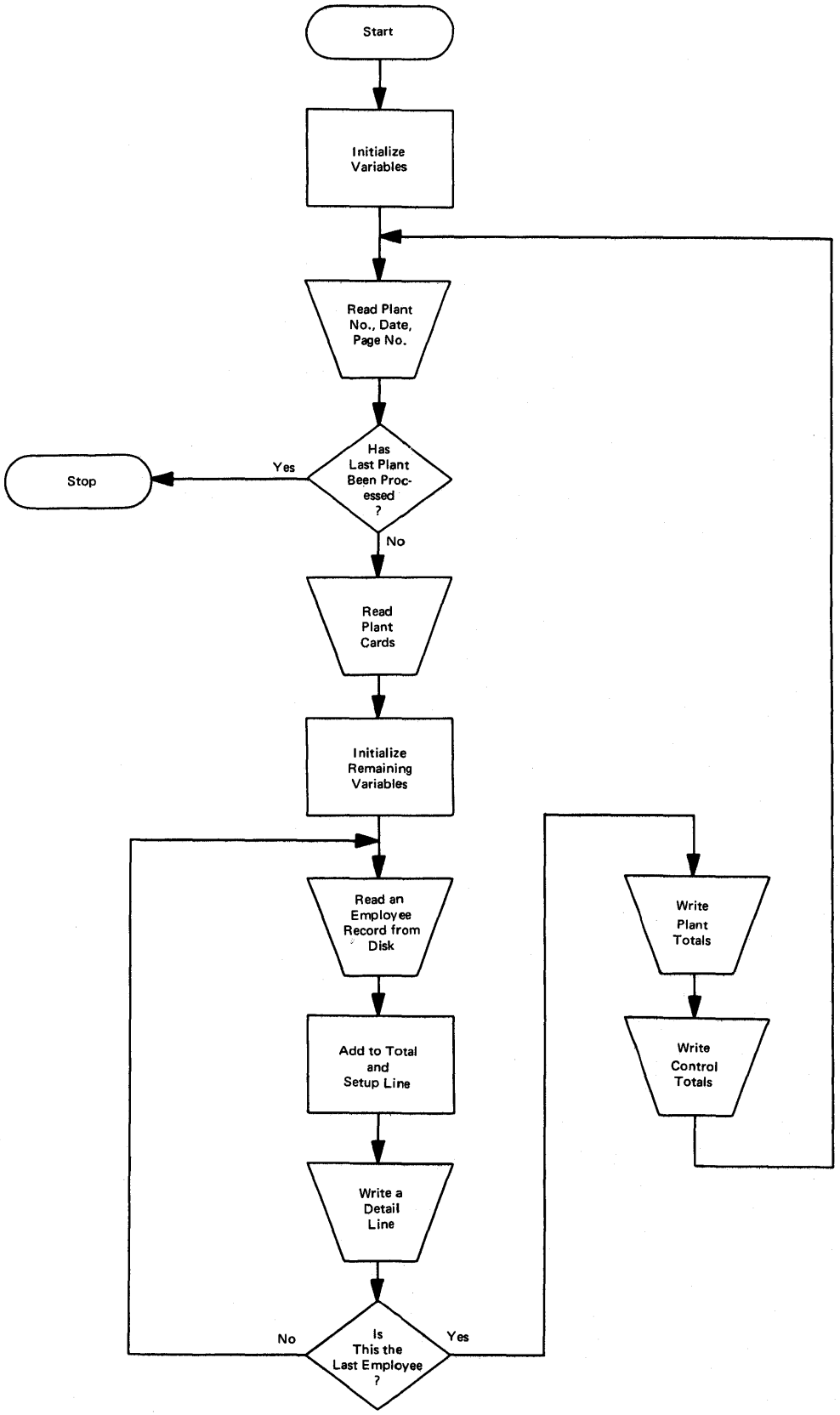
Application PAYROLL SYSTEM Date 9/20/67

Program Name 941 No. PAY09 Programmer Klick

FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	
TOTD	R	3	O	XXXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Total wages per company
YTD	R	14/42	I,O	XXX XX.XX	Ø.ØØ	Year-to-Date information (1) gross, (2) FICA, (3) FIT, (4) FICA wages, (5) sick pay, (6) spec. A, (7) spec. B (8) loc. tax, (9) reg. hours, (10) OT hours, (11) bonus hours, (12) reg. ernş, (13) OT ernş, (14) bonus ernş,

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

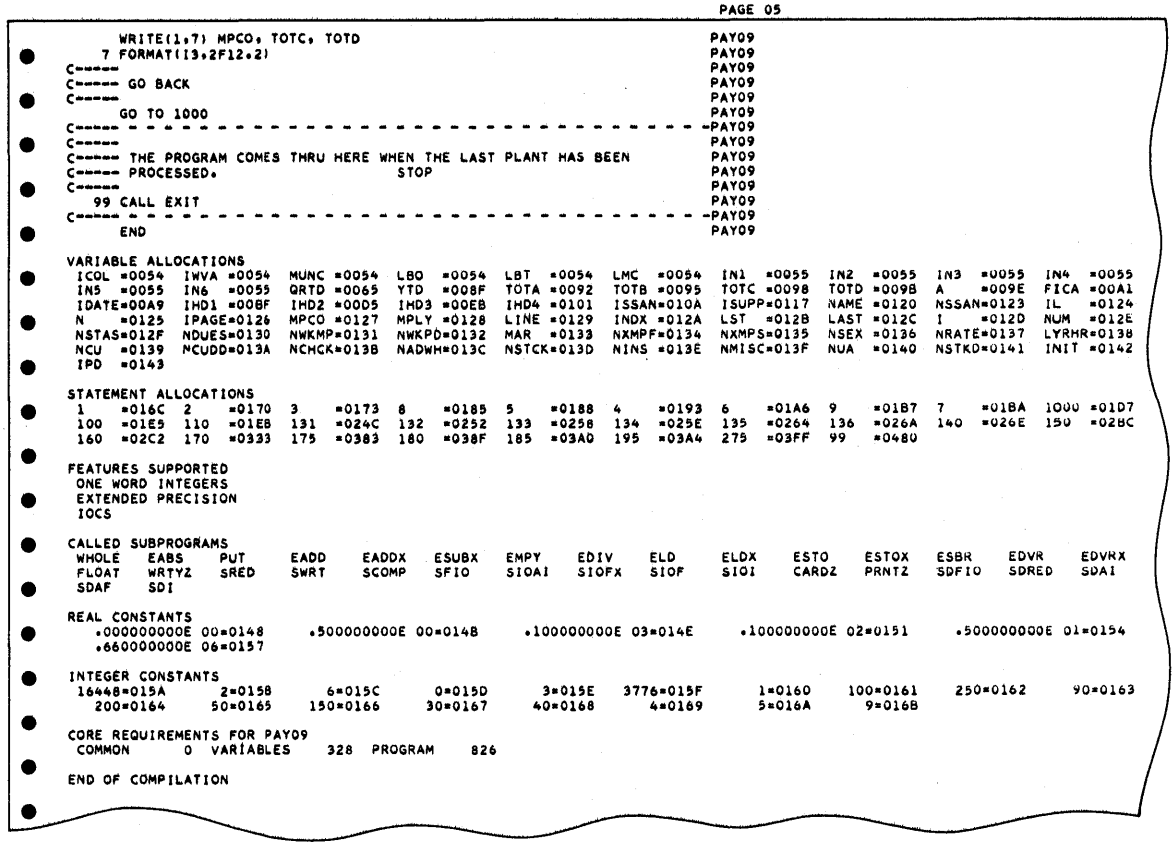

Start
Initialize Variables
Read Plant No., Date, Page No.
Has Last Plant Been Proc-essed ?
Yes
Stop
No
Read Plant Cards
Initialize Remaining Variables
Read an Employee Record from Disk
Add to Total and Setup Line
Write a Detail Line
Is This the Last Employee ?
No
Yes
Write Plant Totals
Write Control Totals

```
// FOR                                                                  PAY09
* IOCS(CARD,TYPEWRITER,          1132 PRINTER,DISK)                     PAY09
* NAME PAY09                                                           PAY09
* ONE WORD INTEGERS                                                    PAY09
* EXTENDED PRECISION                                                   PAY09
* LIST ALL                                                             PAY09
C----- JOB NAME      -- PAYROLL SYSTEM - 941 REPORT                    PAY09
C----- JOB NUMBER    -- PAY09                                          PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C----- PROGRAMMER    -- C.R.KLICK                                      PAY09
C----- DATE CODED    -- 02/03/68                                       PAY09
C----- DATE UPDATED --                                                PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C-----                        FILE          FILE  RECORD  NO. OF   RECORDS PAY09
C-----                        NAME         NUMBER LENGTH RECORDS PER SECTORPAY09
C----- INPUT FILES  --  1. COLFP             1    160    250        2    PAY09
C-----                   2. WVAFP             2    160     90        2    PAY09
C-----                   3. MNCFP             3    160    200        2    PAY09
C-----                   4. LBOFP             4    160     50        2    PAY09
C-----                   5. LBTFP             5    160    150        2    PAY09
C-----                   6. LMCFP             6    160     30        2    PAY09
C-----                   7. INDX1           101      1    250      320    PAY09
C-----                   8. INDX2           102      1     90      320    PAY09
C-----                   9. INDX3           103      1    200      320    PAY09
C-----                  10. INDX4           104      1     50      320    PAY09
C-----                  11. INDX5           105      1    150      320    PAY09
C-----                  12. INDX6           106      1     30      320    PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C----- OUTPUT FILES -- NONE                                           PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C----- ALLOCATE ARRAY STORAGE                                         PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
      DIMENSION IDATE(3), IHD1(22), IHD2(22), IHD3(22), IHD4(22),      PAY09
     1          ISSAN(9), ISUPP(13), NAME(9), NSSAN(3), QRTD(6), YTD(14)PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C----- DEFINE THE FILES FOR THIS PROGRAM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE, AND       PAY09
C----- EQUIVALENCE THE VARIABLES FOR THE NEXT RECORD NUMBER.           PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
      DEFINE FILE   1(250,160,U,ICOL), 2(90,160,U,IWVA),               PAY09
     1              3(200,160,U,MUNC), 4(50,160,U,LBO),               PAY09
     2              5(150,160,U,LBT), 6(30,160,U,LMC),                PAY09
     3              101(250,1,U,IN1), 102(90,1,U,IN2), 103(200,1,U,IN3),PAY09
     4              104(50,1,U,IN4), 105(150,1,U,IN5), 106(30,1,U,IN6) PAY09
      EQUIVALENCE  (ICOL,IWVA,MUNC,LBO,LBT,LMC),                       PAY09
     1            (IN1,IN2,IN3,IN4,IN5,IN6)                          PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
C----- INITIALIZE VARIABLES AND READ PLANT NO., DATE, AND PAGE NO.    PAY09
C-----                                                                 PAY09
      IL=16448                                                         PAY09
```

```
C-----                                                                  PAY09
 1000 READ(2,1) N, IDATE, IPAGE                                         PAY09
    1 FORMAT(I1,4I2)                                                    PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
C----- IS THIS THE LAST PLANT.                                         PAY09
C----- YES - 99                                                        PAY09
C----- NO  - 110                                                       PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
      IF(N) 99,99,100                                                   PAY09
  100 IF(N - 6) 110,110,99                                              PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
C----- READ THE PLANT NAME AND ADDRESS, AND INITIALIZE THE REMAINING    PAY09
C----- VARIABLES, AND WRITE PLANT INFORMATION ON TOP OF FIRST PAGE.     PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
  110 READ(2,2) IHD1, IHD2, IHD3, IHD4                                  PAY09
    2 FORMAT(22A2)                                                      PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
      MPCO=0                                                            PAY09
      MPLY=0                                                            PAY09
      TOTA=0.                                                           PAY09
      TOTB=0.                                                           PAY09
      TOTC=0.                                                           PAY09
      TOTD=0.                                                           PAY09
      LINE=0                                                            PAY09
      WRITE(3,3) IL, IHD1, IDATE, IPAGE, IHD2, IHD3, IHD4               PAY09
    3 FORMAT(A1,2X,22A2,2X,2(I2,'-'),I2,10X,I2/(3X,22A2))               PAY09
      WRITE(3,8)                                                        PAY09
    8 FORMAT('1')                                                       PAY09
      IL=-3776                                                          PAY09
      IPAGE=IPAGE + 1                                                   PAY09
      INDX=N + 100                                                      PAY09
      GO TO (131,132,133,134,135,136),N                                 PAY09
  131 LST=250                                                           PAY09
      GO TO 140                                                         PAY09
  132 LST=90                                                            PAY09
      GO TO 140                                                         PAY09
  133 LST=200                                                           PAY09
      GO TO 140                                                         PAY09
  134 LST=50                                                            PAY09
      GO TO 140                                                         PAY09
  135 LST=150                                                           PAY09
      GO TO 140                                                         PAY09
  136 LST=30                                                            PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
C----- GET THE NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES                                     PAY09
C-----                                                                  PAY09
  140 READ(INDX'LST) LAST                                               PAY09
```

```
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- READ AN EMPLOYEE RECORD FROM DISK, AND DECIDE IF IT COUNTS.  PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
      DO 275 I=1,LAST                                               PAY09
      READ(N'I) NUM, NAME, NSSAN, NSTAS, NDUES, NWKMP, NWKPD, MAR,  PAY09
     1    NXMPF, NXMPS, NSEX, NRATE, YTD, QRTD, LYRHR, NCU, NCUDD,  PAY09
     2    NCHCK, NADWH, NSTCK, NINS, NMISC, NUA, NSTKD, ISUPP, INIT, IPDPAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- IF RECORD COUNTS - 150   OTHERWISE - 275                     PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
      IF(QRTD(1)) 150,275,150                                       PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- THIS ROUTINE CONTROLS THE PAGE FORMAT.  IF 40 LINES HAVE BEEN PAY09
C----- PRINTED PUT HEADINGS AT TOP OF NEXT PAGE. OTHERWISE DO NOTHING. PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
  150 IF(LINE - 40) 170,170,160                                     PAY09
  160 MPCO=MPCO + MPLY                                              PAY09
      TOTC=TOTC + TOTA                                              PAY09
      TOTD=TOTD + TOTB                                              PAY09
      TOTA=WHOLE(TOTA + (TOTA / ABS(TOTA)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY09
      TOTB=WHOLE(TOTB + (TOTB / ABS(TOTB)) * 0.5) / 100.            PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- WRITE TOTALS AT THE BOTTOM OF THE PAGE.                      PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
      WRITE(3,5) MPLY, MPLY, TOTA, TOTB                             PAY09
    5 FORMAT('1',30X,I2,8X,I2,7X,F9.2,4X,F9.2)                      PAY09
      MPLY=0                                                        PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- NEXT PAGE                                                    PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
      WRITE(3,4) IHD1, IDATE, IPAGE, IHD2, IHD3, IHD4               PAY09
    4 FORMAT('1  ',22A2,2X,2(I2,'-'),I2,10X,I2/(3X,22A2))          PAY09
      WRITE(3,8)                                                    PAY09
      LINE=0                                                        PAY09
      IPAGE=IPAGE + 1                                               PAY09
      TOTA=0.                                                       PAY09
      TOTB=0.                                                       PAY09
C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- ADD EMPLOYEE INFORMATION TO TOTAL AND SETUP DETAIL LINE.     PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
  170 A=NSSAN(1)                                                    PAY09
      CALL PUT(ISSAN,1,3,A * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY09
      A=NSSAN(2)                                                    PAY09
      CALL PUT(ISSAN,4,5,A * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY09
      A=NSSAN(3)                                                    PAY09
      CALL PUT(ISSAN,6,9,A * 10.,5.,1)                              PAY09
```

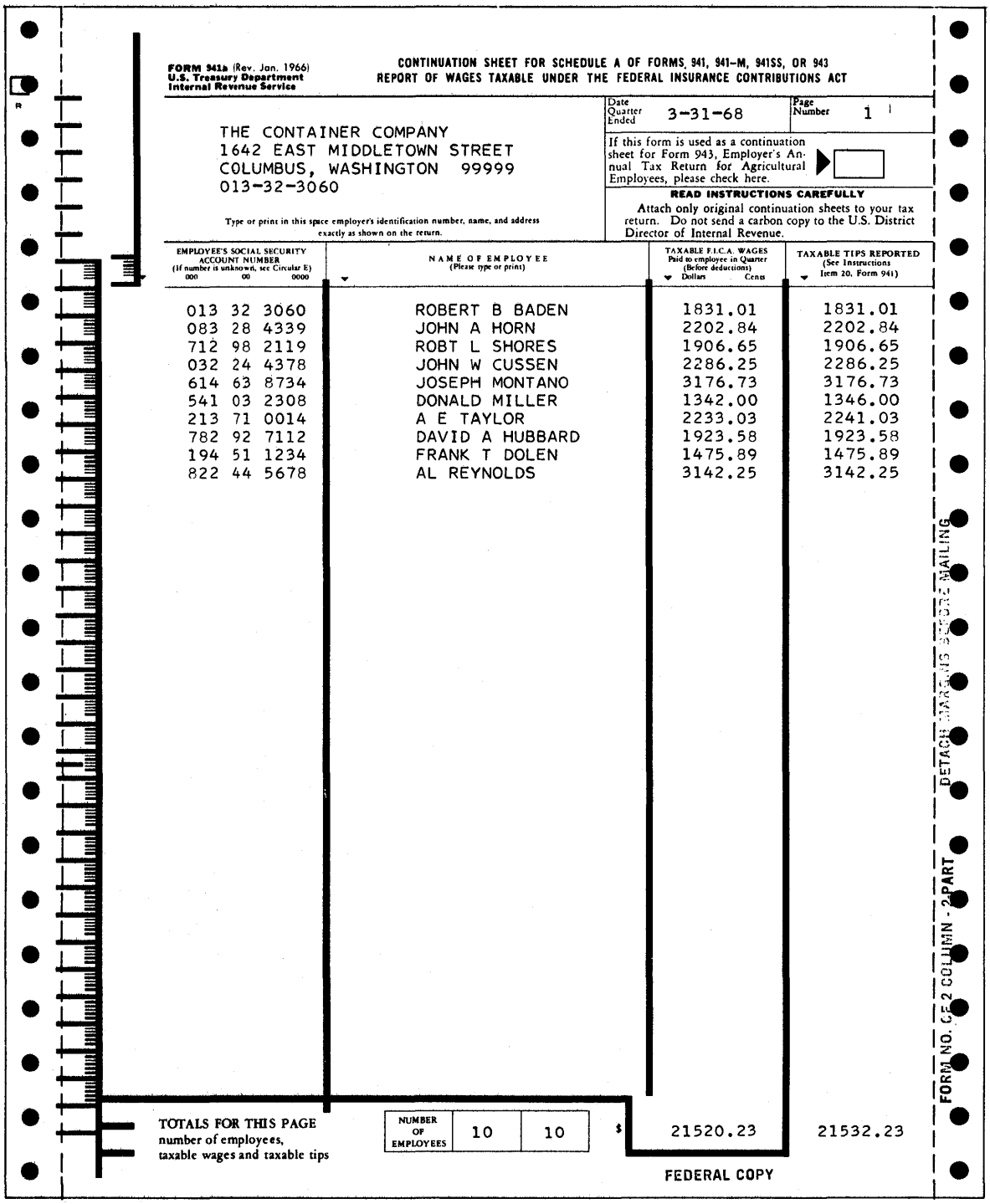
```
          A=660000. - (YTD(1) - YTD(5))                                    PAY09
          IF(A) 180,180,175                                                PAY09
      175 FICA=QRTD(1) - QRTD(6)                                           PAY09
          GO TO 195                                                        PAY09
      180 FICA=A + QRTD(1) - QRTD(6)                                       PAY09
          IF(FICA) 185,195,195                                             PAY09
      185 FICA=0.                                                          PAY09
      195 TOTA=TOTA + FICA                                                 PAY09
          TOTB=TOTB + QRTD(1)                                              PAY09
          FICA=WHOLE(FICA + (FICA / ABS(FICA)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY09
          QRTD(1)=WHOLE(QRTD(1) + (QRTD(1) / ABS(QRTD(1))) * 0.5) / 100.   PAY09
          MPLY=MPLY + 1                                                    PAY09
          LINE=LINE + 1                                                    PAY09
     C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- WRITE A DETAIL LINE AND GO BACK FOR ANOTHER EMPLOYEE.          PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
          WRITE(3,6) ISSAN, NAME, FICA, QRTD(1)                            PAY09
        6 FORMAT(3X,3A1,1X,2A1,1X,4A1,7X,9A2,11X,F9.2,4X,F9.2)             PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- GO BACK                                                       PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
      275 CONTINUE                                                         PAY09
     C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- THE PROGRAM WILL AUTOMATICALLY GO THRU HERE WHEN THE LAST EMPLYEEPAY09
     C----- HAS BEEN PROCESSED.  CREATE AND WRITE PLANT TOTALS ON REPORT.  PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
          TOTC=TOTC + TOTA                                                 PAY09
          TOTD=TOTD + TOTB                                                 PAY09
          TOTA=WHOLE(TOTA + (TOTA / ABS(TOTA)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY09
          TOTB=WHOLE(TOTB + (TOTB / ABS(TOTB)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- WRITE                                                         PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
          WRITE(3,5) MPLY, MPLY, TOTA, TOTB                                PAY09
     C----- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- CREATE AND WRITE PLANT CONTROL TOTALS ON CONSOLE AND GO BACK FOR PAY09
     C----- ANOTHER PLANT                                                 PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
          MPCO=MPCO + MPLY                                                 PAY09
          TOTC=WHOLE(TOTC + (TOTC / ABS(TOTC)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY09
          TOTD=WHOLE(TOTD + (TOTD / ABS(TOTD)) * 0.5) / 100.               PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
     C----- WRITE                                                         PAY09
     C-----                                                                PAY09
          WRITE(1,9) IHD1                                                  PAY09
        9 FORMAT(22A2)                                                     PAY09
```



```
                                                                    PAGE 05

      WRITE(1,7) MPCO, TOTC, TOTD                                   PAY09
    7 FORMAT(I3,2F12.2)                                             PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- GO BACK                                                      PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
      GO TO 1000                                                    PAY09
C-----------------------------------------------------------------PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
C----- THE PROGRAM COMES THRU HERE WHEN THE LAST PLANT HAS BEEN     PAY09
C----- PROCESSED.                 STOP                             PAY09
C-----                                                              PAY09
   99 CALL EXIT                                                     PAY09
C-----------------------------------------------------------------PAY09
      END                                                           PAY09

VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
 ICOL =0054  IWVA =0054  MUNC =0054  LBO  =0054  LBT  =0054  LMC  =0054  IN1  =0055  IN2  =0055  IN3  =0055  IN4  =0055
 IN5  =0055  IN6  =0055  QRTD =0065  YTD  =008F  TOTA =0092  TOTB =0095  TOTC =0098  TOTD =009B  A    =009E  FICA =00A1
 IDATE=00A9  IHD1 =00BF  IHD2 =00D5  IHD3 =00EB  IHD4 =0101  ISSAN=010A  ISUPP=0117  NAME =0120  NSSAN=0123  IL   =0124
 N    =0125  IPAGE=0126  MPCO =0127  MPLY =0128  LINE =0129  INDX =012A  LST  =012B  LAST =012C  I    =012D  NUM  =012E
 NSTAS=012F  NDUES=0130  NWKMP=0131  NWKPD=0132  MAR  =0133  NXMPF=0134  NXMPS=0135  NSEX =0136  NRATE=0137  LYRHR=0138
 NCU  =0139  MCUDD=013A  NCHCK=013B  NADWH=013C  NSTCK=013D  NINS =013E  NMISC=013F  NUA  =0140  NSTKD=0141  INIT =0142
 IPD  =0143

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =016C  2    =0170  3    =0173  8    =0185  5    =0188  4    =0193  6    =01A6  9    =01B7  7    =01BA  1000 =01D7
 100  =01E5  110  =01EB  131  =024C  132  =0252  133  =0258  134  =025E  135  =0264  136  =026A  140  =026E  150  =028C
 160  =02C2  170  =0333  175  =0383  180  =038F  185  =03A0  195  =03A4  275  =03FF  99   =0480

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION
 IOCS

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 WHOLE   EABS    PUT     EADD    EADDX   ESUBX   EMPY    EDIV    ELD     ELDX    ESTO    ESTOX   ESBR    EDVR    EDVRX
 FLOAT   WRTYZ   SRED    SWRT    SCOMP   SFIO    SIOAI   SIOFX   SIOF    SIOI    CARDZ   PRNTZ   SDFIO   SDRED   SDAI
 SDAF    SDI

REAL CONSTANTS
   .0000000000E 00=0148     .5000000000E 00=014B     .1000000000E 03=014E     .1000000000E 02=0151     .5000000000E 01=0154
   .6600000000E 06=0157

INTEGER CONSTANTS
 16448=015A      2=0158      6=015C      0=015D      3=015E   3776=015F      1=0160    100=0161    250=0162     90=0163
   200=0164     50=0165    150=0166     30=0167     40=0168      4=0169      5=016A      9=016B

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR PAY09
 COMMON       0  VARIABLES    328  PROGRAM    826

END OF COMPILATION
```

```
// JOB
// XEQ PAY09     2
*FILES(1,COLFP),(2,WVAFP),(3,MNCFP),(4,LBOFP),(5,LBTFP),(6,LMCFP),
*FILES(101,INDX1),(102,INDX2),(103,INDX3),(104,INDX4),(105,INDX5),(106,INDX6)
103316801
XYZ MANUFACTURING COMPANY
1642 EAST MIDDLETOWN STREET
ANYTOWN, SOMESTATE     99999
013-32-3060
9
```

Input cards



FORM 941a (Rev. Jan. 1966)
U.S. Treasury Department
Internal Revenue Service

CONTINUATION SHEET FOR SCHEDULE A OF FORMS 941, 941-M, 941SS, OR 943
REPORT OF WAGES TAXABLE UNDER THE FEDERAL INSURANCE CONTRIBUTIONS ACT

THE CONTAINER COMPANY
1642 EAST MIDDLETOWN STREET
COLUMBUS, WASHINGTON 99999
013-32-3060

Type or print in this space employer's identification number, name, and address exactly as shown on the return.

Date Quarter Ended 3-31-68

Page Number 1

If this form is used as a continuation sheet for Form 943, Employer's Annual Tax Return for Agricultural Employees, please check here.

READ INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY

Attach only original continuation sheets to your tax return. Do not send a carbon copy to the U.S. District Director of Internal Revenue.

EMPLOYEE'S SOCIAL SECURITY ACCOUNT NUMBER (If number is unknown, see Circular E) 000 00 0000	NAME OF EMPLOYEE (Please type or print)	TAXABLE F.I.C.A. WAGES Paid to employee in Quarter (Before deductions) Dollars Cents	TAXABLE TIPS REPORTED (See Instructions Item 20, Form 941)
013 32 3060	ROBERT B BADEN	1831.01	1831.01
083 28 4339	JOHN A HORN	2202.84	2202.84
712 98 2119	ROBT L SHORES	1906.65	1906.65
032 24 4378	JOHN W CUSSEN	2286.25	2286.25
614 63 8734	JOSEPH MONTANO	3176.73	3176.73
541 03 2308	DONALD MILLER	1342.00	1346.00
213 71 0014	A E TAYLOR	2233.03	2241.03
782 92 7112	DAVID A HUBBARD	1923.58	1923.58
194 51 1234	FRANK T DOLEN	1475.89	1475.89
822 44 5678	AL REYNOLDS	3142.25	3142.25
TOTALS FOR THIS PAGE number of employees, taxable wages and taxable tips	NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES 10 10	$ 21520.23	21532.23

FEDERAL COPY

FORM NO. CF 2 COLUMN - 2 PART DETACH MARGINS BEFORE MAILING

XYZ MANUFACTURING COMPANY
10 21520.23 21532.23

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

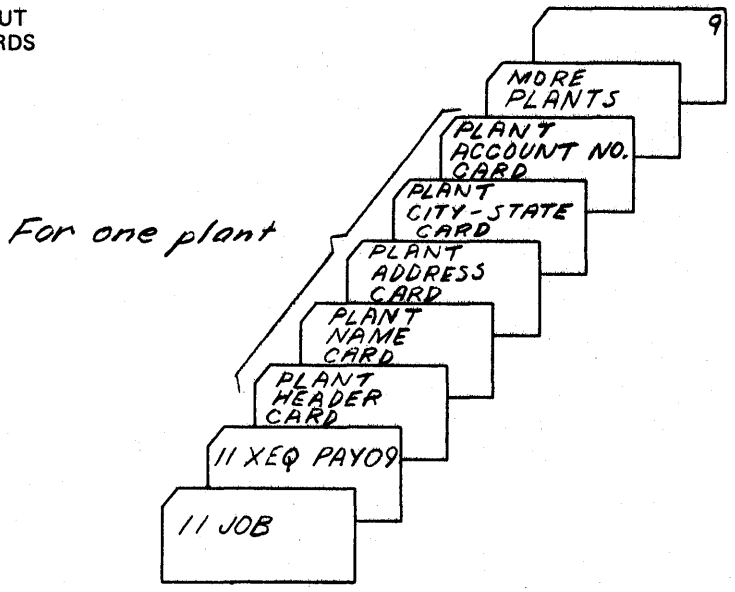
PROGRAM NAME: 941 REPORT	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY09
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	941 FORMS		941 TAPE

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	PAYROLL				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH	SWITCH
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1- Plant information cards from file E
2- Payroll disk from storage

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1- 941 report to government
2- Disk is returned to storage
3- Plant information cards to file E

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAYROLL SYSTEM

Operation Manual

CONTENTS

Payroll Application 1
Job Description 1
System Flowchart 1
Narrative 1
Payroll File Create (PAY01, PAY02, PAY16) 2
Payroll File Changes (PAY03, PAY16) 3
Payroll Calculations and Register (PAY04, PAY16) 4
Print Payroll Checks (PAY05, PAY06) 5
Payroll Check Voiding (PAY11) 6
Payroll Deduction Registers (PAY12 thru PAY15) 7
Payroll File Audit, 941, and Tax (PAY07, PAY09, PAY10) 8
Print W-2 Reports (PAYnn) 9
Error Detection and Correction (PAY09) 10
Payroll Programs 11
PAY01: Payroll File Create 11
Accounting Controls 11
Error Recovery Sheet 12
Machine Setup Sheet 13
PAY02: Add Names to the File 14
Accounting Controls 14
Error Recovery Sheet 15
Machine Setup Sheet 17
PAY03: Changes to the File 18
Accounting Controls 18
Error Recovery Sheet 19
Machine Setup Sheet 25
PAY04: Calculations and Payroll Register 26
Accounting Controls 26
Error Recovery Sheet 27
Machine Setup Sheet 37
PAY05: Check Writing 38
Accounting Controls 38
Error Recovery Sheet 39
Machine Setup Sheet 50
PAY06: Check Register 51
Accounting Controls 51
Error Recovery Sheet 52
Machine Setup Sheet 53
PAY09: 941 Report 54
Accounting Controls 54
Error Recovery Sheet 55
Machine Setup Sheet 56

PAYROLL APPLICATION

JOB DESCRIPTION

The Payroll System is composed of 16 different runs. From the source documents, produced at the six plant sites, cards are punched. These cards are used to store the payroll information on the disk cartridge.

At this point the system uses cards only for transition between jobs. The input data, employee records, is read from the disk and updated before being written back. This gives a highly flexible system, in which I/O, because of the disk, is very fast.

The system produces the following reports:

- Checks and check stubs
- Check register
- Payroll register
- Deduction registers for
  1. Union dues
  2. Credit union
  3. Stock
- 941 quarterly report

SYSTEM FLOWCHART

Narrative

The system consists of 16 programs.

The Files Creation program is first. Data decks are keypunched for each individual, in sets, by plant. The data is edited and, when correct, loaded on the disk by PAY01. Three files are created: a master file, an index file, and a plant information file. A second data deck with employee clock number and name is loaded onto the master file by PAY02.

Changes to the disk information are made by PAY03. Documents, received from personnel departments at the individual plants, are checked, summarized, keypunched, and verified. Time sheets, submitted by the plant payroll departments, are keypunched and verified. All of these cards are processed by PAY16, which edits and generates control totals. PAY04 then processes these cards, performing all payroll calculations. Cards are read, pay computed, disk files updated, and cards extended with current pay figures. After all cards are processed, a payroll register is printed.

Checks are printed by PAY05. A header card is read and the checks are printed from the disk file. PAY06 lists the check register from the disk file. In the event of an error in computing pay, PAY11 provides the means of voiding checks. The extended time cards from PAY04 are read in and the affected employee records are reset. The above are weekly runs.

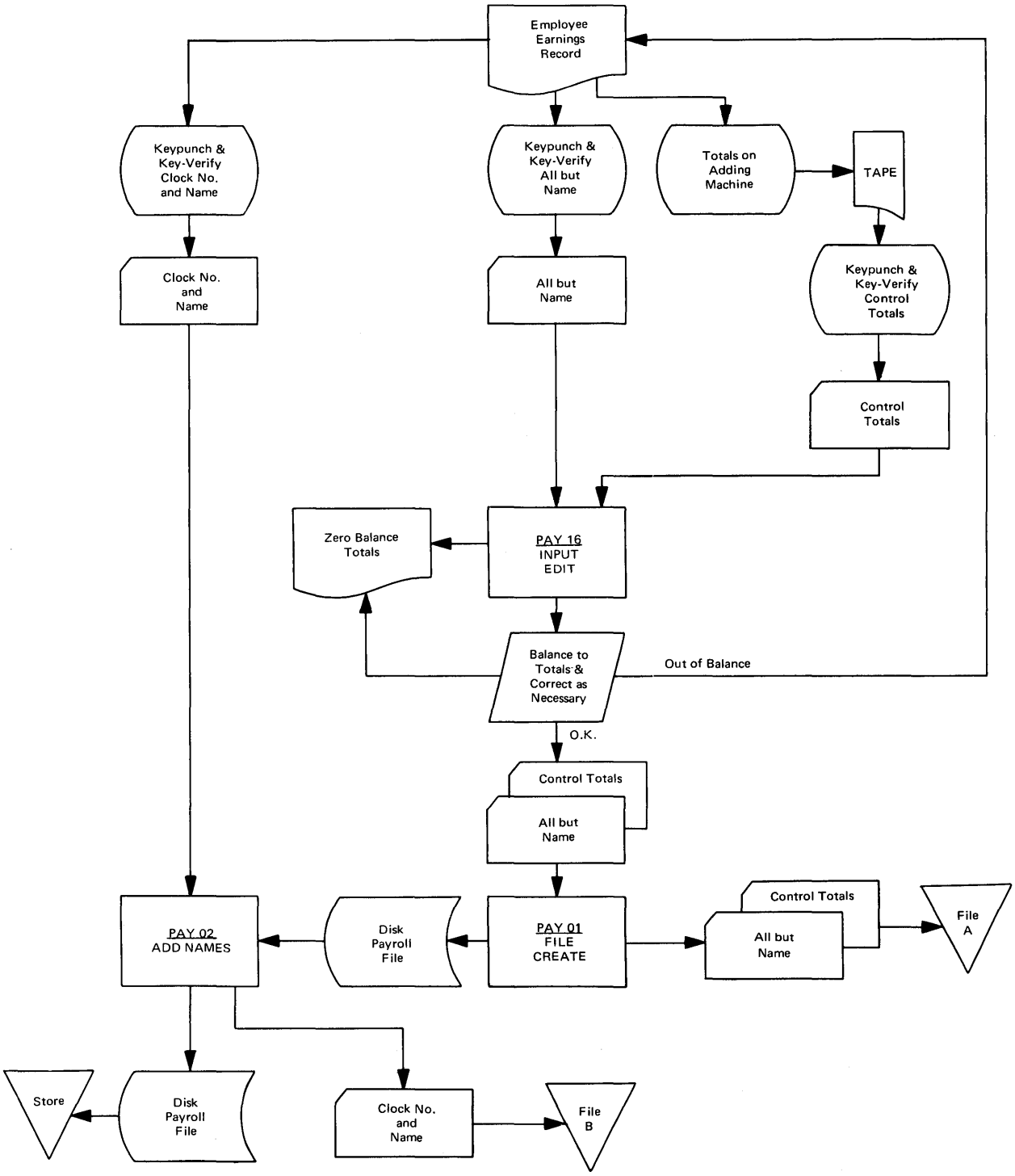
At month end, registers are prepared showing each individual's deductions for the month:

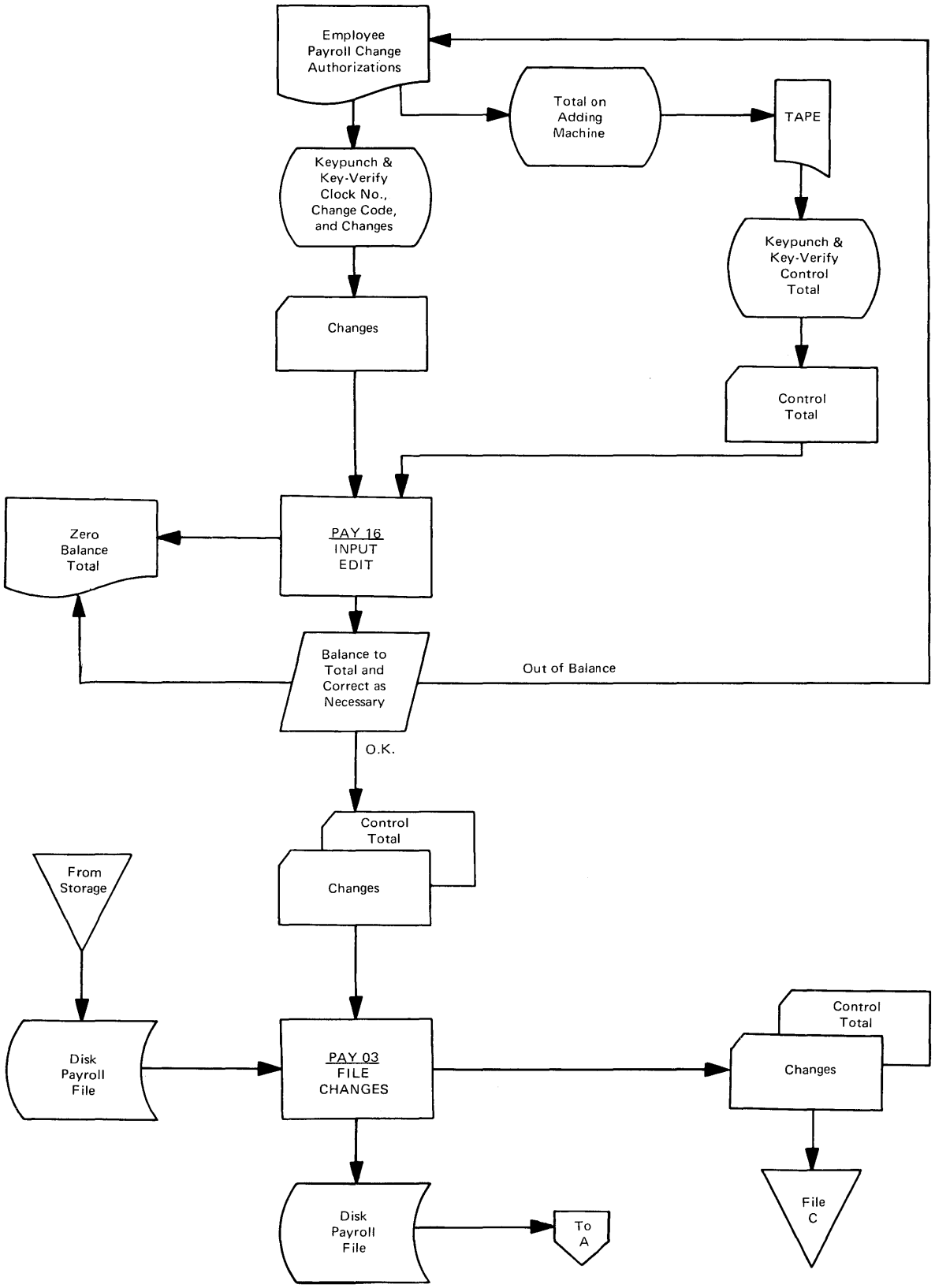
PAY13 writes union dues register.
PAY14 writes credit union register.
PAY15 writes stock deductions register.
PAY12 resets charity deductions code.

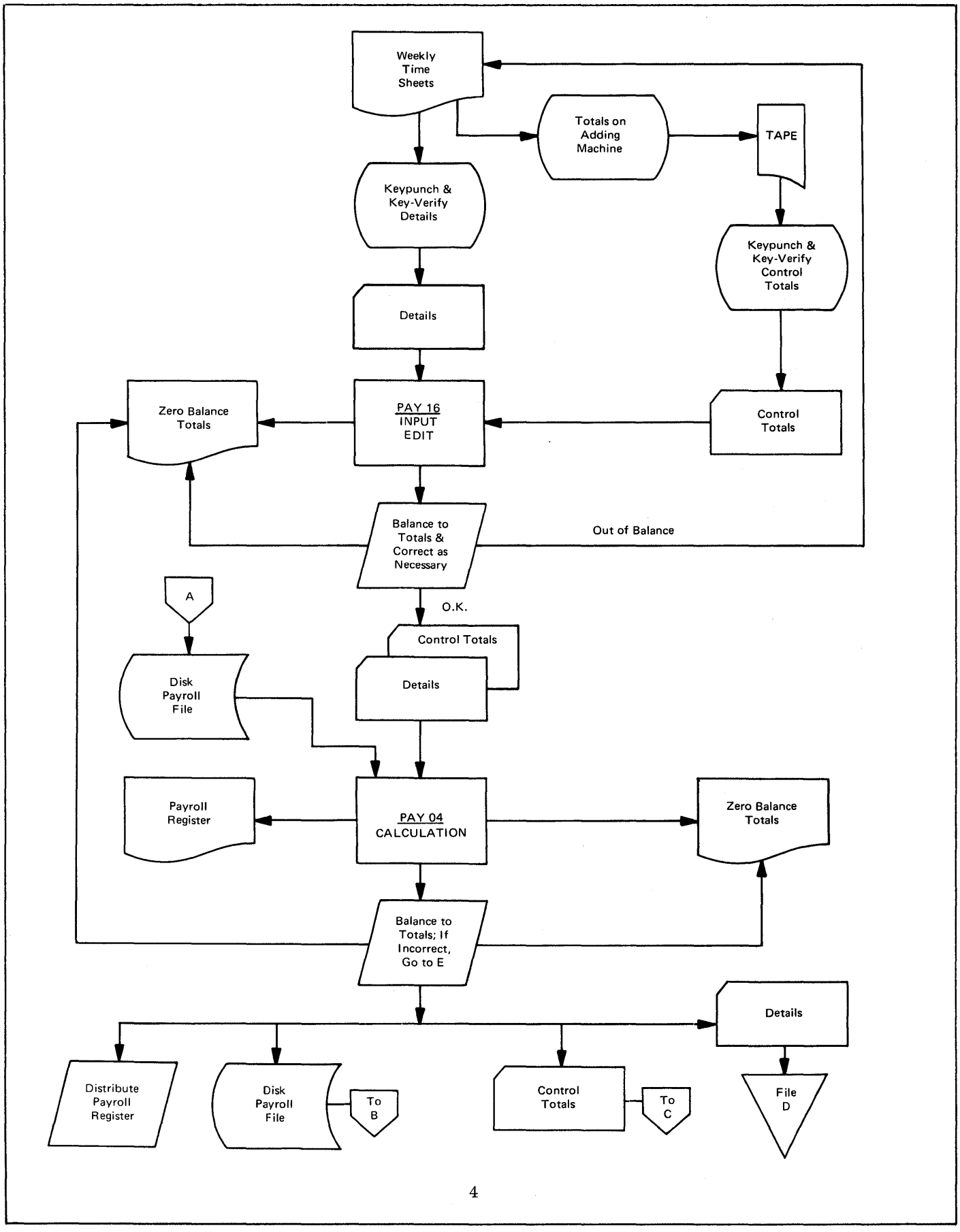
At the end of the quarter and at the end of the year PAY07 and PAY08 are used to balance the disk files to control totals.

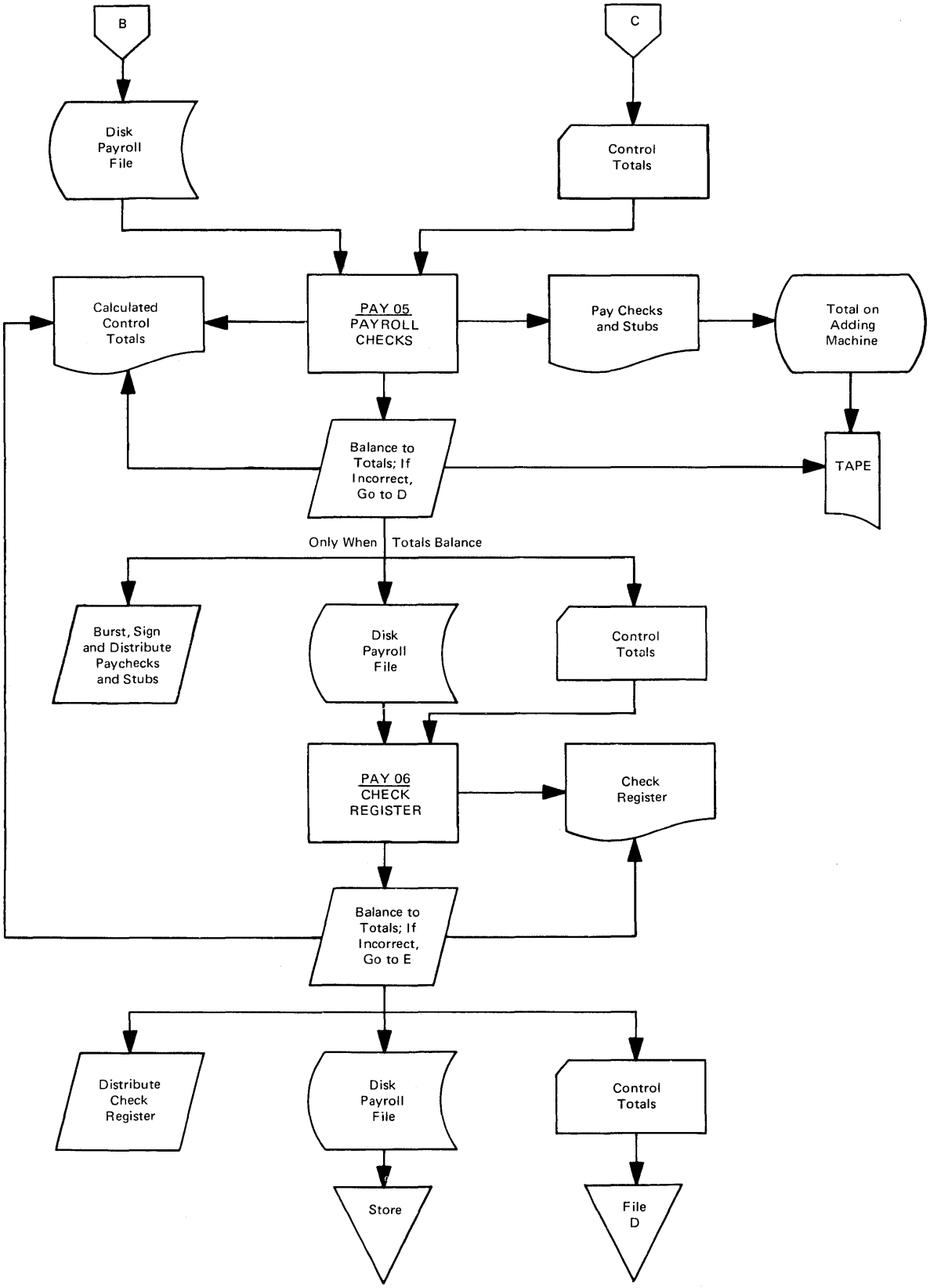
PAY09 produces the 941 tax report.
PAY10 produces a tax worksheet used to determine tax liability.

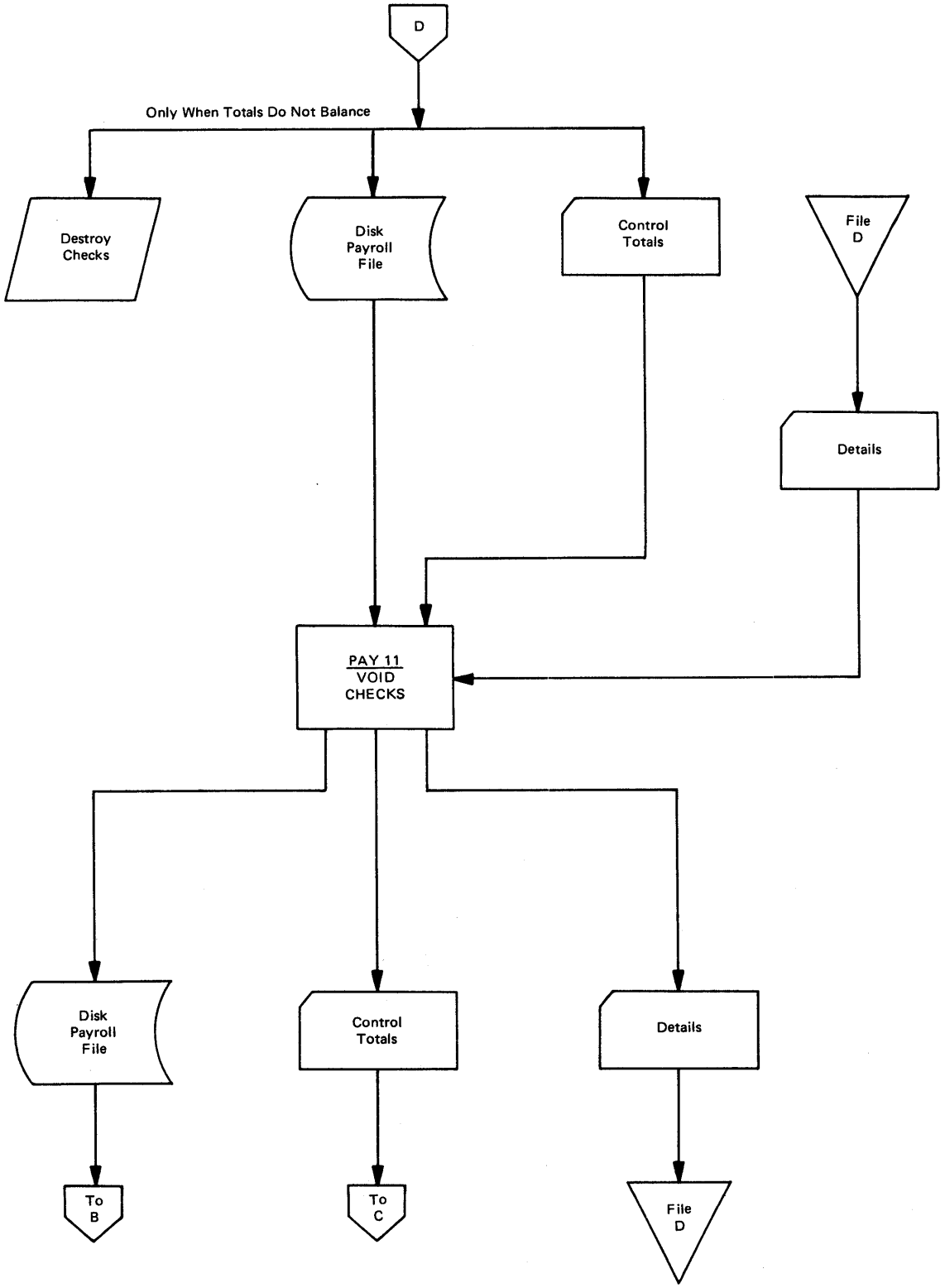
At the present time the program for W-2 reports has not been written.

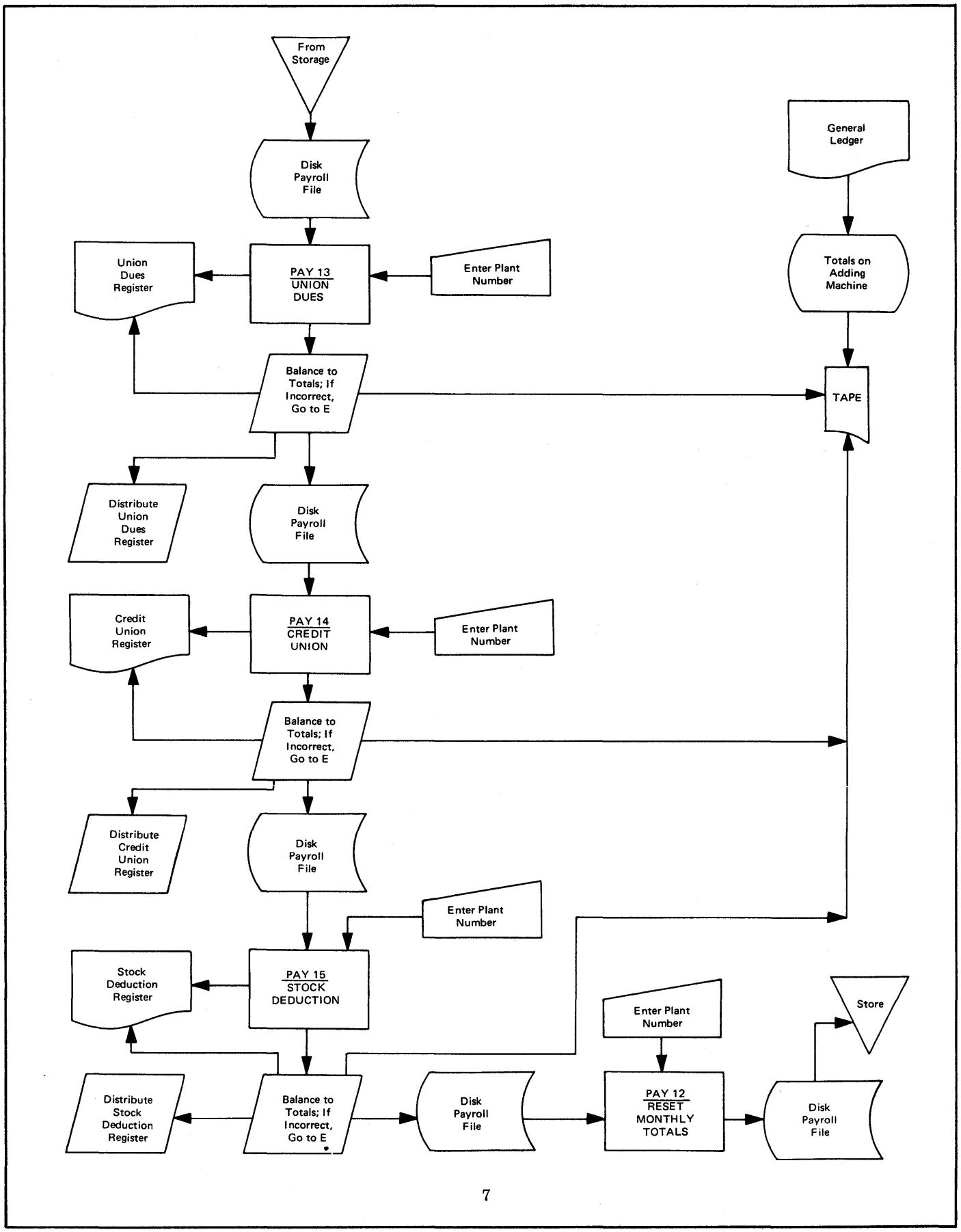

Employee Earnings Record
Keypunch & Key-Verify Clock No. and Name
Keypunch & Key-Verify All but Name
Totals on Adding Machine
TAPE
Clock No. and Name
All but Name
Keypunch & Key-Verify Control Totals
Control Totals
Zero Balance Totals
PAY 16 INPUT EDIT
Balance to Totals & Correct as Necessary
Out of Balance
O.K.
Control Totals
All but Name
PAY 02 ADD NAMES
Disk Payroll File
PAY 01 FILE CREATE
Control Totals
All but Name
File A
Store
Disk Payroll File
Clock No. and Name
File B


Employee Payroll Change Authorizations
Total on Adding Machine
TAPE
Keypunch & Key-Verify Clock No., Change Code, and Changes
Keypunch & Key-Verify Control Total
Changes
Control Total
Zero Balance Total
PAY 16 INPUT EDIT
Balance to Total and Correct as Necessary
Out of Balance
O.K.
Control Total
Changes
From Storage
Disk Payroll File
PAY 03 FILE CHANGES
Control Total
Changes
File C
Disk Payroll File
To A

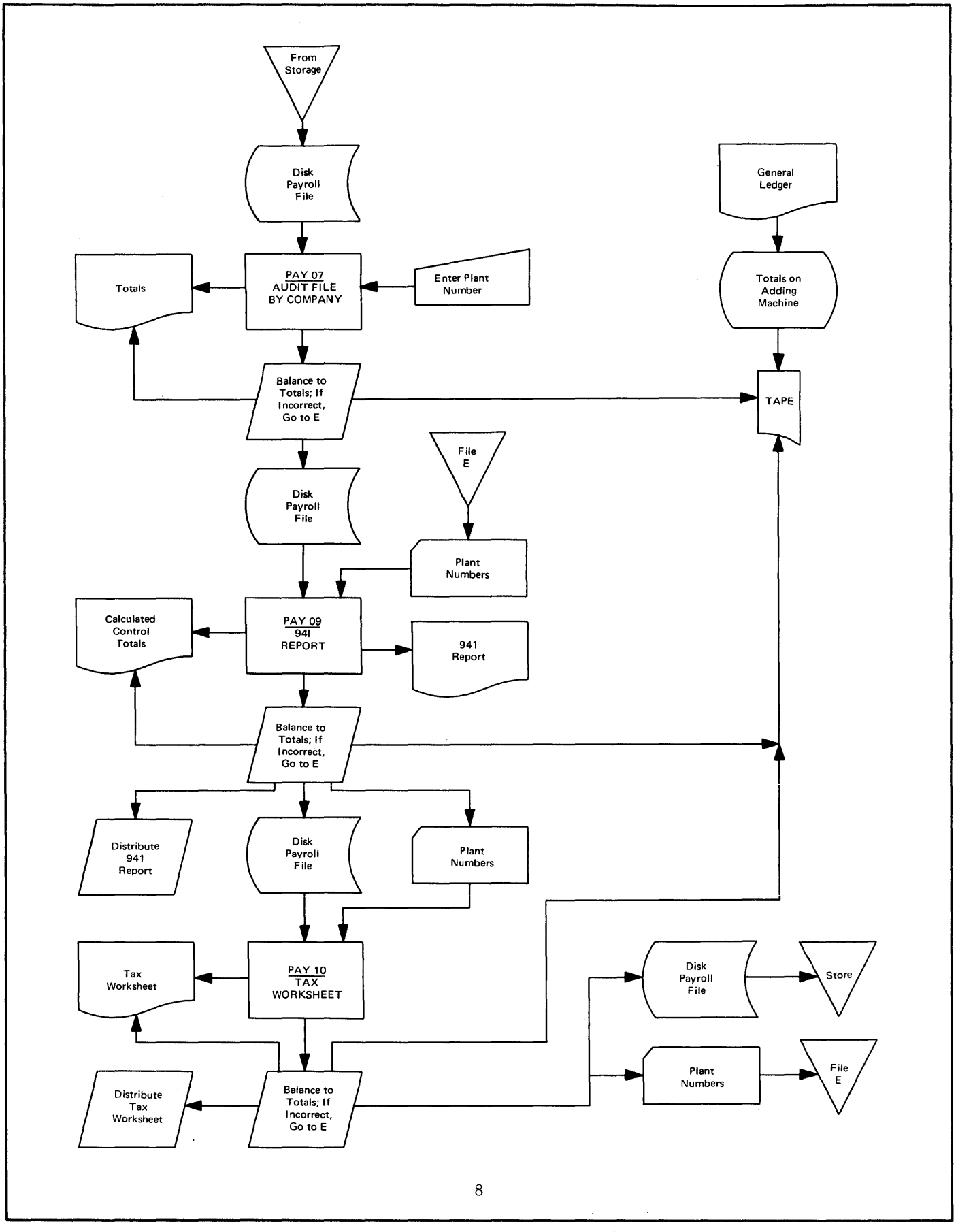

Weekly Time Sheets
Totals on Adding Machine
TAPE
Keypunch & Key-Verify Details
Keypunch & Key-Verify Control Totals
Details
Zero Balance Totals
PAY 16 INPUT EDIT
Control Totals
Balance to Totals & Correct as Necessary
Out of Balance
A
O.K.
Control Totals
Details
Disk Payroll File
Payroll Register
PAY 04 CALCULATION
Zero Balance Totals
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Details
Distribute Payroll Register
Disk Payroll File
To B
Control Totals
To C
File D

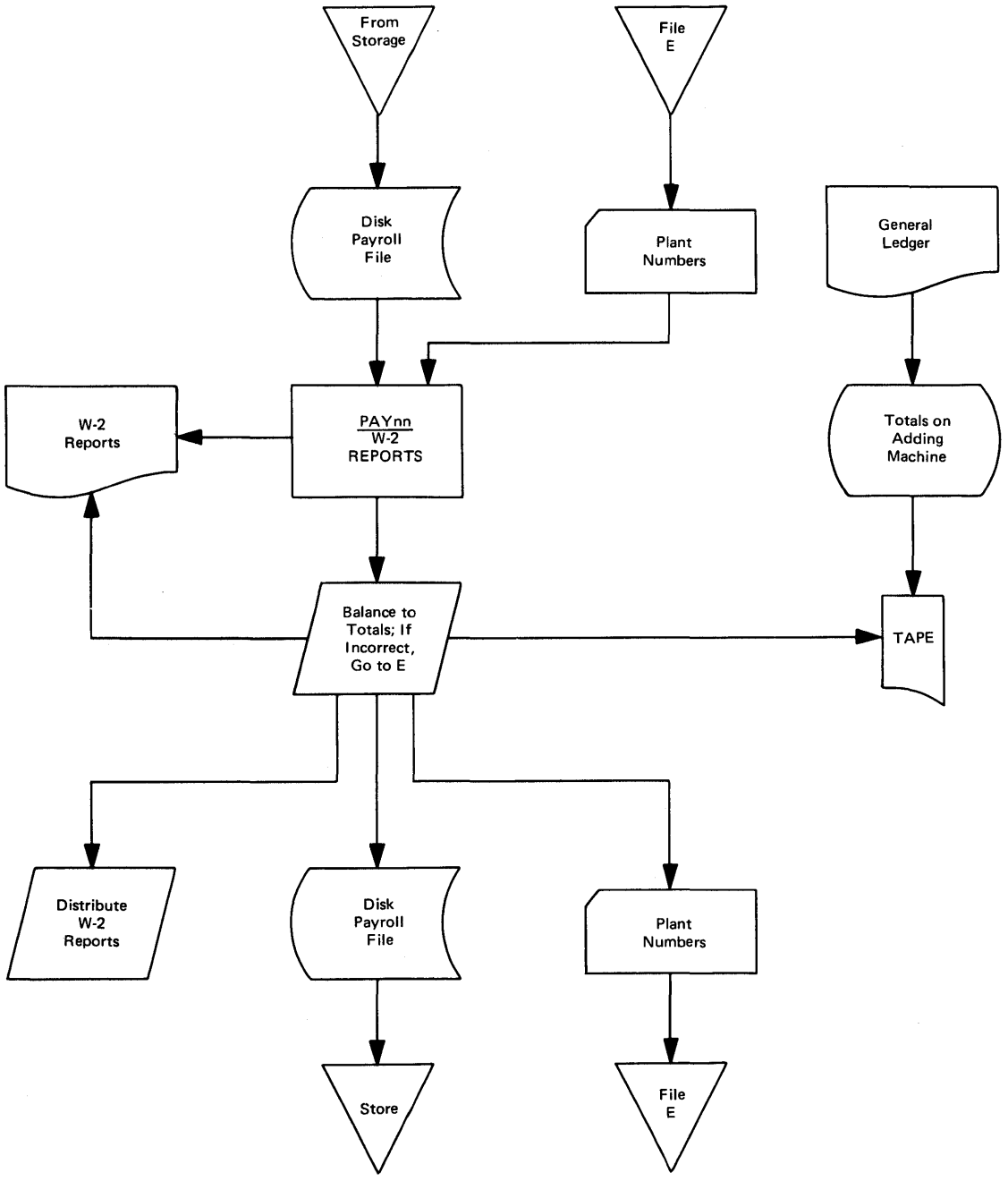

B
C
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Calculated Control Totals
PAY 05 PAYROLL CHECKS
Pay Checks and Stubs
Total on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to D
TAPE
Only When Totals Balance
Burst, Sign and Distribute Paychecks and Stubs
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
PAY 06 CHECK REGISTER
Check Register
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Distribute Check Register
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Store
File D

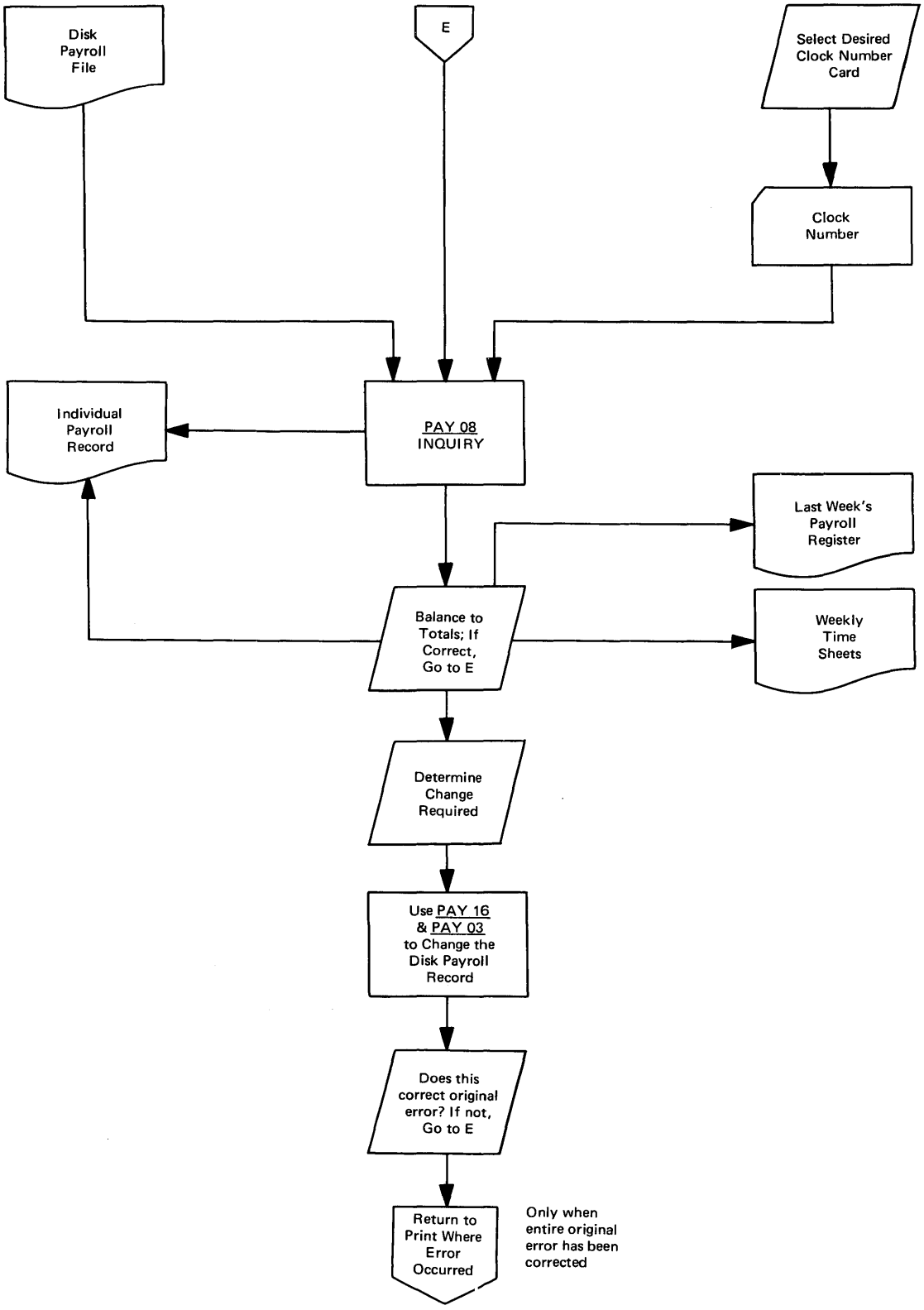

D
Only When Totals Do Not Balance
Destroy Checks
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
File D
Details
PAY 11 VOID CHECKS
Disk Payroll File
Control Totals
Details
To B
To C
File D


From Storage
Disk Payroll File
General Ledger
Union Dues Register
PAY 13 UNION DUES
Enter Plant Number
Totals on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
TAPE
Distribute Union Dues Register
Disk Payroll File
Credit Union Register
PAY 14 CREDIT UNION
Enter Plant Number
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Distribute Credit Union Register
Disk Payroll File
Enter Plant Number
Stock Deduction Register
PAY 15 STOCK DEDUCTION
Enter Plant Number
Store
Distribute Stock Deduction Register
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
Disk Payroll File
PAY 12 RESET MONTHLY TOTALS
Disk Payroll File

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	12




From Storage
File E
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
General Ledger
W-2 Reports
PAYnn W-2 REPORTS
Totals on Adding Machine
Balance to Totals; If Incorrect, Go to E
TAPE
Distribute W-2 Reports
Disk Payroll File
Plant Numbers
Store
File E


Disk Payroll File
E
Select Desired Clock Number Card
Clock Number
Individual Payroll Record
PAY 08 INQUIRY
Last Week's Payroll Register
Balance to Totals; If Correct, Go to E
Weekly Time Sheets
Determine Change Required
Use PAY 16 & PAY 03 to Change the Disk Payroll Record
Does this correct original error? If not, Go to E
Return to Print Where Error Occurred
Only when entire original error has been corrected

PAYROLL PROGRAMS

PAY01: PAYROLL FILE CREATE

Accounting Controls

Balance total gross ($) and total tax withheld YTD ($) from the preceding PAY16 to the general ledger.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	16

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY01

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT _____

None

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

None

PROBABLE CAUSE:

None

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

None

COMMENTS:

There are no messages or pauses.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME: File Create	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY01
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

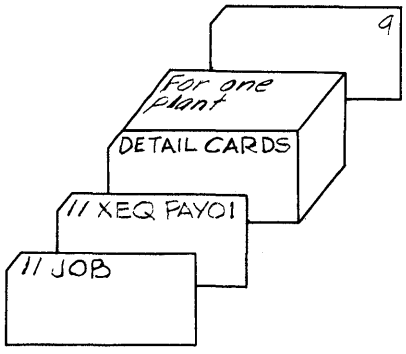
	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS

SWITCH					
SWITCH	None	SWITCH		SWITCH	
UP		UP		UP	
DOWN		DOWN		DOWN	

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run
2. Disk must be payroll disk with areas for each plant allocated.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Detail cards are filed in file A.
2. Disk to be used in PAY02, which should be run next.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY02: ADD NAMES TO THE FILE

Accounting Controls

None

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY02

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CLOCK NO XXXX NOT IN FILE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

The clock number in the input card is not in the index of clock numbers.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. The employee's record was not loaded.
or
2. The clock number in the input card is incorrect.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

At the end of the run, remove the card(s) so noted from the data deck and check the clock number(s) with personnel records. If the clock number is correct, load the employee record on the file. If the card is incorrect, repunch the card and rerun.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY02

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
CLOCK NO. XXXX IN FILE DOES NOT AGREE WITH CLOCK NO. XXXX IN CARD

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
The clock number on the disk file is not the same as the clock number in the index and in the input card.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Disk data has been altered.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Immediately report the occurrence of this to your supervisor.

COMMENTS:
Because the specific record in error lacks identification, this message has little value. However, this indicates that disk data has probably been destroyed.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

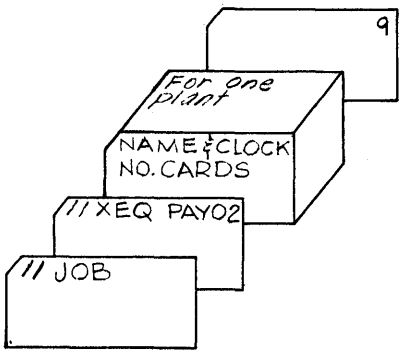
PROGRAM NAME: Add names to the file	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY02
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH NONE
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT: 1. Card input for a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from PAY01.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: 1. Name and Clock No. cards are filed in file B.
2. Disk to be used in PAY03, which should be run next.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY03: CHANGES TO THE FILE

Accounting Controls

Hash totals of clock numbers, change codes and new fields from preceding PAY16 should balance to control totals prepared manually.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME DAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
PLANT NOS. DISAGREE FOR CLOCK NUMBER XXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: First digit of clock number does not agree with the plant number in the header card.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
1. Data for one plant was included with data of another plant.
or
2. The deck is not setup correctly

RECOVERY PROCEDURES: The card in error will be selected to the alternate stacker. Remove the card and compare it to the source document. Correct it and rerun.

COMMENTS: This error may result in a system F003 error. Reexecute the program starting with the plant and card that was being processed when the halt occurred. If the error occurs a second time, notify your supervisor.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 113(ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.L.Lick

MESSAGE TYPED:

INVALID CHANGE CODE FOR XXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

The change code is not within the valid range (1-16).

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Keypunch error

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Return card and document to keypunch operator.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CLOCK NO XXXX NOT IN FILE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

The input card clock number is not in the index.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. The employee record has not been loaded.

or

2. The clock number on the card is punched incorrectly.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

The card is stacker selected. Remove the card and check the clock number with personnel records. If the clock number is correct, load the employee's record on the file. Otherwise, correct the card and rerun.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System PROGRAM NAME PAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
CLOCK NUMBERS DO NOT AGREE FOR XXXX.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
The clock number in the disk file is not the same as the clock number in the index and in the input card.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Disk data has been altered.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Card is stacker-selected.
Immediately report the occurrence of this error to your supervisor.

COMMENTS:
Disk data has probably been destroyed.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

ENTER SSAN FOR XXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT

Keyboard select.

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Machine is waiting for input from keyboard.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

The program has called for input.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Enter the Social Security number for the indicated employee.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	28

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY03

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CLOCK NUMBER XXXX IS DUPLICATED.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 100

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

The clock number in the input card for a new employee is already on the disk file.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. The card has been entered a second time.

or

2. The clock number in the input card is incorrect.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

The card is stacker-selected. Check the clock number with personnel records. If it is incorrect, repunch and rerun. If it is correct, use the inquiry program, PAY 08, to print the file record and determine whether or not it is correct.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

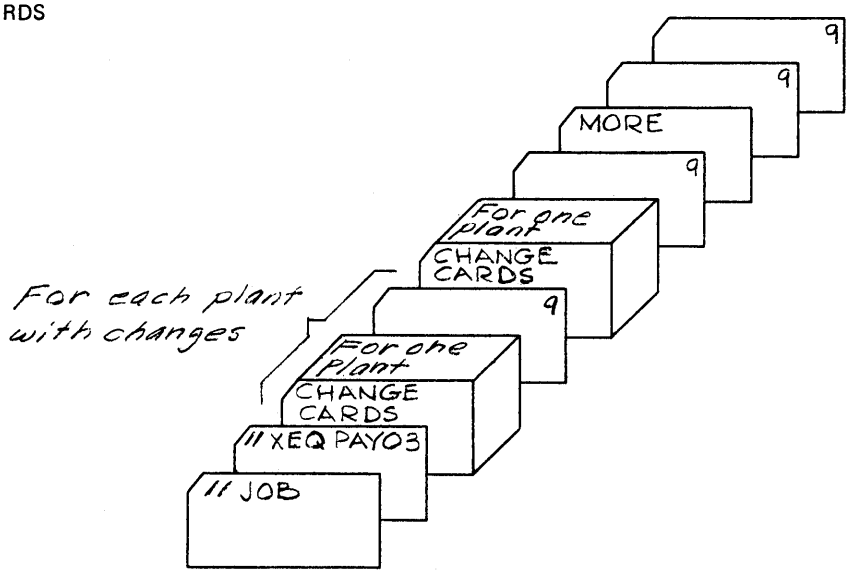
PROGRAM NAME: Changes to the file	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY03
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH None	SWITCH None	SWITCH None
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT: 1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: 1. Change cards are filed in file C.
2 Disk is returned to storage for use with PAY04

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY04: CALCULATIONS AND PAYROLL REGISTER

Accounting Controls

Machine totals (regular hours, OT hours, bonus hours, special earnings) must be balanced to the control totals from the preceding PAY16 run. Information is found on console printer for this zero-balance check.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CHECK CC 1 AND 80 ON FIRST CARD

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	1

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 99999

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

1. Card column 1 has an invalid plant number.

or

2. Card column 80 is not zero.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Either a blank card or a data card has been placed in front of the deck.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Clear the card reader (NPRO). Place a proper header card at the beginning of the deck. Ready the card reader and press Program Start on the console.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

COMPANY NAME DATE
CHECK NO XXXXX.
WEEK NO X.
WTE XXXXXX
NET MAX XXXXXX.
MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED AT SWITCH 16. SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NO. AND WEEK NO. SET SWITCHES REQUIRED AND PRESS START

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

1	1	1	1

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT No #

Reads data switches.

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Operator option to change constants

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Program allows for this possibility.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Follow the instructions printed.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CHECK CARD WITH
CLOCK NUMBER
XXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	1	0	0

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 90

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

1. The first digit of the clock number does not agree with the plant number in the header card.

or

2. Card column 80 is invalid.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. The data for one plant is included with the data for another plant.

or

2. Card deck is not set up correctly.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Clear the card reader. The first card to clear is the card in error. Correct the card, if necessary, or remove it from the deck. Reload and ready the card reader. Press Program Start on the console.

COMMENTS:

The program will not continue until the card read is correct.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

CLOCK NO. XXXX IS NOT IN THE FILE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 120

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Input record clock number is not on the disk.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. Employee record has not been loaded.

or

2. Input number is incorrect.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

The card is stacker-selected. Check the clock number with personnel records. If the number is correct, load the employee's record. If it is incorrect, repunch and rerun.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
FILE NO. XXXX AND INDEX NO. XXXX DO NOT AGREE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 120

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: The clock number in the input card does not agree with the clock number in the employee record.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Disk data has been altered.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Card is stacker-selected. Immediately report this occurrence to your supervisor.

COMMENTS:
Disk data has probably been destroyed.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NET OF XXXXXX.
FOR CLOCK NO XXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 120

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Net amount of check exceeds limit.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

1. Limit set too low

or

2. Erroneous data in employee record

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

1. Change limit and rerun.

or

2. Correct employee record and rerun.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

INPUT TOTALS XXXXXX. XXXXXX.
XXXXXX. XXXXXX.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT

Next in sequence

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: Nothing

PROBABLE CAUSE: End-of-job routine is printing out control totals from header card.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
PROCESSED TOTALS
XXXXXXX. XXXXXXX.
XXXXXXX. XXXXXXX.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT
Next in sequence

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: Nothing

PROBABLE CAUSE: End-of-job routine is printing out accumulated control totals.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
ERROR TOTALS xxxxxxx.xxxxxxx.
xxxxxxx.xxxxxxx.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT
Next in sequence.

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
Nothing

PROBABLE CAUSE:
End-of-job routine is printing out accumulated totals of erroneous records.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Error figures must be accounted for and corrections made as necessary.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY04

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
THE DIFFERENCES xxxxxxx.xxxxxxx.
xxx xxxx.xxxxxxx.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT _____

Next in sequence.

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Nothing

PROBABLE CAUSE:

End-of-job routine is printing out the differences between the input totals and the accumulated totals.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Nonzero figures must be accounted for and corrected.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME: Calculations & Payroll Register	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY04
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

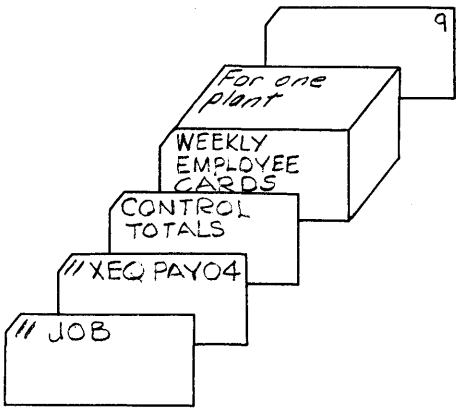
	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS			
SWITCH	14	15	None
UP	✓	✓	
DOWN			

INPUT CARDS

Switch 14 to change maximum check amount (and turn off) switch 15 to change check number and week number (and turn off)



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Card input from a successful PAY16 edit run.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Control totals to file D
2. Details to file D
3. Disk to storage
4. Payroll register to payroll section.

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY05: CHECK WRITING

Accounting Controls

Disk-stored totals -- gross ($) and net ($) -- are balanced to machine-calculated total of checks for zero-balance test. This should also be compared with the adding machine tape of checks.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
CHECK C.C.1 AND CC80 ON FIRST CARD

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	1

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 99999

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
1. Card column 1 has an invalid plant number
or
2. Card column 80 is not zero

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Either a blank card or a data card has been placed in front of the deck.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Clear the card reader. Place a proper header card at the front of the deck. Ready the card reader and press Program Start on the console

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED: COMPANY NAME DATE
CHECK NO. xxxxx
WEEK NO. x
~~W/E xxxxxx.~~
CHECK MAX. xxxxx.
MAXIMUM CHECK AMOUNT MAY BE CHANGED BY SWITCH 14. SWITCH 15 WILL CHANGE THE CHECK NUMBER. SET SWITCHES REQUESTED AND PRESS START.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

/	/	/	/

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT _____
Next in sequence

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
Operator option to change constants.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Program allow for this possibility

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Follow machine typed instructions.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

ENTER CLOCK NO.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 500

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Waiting for keyboard input.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Operator intervention to reprint check(s).

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Enter the four-digit clock number for the check(s) to be reprinted. When all of the numbers have been entered, and this condition occurs, turn off switch zero and press EOF.

COMMENTS:

This routine allows for reprinting of torn or misaligned checks.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
DEDUCTION NOX NOT MADE FOR XXXX.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 550

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
The gross amount of the check for this employee was not sufficient to allow this authorized deduction.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Employee did not work a full week.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Notify your supervisor.

COMMENTS:
This is to be reported to the employee.

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	2

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 91

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Pause to allow the alignment of checks before printing the second line.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Switch 15 has been set by the operator.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Press Program Start to continue.
When checks are aligned, turn off Switch 15.

COMMENTS:

Switch 15 will halt program for any emergency (form, ribbon, etc.).

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	3

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 93

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Pause to allow the alignment of checks before printing the third line.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Switch 15 has been set by the operator.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Press Program Start to continue. When checks are aligned, turn off switch 15.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	4

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 95

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Pause to allow the alignment of checks before printing the fourth line.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Switch 15 has been set by the operator.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Press Program Start to continue. When checks are aligned, turn off switch 15.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	50

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	5

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 700

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

Pause to allow the alignment of checks before printing the first line.

PROBABLE CAUSE:

Switch 15 has been set by the operator.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Press Program Start to continue. When checks are aligned, turn off switch 15.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
REGISTER CHECK NO XXXXX
DOES NOT AGREE WITH
THIS RUN CHECK
NO XXXXX

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 802

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
The final check number from the payroll register stored on disk does not agree with the final check number from this run.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Additional check numbers were used.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
The difference must be accounted for in rewritten checks. If too few checks were written, attempt to write the missing checks by reexecuting the program using the reprinting option, switch zero. If this fails, notify your supervisor.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	52

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R.Klick

MESSAGE TYPED: CHECK NUMBERS AGREE.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 802

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: Nothing

PROBABLE CAUSE: End-of-job routine

RECOVERY PROCEDURES: None

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY05

PROGRAMMER NAME C. R. Click

MESSAGE TYPED:

REGISTER TOTALS xxxxxxxx. xxxxxxxx.
CHECK TOTALS xxxxxxxx. xxxxxxxx.
DIFFERENCES xxxxxxxx. xxxxxxxx.

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT Next

Next in sequence.

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG: Printout of:
1. Disk-stored register totals.
2. Totals accumulated during the run.
and
3. Differences between the two

PROBABLE CAUSE:

End of job.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

Nonzero differences must be accounted for and corrected.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	54

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

PROGRAM NAME: Check Writing	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY05
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

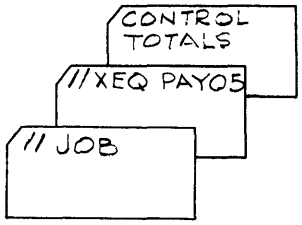
	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Checks	—	Checks

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH 0	SWITCH 14	SWITCH 15
	UP ✓	UP ✓	UP ✓
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS

Switch 0 is used to make checks reprint when they are not correct.
Switch 14 is used to set the maximum check amount.
Switch 15 is used to set the check number to start with, and to stop the system to align the printer.



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1. Control totals from file D.
2. Disk must be payroll disk from files.

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1. Paychecks to employees
2. Disk of control totals to be used with PAY06

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY06: CHECK REGISTER

Accounting Controls

Plant total (net) from payroll register is balanced to total on check register, and check register total (net $) is balanced to adding machine tape of checks.

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	56

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY06

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:
CHECK CC1 AND
CC80 ON FIRST CARD

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

0	0	0	1

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT 99999

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:
1. Card column 1 has an invalid plant number.
or
2. Card column 80 is not zero.

PROBABLE CAUSE:
Either a blank card or a data card has been placed in front of deck.

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:
Clear the card reader. Place a proper header card in the front of the deck. Ready the reader and press Program Start on the console.

COMMENTS:

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

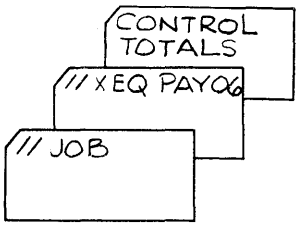
PROGRAM NAME: Check Register	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY06
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	Standard	1	Standard

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	Payroll				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH None	SWITCH	SWITCH
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT: 1. Disk & control totals from PAY05

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT: 1. Check register to payroll section
2. Control totals to file D
3. Disk is returned to storage

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

PAY09: 941 REPORT

Accounting Controls

941 total per plant (Gross $) is balanced to general ledger.

IBM 1130 ERROR RECOVERY SHEET

JOB Payroll System

PROGRAM NAME PAY09

PROGRAMMER NAME C.R. Klick

MESSAGE TYPED:

NONE

PAUSE – DISPLAYED IN ACCUM:

N	O	N	E

AFTER PAUSE, CONTROL TRANSFERS TO STATEMENT None

DESCRIPTION OF WHAT IS WRONG:

None

PROBABLE CAUSE:

None

RECOVERY PROCEDURES:

None

COMMENTS:

None

SCORESHEET

DATE								
INITIALS								

Section	Subsections		Page
35	20	20	60

IBM 1130 MACHINE SETUP SHEET

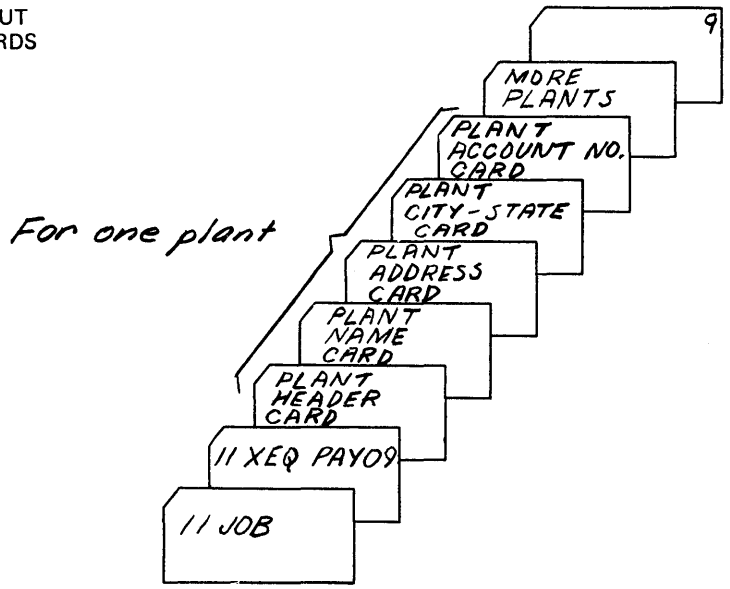
PROGRAM NAME: 941 REPORT	PROGRAM NUMBER: PAY09
PROGRAM DESCRIPTION:	APPROXIMATE RUNNING TIME:

	TYPE OF PAPER	NO. OF COPIES	CARRIAGE TAPE
PRINTER	941 FORMS		941 TAPE

	DRIVE NUMBER:	0	1	2	3	4
DISKS	CARTRIDGE ID:	PAYROLL				

SWITCH SETTINGS	SWITCH NONE	SWITCH	SWITCH
	UP	UP	UP
	DOWN	DOWN	DOWN

INPUT CARDS



SOURCE OF INPUT:
1- Plant information cards from file E
2- Payroll disk from storage

DISPOSITION OF OUTPUT:
1- 941 report to government
2- Disk is returned to storage
3- Plant information cards to file E

FOR PAUSES AND ERROR MESSAGES SEE ERROR RECOVERY SHEETS

Section 40: CONVERSION

CONTENTS

Introduction 40.01.00
Planning for Conversion 40.10.00
Preparing for Conversion 40.20.00
Conversion Methods 40.30.00

INTRODUCTION

For each application, there will come a day when all your programs are written and tested, and you will be ready to convert from your old system to the new.

Will you be ready? Not unless you have planned and prepared for conversion. Conversion involves three major elements, of which the conversion itself is the last step.

PLANNING FOR CONVERSION

As has been stressed, the first step is planning. This involves two basic items:

1. Make a schedule indicating when you will start conversion of each application and when conversion will be complete. After you have completed conversion of your first application, you will have a better feel for what is involved, and will want to review the schedule for the remaining areas. You may also want to reevaluate the conversion techniques you chose originally.

2. Decide which conversion technique you will use for each application area. As above, you will want to periodically reexamine your decisions as you become more experienced with each technique.

PREPARING FOR CONVERSION

After making up conversion schedules and choosing techniques, you should be able to see what must be done to prepare for the actual conversion. Ask yourself these questions:

1. Is the old system documented accurately and completely? (See Section 10.) If it isn't, a smooth conversion will be difficult.

2. Can the controls of the two systems be compared? If not, it will be difficult to compare the two systems. The new system should have the same controls as the old, and you may even want to add controls to the old system to ease conversion. Such controls as grand totals, subtotals, document counts, etc., will bring quick attention to discrepancies between the two systems.

3. Is everyone who is involved in the conversion familiar with both the old and new systems? Misunderstandings regarding the differences between the old and new can seriously interfere with and delay the successful completion of even the best planned conversion effort. Communications should be maintained with the people involved during the entire application design and program development phases. A few weeks before the conversion period, all those who will be involved indirectly or directly in preparing input or using output from the new system should be taught both systems, in general--and their particular areas of responsibility, in detail.

CONVERSION METHODS

There are three common methods for conversion:

1. Parallel operation. With this method, the same transactions are entered into both the old and the new systems, and the controls are compared. This process is continued over a predetermined (usually short) period of time, until a responsible executive is satisfied that the new results are accurate.

Make sure that the time period of parallel operation is one during which a wide variety of transactions occur. Large volume is not important, but variety is, since you want to test as many aspects of the new systems as possible. Pick a slow time in your business cycle to effect conversion.

Before starting parallel operations, obtain a clear understanding of what is to be checked, and by whom. Since additional personnel or man-hours will be needed during this period, avoid conflicts with vacation and holiday schedules.

As far ahead of the parallel period as possible, the personnel who will be preparing the input cards for the new system should gain experience in using the new input document and card formats. This is one of the most common areas of difficulty, and many "computer" mistakes are eventually traced back to faulty document preparation, accumulation of controls, or card punching. Often it is possible to use new formats exclusively some time before the computer system arrives, by preparing cards in the computer-required formats and then reproducing them into the old formats for use by the current system.

Parallel operations often encounter problems that result from significant differences between the procedures used in the old system and those in the new. It may be quite difficult to compare results produced by the two systems, since the important totals in the new system may not have been prepared previously. Or you may find it possible to print reports in a desirable sequence which is not feasible currently, but which will make it impractical to cross-check line-items against reports in the old sequence.

Another problem inherent in parallel operations is the doubled probability of errors. There are twice as many chances for errors to occur, and when making up a schedule, you must consider the time spent in tracking errors down and deciding which system, if either, was right.

2. Pilot Operation. In pilot as in parallel operation, an application is run under both the old and the new systems. The difference lies in selecting only one or a few easily observed locations or departments within the company, and performing the operation only for those sections rather than for the entire company. The same care must be taken in setting up controls, scheduling the period during which the pilot operation is to take place, and training those who prepare the input. In regard to this last problem, the pilot method offers a training ground for those who prepare and punch the data, by allowing different people to get experience every day or every few hours.

Care should be taken in determining which part of the job is selected for pilot running. It should be completely independent and self-contained, if possible. Therefore, pilot operations may be the ideal choice for organizations that are divided into fairly independent units or locations. In any case, the effect of the pilot run on departments other than the data processing department must be carefully analyzed, and those who are affected should be notified well ahead of time.

Again, you must carefully establish who is to do what and when, if an adequate analysis of the progress and success of the operation is to be made.

3. One-time cutover. As of a given date, the old system is discontinued and the new system is put into operation. Careful planning is necessary to make the transition smooth. For one thing, files can be built up during a fairly extensive period beforehand and checked with control figures for accuracy and completeness while being created. A master file of customers can be card-punched during the month before the preparation of statements. Alternatively, only new customers' cards can be punched, while operations are performed on the old file to convert them into the new format. Then both the old and new cards are merged at month end to create an updated master file ready for use by the new system. It is often desirable to write one-time programs to do these file conversions. Whether the computer or other equipment is used, time must be scheduled for the coding or procedure writing, as well as for the operation itself.

Where some data is to be recoded, or coded for the first time, as in the assignment of a new or better set of customer numbers, you should get the job done and checked out in advance.

Another way of smoothing the cutover is to maintain control procedures that will be required for both the old and new systems some time before the critical date. This will eliminate the possibility of errors in the execution of these procedures.

Cutovers are never truly "one-time" in the sense that no parallel or pilot operations are performed. The difference is in the time at which these operations are done. With the cutover method, parallel and pilot operation take place with data that has already been processed. For instance, after an accounts receivable procedure has been processed under a current system, the entire procedure is run again on the computer. Controls are checked and errors are cleared up. The accounts receivable may then be run once more on the computer, and this process may be repeated, perhaps over more than one month, until management is satisfied that it is running correctly.

Although some double manpower requirements may be eliminated by using the one-time cutover method, extra man-hours will still be needed--for example, when a weekend immediately precedes the cutover date, or when card files are being converted from one format to another.

* * * *

You can see that no one of the conversion methods discussed here stands alone and independent of the others. Use the elements of each that suit your situation, but develop a realistic plan that will consider these factors:

1. Manpower must be available at the right time to manipulate old data into new formats.
2. Control procedures must be developed and, if possible, tested ahead of time.
3. Detailed document preparation and card-punching procedures must be developed, and a reasonable amount of time must be reserved to practice them before conversion.
4. Procedures must be written for the one-time aspects of the job, and manpower must be available at the right time to do so.
5. The word must be spread; education for those in other departments must be done thoughtfully and carefully.

It is almost impossible to plan a conversion too carefully.

Section 45: 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

CONTENTS

Introduction 45.01.00
The 1131 CPU 45.05.00
Console Printer and Keyboard 45.05.10
Data Switches 45.05.20
Console Display Lamps 45.05.30
Disk Storage 45.10.00
Printers 45.15.00
Card Readers and Punches 45.20.00
Paper Tape Readers and Punches 45.25.00
Plotter 45.30.00
Graphic Display 45.35.00
Optical Readers 45.40.00
Storage Access Channel 45.45.00
Teleprocessing 45.50.00
The 1130 Configurator 45.55.00

INTRODUCTION

The IBM 1130 Computing System is a flexible, modular, and modern data processing system. In capability, it can range from a small paper-tape-oriented system to a large, multiple-disk system, with a powerful complement of input/output devices.

This section describes the system components in general terms, stressing their potential use, the various possible combinations of units, and their corresponding throughput capabilities. For more detail see IBM 1130 Functional Characteristics (A26-5881) and IBM 1130 Input/Output Units (A26-5890).

1131 CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT

The 1131 CPU is available with three options:

- With or without disk storage
- 3.6- or 2.2-microsecond core storage access time
- 4096, 8192, 16,384, or 32,768 words (16 bits) of core storage

Although this yields 16 possible combinations, only 9 are currently available, as shown in Figure 45.1.

All 1131 CPUs, regardless of model, have as standard components:

- A console printer
- A console keyboard
- 16 data switches
- Console display lamps
- Processing functions (index registers, indirect addressing, multiply/divide, etc.)

	Without Disk Storage	With Disk Storage						
	3.6 Microsecond	3.6 Microsecond				2.2 Microsecond		
Core Storage Capacity	4K	8K	4K	8K	16K	32K	8K	16K	32K
Model Designation	1A	1B	2A	2B	2C	2D	3B	3C	3D

Figure 45.1. Available 1131 Processing Unit Configurations

The first four components are described below in more detail, since they may be directly used by the programmer.

Console Printer and Keyboard

The console printer is a modified SELECTRIC® typewriter printer and can provide output at 15.5 characters per second. If it is the primary (only) printing device on the 1130, it must be used for all printed output; however, if the system includes an 1132 or 1403 Printer, the console printer will normally be used only for error messages, operator instructions, etc.

The console keyboard resembles a standard typewriter keyboard and allows the 1130 operator to enter data into the system.

Because it is a manually oriented device, the use of the keyboard will usually be limited to small quantities of data (today's date, starting check number, etc.), with the card or paper tape readers used for more voluminous data.

Data Switches

Mounted on the front face of the console printer is a row of 16 toggle switches, called data switches. They may be used by the programmer for the entry of yes-or-no type information into the system. For example, one payroll program might handle both factory workers and office workers, with each group processed separately. The program could be written to read, say, data switch 6, treating the input time cards as factory workers if that switch is on, and as office workers if it is off.

Other uses of the console switches are to bypass certain portions of a program, activate the FORTRAN TRACE, etc.

Console Display Lamps

Above the console printer is a panel containing a large number of indicator lamps (or lights). These lights indicate the internal status of the 1130 Computing System. While most are of little use to the average programmer, he does have access to one set of lamps: the accumulator.

The accumulator is displayed as a series of 16 numbers, in four groups of four, which are either illuminated (backlighted) or not. For example, suppose the accumulator indicates the status shown below, where the underlined numerals are lit:

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15

Since the accumulator displays a binary number, this example means that it contains 0100 1000 1000 1001, or 18569 in decimal. An easier way to represent the number is to use the hexadecimal notation, where each group of four "bits" is taken as a hexadecimal number, obtaining 4889. (For further detail on number systems, see Appendix A of A26-5881.)

The programmer can use the accumulator display feature by appending a four-digit number (from 0001 to 9999) to the FORTRAN PAUSE or STOP statements. If the programmer inserts a PAUSE 3322 statement in his program, the CPU will pause and display 3322 in the accumulator (as a hexadecimal number) when it executes the PAUSE statement:

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15

If the program contains many PAUSEs, each may be given a different number, and the operator can determine which PAUSE caused the CPU to halt its operations.

This facility is useful for indicating error conditions, tracing progress through a program, etc.

IBM 1131 Central Processing Unit with disk drive

DISK STORAGE

Models 2 and 3 of the 1131 CPU contain a disk storage drive as an integral part of the console unit. In addition, these models may contain up to four additional disk drives, mounted in separate enclosures (the IBM 2310 Disk Storage).

Each disk drive will hold one IBM 2315 Disk Cartridge. Because the cartridges are removable, the user may have an unlimited amount of data on them; only one, however, may be mounted in a disk drive at any one time.

The 2315 cartridge consists of a single metal plate, coated on both sides with magnetic material and enclosed in a plastic container. When mounted in an activated disk drive, the metal plate is driven through a clutch mechanism at 1500 revolutions per minute. The recording plate never leaves its container, as it does in the case of some other disk devices.

Each cartridge is divided into 200 cylinders, in concentric circles, with each cylinder further divided into eight sectors — four on the top surface and four on the bottom. Since each of the 1600 sectors contains 320 words, each disk cartridge can hold 512,000 words.

Data is read or written on the disk by two read-write heads attached to a movable arm. One setting of the arm gives the 1130 access to one cylinder, or eight sectors. One head reads (or writes) the top four sectors; the other, the bottom four sectors. The two heads cannot move independently, since they are fixed to the same arm.

Because one setting of the arm gives access to only one cylinder, the arm must be moved in order to read or write on a different cylinder. For example, to read from cylinder 10 and then write on cylinder 15, the arm must move, or "seek", from cylinder 10 to cylinder 15. Since the arm moves in steps of one or two cylinders, this would require two 2-cylinder moves (from 10 to 12, and from 12 to 14) and one 1-cylinder move (from 14 to 15).

Each move, whether one or two cylinders in length, takes 15 milliseconds (0.015 seconds). A five-cylinder "seek", as shown above, would take 45 milliseconds (15+15+15). A six-cylinder seek would take the same length of time.

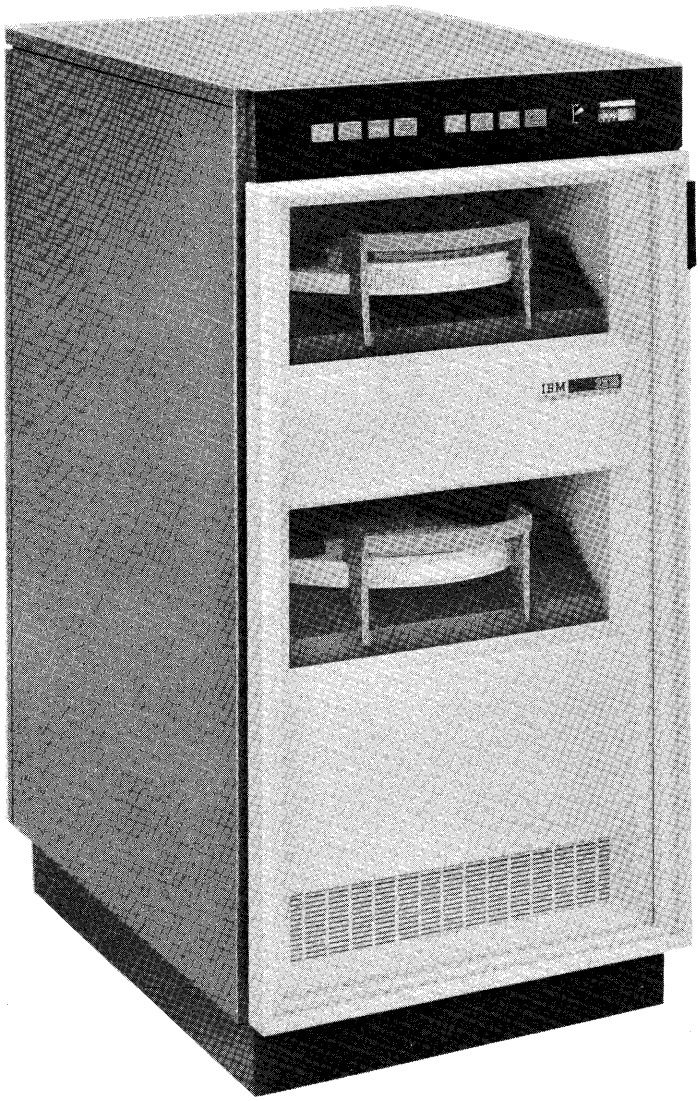
Because this can be a relatively lengthy operation (compared with other 1130 functions), you should attempt to minimize the need for disk arm movement. Many hints on how to do this are given later in the manual (Sections 55, 60, 65, 70, 80, 85, and 90).

Having reached the desired cylinder, the arm takes another 25 milliseconds to stabilize. After the stabilization period, data may be read or written; because the disk is rotating, however, it will be quite unusual for the desired sector to be passing under the read/write head at the precise time you want it. You will have to wait an average of half a revolution (20 milliseconds) for the sector to reach the heads, and then 10 more milliseconds for it to actually be read or written.

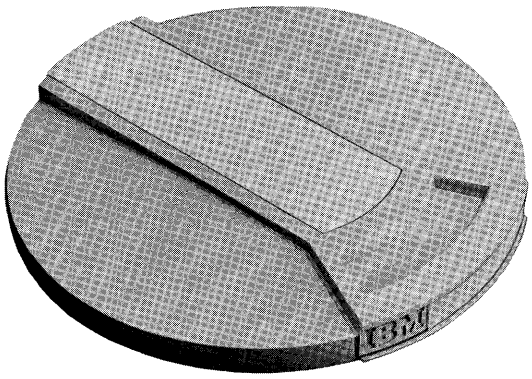
Figure 45.2 gives some examples of how long it takes to move n cylinders, then read one sector.

Move This Many Cylinders	Seek Time	Stabilization Time	Average Rotational Delay Time	Read or Write	Total
None	0	0	20	10	30
1 or 2	15	25	20	10	70
3 or 4	30	25	20	10	85
5 or 6	45	25	20	10	100
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
199 or 200 (maximum)	1500	25	20	10	1555

Figure 45.2.



IBM 2310 Disk Storage Drive



IBM 2315 Disk Cartridge

PRINTERS

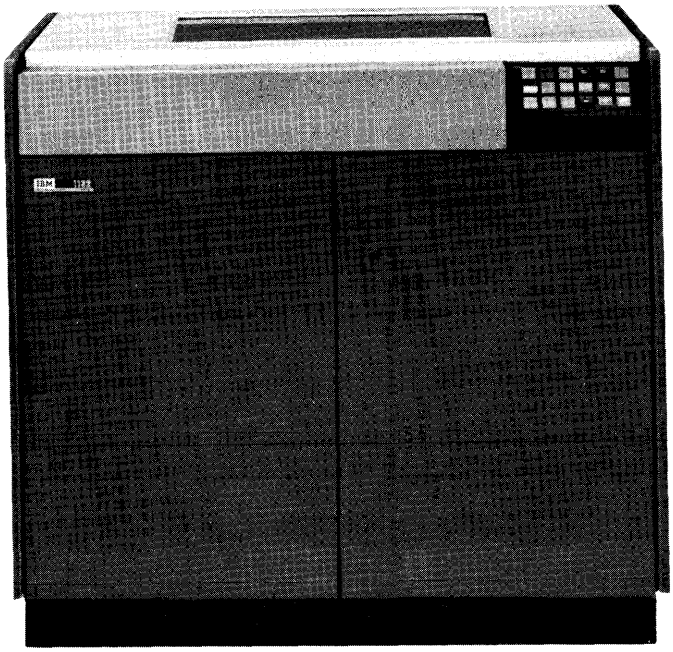
In addition to the console printer, which is standard, the 1130 system can be configurated with four combinations of line printers:

No line printer
An IBM 1132 Printer
An IBM 1403 Printer
Both an 1132 and 1403 Printer

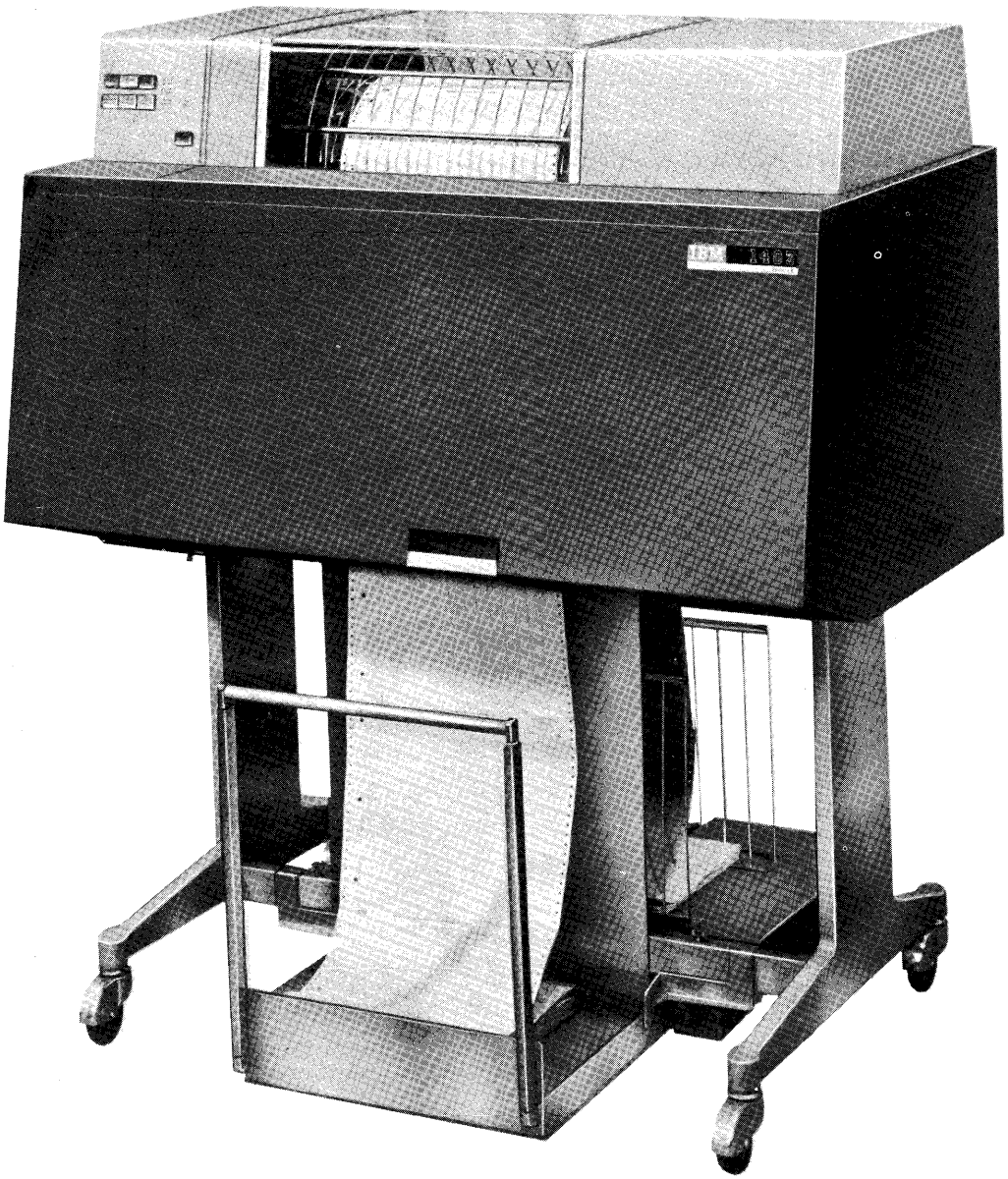
The 1132 and the 1403 Printers have many mechanical differences, but the primary difference is in printing speed. Both print a line at a time, 120 characters wide; both have a carriage control tape that controls the vertical movement of forms.

The 1132 has a rated speed of 110 lines per minute when printing purely numeric and 80 lines per minute when printing alphameric information.

The 1403 prints both numeric and alphameric information at the same speed; 340 lines per minute (maximum) in the case of the 1403 Model 6, 600 lines per minute (maximum) for the Model 7.



IBM 1132 Printer



IBM 1403 Printer

CARD READERS AND PUNCHES

Five card readers and/or punches are available for attachment to the 1130 system.

The IBM 1142 Card Read Punch, Model 6, reads and punches cards, with all input from a single hopper. It reads at a rated speed of 300 cards per minute, and punches at 80 card columns per second.

The IBM 1442 Card Read Punch, Model 7, is similar to the Model 6, but faster, reading at 400 cards per minute and punching at 160 columns per second.

The IBM 1442 Card Punch, Model 5, cannot read cards; it can only punch. Its punching speed is 160 columns per second.

The IBM 2501 Card Reader, Model A1, will read cards at a rated maximum speed of 600 per minute. It is not able to punch cards.

The IBM 2501 Card Reader, Model A2, is similar to the A1, but operates at 1000 cards per minute (maximum).

Disregarding speeds for the moment, there are four combinations of card readers and/or punches for the 1130:

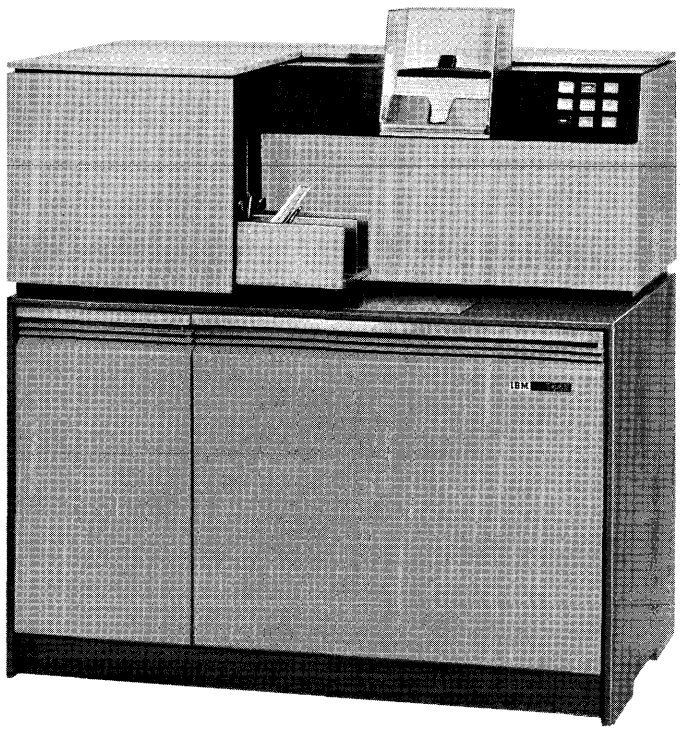
1. No card readers or card punches
2. An IBM 1442 Card Read Punch
3. An IBM 2501 Card Reader and the IBM 1442 Card Punch, Model 5
4. An IBM 2501 Card Reader and an IBM 1442 Card Read Punch

Aside from speed, the main difference between combinations is capability — the number of card paths available.

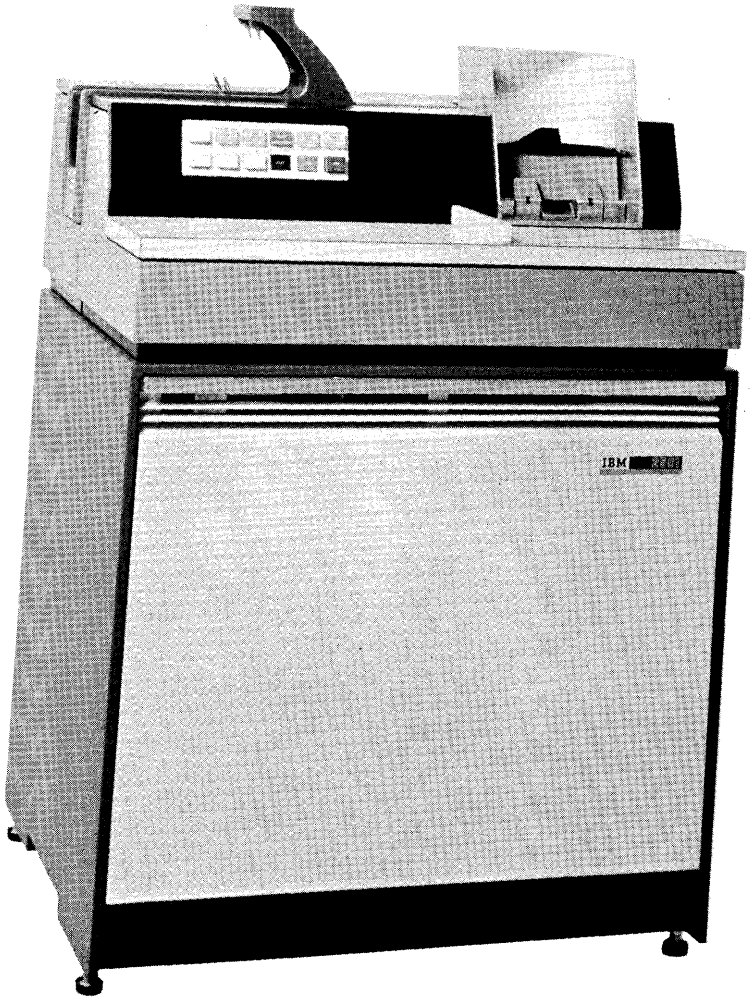
Configuration 2 (1442 Model 6 or 7) gives the user only one card path. This means that cards to be read and cards to be punched must both be placed in the same input hopper in the proper order.

Configuration 3 (2501 and 1442 Model 5) has separate paths for reading and punching, which simplifies programming and operating in certain types of applications.

Configuration 4 (2501 and 1442 Model 6 or 7) also has two card paths, differing from configuration 3 in that one path can both read and punch. In certain applications this can be very useful. For example, you could put a master card deck in one reader and a detail deck in the other reader, eliminating the need to collate (merge) the two together.



IBM 1442 Card Read Punch

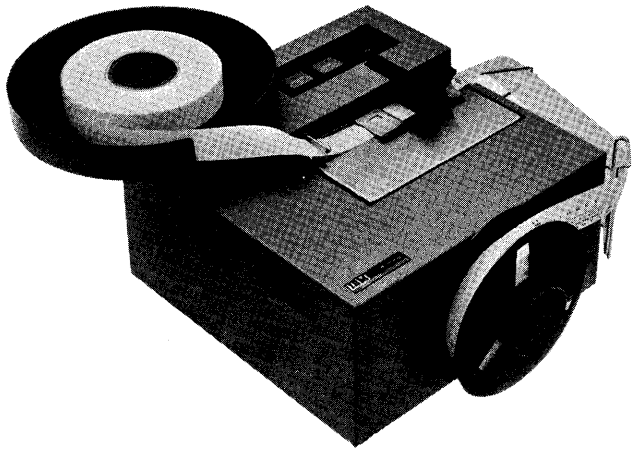


IBM 2501 Card Reader

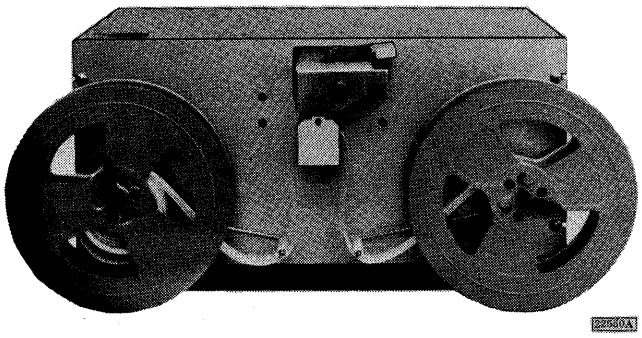
PAPER TAPE READERS AND PUNCHES

The 1130 system may include the IBM 1134 Paper Tape Reader and/or the IBM 1055 Paper Tape Punch.

The 1134 reads punched tape at 60 characters per second; the 1055 punches tape at 15 characters per second.



IBM 1055 Paper Tape Punch



IBM 1134 Paper Tape Reader

PLOTTER

For hard-copy graphic output, the IBM 1627 Plotter may be attached to the 1130 system. Bar charts, flowcharts, organization charts, engineering drawings, and maps, in addition to graphs or drawings that depict financial, scientific, or technical data, can be plotted on the 1627 Plotter.

Two models are available:

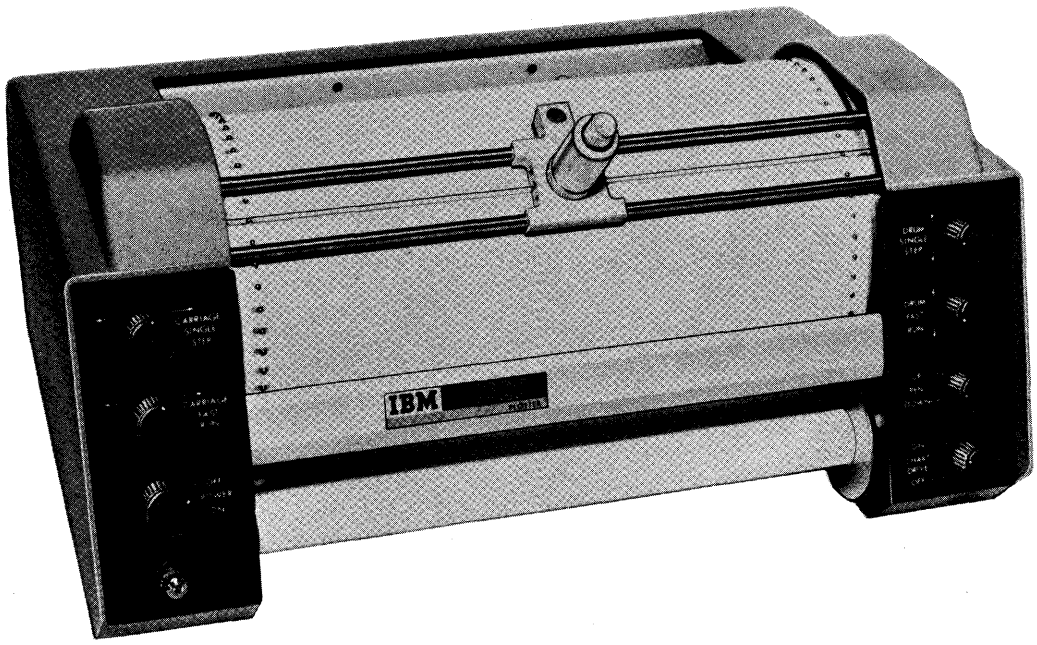
Model 1

Plotting area:	11 inches by 120 feet
Step size:	1/100-inch increments
Speed:	300 steps per second

Model 2

Plotting area:	29-1/2 inches by 120 feet
Step size:	1/100-inch increments
Speed:	200 steps per second

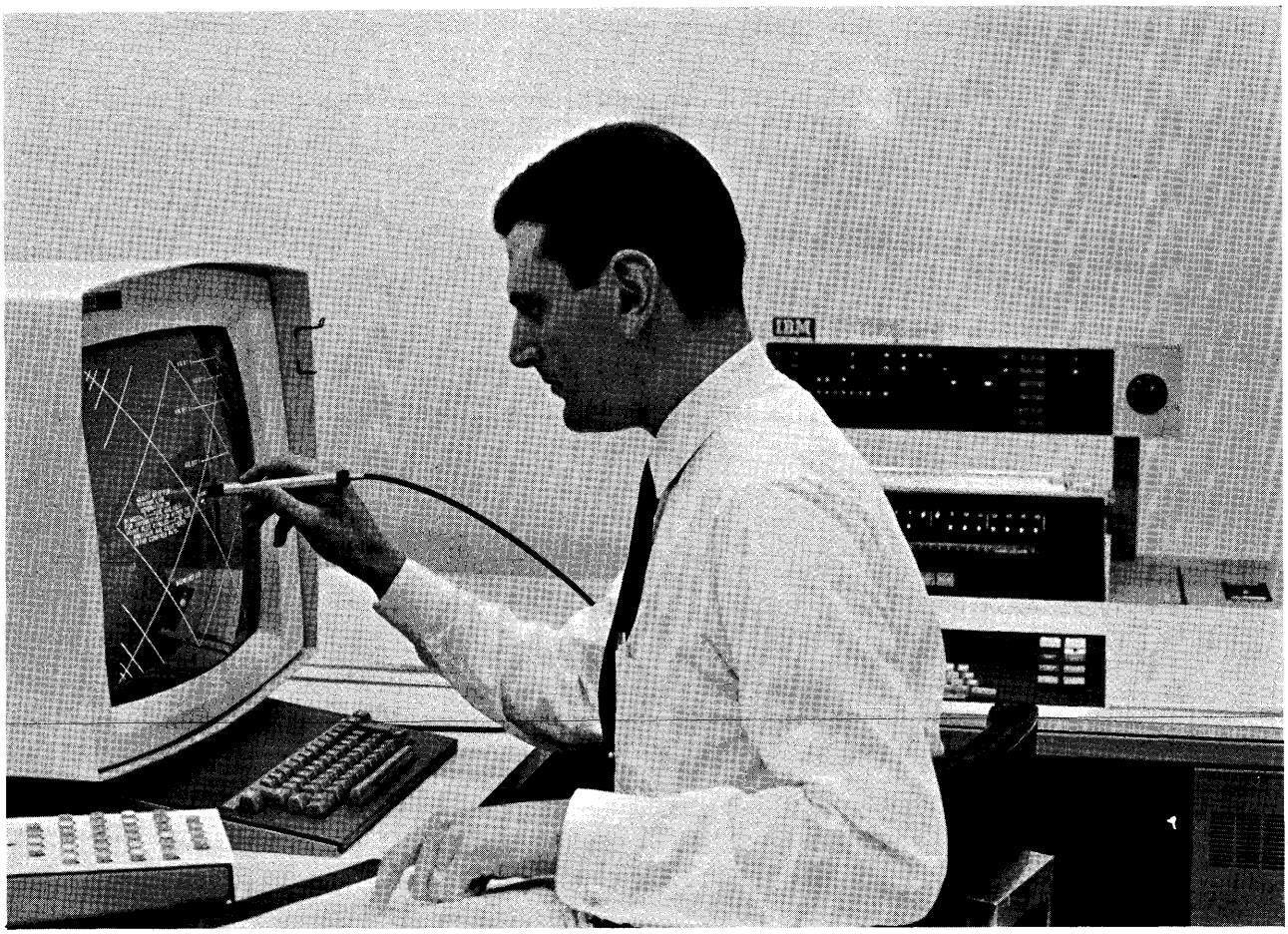
The 1627 can plot curves, straight lines, alphameric headings, etc., by a series of steps in which either the pen, the drum, or both, move in 1/100-inch increments.



IBM 1627 Plotter

GRAPHIC DISPLAY

A second means of graphic display may be obtained by attachment of the IBM 2250 to the 1130 system. The 2250 is an electronic (cathode ray tube) device, and therefore capable of faster speeds than the 1627 Plotter, a mechanical device. A "light pen" enables the operator to communicate with the system by interacting with the display on the face of the tube.

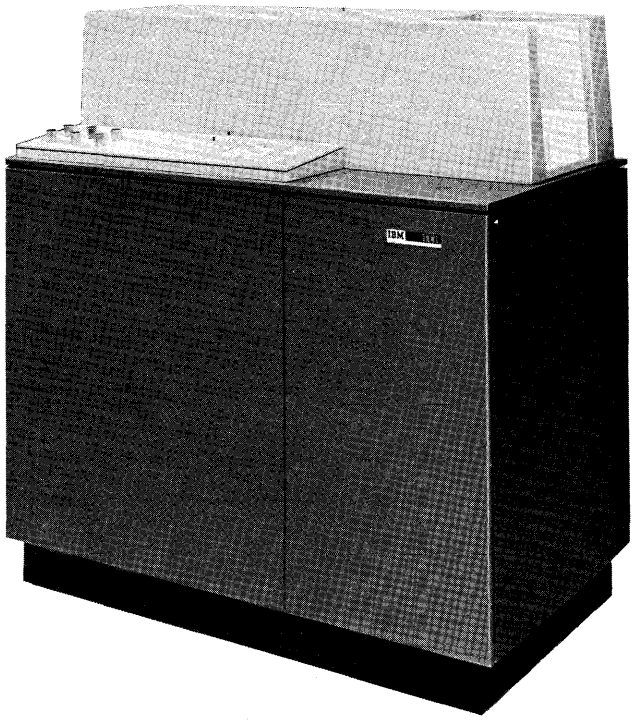


IBM 2250 Display Unit

OPTICAL READERS

The IBM 1231 Optical Mark Page Reader reads positional marks made by an ordinary lead pencil on paper documents, such as test scoring sheets, etc. The data contained on these documents can be read into the 1130 system at a rate of 2000 sheets per hour.

The 1231 is especially suited for applications such as examination grading, surveys, order entry, etc., where variable information may be entered by hand on preprinted forms.



IBM 1231 Optical Mark Page Reader

STORAGE ACCESS CHANNEL

The storage access channel provides an input/output "path" that allows nonstandard components to be added to the 1130 system. These components may be IBM - supplied, or user-supplied. Since the SAC is merely a general purpose input/output channel, control of the nonstandard component must be handled by user-supplied hardware and/or programming.

TELEPROCESSING

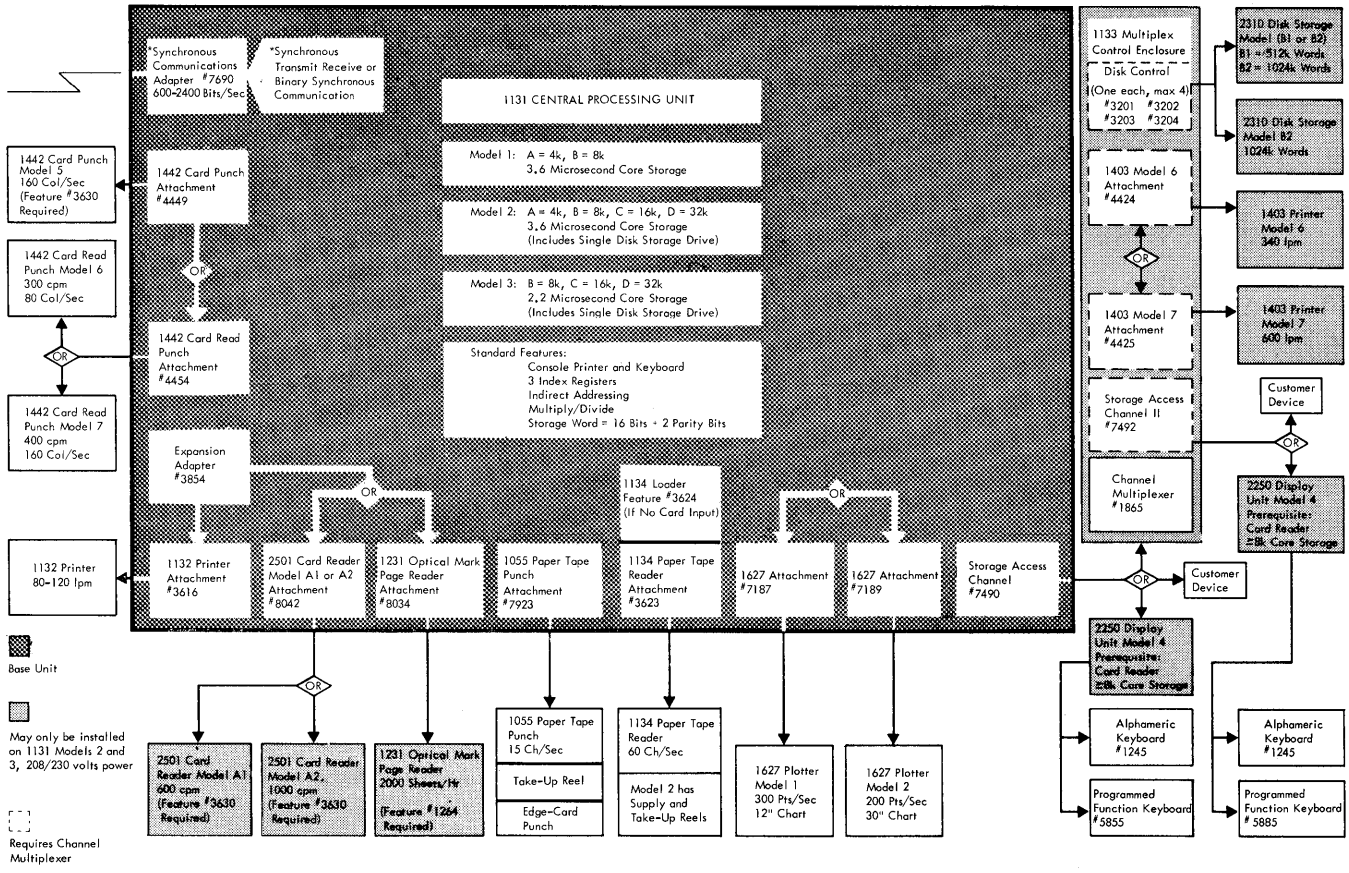
By means of the Synchronous Communications Adapter (SCA), the 1130 may communicate, over telephone lines, with another 1130, an IBM System/360, and/or other devices.

Section	Subsections		Page
45	55	00	01

THE 1130 CONFIGURATOR

The accompanying schematic is a copy of the 1130 Configurator (A26-5915).

1130 Configurator



Section 50: 1130 DISK MONITOR SYSTEM

CONTENTS

GENERAL 50.01.00

GENERAL

This section consists of a general discussion of the 1130 Disk Monitor System and serves to introduce the next three sections:

- Job Management - - how the Monitor helps you achieve smooth, orderly, automatic transition from each job to the next.
- Disk Management - - how the Monitor helps you manage the disk and use it efficiently.
- Core Storage Management - - how the Monitor allows you to make the most effective use of the available core storage.

If your 1130 does not have disk capability, you cannot use the Monitor, and you may skip over this and the succeeding three sections.

The 1130 Disk Monitor System is a disk-oriented operating system that allows the user to assemble, compile, and/or execute individual programs or groups of programs with a minimum of operator intervention. Jobs to be performed are stacked and separated by control records that identify the operation to be performed.

The Monitor System consists of five distinct but interdependent programs (see Figure 50.1):

Supervisor Program
Disk Utility Program
Assembler Program
FORTRAN Compiler
Subroutine Library

The supervisor program provides the necessary control for the stacked-job concept. It reads and analyzes the monitor control records, and transfers control to the proper program.

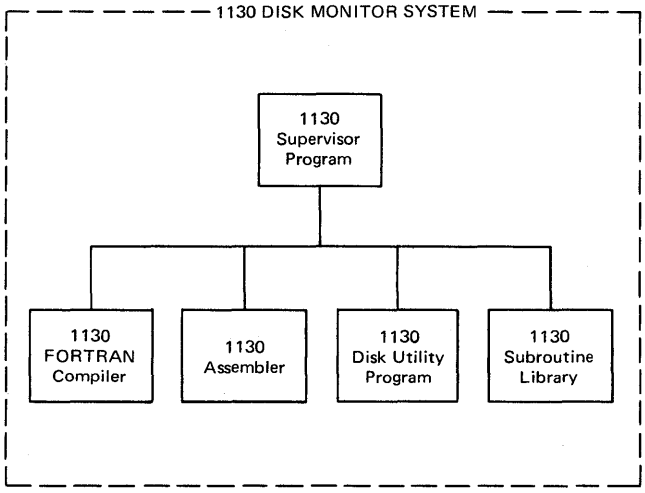


Figure 50.1. 1130 Disk Monitor System

The Disk Utility Program is a group of routines designed to assist the user in storing information (data and programs) on the disk, and in retrieving and using the information stored.

The Assembler program converts user-written symbolic-language source programs into machine-language object programs.

The FORTRAN compiler converts user-written FORTRAN-language source programs into machine-language object programs.

The Subroutine Library contains subroutines for data input/output, data conversion, and arithmetic functions.

The Monitor System coordinates program operations by establishing a communications area in core storage that is used by the various programs making up the Monitor System. It also guides the transfer of control between the various monitor programs and the user's programs. Operation is continuous and setup time is minimized, thereby effecting substantial time saving and allowing greater programming flexibility. The complete Monitor System resides on disk storage, but only those routines or programs required at any one time are transferred to core storage for execution. This feature minimizes the core storage requirements and permits segmenting of long programs.

In addition to providing you with an efficient job-to-job transition system, the 1130 Disk Monitor System significantly reduces the amount of programming you must do. This is made possible through the sharing of common subroutines by unrelated programs. For example, input/output or conversion operations are required by most user programs, whether the programs are written in the Assembler Language or in FORTRAN. IBM provides a library of subroutines to handle such operations as an integral part of the Monitor System.

The Disk Utility Program (DUP) facilitates development of a library of user programs. Programs can be stored on cards or paper tape, as is customary in installations without disk storage. With disk storage, programs can also be stored directly on the disk. The disk-stored programs and data are referred to by name when called for use. The Monitor System, through the use of a table known as the Location Equivalence Table (LET), can locate any user program, subroutine, or file by a table search for the name. Stored with the name is the amount of disk storage required by the program or data.

Any program that is added to the user's disk-stored programs is usually placed at the end of

the other programs. If a program is deleted, the remaining program(s) are moved up on the disk in order to utilize disk storage effectively.

Detailed descriptions of the 1130 Monitor System and its components may be found in the Systems Reference Library (SRL). For Version 1 see IBM 1130 Disk Monitor System (C26-3750). For Version 2 see IBM 1130 Disk Monitor System, Version 2, Programming and Operator's Guide (C26-3717).

Section 55: THE MONITOR-JOB MANAGEMENT

CONTENTS

Introduction 55.01.00
Job and Subjob 55.10.00
Stacked Jobs or the Input Stream 55.20.00
Disk Cartridge ID Checking 55.30.00

INTRODUCTION

The first function of the 1130 Disk Monitor System is Job Management -- helping you, the user, achieve a smooth, orderly transition from one job to the next. The Monitor is designed to accept a continuous stream of input, in the form of jobs and subjobs.

JOB AND SUBJOB

A job is defined as:

- A JOB card and all the following control records, source programs, object programs, and data, up to, but not including, the next JOB card.
- The processing that takes place from the detection of one JOB card (or paper tape record) until the detection of another JOB card.

A subjob is defined as:

- A monitor control record and all the following control records, source programs, object programs, and data, up to, but not including, the next monitor control record.
- The processing that takes place from the detection of one monitor control record (such as DUP card, FOR card, etc.) to the detection of another monitor control record.

A job is an independent unit of processing; a subjob is a unit of processing that is dependent on the subjob(s) preceding and/or following it. The successful completion of the job depends on the successful completion of each subjob within it. In some cases, a subjob is not attempted if the preceding subjobs have not been successfully completed.

The JOB control record defines the start of a new job. It causes the Supervisor to perform the job initialization procedure, which includes:

1. Initialization of constants, parameters, etc.
2. Setting of the temporary indicator if a T is present in column 8 of the control record. If set, all programs or data files stored in the User Area by DUP during the current job will be deleted automatically at the end of the job (that is, at the beginning of the next job).
3. The identification of the cartridge(s) to be used during the current job.
4. The definition of the cartridge on which the Core Image Buffer for the current job is to be found. Core image programs can be built faster if the CIB is assigned to a cartridge other than the systems cartridge. (This applies only to systems with two or more disk drives.)
5. The definition of the cartridge whose Working Storage is to be used by the Monitor system. (This applies only to systems with two or more disk drives.) Although all cartridges contain a Working Storage area, only one will be used by the Monitor (for its own purposes). Core image programs can be built faster if the system Working Storage is on some cartridge other than the systems cartridge. They can be built even faster if the CIB, the system Working Storage, and the monitor system itself are on separate cartridges. Assemblies are also faster if Working Storage is on a separate cartridge.
6. The starting of a new page. A skip to channel 1 is executed on the 1132 Printer or 1403 Printer; ten consecutive carriage returns are made on the console printer.

STACKED JOBS OR THE INPUT STREAM

Figure 55.1 shows a schematic view of a stack of three jobs:

JOB 1

- Translate an Assembler Language source program into an object program (subjob 1)
- Store the assembled object program (subjob 2)
- Execute the program (subjob 3)

JOB 2

- Store a program that had earlier been dumped onto cards (subjob 1)

JOB 3

- Compile a FORTRAN program (subjob 1)
- Execute it (subjob 2)

Here, the reason for the job/subjob concept can be seen clearly. If there were an error in subjob 1 of job 1, the assembly, you would not want to continue with the next two subjobs. The results would be meaningless.

If those first three items had been made jobs rather than subjobs, the Monitor would have tried to perform the second two tasks even though the first had failed. However, because they are all subjobs, an error condition encountered in any one subjob would cause the Monitor to abandon the remaining subjobs.

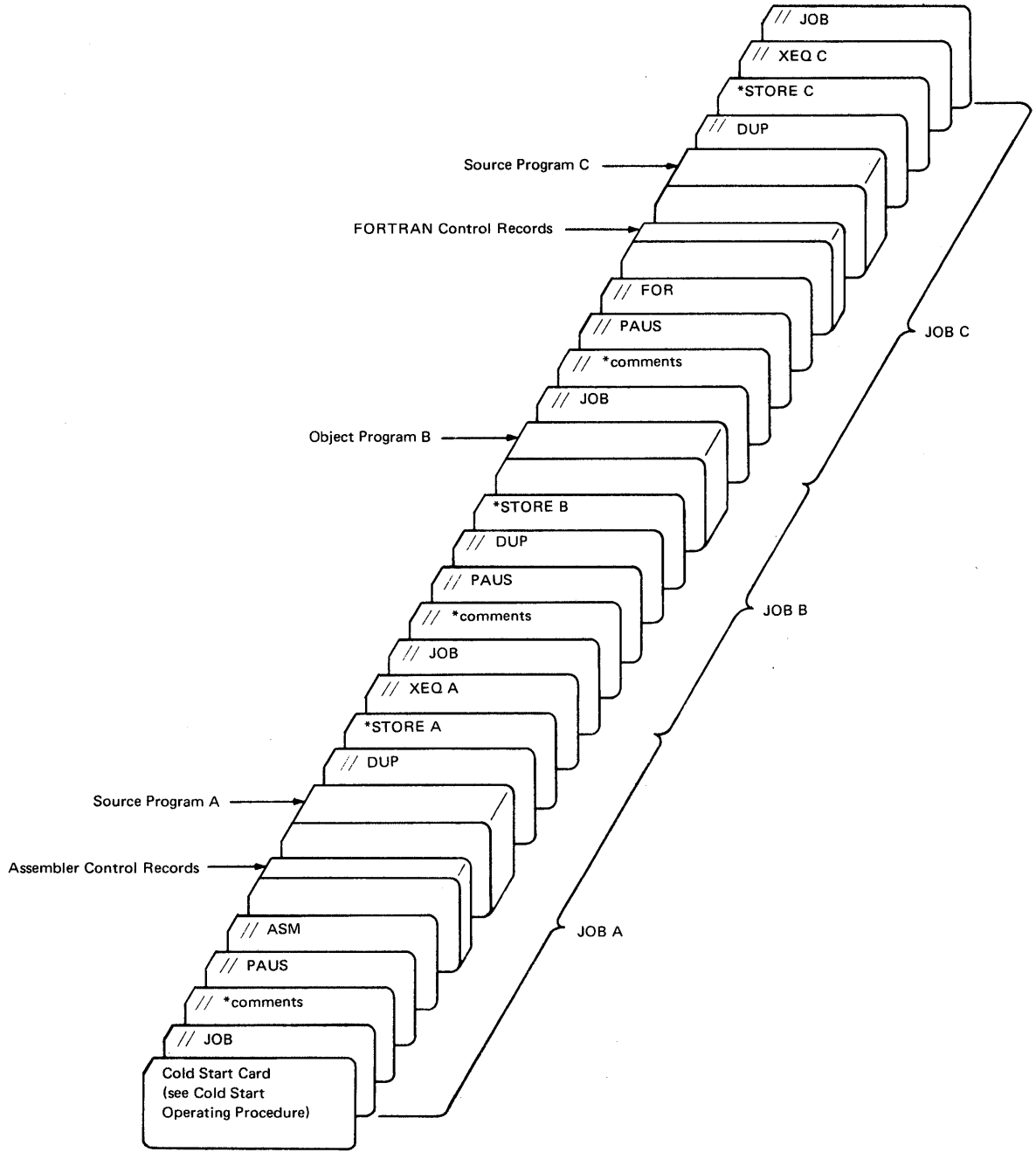


Figure 55.1. Stacked job input

DISK CARTRIDGE ID CHECKING

A second assist given you by the Monitor system is the checking of disk cartridge ID numbers. Every cartridge must have an ID number; if you so desire, you can request that the Monitor check each cartridge for a certain ID and alert you if the desired cartridges are not mounted.

For example, suppose you have placed a payroll data file on a particular cartridge, and have identified it as cartridge 6066. If you punch 6066 in columns 11 through 14 of the JOB card, the Monitor will read the cartridge ID from the disk on logical drive 0, and, if it is not 6066, you will be so informed with a message.

If you don't care which cartridge is mounted (or, more likely, if you will check it yourself), those columns on the JOB card may be left blank.

Section 60: THE MONITOR-DISK MANAGEMENT

CONTENTS

Introduction 60.01.00
Disk Storage Layout 60.10.00
- Introduction 60.10.01
- Cylinder 0 ..... 60.10.10
- IBM Systems Area 60.10.20
- Working Storage (WS) 60.10.30
- User Area (UA) 60.10.40
- Fixed Area (FX) 60.10.50
- Summary 60.10.60

Increasing the Amount of Space Available to the User 60.20.00
- Introduction 60.20.01
- How Much Room Do I Have? 60.20.10
- How Can I Make More Space Available? 60.20.20
  - Cylinder 0
  - IBM System's Area
  - Fixed Area
  - User Area/Working Storage
    - I/O Subroutines for Devices Not on Your System
    - Computational Subroutines You Are Unlikely to Use
    - Seldom-Used Programs and/or Data
    - Unneeded User-Written Programs and Data
- Summary 60.20.30

The Disk Utility Program 60.30.00
- Introduction 60.30.01
- Format of Material on the Disk 60.30.10
  - Data Files
  - Programs and Subprograms
- The Most Commonly Used DUP Functions 60.30.20
  - Store a Program or Subprogram in DSF Format
  - Store a Program in DCI (Core Image) Format
  - Convert a DSF Program to DCI
  - Delete a Program or Subprogram
  - Dump a DSF Program or Subprogram and Reload It
  - Dump a DCI (Core Image) Program and Reload It
  - Dump a Data File and Reload It
  - Copy a Data File onto Another Area on Same Disk
  - Defining and Modifying the Fixed Area
- Special Options -- Multiple Disk 1130 Users 60.30.30
  - Copy a Data File onto Another Disk
  - Copy a Program onto Another Disk
  - Copy an Entire Disk onto Another Disk

INTRODUCTION

Remember, effective management can make or break a good installation. This also applies to the disk portion of your 1130. Because the disk is such an integral part of your system, it is extremely important that you have the knowledge and ability to manage it effectively. This discussion of the disk, its layout, and how the Monitor helps you use it, will give you a good start toward effective disk management.

Effective use of your disk cartridges requires a certain amount of planning, especially if the number of applications on your 1130 is high, or is expected to grow. Some control must be exercised over what gets stored on a disk, and which disk cartridge is to be used for a particular job.

Each installation requires a certain minimum number of disk cartridges:

- At least one general purpose systems cartridge, with a complete Monitor system (FORTRAN and Assembler). It should only be used for testing, one-time applications, and other odd jobs.
- On multiple disk drive systems, at least one working or scratch disk for each disk drive over and above the first.
- One disk cartridge to be used for ordering and receiving programs from IBM. Some packages are not available in card form and can be obtained only by forwarding a cartridge to the Program Information Department. PID will place the package on your cartridge and return it to you.
- One disk cartridge (as required) for each of the major IBM applications programs to be used. For example, STRESS, COGO, LP-MOSS, and others each require all or most of a disk cartridge.
- One disk cartridge for each major application area, such as payroll, accounts payable, plant scheduling, highway design, etc. In some cases, two applications must share a disk because they both use the same data file, but such dual use should be avoided whenever possible.

Mixing of different applications on the same disk may lead to several complications, especially if different programmers are involved. For example:

1. Duplicate program and data file names may occur, with resulting confusion.
2. One program may inadvertently write into the disk data area of another program.
3. The amount of Working Storage is decreased more rapidly as each application area adds programs, subprograms, etc.
4. Run times may increase as data files are pushed further apart by the continuous storing and deleting of programs, data files, etc.
5. Overall control is diminished.

Before discussing disk storage management, several terms must be defined:

Systems cartridge -- a cartridge that contains the 1130 Disk Monitor system. If your 1130 has only one disk drive, all your cartridges must be systems cartridges.

Non-systems cartridge -- a cartridge that does not contain the monitor system. As implied above, such a cartridge would be of use only in installations with two or more disk drives.

Master cartridge -- a systems cartridge that has been referenced by the cold start procedure, or by a Job card. The Monitor system on that cartridge will be the one in use until another cold start is initiated, or until a Job card is encountered that switches control to a different cartridge. Obviously, on a one-drive 1130 system, the one and only disk cartridge will be both a systems disk and the master disk.

Satellite cartridge -- any cartridge which is not the master cartridge. It may be either a systems or non-systems cartridge.

You see, then, that there is a definite distinction between these terms. A disk cartridge is either a systems or non-systems disk, depending on whether you have loaded the Monitor system onto it. On the other hand, the master/satellite split does not occur until the cartridges are placed in the drives, made ready, and a cold start performed. Then, one becomes the master, and the others, if any, become satellites.

The terminology of the disk drives themselves involves another distinction -- that of physical drives versus logical drives. Single-drive 1130 users need not concern themselves with this; their one disk drive is physical drive 0 and logical drive 0 -- there are no options.

- Each disk drive on the 1130 has a physical drive number; drive 0 is the one contained in the mainframe of the 1130; drives 1 through 4 are contained in the 2310 enclosure, a separate unit. These numbers are fixed and cannot be changed.
- Each disk drive present on the 1130 may also be given a logical drive number, which may or may not agree with its physical number. The only

restraint is that a two-drive system may only have physical and logical numbers 0 and 1; a four-drive system, 0, 1, 2, and 3; etc.

You assign logical drive numbers when you prepare a Job card. The Job card may contain a series of five four-digit numbers, representing the ID numbers of each cartridge (each cartridge must be given a four-digit ID when it is initialized). The first of the five ID's (cc 11-14) informs the Monitor that logical drive 0 is to be the drive containing the cartridge with that ID. For example, if this field contained 1234, the drive in which cartridge 1234 is mounted becomes logical drive 0. That cartridge may be physically located on any drive; its actual position does not matter.

Cartridge 1234 would also become the master cartridge, since the cartridge on logical drive 0 will always be the master.

For further detail, see the Monitor reference manual.

DISK STORAGE LAYOUT

Introduction

Conceptually, disk storage can be divided into five logical areas:

- Cylinder 0
- IBM Systems Area
- User Area
- Working Storage
- Fixed Area

The contents and use of these areas are discussed in detail in the Monitor SRL manual, and in general terms here.

Note that these areas are logical or symbolic, rather than physical areas. They are not necessarily intact or contiguous. Some of the items in one logical area may, in fact, be physically located between two items in another logical area.

The term "logical", as it is used here, denotes a system organized for ease of understanding, rather than for accurate technical detail.

Cylinder 0

This area contains certain key information that is present on every disk cartridge. The exact contents of this area differ, depending on whether the disk in question is a systems disk (in which case it contains the Monitor) or a non-systems disk; the area, however, is always present, and always occupies one cylinder, Cylinder 0.

IBM Systems Area

The IBM Systems Area is present on all disk cartridges that have been built as systems disks (that is, disk cartridges on which the Monitor system has been loaded).

This area consists of (1) a basic Monitor package of 152 sectors, which must be present, (2) two optional items, which may be removed:

FORTRAN compiler (88 sectors)

Assembler (32 sectors)

and (3) the Core Image Buffer (16 sectors), which may be deleted from a satellite cartridge but must be present on the master cartridge.

Working Storage (WS)

Working Storage is used for temporary storage of programs and data. Since it is used for this purpose by both you and the Monitor, you should not leave material in WS if you wish to use it later. If you wish to retain a program or data file, it should be transferred with DUP to either the User Area or the Fixed Area, and given a name.

The size of WS is variable, since it consists of whatever space on the disk is not taken up by the other four areas.

User Area (UA)

As mentioned earlier, programs and data that you want retained must be moved from WS to either the User Area or the Fixed Area.

The size of the UA is also variable, since it expands and contracts as material is stored in it or deleted from it.

The process of transferring a program or data file from WS to UA is done in a unique manner, made possible by the use of a "floating" boundary between the two areas. Because material placed in WS is at the "lower" end of WS which is adjacent to the "upper" end of UA, all that is necessary to transfer it from WS to UA is to move the boundary. (See Figure 60.1.)

The term "User Area" should not be taken to mean that only user-written programs will be found there. Nearly the entire IBM subroutine library is placed in the UA (occupying about 50 sectors), where it may be called for use by other programs.

The UA may contain:

- Data, in disk data format (DDF)
- Programs and subprograms, in disk system format (DSF)
- Programs, in disk core image format (DCI)

The major differences between these three formats are discussed in subsection 60.30.10.

The Location Equivalence Table (LET) is a directory of the contents of the User Area. It exists on every disk cartridge -- systems and non-systems. Basically, it contains an entry for every program, subprogram, and data file that has been placed in the UA. Each entry in the table contains the name, size, and other properties of that program or data file.

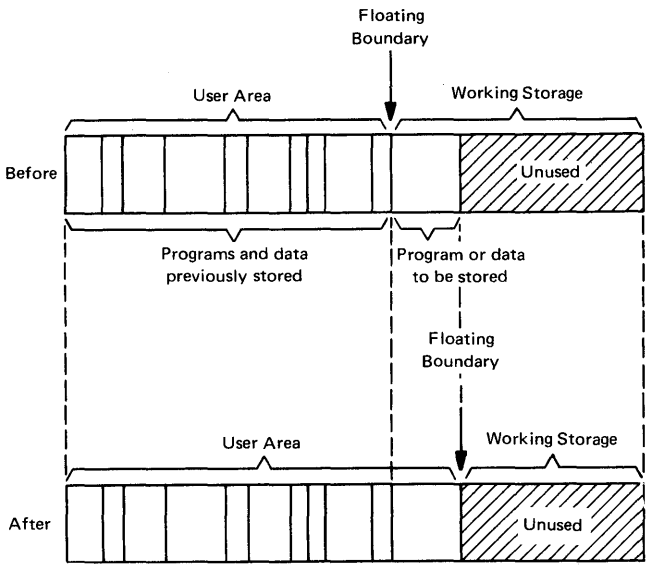


Figure 60.1. Transferring a program or data file from WS to UA

Fixed Area (FX)

The Fixed Area, like the User Area, is a place where the user may store programs and/or data files. There are five major differences between the FX and the UA:

1. There is no Fixed Area on a cartridge unless you specifically define one (see 60.30.20).
2. You specify the size of the FX, whereas the UA expands and contracts as items are added to or deleted from it.
3. Like the UA, the FX may contain both programs and data, but the programs must be in disk core image (DCI) format. They cannot be in disk system format (DSF).
4. Programs or data files stored in the FX may be deleted, but the FX will not be repacked, as is the case with the UA. Once an item is stored somewhere in the FX, it stays in the same location until it is deleted.
5. The directory of the FX is FLET, the Fixed Location Equivalence Table, rather than LET, which is the directory to the UA.

Summary

Figure 60.2 illustrates the five logical disk areas and shows the general properties of each.

Logical Area	Sub-Areas	Present?	Approximate Size, Sectors	
			Systems Disk	Non-Systems Disk
Cylinder 0		Always	8	8
IBM Systems Area	Basic	Only on a systems disk	152	152
	Core Image Buffer	Can be removed from Non-Sys.	16	16
	FORTRAN Compiler	May be removed	88	88
	Assembler	May be removed	32	32
Fixed Area (FX)	FLET	Not unless defined by user	8	8
	Contents of FX	Not unless defined by user	Fixed by the user when he defines a fixed area	
User Area (UA)	LET	Always	8	0 (LET is part of Cyl. 0)
	Contents of UA • User data files • User programs • IBM subroutine library	Always. As delivered, the UA contains the IBM Subroutine Library	Varies as material is stored and deleted	
Working Storage (WS)	Contents of WS	Always	Varies in size — WS is whatever is left over. Every sector added to UA is subtracted from WS; every sector deleted from UA is added to WS.	

Figure 60.2. The five logical areas of the disk

Section	Subsections		Page
60	20	01	01

INCREASING THE AMOUNT OF SPACE AVAILABLE TO THE USER

Introduction

As Figure 60.2 shows, there is another way to look at a disk cartridge. Simply stated, at any point in time, the disk can be split into two portions:

- The portion now being used.
- The portion not now being used and therefore available to you.

If you have a data file that you want to store on a disk, you can ask several pertinent questions:

How much room do I need?

How much room do I have?

How can I make more room, if necessary?

The first question is covered in Section 80; the other two are answered in 60.20.10 and 60.20.20, respectively.

How Much Room Do I Have?

It is quite easy to determine how much room is available on any particular disk cartridge; all you need to do is to run the DUP *DUMPLET job. The last item on the printout will have the name 1DUMY (a dummy entry representing empty space), its size in disk blocks (a disk block is 20 words, or 1/16 of a sector), and its starting address (in disk blocks).

This block of empty space is equivalent to Working Storage, the area where you may place additional programs and data files.

Figure 60.3 shows the last page of a typical DUMPLET printout. Note the last entry:

1DUMY 49F3 1AOD

Convert the two hexidecimal numbers to decimal:

49F3	becomes	18931
1AOD	becomes	6669

Divide by 16 (16 disk blocks per sector):

18931/16	is	1183 3/16
6669/16	is	416 13/16

The first number (1183 3/16) is the size in sectors of Working Storage; the second (416 13/16) is the sector at which it begins. The fact that the two add up to 1600, the total number of sectors on a disk, confirms the accuracy of the arithmetic.

```
PAGE   4                                LET


=CICN    $FPAD    =FPAD    =CIBA    =ULET    =FLET
1234     01A1     01A1     0118     0128     0000

SCTR NO.  UA/FXA.    WORDS AVAIL.  CHAIN ADDR.
0002      0130           009C         0000

 PRCG  FOR DB   DB       PROG  FOR DB   DB       PROG  FOR DB   DB       PROG
 NAME  MAT CNT  ADDR     NAME  MAT CNT  ADDR     NAME  MAT CNT  ADDR     NAME

 PTHOL DSF 0009 170D     ECHAR DSF 0005 18F6     FRULE DSF 0009 19E4
 DMP80 DSF 0007 1716     ECHRX DSF 0025 18FB     FMOVE
 DMTDO DSF 001A 171D     ECHRI                   FINC
 DMTXO                   VCHRI                   PLOTI DSF 0003 19ED
 DMPD1 DSF 001E 1737     EGRID DSF 0008 1920     PLOTS
 DMPX1                   HOL48 DSF 0008 1928     PLOTX DSF 000A 19F0
 FLIPR DSF 0007 1755     HOLCA DSF 0006 1930     POINT DSF 0008 19FA
 SYSUP DSF 0036 175C     HXCV  DSF 0004 1936     SCALE DSF 0002 1A02
 ADRWS DSF 0010 1792     PRNT2 DSF 001E 193A     SCALF DSF 0002 1A04
 COPY  DSF 001C 17A2     SCAT1 DSF 0041 1958     XYPLT DSF 0007 1A06
 DISC  DSF 0036 17BE     STRTB DSF 0006 1999     1DUMY      49F3 1AOD
 DLCIB DSF 001E 17F4     EPLOT DSF 0005 199F
 DSLET DSF 0037 1812     ERULE DSF 000A 19A4
 IDENT DSF 000C 1849     EMOVE
 ID    DSF 001A 1855     EINC
 MODIF DSF 0057 186F     FCHAR DSF 0005 19AE
 PTUTL DSF 0009 18C6     FCHRX DSF 0025 19B3
 CALPR DSF 0007 18CF     FCHRI
 FSLEN DSF 000B 18D6     WCHRI
 FSYSU                   FGRID DSF 0008 19D8
 RDREC DSF 0015 18E1     FPLOT DSF 0004 19E0


 END OF DUMPLET/FLET
```

note last entry

Figure 60.3.

How Can I Make More Space Available?

Using Figure 60.2 as your guide, take a look at each of the five logical areas, with an eye toward removing items you don't need:

Cylinder 0

Since Cylinder 0 is always present and necessary on every disk cartridge, there is nothing you can do to reduce its size.

IBM Systems Area

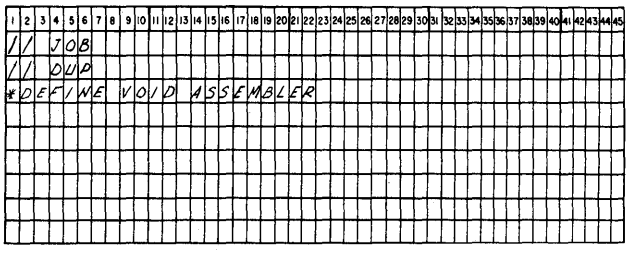
Every system disk cartridge, after initial loading with the Monitor, contains the Assembler and FORTRAN compiler, two programs of substantial size. The Assembler occupies 32 sectors; the FORTRAN compiler occupies 88 sectors.

If you rarely compile programs written in Assembler Language, you will probably want to delete the Assembler from all disk cartridges except the one used for odd jobs.

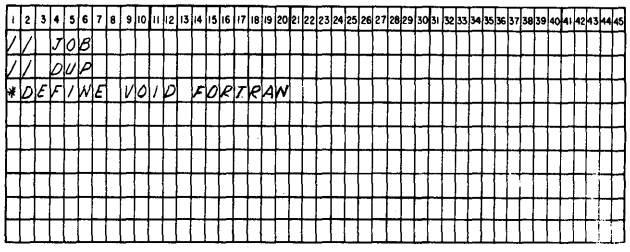
Most 1130 users program in FORTRAN, but it is still possible to eliminate this compiler from some disk cartridges. Suppose you have a large inventory file that requires all the room you can get. Why keep the FORTRAN compiler on that disk?

During the test phase, when you are compiling many FORTRAN programs, you certainly need the compiler; once the programs have been debugged, however, you can eliminate it and increase the size of your file by 88 sectors. If it becomes necessary to change a program on a particular disk, you can recompile the new version using a disk that does contain the compiler, dump the new program on cards with the DUP, remove the FORTRAN disk, replace it with the inventory (no FORTRAN) disk, and load the new card program with DUP. Because this takes a few minutes, you will probably not want to eliminate the FORTRAN compiler from any disk unless the space is needed.

To delete these two programs from a disk, you must use the DUP *DEFINE function, as shown below



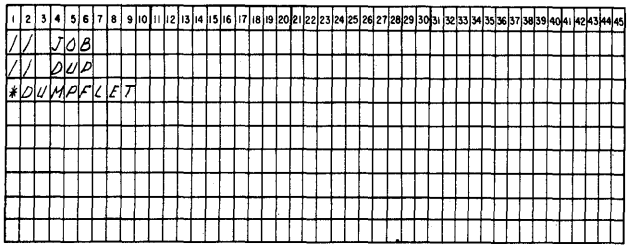
and/or



Fixed Area

Because of the way in which the Fixed Area is handled by the Monitor, you should not define one unless you have a specific purpose in mind for it. Remember that the size (and existence) of the Fixed Area is entirely up to you. If you define a 20-cylinder Fixed Area and use only half of it, the other half is completely wasted; the empty space is not transferred to the UA or WS.

To determine what is in the fixed area, you may run the DUP job:



If it is not full, you may reduce its size (see 60. 30. 20) accordingly, automatically transferring the released area to Working Storage. If later you wish to place something in FX, you may then increase its size.

User Area/Working Storage

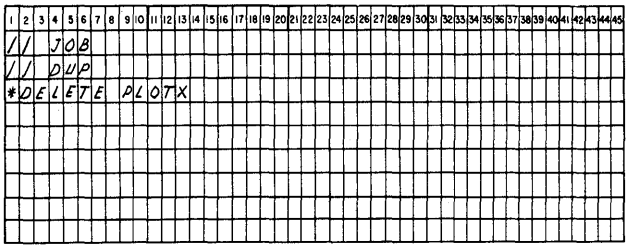
Because the UA and WS interact, they must be considered together. Basically, there is never any room in the User Area -- it is always full. Even if you remove something from it, it is still full, since it is immediately packed, and the free space is transferred to WS.

Your job, therefore, is to remove unneeded items from UA, decreasing its size and thereby increasing the size of WS. The entire contents of WS are, after all, available for transfer back to the UA whenever you have something you wish to store on a permanent basis.

The following sections discuss some items that can be removed from the UA.

I/O Subroutines for Devices Not on Your System. As mentioned earlier, the Monitor, as delivered and loaded on each disk, is a complete system and includes subroutines for every device that can be installed on an 1130 system -- plotter, paper tape reader, etc. If you do not have a plotter, it makes sense to delete the plotting subroutines. As with the FORTRAN compiler and the Assembler, you must make the decision and do the deleting. The Monitor will not check for the presence or absence of a plotter and delete those subprograms on its own. Although you do specify to the Monitor loader (with the REQ cards) which devices are on your system, the loader does not use this information to selectively load the subroutine library. All subroutines are loaded onto the disk, regardless of your 1130 configuration.

Figure 60.4 illustrates what subroutines can be deleted, and how many sectors can be gained. The subroutines noted can be deleted the same as any other subroutine -- for example:



If you don't have this equipment (or if no program on this disk will use these devices)	You may delete these subroutines				And gain this number of sectors
IBM 1627 Plotter	PLOTX PLOT1 POINT XYPLT FCHRI FCHRX	ECHRI ECHRX	FCHAR FGRID FPLOT SCALF FRULE	ECHAR EGRID EPLOT SCALE ERULE	10
IBM 1132 Printer		PRNT1 PRNTZ PRNT2		DMPD1 DMPX1	6 1/16
IBM 1403 Printer		PRNT3 PRNZ EBPT3 PTHOL	CPPT3 PT3EB PT3CP		4 8/16
IBM 1442 Card Read Punch, Model 6 or 7		CARD0 CARD1 CARDZ			2 12/16
IBM 1142 Card Punch, Model 5		PNCH0 PNCH1 PNCHZ			2 2/16
IBM 2501 Card Reader		READ0 READ1 READZ			1 4/16
IBM 1134 Paper Tape Reader and/or 1055 Paper Tape Punch		PAPT1 PAPTN PAPTZ PTUTL		PAPPR PAPHL PAPEB PAPTX	7 14/16
IBM 1231 Optical Mark Page Reader		OMPR1			1 1/16
Synchronous Communication Adapter (Teleprocessing)	HOL48 HXCV STRTB HOLCA	SCAT1 PRNT2 EBC48			9
2310 Disk Drive	COPY				1 12/16

Figure 60.4. I/O subroutines which may be deleted

Computational Subroutines You Are Unlikely To Use. Let's take the example again of the disk used exclusively for a large inventory file. You have eliminated the compilers, the plotter subroutines, etc. Is there anything else on this disk that you won't need? Unless you have an unusual inventory system, the answer is yes. Do the inventory programs require the computation of any sines, cosines, etc? If not, you may gain 7 sectors by deleting the trigonometric and logarithmic subroutines:

FSQR	ESQR
FTANH	ETANH
FATN	EATN
FAXB	EAXB
FEXP	EEXP
FLN	ELN
FSIN	ESINE

Seldom-Used Programs and/or Data. Because the 1130 Monitor makes it so easy to do so, many people tend to "overstore" the disk. This is particularly true of programs, which are often *STOREd as a matter of course, with no rules regarding what gets *STOREd and what doesn't. As a practical matter, however, many programs should not be placed on the disk, but should be compiled each time they are used. For example, suppose that program XYZ is a stand-alone program that does nothing but read a deck of cards and produce one or two pages of results. It is run monthly, consists of 150 FORTRAN source cards, and uses 2100 words of core storage. To compile (without listing) and execute it, will take about:

Compile	2 minutes
Execute	3 minutes
Total	5 minutes

To load it from the disk and execute it, will take about:

Load	1/2 minutes
Execute	3 minutes
Total	3 1/2 minutes

By storing this program on the disk, you will save 1 1/2 minutes per month, but will use 2100 words of disk storage, or about seven sectors.

Is it worth it? That depends on your installation. If disk space is scarce, the answer is: "No -- don't store it!" If there is plenty of room on the disk, the answer is: "Yes, why not?"

Obviously, some programs should or must reside on the disk:

- Often used subroutines and functions
- Programs called as LINKS by other programs
- Frequently used programs
- Very large programs
- Programs that are run with a series of other programs, as one batch JOB.

Unneeded User-Written Programs and Data. This usually applies more to programs than data. Over a period of months, the typical disk becomes cluttered with numerous abandoned, obsolete, and/or useless programs and subprograms. The LET/FLET should be dumped periodically and inspected for such items. Anything not really needed should be deleted.

Summary

To illustrate how much room can be available on a systems disk, let's assume you have an 1132 Printer and a 1442 Card Read Punch, and you wish to place a very large commercial-type data file on the disk. There is no Fixed Area.

After originally loading the Monitor, you *DUMPLET and determine from the last 1DUMY record that the size of Working Storage is 49F3 disk blocks, or about 1183 sectors, 74% of the disk.

To increase this amount, you can take the three steps suggested earlier:

1. Delete the FORTRAN compiler and the Assembler, gaining 120 sectors.
2. Delete the I/O subroutines you don't need, in this case gaining about 37 1/2 sectors.
3. Delete the technically oriented computational subprograms, gaining about seven sectors.

You thereby have increased the available disk space (WS) by 164 sectors, to 1347, or 84% of the disk. Of course, you cannot compile any programs with this disk, nor can you execute any jobs (noncommercial) requiring some of the computational subroutines that have been deleted. From the number of sectors available you must subtract the space required for your programs. The remainder is available for your data file(s).

The task is easier with a non-systems disk. One cylinder (eight sectors) is always required for the Cylinder 0 area, plus two more if you have defined a Fixed Area. That leaves either 1584 or 1576 sectors for your programs and data files.

Section	Subsections		Page
60	30	01	01

THE DISK UTILITY PROGRAM

Introduction

The Disk Utility Program (DUP) gives you the facilities necessary to manage your disk storage capability. With DUP you can:

- Store programs and data files on the disk
- Make the programs and data files on the disk available in printed, punched card, or punched paper tape form
- Remove programs and data files from the disk
- Determine the contents of disk storage through a printed copy of LET/FLET, the directory to the disk
- Alter certain system parameters and, to a limited extent, the contents of the system
- Perform other minor disk maintenance functions

The Monitor manual explains the details required to use DUP (card layouts, etc.). This section will cover only the most commonly required DUP functions and the information needed to execute them.

Format of Material on the Disk

Essential to the understanding of DUP is a basic knowledge of the various formats used in the storing of programs and data on the disk.

Although DUP gives you many format options, this section discusses only those that apply to the average user, writing a typical FORTRAN program. Users with unusual combinations (for example, a data file in DCI format) will have exercised this option with a specific purpose in mind and will be well aware of the details involved.

Data Files

Under normal circumstances, data files are always stored on the disk in the Disk Data Format (DDF).

Programs and Subprograms

Under normal circumstances, programs and subprograms will be stored on the disk in one of two formats:

Disk System Format (DSF)
Disk Core Image Format (DCI)

The main difference between the two lies in what is stored, rather than how it is stored.

A program in DCI format consists of a complete, self-sufficient core load or program package -- the mainline program, plus all the subroutines it requires. The entire package is in absolute form; that is, all addresses are actual core storage locations rather than relative locations. Subprograms cannot be in DCI format.

On the other hand, an item in DSF consists of that item and only that item. Nothing else is included with it. It may be:

- A program or a subprogram
- Absolute or relocatable (but usually relocatable)
- In either WS or UA (but not in the FX)

As would be expected, a program occupies more space on the disk in DCI form than it would in DSF, since it includes more material. However, it may be loaded into core storage (when called by an XEQ card) much faster, since the Core Load Builder need not assemble all the necessary subroutines and calculate actual core storage addresses.

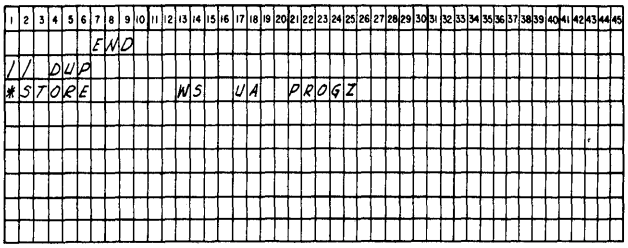
The Most Commonly Used DUP Functions - Single Disk Drive Systems

Of the many things that can be done with DUP, a few stand out as common, everyday tasks in the typical 1130 installation. The following is a guide to these common jobs:

Store a Program or Subprogram in DSF Format

After compiling a program or subprogram, you will commonly store it on the disk for later reference or execution.

Because the FORTRAN Compiler (or Assembler) leaves the compiled program in Working Storage, all that need be done is to move it from WS to UA. To do this, DUP moves the boundary between UA and WS so as to include in UA whatever is in WS. For example, suppose you have just compiled a program called PROGZ, which requires 812 words of core storage. If you follow the END card of the program with



DUP will move this program (move the boundary) from WS to UA, and enter the name PROGZ in LET, with the proper identification codes. UA increases in size by about 812 words; WS decreases by the same amount. Note that you did not have to know how large the program was -- DUP handles that. Note also that the DUP card is not preceded by a JOB card.

Store a Program in DCI (Core Image) Format

You can, after compilation, also store a program in DCI format, by simply using the *STORECI card in place of the *STORE card. Note that the *FILES, *LOCAL, and *NOCAL cards are placed after the *STORECI card and that the number of such cards is punched in columns 27-30 of the *STORECI card.

Because this takes longer than the *STORE option, it usually will not be done unless you are fairly certain that the program is free of bugs.

Convert a DSF Program to DCI

For speed of loading, commonly used programs should be stored in DCI (core image) format. This eliminates the need to build a core load each time you execute the program.

If you have a program called MAIN6 stored on the disk in DSF (by a STORE card), you can convert it to DCI with the following sequence:

```
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45
// JOB
// DUP
*DUMP                UA   WS   MAIN6
*STORECI             WS   UA   NAMEN      2
*LOCAL------
*FILES-----
// JOB
// DUP
*DELETE                     MAIN6
```

Note that the name of the program had to be changed.

Delete a Program or Subprogram

This is one of the simplest of the DUP jobs, since you need not be concerned with either the format, the location, or the type (program, subprogram, or data) of the item to be deleted.

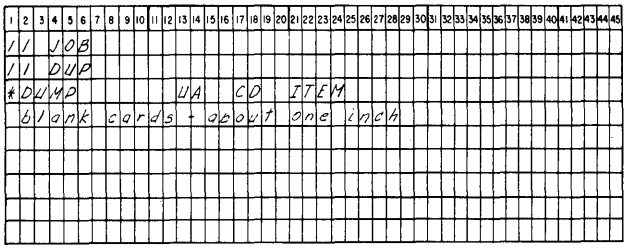
The sequence of cards

```
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45
// JOB
// DUP
*DELETE                     NAMEP
```

will delete NAMEP wherever and whatever it is.

Dump a DSF Program or Subprogram and Reload It

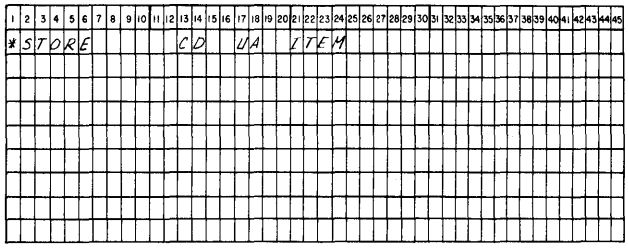
As a backup procedure, you can dump your often used programs and subprograms onto cards or paper tape. If anything happened to the disk cartridge, these items could be reloaded much faster than they could be recompiled. The job



will cause ITEM to be punched into the deck of blank cards following the *DUMP card, 54 words per card. In addition, a header and end-of-program card will be punched.

Since the program is punched in such a compact form, very few programs will require more than an inch of cards (about 140 cards, or 6300 words). Extra, unpunched cards will be bypassed automatically by DUP.

To reload this dumped program, the *DUMP card should be replaced with



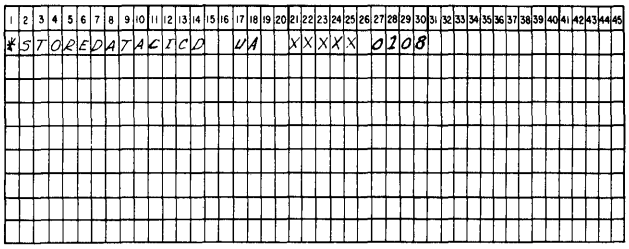
(if the program was in DSF) and run as another job.

Dump a DCI (Core Image) Program and Reload It

If the program to be dumped and reloaded is in core image format, the procedure must be changed somewhat.

The dump to cards can be accomplished in the same way, with the *DUMP card.

However, to reload, the STOREDATACI option is required, and the card count must appear in columns 27-30. For example, a program called XXXXX, dumped into a deck of 108 cards, would be reloaded with the card:

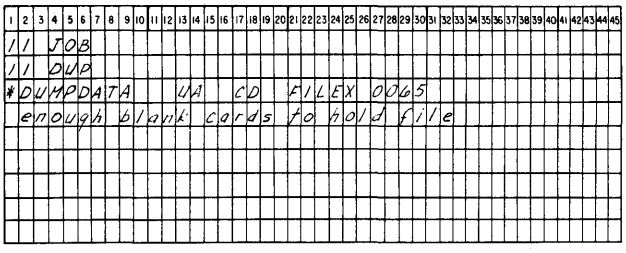


Dump a Data File and Reload It

More important as a backup procedure, you can dump your data files onto cards or paper tape. In case anything happens to the disk cartridge, the data file may be reloaded.

To dump a data file, you must know its size in sectors.

The sequence of cards



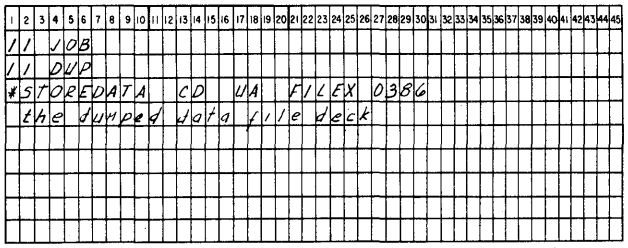
will dump the 65-sector data file, FILEX, from the UA to cards (CD).

The data file is punched into the blank card deck, 54 words per card. No header or trailer cards are punched.

To reload, you must know the number of cards in the dumped deck.

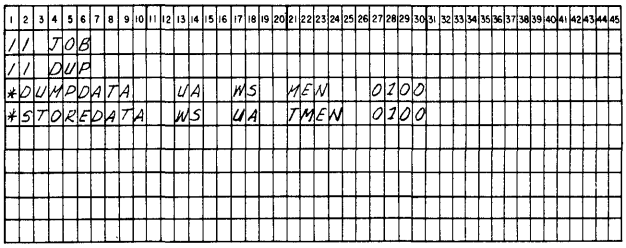
To continue the previous example of a 65-sector file (20,800 words), the dumped deck would have required about 386 cards.

To reload, then, you need the cards



Copy a Data File onto Another Area on the Same Disk

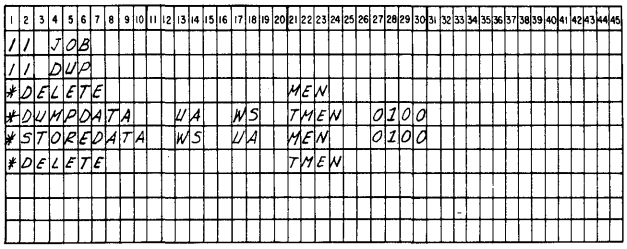
Another method of data file backup is to copy the file onto another portion of the disk. Typically this would be done before running a job that modifies the file. If the file is 100 sectors long and called MEN, the job



will move it to Working Storage, then include it in the User Area with a different name (TMEN).

If the program you wish to run operates satisfactorily, updating the file MEN, you need do nothing except DELETE TMEN.

If on the other hand, some error occurs that ruins the file MEN, you have a duplicate file (TMEN) ready to replace it. The steps shown below will replace MEN, which has been ruined, with TMEN:



Now you may rerun the job. Be especially careful not to *DELETE TMEN until you are sure everything went according to plan.

This protects you from accidental programmed loss of a data file; however, it does not protect against physical loss or destruction of the disk cartridge itself.

Defining and Modifying the Fixed Area

If you want a Fixed Area on a disk cartridge, you must not only instruct the monitor to create one, but you must specify its size.

If you want a Fixed Area of 20 cylinders, you can run the job

```
// JOB
// DUP
*DEFINE FIXED AREA                0021
```

and you have it. Note that we specified 21 cylinders as the size of the Fixed Area. One cylinder will be used for FLET; the other 20 are available for your programs and data files.

If later you wish to increase the size of FX by 6 cylinders, you can use

```
// JOB
// DUP
*DEFINE FIXED AREA                0006
```

or, if you wish to decrease its size by 3 cylinders

```
// JOB
// DUP
*DEFINE FIXED AREA                0003-
```

You should keep a record of whether a particular cartridge has a Fixed Area or not. If you ran the first job, then forgot you ran it, and ran it again, you would have a 41-cylinder Fixed Area. When in doubt you may use the DUMPLET DUP option, which will print the contents of FLET.

Special Options -- Multiple Disk 1130 Users

Copy a Data File onto Another Disk

If you have more than one disk drive, you will usually take this option rather than the ones described earlier -- dump to cards for backup, or copy to another part of the same disk. This requires a two-step procedure, since data files cannot be copied directly from the UA on one disk into the UA on another disk. The transfer must be via WS.

Suppose you have an 88-sector file, called DATAX, in UA on cartridge 1075, and you want to copy it into the UA on cartridge 1077. Assume that cartridge 1075 is on drive 0, and 1077 is on drive 1. The following card sequence will accomplish this task:

```
// JOB        1075 1077                              1075
// DUP
*DUMPDATA     UA   WS   DATAX 00881075   1075
*STOREDATA    WS   UA   DATAX 00881075   1077
```

You can see that the file was first moved from UA to WS on cartridge 1075, then from WS on 1075 to UA on 1077. The file now exists on both cartridges, and each has the same name: DATAX.

Copy a Program onto Another Disk

If you have multiple disks, you may also choose to back up your programs by copying them to another disk, rather than dumping to cards. This is similar to the previous task, but easier, since you do not have to know the size of the program, as was the case with a data file. You must still, however, go via WS in the two-step procedure:

```
// JOB        1075 1077                              1075
// DUP
*DUMP         UA   WS   PROGX          1075   1075
*STORE        WS   UA   PROGX          1075   1077
```

This copies the program or subprogram called PROGX from cartridge 1075 to cartridge 1077. As before, the program now exists on both cartridges, each of which has its own LET.

Neither the format (DSF or DCI), nor the type (program or subprogram) need be known, or specified.

Copy an Entire Disk onto Another Disk

This is not done with the Disk Utility Program (DUP) but with a Disk Maintenance Program called COPY, which is supplied with the Monitor. If you want to copy the entire contents of cartridge 1967 onto cartridge 1968, you execute COPY:

```
// JOB        1967 1968
// XEQ COPY
*ID1967,1968
```

Section 65: THE MONITOR - CORE STORAGE MANAGEMENT

CONTENTS

Introduction 65.01.00
The Logical Layout of Core Storage 65.10.00
- Basic 65.10.10
- Flipper 65.10.20
- SOCAL Area 65.10.30
  - General
    - Overlay 1
    - Overlay 2
    - Overlay 3
  - The SOCAL Overlay Scheme
  - Possible Improvements to the SOCAL Scheme
    - Reduce the Size of the Largest SOCAL Overlay
    - Combine Overlays 1 and 3
- LOCAL Area 65.10.40
  - General
  - IBM-Supplied (Systems) Subroutines
- Program or LINK Area 65.10.50
- COMMON Area 65.10.60
- Unused Area 65.10.70

Summary 65.20.00

INTRODUCTION

The 1130 Disk Monitor System gives you three extremely powerful and useful means of managing core storage. All three involve the sharing of core storage by two or more programs (LINKs), subprograms (LOCALs), or groups of subprograms (SOCALs). This section describes these three schemes in detail, after discussing the 1130 core storage layout in terms of its seven logical areas.

THE LOGICAL LAYOUT OF CORE STORAGE

You can think of core storage as consisting, like the disk cartridge, of several logical areas. Again, this layout may bear little or no resemblance to the actual, physical layout; it is merely a device to help you understand the dynamic nature of core storage. The seven logical areas are as follows:

Basic
Flipper
SOCAL Area
LOCAL Area
Program Or LINK Area
COMMON
Unused

These areas are described below in general terms. Complete details may be found in the appropriate Monitor reference manual. Note that all core sizes given are based on:

1. A typical FORTRAN program--commercially rather than scientifically oriented.
2. Approximate subroutine sizes, usually adjusted to multiples of 10.
3. Version 2, Modification Level 0, of the 1130 Disk Monitor System.

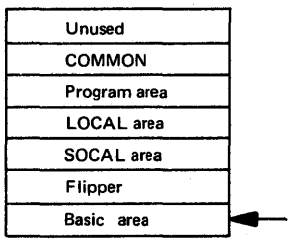
Because some of the package sizes may increase in the future, you should not plan on using all of the available core storage; it might be more prudent to use about 95% of it.

Basic

This is a set of programs that is always in core and whose size varies only slightly from job to job. It consists of:

1. Resident Monitor
2. Transfer Vector
3. Several commonly used subroutines kept in core storage at all times (IFIX, FLOAT, ELD, ESTO, NORM, etc.). These are all subprogram subtypes 0 -- see discussion of subtype under "SOCAL Area".

A good average size for this area is 740 words.

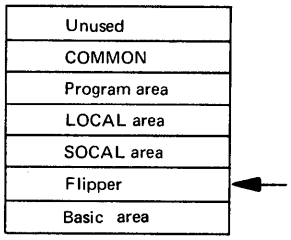


Core Storage

Section	Subsections		Page
65	10	20	01

Flipper

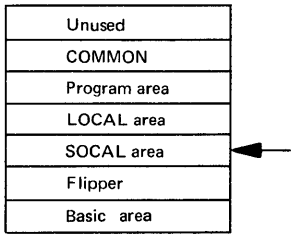
This routine handles both the SOCAL and LOCAL overlay system. Flipper is not required (core size = 0) if there are no SOCALs or LOCALs: if there are, its size is about 100 words.



Core Storage

SOCAL Area

General



Core Storage

The word SOCAL is an acronym derived from "System Overlay on Call". The SOCAL area is that area of core storage where the SOCAL subroutines reside. The SOCAL subroutines, in turn, are defined as those subprograms that:

1. Are used by the mainline program to be executed.
2. Have been designated as subtype 1, 2, 3, or 8.
3. Have not been made LOCAL.

If a subprogram has not been designated as subtype 1, 2, 3, or 8, it will be located in one of three areas:

1. The LOCAL area if it has been specified as LOCAL.
2. The Basic area if it is an IBM-supplied subprogram (IFIX, FLOAT, ELD, EST, etc.) and has not been made a LOCAL.
3. The Program area if it is a user-supplied subprogram and has not been made a LOCAL.

The 1130 Monitor system you receive from IBM includes a subroutine library in which each subroutine is assigned a subtype number. These may be called the standard subtypes, and will yield a SOCAL system as described in the Monitor manual and in later subsections of this Guide. However, these subtype numbers may be changed at your discretion. Furthermore, you may assign subtype numbers to your own subprograms. Both steps will yield a nonstandard SOCAL system. Several ideas on this subject are presented later in this subsection.

The SOCAL system involves the grouping of the SOCAL subroutines into three groups, called overlays, which will be manipulated by the Core Load Builder as it goes about its job of loading your program into core storage.

Overlay 1. This is made up of all those subroutines and functions designated as subtype 2 or 8. The ARITHMETIC, PAUSE, and STOP routines are subtype 2; the functionals (SIN, COS, etc.) are subtype 8.

The "typical" commercial program will probably add, subtract, multiply and divide (in extended precision), PAUSE, STOP, and read the data switches. The subroutines required to do this will occupy about 520 words of core storage. If the program does not divide, the size of this overlay will be reduced by 180 words.

Commercially oriented 1130 programs will probably be limited to these subroutines, while technical-type jobs may use the SIN, COS, SQRT, etc., functions and require up to several hundred more words.

Overlay 2. Overlay 2 is composed of all subtype 3 subroutines--those required for non-disk input/output. The basic component is SFIO, the Format Interpreter, which is required if the program to be executed contains any non-disk FORTRAN I/O statements. In addition, each I/O device requires its own I/O subroutine and often several code conversion routines.

The size of this overlay varies considerably, depending on the I/O devices specified on the *IOCS card (whether they are used or not). The following table may be used to calculate the approximate size of this overlay.

If your program contains any:	This many words will be included in overlay 2:
a) Non-disk formatted input/output (SFIO)	1150
b) WRITE on the 1132	190
c) WRITE on the 1403	190
d) WRITE on the 1442-5	70
e) WRITE on the console printer (typewriter)	60
f) READ or WRITE on the 1442-6 or 7	160
g) READ from the 2501	60
h) READ from the keyboard (cannot be done without writing on console printer)	30
i) READ from keyboard or 2501 or 1442-6, 7	190
j) READ or WRITE on paper tape	225
Total	

Consider, for example, a FORTRAN program compiled with the card:
*IOCS (1132 PRINTER, TYPEWRITER, KEYBOARD)
Referring to the table above, this program will require the following:

Item	Reason	No. of Words
a	There will be formatted I/O using non-disk units.	1150
b	The 1132 printer is specified.	190
e	The typewriter is mentioned.	60
f	The 1442 is included.	160
i	The program READs from the 1442.	190

This program, therefore, will require a 1750-word overlay. (Note again that it is the *IOCS card, not your program, that determines the size of this package.)

Overlay 3. This is the FORTRAN disk I/O package, which may contain:

SDFIO (620 words), the disk I/O package
SDFND (80 words), the disk FIND package
SUFIO (730 words), the disk unformatted I/O package

All three subroutines are subtype 1. The size of this package, therefore, ranges from 0 (no disk I/O) to 1430 words.

Note that SDFND is not included unless your FORTRAN program contains a FIND statement. SDFIO is included if the *IOCS (DISK) card is present; SUFIO if the *IOCS (UDISK) card is present.

The typical program will require SDFIO and SDFND, for an overlay size of 700 words.

The SOCAL Overlay Scheme

Just before you execute a program or store one in core image format (DCI), the Core Load Builder (CLB) is given the task of building a complete core load, or program package, which will fit into core storage.

CLB assembles your program and all its required subroutines, and determines how much core storage they will require. In so doing, it considers the subroutines that are to be LOCAL. The CLB then tries to include the last remaining elements, the three SOCAL overlays, in four steps:

1. As a first step, CLB attempts to fit all three overlays in core with no sharing. Using the typical overlay sizes, this will require 520 +1750 +700 or 2970 words of core.

2. A second step is taken if there is not enough room to hold all three packages at the same time. This involves the sharing of core storage by overlay 1 (arithmetic) and overlay 2 (non-disk I/O). The area they share must be large enough for the larger of the two overlays, in this case (and almost always) the non-disk I/O subroutines, overlay 2. The size of the SOCAL area will now be 1750+700 or 2450 words, a reduction of 520 words, the size of overlay 1.

As required by the user's program, Flipper will read each overlay from the disk whenever it is needed, placing it on top of the last overlay. Overlay 3, the disk I/O, will remain in core at all times. Because Flipper is now needed, your net gain is 520-100 or 420 words.

3. The third step is taken if there is still not enough room in core storage. It involves the sharing of core storage by all three packages, in an area the size of the largest of the 3 overlays. As before, this will probably be the non-disk I/O overlay, at 1750 words.

4. If step 3 fails to provide enough room in core, step 4 will so advise you with a message.

Summarizing the CLB makes a step-by-step attempt to fit your program and its subprograms into the available core storage space.

Step 1 involves the most core storage -- typically about 2970 words.

Step 2 requires about 520-100 or 420 words less than step 1.

Step 3 requires about 700 words less than step 2. Figure 65.1 shows the three steps, or overlay levels, in graphic form. Note that the discussion of this typical program did not include the program itself. Only the subprograms have been considered.

If you place an L in column 14 of the // XEQ card, the Core Load Builder will print a core map showing which subprograms, if any, are in which SOCAL overlay, and the size of each overlay. (See Figure 65.5 for such a map.)

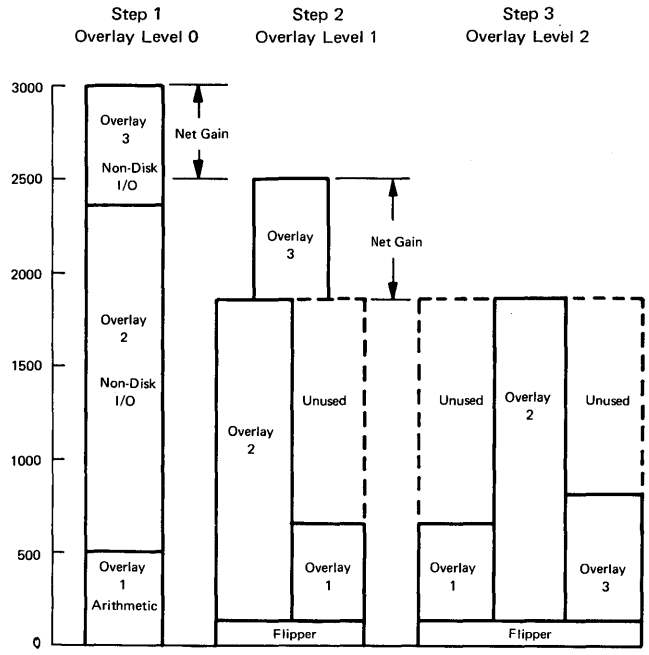


Figure 65.1. Core storage layout at each overlay level

Possible Improvements to the SOCAL Scheme

Figure 65.1 illustrates, to a rough scale, the layout of the SOCAL area at each overlay level. One fact is apparent: overlay 2 is much larger than either overlay 1 or overlay 3, and is, in fact, larger than the two combined. Since the SOCAL area must be at least as large as the largest of the three overlays, a certain amount of core storage is unused in some circumstances.

On the basis of this fact, there are two techniques that may be used to make the standard SOCAL system more effective:

Reduce the size of the largest SOCAL overlay. Since LOCALs, discussed later, take precedence over SOCALs, you have a means to remove subprograms from the SOCAL area and to force them into the LOCAL area. Naturally, you would do this only to subprograms in the largest overlay, usually the non-disk I/O package.

Because one LOCAL cannot call another LOCAL, you must be somewhat careful here. For example, you cannot LOCALize both the 1132 subroutine and a subroutine that calls it. One or the other may be LOCAL, not both.

If you are sure such a situation does not exist, you can make the following subroutines LOCAL:

Name	Required for	Approximate Size in Words
CARDZ	1442 Card Read Punch	160
PNCHZ	1442-5 Card Punch	70
READZ	2501 Card Reader	60
TYPEZ	Console Printer	60
WRTYZ	Console Keyboard and Printer	90
PRNTZ	1132 Printer	190
PRNZ	1403 Printer	190
PAPTZ	Paper Tape Units	225

(If you accidentally do make one LOCAL call another LOCAL, the LOADER will call it to your attention with an error message.)

Each of these routines, if made LOCAL, releases as much core storage as the size of the routine. It is unlikely, however, that you can reduce overlay 2 to the same size as the other two overlays unless you LOCALize the entire 1150-word Format Interpreter (SFIO).

To see what that would do to the SOCAL system, let us observe what the three overlays would be if SFIO were LOCAL (and therefore not SOCAL):

Overlay 1 ARITHMETIC (about 520)
Overlay 2 CARDZ, PRNTZ, TYPEZ, etc. (about 600)
Overlay 3 DISK I/O (about 700)

You have not saved the entire 1150 words of SFIO, because now your disk I/O package, overlay 3, at 700 words, is the largest. Your net gain in the SOCAL area is 1750-700 or 1050 words of core storage. Furthermore, the LOCAL SFIO at 1150 may now be the largest of the LOCALs, consequently enlarging your LOCAL area; so you may not really have saved 1050 words. If the largest LOCAL previously was 800 words in length, and the LOCAL area is now 1150-800, or 350, words larger, your net gain is 1050-350 or 700 words. This is still substantial.

Because all READs and WRITEs (except to the disk) use SFIO, making SFIO LOCAL rules out the possibility of making LOCAL any subroutine containing non-disk I/O. This may hamper your flexibility in using LOCALs and further reduce your 700-word saving.

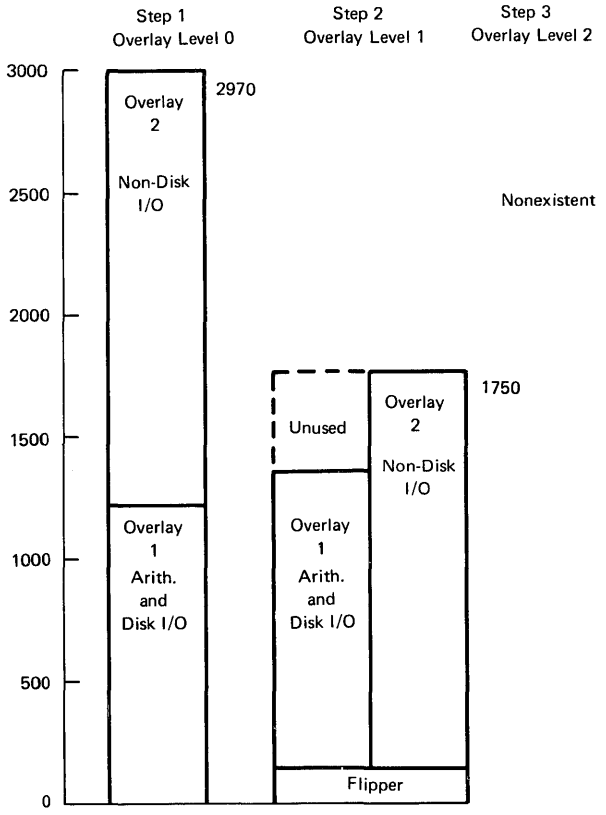


Figure 65.2.

Combine Overlays 1 and 3. Again observing Figure 65.1, you see that overlay 2 is larger than overlays 1 and 3 together (1750 is greater than 520+700). Why not, therefore, combine these two overlays into one? This will not save any core, but it may reduce the amount of time spent in overlaying one package with another.

Since the subprograms in overlay 1 are all subtypes 2 and 8, and those in overlay 3 are all subtype 1, you need only change SDFIO, SDFND, and SUFIO from subtype 1 to subtype 2, and they will be included automatically in overlay 1.

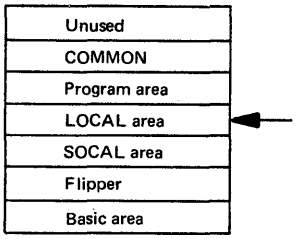
To do this, you may *DUMP SDFIO, SDFND and SUFIO from the User Area to cards, *DELETE them, then reload the cards with a 2 punched in column 11 of the *STORE cards.

If your programs run more slowly or no longer fit in core, *DELETE the subtype 2 routines and reload the card decks, this time with a 1 in column 11 of the *STORE card. This will restore them to their original state.

Figure 65.2 illustrates how your SOCAL area is affected by this change. For the typical program, overlay 2 remains at 1750 and overlay 1 grows to 520+700 or 1220 words. Since there are no longer any subtype 1 subroutines, overlay 3 will have a size of zero words, and the CLB will, in effect, skip step 3.

Local Area

General



Core Storage

The LOCAL (LOad-on-CALl) area is a second area in core storage where the Monitor will overlay subprograms, although in a manner different from the SOCAL scheme in these respects:

1. You must specifically designate a subprogram as LOCAL. It is not automatic.
2. These subprograms are not grouped by any subtype. Each subprogram forms one overlay, and each overlay contains one subprogram.
3. You are not limited to three overlays. If you have 17 subprograms, you may make all of them LOCAL, thus creating 17 LOCAL overlays.

Like the SOCAL area, the LOCAL area will be as large as the largest LOCAL subroutine.

LOCALs and SOCALs do not overlay one another. There are two areas in core storage for subprogram overlays--one as large as the largest SOCAL overlay and another as large as the largest LOCAL subprogram.

To give some examples of how LOCALs are used, take a program that uses five functions and/or subroutines, called SUB1, SUB2, SUB3, SUB4, and SUB5. You may designate none, one, two, three, four, or all five as LOCAL. Those that are LOCAL will overlay one another, being read from the disk whenever required; those that are not LOCAL will remain in core storage at all times.

Subroutines must be specified as LOCAL, with the *LOCAL card, every time a DSF program is executed, or at the time a core load is built with a *STORECI card. Suppose you have a main program XXXX, which uses the five subprograms mentioned above:

SUB1	300 words
SUB2	60 words
SUB3	378 words
SUB4	406 words
SUB5	19 words
Total	1163 words

If you execute XXXX with the cards

```
// JOB
// XEQ XXXX                1
*LOCAL XXXX,SUB1,SUB2,SUB3,SUB4,SUB5
```

you will reduce your core storage requirements by 1153-406 or 747 words, since only enough room for the largest, SUB4, at 406 words, is needed, rather than enough for all five, 1153 words.

If you execute XXXX with the cards

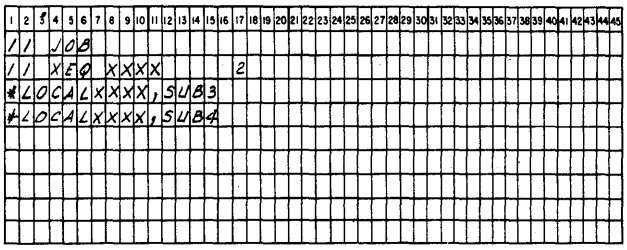
```
// JOB
// XEQ XXXX                1
*LOCAL XXXX,SUB3,SUB4
```

you will reduce your core requirements by the size of SUB3 (378 words), since it and SUB4 will overlay each other. SUB1, SUB2, and SUB5 will be in core all the time, since they are not mentioned on your *LOCAL card.

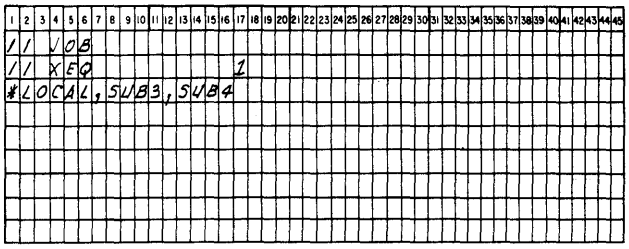
There are several other options in the preparation of the *LOCAL card. For example, the above example could also have been

```
// JOB
// XEQ XXXX                2
*LOCAL XXXX,SUB3,
*LOCAL SUB4
```

where the comma after SUB3 implies continuation, or

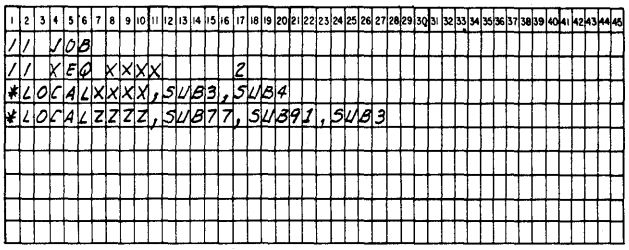


If the program to be executed has just been compiled, it is located in Working Storage and therefore has no name. The *LOCAL card in this case would appear as



without a name for the Mainline (calling) program. (Note the comma in its place.)

If program XXXX calls program ZZZZ as a LINK ((CALL LINK (ZZZZ)), you must specify the LOCALs for ZZZZ also, at the time you tell the Monitor to execute (or *STORECI) XXXX



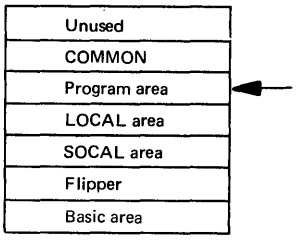
where SUB77 and SUB91 are other subroutines LOCAL to ZZZZ.

IBM-Supplied (Systems) Subroutines

In addition to your own subprograms, you may also designate many of the IBM-supplied subprograms as LOCALs. All subroutines and functions except ILS00, ILS01, ILS02, ILS03, and ILS04, the Interrupt Level subroutines, can be made LOCAL. As a practical matter, however, it is often difficult to LOCALize such subroutines, because many of them call several other subroutines, and one LOCAL cannot call another LOCAL.

This was mentioned earlier, when it was suggested that some subprograms, ordinarily SOCALs, could in fact be made LOCAL instead.

Program or LINK Area



This area will contain

1. Your mainline program
2. All of your subprograms that are not LOCAL or SOCAL.
3. All of the IBM-supplied subprograms that are not LOCAL, SOCAL, or subtype 0.
4. All data (variables and constants) used by the mainline and/or its subprograms, not placed in COMMON.

This forms the third area in core where overlays may be employed; in this case one program package, or LINK, will overlay another.

As in the case of LOCALs, this is not done automatically; it must be planned and executed by you.

Suppose you have written a very large (10,000-word) program, named BIG. When you try to execute it, you are informed by the Monitor that it is too big. Looking at the program, however, you see that it can actually be thought of as four programs, connected as shown in Figure 65.3.

If you split BIG into four programs and place the CALL LINK statements in the proper places, the four will run essentially the same as one large program (although possibly a little slower). Each program or LINK may have its own SOCALs, LOCALs, variable data, subprograms, etc. However, if the LINKs must communicate with each other through core-resident data (rather than disk data), this data must be placed in the COMMON area, with the COMMON statement (see next subsection). During execution of such a program, while the location and contents of the SOCAL, LOCAL, and LINK areas may be continually changing, the COMMON area does not change. It stays in the same place and is not involved in any overlay.

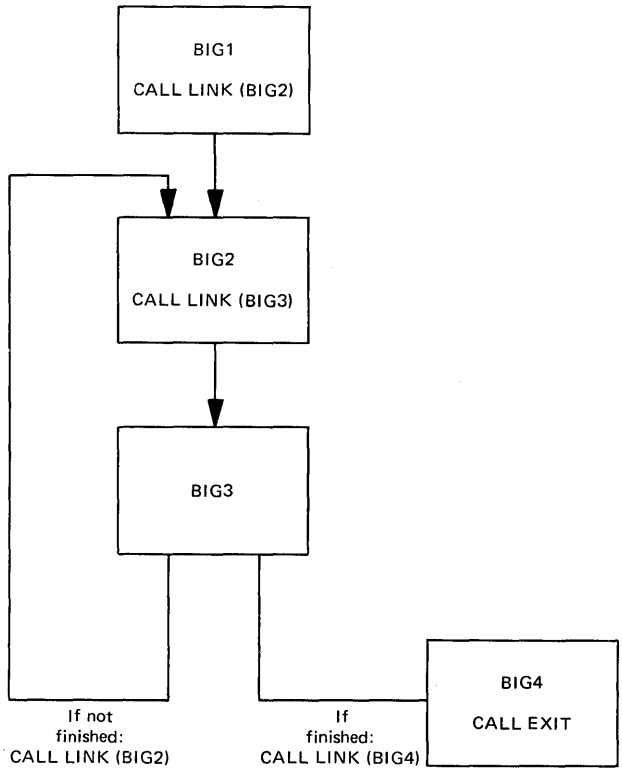
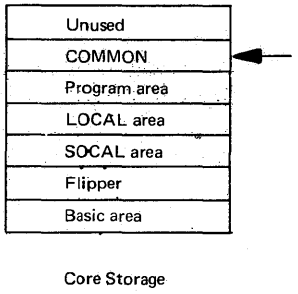


Figure 65.3. A program, "BIG", segmented into four links

COMMON Area



The COMMON area, because it is not over-laid, provides a means by which SOCALs, LOCALs, and LINKs may communicate with each other via core storage. SOCALs and LOCALs, because they are subprograms, may also communicate through the arguments in the CALLing statement. One LINK, on the other hand, must use COMMON to pass data to another LINK.

You must determine what data has to be passed from one LINK to another. If BIG1 obtains X from a card, and BIG2 requires it for a computation, X must be placed in COMMON. If BIG1 obtains DATE from a card, and BIG4 uses it in a printed summary, DATE must be passed from BIG1 to BIG2, from BIG2 to BIG3, and from BIG3 to BIG4, even though BIG2 and BIG3 do not need it. In other words, DATE (or its equivalent) must appear in the same relative position in a COMMON statement in all four LINKs.

To illustrate, suppose six items must be passed from one program to another: DATE, TABLE, K, X, Y, and ANS. The following table shows how the four LINKs use these six items:

Variable	Description	BIG1	BIG2	BIG3	BIG4
DATE	Real variable	X			X
TABLE	Array of 100 items	X	X	X	
K	Integer		X		X
X	Real variable		X	X	
Y	Real variable		X	X	
ANS	Real variable			X	X

There are many different ways you can accomplish this, the easiest being to compose one COMMON statement

```
COMMMON DATE, TABLE(100), K,X,Y,ANS
```

and include it in BIG1, BIG2, BIG3, and BIG4.

Another way would be to use the following COMMON statements:

```
in BIG1   COMMON DATE, TABLE(100)
in BIG2   COMMON DATE, TABLE(100),K,X,Y,
in BIG3   COMMON DATE, TABLE(100),K,X,Y,ANS
in BIG4   COMMON DATE, TABLE(100),K,X,Y,ANSWR
```

Here you see that the size of COMMON in BIG1 and BIG2 is reduced, since unneeded items are not retained. Some unneeded items (like K in BIG3) cannot be eliminated, since you must preserve the relative location (structure) of COMMON from one program to the next, not just the name.

Note that the name of the last variable changes from ANS to ANSWR in LINKing from BIG3 to BIG4. This does not matter, since only the relative position in core storage is important, not the name.

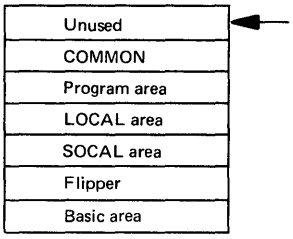
There are many other ways in which COMMON may be arranged. To take advantage of the fact that BIG4 does not use X, Y, or the TABLE array, we may use

```
in BIG1   COMMON DATE,K,ANS,TABLE(100),X,Y
in BIG2   COMMON DATE,K,ANS,TABLE(100),X,Y
in BIG3   COMMON DATE,K,ANS,TABLE(100)X,Y
in BIG4   COMMON DATE,K,ANSWR
```

which reduces the core requirements of BIG4 by 102x3 (or 2) words, depending on the precision used.

UNUSED Area

This is whatever core storage remains after the other six areas have been loaded. It must be zero or more words in length. Good programming practice suggests that it should be at least 100 words, to provide for future growth of the Monitor System, IBM subroutines, and/or your programs.



Core Storage

SUMMARY

This section has described the seven logical areas of core storage, with the emphasis on their overall roles rather than on exact details. As mentioned earlier, all quoted subroutine sizes are approximate, and are based on a so-called "typical" commercial-type program, coded in FORTRAN. You should not necessarily conclude that these figures will apply to your "typical" programs; they may or may not.

The bulk of the material in this chapter concerns SOCALs, LOCALs, and LINKs--how they work. Section 90 concerns how they should be used and how they affect program performance.

Figure 65.4 graphically summarizes what has been covered in this chapter.

Figure 65.5 shows a "core map", printed if you punch an L in column 14 of the // XEQ card. From this printout you can determine the exact sizes of some of these packages:

- The size of the Unused area is contained in the R41 message.
- The size of the SOCAL area can be determined from the largest value contained in the R43, R44, and/or R45 message.
- The size of the LOCAL area may also be determined from the core map. If SOCALs are present, the size of the LOCAL area is the address of the lowest SOCAL subroutine, less the address of the next higher non-LOCAL. In this case it would be 170C - 1567, or, in decimal, 5900-5479 or 321 words.
- Flipper (FLIPR), if present, is always about 100 words in length.
- The sizes of the other areas--Basic, Program, and COMMON--cannot easily be determined from the load map.

Logical Area	Sub-Area	Approximate Typical Size	When Present	Comments
Monitor	Resident Monitor	740 words	Always	
	Transfer Vector			
	In Core Subprog. Subtype 0			
Flipper	–	100 words	Only if LOCAL's or SOCAL's are used	
SOCAL	Overlay 1 (Arith)	520 words	Almost always	Approximate, typical size will be either 2970 or 2450 or 1750 words
	Overlay 2 (Non-Disk I/O)	1750 words	Almost always	
	Overlay 3 (Disk I/O)	700 words	Only if Disk I/O is used	
LOCAL	LOCAL No. 1 LOCAL No. 2 . . . LOCAL No. n	Size of largest LOCAL subprogram	Only if user includes a LOCAL card	
Program or Link	Non-SOCAL or LOCAL Subprograms	Unknown; depends on program coding	Always	
	Data			
	Object Mainline Program			
Common	—	Unknown; depends on program coding	Only if user includes COMMON statement on program	
Unused	—	Unknown; whatever is left over		See the R41 message of the core map for exact size

Figure 65.4.

```
// XEQ PAYRO L  2
*FILES(1,FILEN)
*LOCALPAYRO,SUBW,SUBZ,SUBY1,SUBY2,SUBY3
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  03E3 (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01FC (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 41  00A4 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 DATSW  1902 SOCAL 1
 SUBY3  1701 LOCAL
 SUBY2  17C9 LOCAL
 SUBY1  17C9 LOCAL
 SUBZ   1701 LOCAL
 SUBW   1765 LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB  1EBB SOCAL 2
 EADDX  1883 SOCAL 1
 XDD    1988 SOCAL 1
 FARC   1966 SOCAL 1
 XMD    1924 SOCAL 1
 ELDX   1528
 NORM   1594
 HOLEZ  1E52 SOCAL 2
 EBCTB  1E4F SOCAL 2
 GETAD  1E06 SOCAL 2
 IFIX   1568
 PAUSE  18EC SOCAL 1
 ESBR   18D8 SOCAL 1
 EADD   187D SOCAL 1
 EDIV   1824 SOCAL 1
 EMPY   17F6 SOCAL 1
 EDVR   17DE SOCAL 1
 FLOAT  155E
 SUBSC  1540
 ESTO   1516
 ELD    152C
 PRNTZ  1D48 SOCAL 2
 CARDZ  1C9E SOCAL 2
 WRTYZ  1C62 SOCAL 2
 SFIO   18D9 SOCAL 2
 SDFIO  1885 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
 ILS01  1EC2
 ILS00  1EDD
 FLIPR  15DC
      14B7 (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

Figure 65.5.

Section 70: 1130 FORTRAN AND THE COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES

CONTENTS

Introduction 70.01.00
Arithmetic Considerations 70.10.00
General 70.10.01
Integer Mode 70.10.10
Real Mode 70.10.20
General
Real -- Floating Point
Real -- Fixed Point
Rounding
Accuracy and Magnitude
Output of Large Real Numbers
Multiplication of Large Real Numbers
Decimal Mode 70.10.30
Introduction
General Principles
The Decimal Arithmetic Subroutines
Addition
Subtraction
Multiplication
Division
Constants
Testing and Modifying Signs
Moving Signs
Comparing Decimal Fields
Summary 70.10.40
Overlapped Input/Output 70.20.00
Introduction 70.20.01
The Commercial Subroutine Package
Overlapped I/O Subroutines 70.20.10
General
Read a Card, 1442-6 or 7
Punch a Card, 1442-6 or 7
Select Stacker, 1442-6 or 7
Print on 1132
Skip on 1132
Type on Console Printer
Accept Data from Console Keyboard
A precaution -- IOND
Using the Overlapped I/O System 70.20.20
General
Overlapping and Your Program
FORTRAN TRACE Not Permitted
Alphabetic Headings
The Interaction of Arithmetic and I/O... 70.30.00
Character Handling Techniques 70.40.00
General 70.40.01
Code Conversion 70.40.10
Integer to Real -- FLOAT
Real to Integer -- IFIX
A1 to Real -- GET
A1 to Integer
Real to A1 -- PUT
Integer to A1
A1 to Decimal -- A1DEC
Decimal to A1 -- DECA1
A1 to A2 -- PACK
A2 to A1 -- UNPAC
Other Code Conversions
Other Character Handling Techniques .. 70.40.20
Editing Output -- EDIT
Moving Data Fields -- MOVE
Filling a Field with a Specific Character -- FILL
Comparing Alpha Fields -- NCOMP
Match/No Match Alpha Compare
High/Low/Equal Alpha Compare
Working with Zone Punches -- NZONE
The NZONE Subroutine
FORTRAN Core Saving Tips 70.50.00
General 70.50.01
Reducing Program Size 70.50.10
Use the DATA Statement
Keep FORMAT Statements Compact
Code Efficient I/O Statements
Avoid Long Subroutine Argument Lists
Avoid Arithmetic with Variables Having Constant Subscripts
Reducing Subroutine Requirements... 70.50.20
Raising a Real Number to a Whole Power
SQRT vs **.5
Don't Include Unneeded I/O Devices on *IOCS Card
Remove FIND Statements If You Have SOCAL's or LOCAL's
Remove the TRACE from Production Status Programs
FORTRAN Execution Times 70.60.00
Processing 70.60.10
Summary and Conclusion 70.60.20

INTRODUCTION

The primary purpose of this chapter is to discuss the use of 1130 FORTRAN in a commercial environment. Many of the topics, however, will also be of use to the technically oriented user. Topics include:

- Arithmetic considerations -- a discussion of integer, real, and decimal arithmetic, with particular attention to the accuracy and magnitude of numerical values
- Input/output--explaining the overlapped I/O subroutines and how they can improve performance
- The interaction between input/output and arithmetic
- Core storage saving tips for FORTRAN programmers
- Estimating run time of FORTRAN programs

ARITHMETIC CONSIDERATIONS

General

Of prime interest to commercial 1130 users is the precision and accuracy of their arithmetic calculations. Many engineering and scientific applications have very little need for answers with more than five or six digits of accuracy. Much of the input data comes from physical measurements (6.34 pounds, 18.97 inches, etc.) that are only approximate anyway, so the resulting answers (with some exceptions) must also be considered approximate.

However, in an accounting application, $713,403.14 is exactly that--$713,403.14. If you add up your sales by area, by salesman, by item, by customer, etc., the grand total for each had better be the same, right down to the last penny.

For this reason, commercial programmers must be familiar with the ways the 1130 does arithmetic, and aware of their advantages and disadvantages.

For purposes of discussion, three are four ways to do arithmetic on the 1130 system:

Integer mode
Real mode, floating point
Real mode, fixed point
Decimal mode

Integer Mode

An integer is defined as a whole number, a number with no fractions. Using 1130 FORTRAN, integers are limited to a magnitude of +32767 to -32768. This range is due to the fact that an integer must fit in one 16-bit word. 32767 is the largest positive number that can fit in one word (0111111111111111, where the first bit represents the sign); -32768 is the largest negative number.

Because of these two limitations (magnitude, and lack of fractions) you must be careful in your use of integer mode arithmetic. Integer mode is generally used for counters and indicators. However, if you desire to keep track of the position of the decimal point yourself, you can use integer arithmetic to process data with implied decimal points.

For example, if you know that pay rates at your company range from $1.25 to $6.50 per hour, you could represent these rates as integers ranging from 125 to 650 cents per hour. If rates ranged from $1.250 to $6.500 per hour, with some rates involving fractions of cents (say $3.375 per hour), they could be represented as integers from 1250 to 6500 mills per hour.

Since mixed mode arithmetic is permitted in 1130 FORTRAN, there is no problem involved in multiplying the integer IRATE by the real HOURS:

PAY = HOURS * IRATE

If IRATE is 3125 ($3.125 per hour) and HOURS is 33.5, PAY will be 104687.5. After the multiplication you must be careful to reposition the decimal point in the proper place ($104.6875) and round off ($104.69) before printing the result or accumulating totals.

Real Mode

General

A real number may be defined as a number with a decimal point; fractions are allowed. If you use 1130 FORTRAN for real arithmetic, the arithmetic subroutines will keep track of the decimal point for you, and the output subroutines will place it in the proper place in the output results.

On the 1130, a real number may be thought of as having four components:

1. The whole portion
2. The fractional portion
3. A pointer indicating the location of the decimal point
4. A positive or negative sign

For example, the number 267.4 has:

1. A whole portion, 267
2. A fractional portion, .4
3. A pointer indicating that the decimal point is between the 7 and the 4
4. A positive sign

Since the 1130 is a binary computer, these four components are represented in binary form as follows:

- The 267 as 100001011
- The .4 as .011001100110----
- A pointer of 9 showing that the binary point is between the ninth and tenth bits
- The sign is positive (a 0 bit)

Rearranging and simplifying somewhat, this can be written as (9, +, 100001011, .011001100110----)

The first value, the 9, is , in decimal, the number of bits in the whole portion; the second item is the sign; the third value is the whole portion itself; the last value is the fraction.

The number of bits available for the whole and fraction combined depends on the precision option selected:

- Standard precision allots 23 bits for these two items.
- Extended precision allots 31 bits for them.

The whole portion of the number, since it is more significant, gets first choice of the available bits. In this case, the whole portion (267) requires 9 bits, leaving either 14 or 22 bits for the fraction, depending on the precision chosen.

This can cause inaccuracies, since most fractions cannot be represented exactly in 14 or 22 bits, or in any number of bits, for that matter. To see why, let us see how .4 in the above example is represented in binary notation. You are probably familiar with the binary system for whole numbers (1,2,4,8, 16,32, etc., or 2^0, 2^1, 2^2, 2^3, 2^4, 2^5, etc., respectively). In the case of fractions, the values proceed from the decimal (or binary) point to the right as 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32, etc., or 2^{-1}, 2^{-2}, 2^{-3}, 2^{-4}, 2^{-5}, etc., respectively.

For example, .625 is

.1010000000

or 1/2 plus 1/8

or .5000 plus .125.

It can be represented exactly in only three bits; however, this is unusual.

The example, .4, appears to be a rather simple number, and you might think that it also can be represented exactly as a binary fraction. The table below shows that this is not true:

Bit Position	Value	Used = 1 Not Used = 0	Subtotal
1	.5	0	.0
2	.25	1	.25
3	.125	1	.375
4	.0625	0	.375
5	.03125	0	.375
6	.015625	1	.390625
7	.0078125	1	.3984375
8	.00390625	0	.3984375
9	.001953125	0	.3984375
10	.0009765625	1	.3994140625
11	.00048828125	1	.39990234375
12	.000244140625	0	.39990234375

You see that the binary representation can come close to .4 but never hit it. With 12 bits (.011001100110) the decimal value is .39990234375; with 16 bits, .399993896484375; with 20 bits, .3999996185302734375; etc.

The fraction chosen, .4, is not an unusual number; it is typical of most fractions.

Unlike fractions, whole numbers can be represented exactly in binary form. However, you do reach a limit, depending on the number of bits available. In standard precision, if you use all 23 bits for the whole portion, you can attain a magnitude of 8,388,607. With extended precision, the 31 available bits yield 2,147,483,647.

Real--Floating Point

The term "floating point" implies that the decimal point is permitted to "float" among the digits in a real number. In other words, the 1130 arithmetic subroutines will keep track of the location of the decimal point and move it about to maintain the validity of the number. If you multiply $1.78 per hour by 32.20 hours, the answer becomes $57.3160. The decimal point "floats", thus remaining correctly positioned at all times.

As you saw before, though, the result may not be exact, since .316 probably cannot be represented exactly as a binary number. In fact, the 1.78 and the 32.20 were both probably inexact, too.

If you are doing an engineering or other non-commercial job, the answer is probably good enough; it matters little whether the result is 57.316000 or 57.316003 or 57.315999. If your application is commercially oriented, however, close is not good enough, since you are probably dealing with cash. Because accounting balances are so important, answers must be exact, down to the last unit (penny, box). It is not that people will worry about the penny itself, but that unbalanced totals traditionally indicate an error. If the face value of 600 payroll checks totals $12345.67, while the system's grand total is $12345.68, something may be seriously wrong somewhere. The fact that the net error is only one cent is immaterial; there may be 300 people overpaid by one cent, and 299 underpaid by one cent.

Real--Fixed Point

To eliminate the inaccuracies described above, you can use real arithmetic in a "fixed point" mode. "Fixed point" means that the decimal point is kept fixed to the right of the least significant digit, eliminating fractions altogether.

Earlier, you saw that 1.78 times 32.20 gave 57.3160, an answer that probably was inexact. If, however, you had used real, fixed point arithmetic, you would have multiplied $1_{\wedge}78.$ by $3_{\wedge}220.$, and obtained $57_{\wedge}3160.$, exactly. All three numbers, since they involve no fractions, will be exact, not just close. Note that the $_{\wedge}$ is used to locate the implied decimal point.

This puts a slight burden on your programmer: instead of letting the subroutines keep track of the decimal point for him, he must now do it himself.

Using the values mentioned above, 1.78 times 32.20 is 57.3160 (dollars), while $1_{\wedge}78.$ times $32_{\wedge}20.$ is $57_{\wedge}3160.$ (ten thousandths of dollars). In the latter case, you must remember that the true decimal point is four places to the left of the one supplied by the system.

Rounding

Suppose you have just calculated an employee's gross pay as 107^5673. (understood to be $107.5673) and wish to apply a deduction of $19.733 (represented as 19^733.). Notice that the decimal points are not "lined up"; the units are not the same--the gross is in hundredths of cents, and the deductions are in tenths of cents.

How do you perform this subtraction?

a. 107^5673. - (19^733. x 10.)
b. (107^5673./10.) - 19^733.
c. (107^5673./10000.) - (19^733./1000.)

None of these is correct. Before subtracting, you must round these two quantities -- commonly to the nearest cent.

In the case of the 107^5673. gross, you must add 1/2 cent or 50. hundredths, obtaining 107^5723., then divide by 100, to get 107^57.23. Now, since the .23 is both inexact and meaningless, it must be eliminated. The WHOLE function supplied with the Commercial Subroutine Package converts the fractional part of the number to zeros.

All three functions-- round, shift and clear fractions -- can be done in one statement. The statement

```
GROSS = WHOLE ((GROSS + 5Ø.)*Ø.Ø1+0.5)
```

rounds off GROSS, shifts it two places to the right, and clears everything remaining to the right of the decimal point to zeros. Note that multiplication rather than division was used (see Section 70.50.00).

In the case of the deduction, you would say

```
DEDUC = WHOLE ((DEDUC +5.) *0.1+0.5)
```

Now both values have been rounded and are in whole cents, with all extraneous fractions cleared. Note what would have happened if the fractions had not been cleared:

```
  10757.23
   1973.80
  --------
   8783.43
```

The correct answer is:

```
  10757.00000
   1973.00000
  -----------
   8784.00000
```

You may wish to code several arithmetic statement functions, each one shifting a predetermined number of places to the right:

```
RND1(X) = WHOLE((X+X/ABS(X)*5.0)/10.+0.5)
RND2(X) = WHOLE((X+X/ABS(X)*50.0)/100.+0.5)
RND3(X) = WHOLE((X+X/ABS(X)*500.0)/1000.+0.5)
etc.
```

where the fourth character of the FUNCTION name indicates the number of places to be shifted.

Accuracy and Magnitude

Suppose you are using extended precision real numbers, where 31 bits are available for the whole number and fraction combined. How large a number can you have? 2,147,483,647? No, that is just the largest number that can fit in 31 bits. Values much larger are possible-- for example, 1,000,000,000,000,666,777,888., which can easily be handled in the 1130.

The decimal point indicator can be as large as 64 in binary, or about 38 in decimal, meaning that extremely large real numbers can be represented on the 1130.

The drawback is their accuracy. Especially in commercial applications, numbers must be precise. The number 1,000,000,000,000,666,777,888. can be read into the 1130, but it will be accurate only to nine or ten decimal digits. In other words, the nine most significant digits will be retained, but the remaining digits will be lost. The decimal point indicator will show the proper magnitude, but the number is not accurate.

If you want accurate results, you must not exceed the 31 bits (2,147,483,647.) or 23 bits (8,388,607.) available.

Furthermore, if you want accurate numbers, you must not allow any fractions to be generated.

Combining the above two warnings, then, means that you should limit real numerical values to the whole numbers between -2,147,483,648. and +2,147,483,647. Any number outside this range will probably not be exact; most fractions will probably be inexact.

If you work commercial problems in cents, you are limited to $21,474,836.47 (carried as a whole, fixed point real number). The limit is $2,147,483.647 if you wish to work in mills.

These limits are usually ample for jobs such as payroll, etc., but may be troublesome in accounting-type work, where year-to-date sales, total assets, etc., may exceed $21 million. If this is the case, the decimal arithmetic subroutines of the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package may be used.

Output of Large Real Numbers

A second precaution must be taken with very large numbers, and it falls in the area of output. Because most fractions are inexactly represented and will always be less than the true decimal value, the FORTRAN output routines (including the TRACE) always add a single bit in the low-order position of the number, attempting to compensate for this inaccuracy. For this reason, you rarely notice the inaccuracy.

For example, if you multiplied 0.35 by 100.0, you would expect to get 35., exactly. The binary result, however, converted to decimal, is

34.99999999999999999757138713...

(because the multiplier of 0.35 is an inexact fraction). That is not the result you see, though, since the FORTRAN output routine adds its one low-order bit, resulting in

35.00000002980232236340918 38...

Although that is no more exact than the previous value, it looks better; in fact, you would never notice the extra

.00000002980232238769531 25

unless you output the number with a format like F40.20, which would be unusual.

If your number is large, however, this "little extra" can cause the output to be noticeably in error. For example, the whole number 2111111111., while represented exactly in core storage, will be output as 2111111112., an error of 1. unit.

This problem will occur with numbers in the range 1,073,741,824. to 2,147,483,647. if they are output with a standard FORTRAN F format. For this reason, you may wish to limit the magnitude of all numbers to 1,073,741,824., or, easier to remember, nine digits (999,999,999.)

This problem does <u>not</u> occur if the value is printed as alphabetic data, converted by the PUT subroutine of the Commercial Subroutine Package. This routine will not add the extra bit, and all whole numbers up to 2,147,483,647. will be output exactly.

Multiplication of Large Real Numbers

Because of the manner in which the 1130 performs multiplication, a product is accurate only to 30 bits. This means that a product exceeding 1,073,741,823. may not be exactly correct. In fact, there is a 75-25 chance that it will be correct, and a 25-75 chance that it will be off by 1. unit.

While this is quite satisfactory for technical work, it cannot be permitted in most commercial applications. For this reason, you should avoid multiplications that might yield such a large product.

Note that this limitation does not apply to addition and subtraction, where all 31 bits may be used - and the upper limit is 2,147,483,647.

Decimal Mode

Introduction

In addition to integer and real mode arithmetic, there is a third alternative: decimal arithmetic. This capability is furnished by a group of subroutines supplied with the Commercial Subroutine Package (1130-SE-25X). This mode of arithmetic permits variable precision.

Using the decimal arithmetic system, you select the number of digits to be used for each variable. If a grand total can attain a magnitude of 15,000,000,000.00, you can allocate 13 digits for it; if the number of employee dependents never exceeds 99, you may allocate only two digits for that value.

You are not limited by magnitudes of 32767, 2,147,483,647., etc. You decide how large a number can become and set aside enough digits for its storage.

General Principles

This arithmetic system operates on digits stored as integers, one digit per word. For example, the value 1968 would be stored in a four-position array NYEAR as

NYEAR (1) = 1
NYEAR (2) = 9
NYEAR (3) = 6
NYEAR (4) = 8

or in a six-position array as

NYEAR (1) = 0
NYEAR (2) = 0
NYEAR (3) = 1
NYEAR (4) = 9
NYEAR (5) = 6
NYEAR (6) = 8

or in any size array you desire.

Negative values carry the minus sign with the low-order (or rightmost) digit. However, since the 1130 cannot represent -0, a special method has been devised to show negative numbers. If the number is negative, the low-order digit is carried as one less than its true value.

For example, -1968 is actually held in core storage as

NYEAR (1) = 1
NYEAR (2) = 9
NYEAR (3) = 6
NYEAR (4) = -9

For ease of reference, we will refer to this as $196\bar{8}$, where the minus sign is written over the low-order digit.

You need not worry about this unless you are defining negative constants, which should be unusual. If a negative number is read from a card, this conversion will be done for you, with the A1DEC subroutine.

The magnitude of each value will be shown by the number of digits: 001968 implies a six-digit or six-word value, 0000001968 implies a ten-word value.

Each decimal arithmetic value requires three identifying parameters:

- The NAME of the array in which it is stored.
- KSTRT, the position (or subscript) of the high-order (leftmost) digit in the array.
- KLAST, the position of the low-order digit in the array

When referring to decimal arithmetic values, a shorthand abbreviation will be used, enclosing these three parameters in parentheses:

(NAME, KSTRT, KLAST)

For example, if you had a 20-word array called NUMBR:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
0	0	0	1	3	$\bar{6}$	4	3	0	0	7	7	8	3	0	0	0	8	1	$\bar{3}$

then

(NUMBR, 1, 6) = 00013$\bar{6}$ or -136
(NUMBR, 1, 5) = 00013 or 13
(NUMBR, 7, 19) = 4300778300081
(NUMBR, 15, 20) = 00081$\bar{3}$ or -813

The Decimal Arithmetic Subroutines

The IBM 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package furnishes subroutines to perform the following four arithmetic operations:

ADD to add two decimal values
SUB to subtract two decimal values
MPY to multiply two decimal values
DIV to divide two decimal values

All four have similar calling sequences, requiring three basic elements:

The identification of the first variable
The identification of the second variable
An error code

Since the identification of each variable requires three parameters (e.g., NUMBR, 1, 6), each subroutine has a total of seven parameters.

If no error conditions occur, the subroutine leaves the error code, NER, set to whatever value it had when the subroutine was called. Note that the subroutines merely set the indicator NER. They do not pause, print a message, or take any other definite action. It is up to you to set NER before calling the subroutines, and to test it after each is complete.

Addition. The general form of the ADD subroutine is

CALL ADD (addend, augend, error code)

where the addend is added to the augend, and the result is left in the augend.

There are two possible error conditions. Both are illustrated in the accompanying examples (Figures 70.1 through 70.6).

Subtraction. The general form of the Subtract subroutine is

CALL SUB (subtrahend, minuend, error code)

where the subtrahend is subtracted from the minuend, and the result replaces the minuend.

There are two possible error conditions. Both are included in the accompanying examples (Figures 70.7 through 70.11).

Multiplication. Because of its nature, multiplication is somewhat more involved than addition and subtraction. For example, if you multiply two two-digit numbers, 95 and 86, your result is 8220, a four-digit number. If you multiply a three-digit number, 666, by a two-digit number, 55, your answer is 36630, a five-digit number. The result of a multiplication, the product, may have as many digits as the sum of the number of digits in the multiplier and the multiplicand. Therefore, you must provide that many digits for the result.

The MPY subroutine accomplishes this in a very straightforward manner. The multiplicand field, which will be the eventual location of the product, is extended to the left the same number of digits as are contained in the multiplier. For example, if you multiply a four-digit number by a two-digit number, the subroutine will extend the four-digit field to the left two places, to hold the six-digit product.

It does this regardless of what was in these positions previously. Obviously, you must consider this fact when laying out your data areas in core storage.

Figures 70.12 and 70.13 present several examples of the use of the MPY subroutine.

Division. The divide subroutine, DIV, has the calling sequence

CALL DIV (divisor, dividend, error code)

with the result placed in the dividend field.

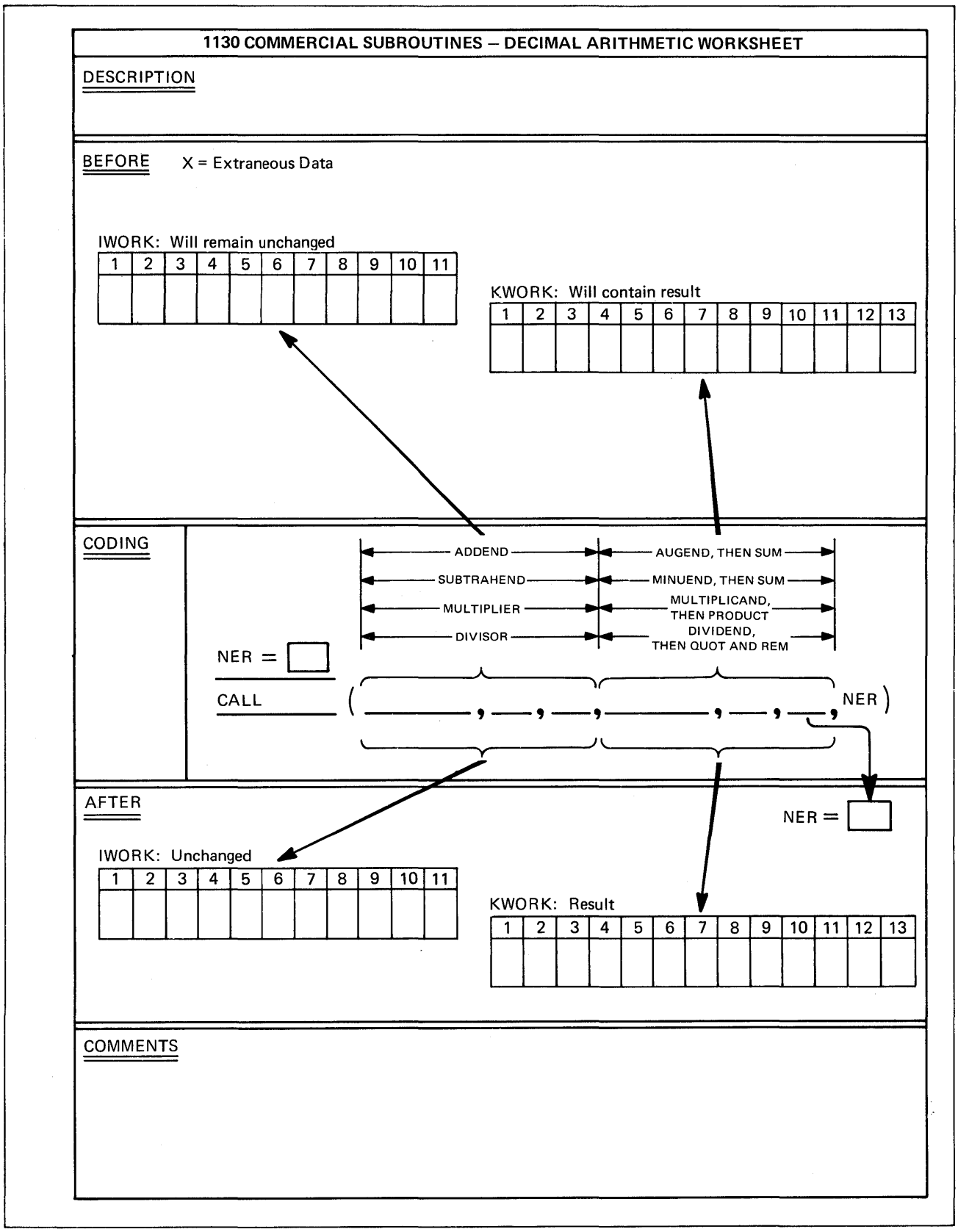
Before covering the DIV subroutine, a quick review of division might be in order. If you divide 13 by 4, the result is 3 1/4, where

13 is the dividend
4 is the divisor
3 is the quotient
1 is the remainder

In other words:

$$\frac{\text{dividend}}{\text{divisor}} = \text{quotient} + \frac{\text{remainder}}{\text{divisor}}$$

This is the form of the result after use of DIV -- a quotient of 3 and a remainder of 1. Note that the result is not 3.25. For this reason special care must be taken when half-adjusting the result of a division. Also note in Figures 70.14 through 70.17 that the length of the remainder field will be the same as the length of the divisor.


1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION
BEFORE
X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER =
CALL
NER
AFTER
NER =
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
COMMENTS

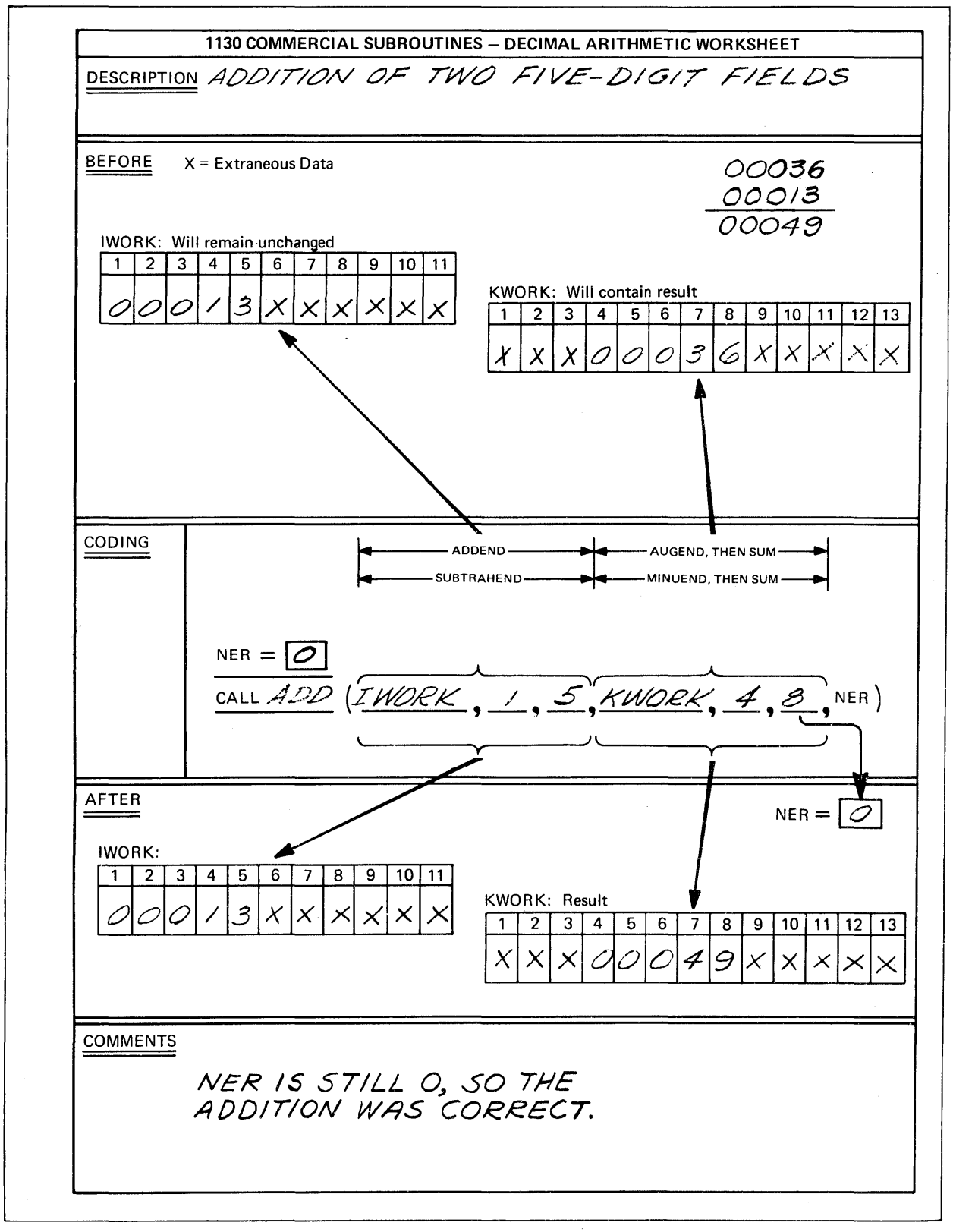

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION ADDITION OF TWO FIVE-DIGIT FIELDS
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
00036
00013
00049
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 1 3 X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X 0 0 0 3 6 X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 1, 5, KWORK, 4, 8, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 1 3 X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X 0 0 0 4 9 X X X X X
COMMENTS
NER IS STILL 0, SO THE
ADDITION WAS CORRECT.

Figure 70.1.

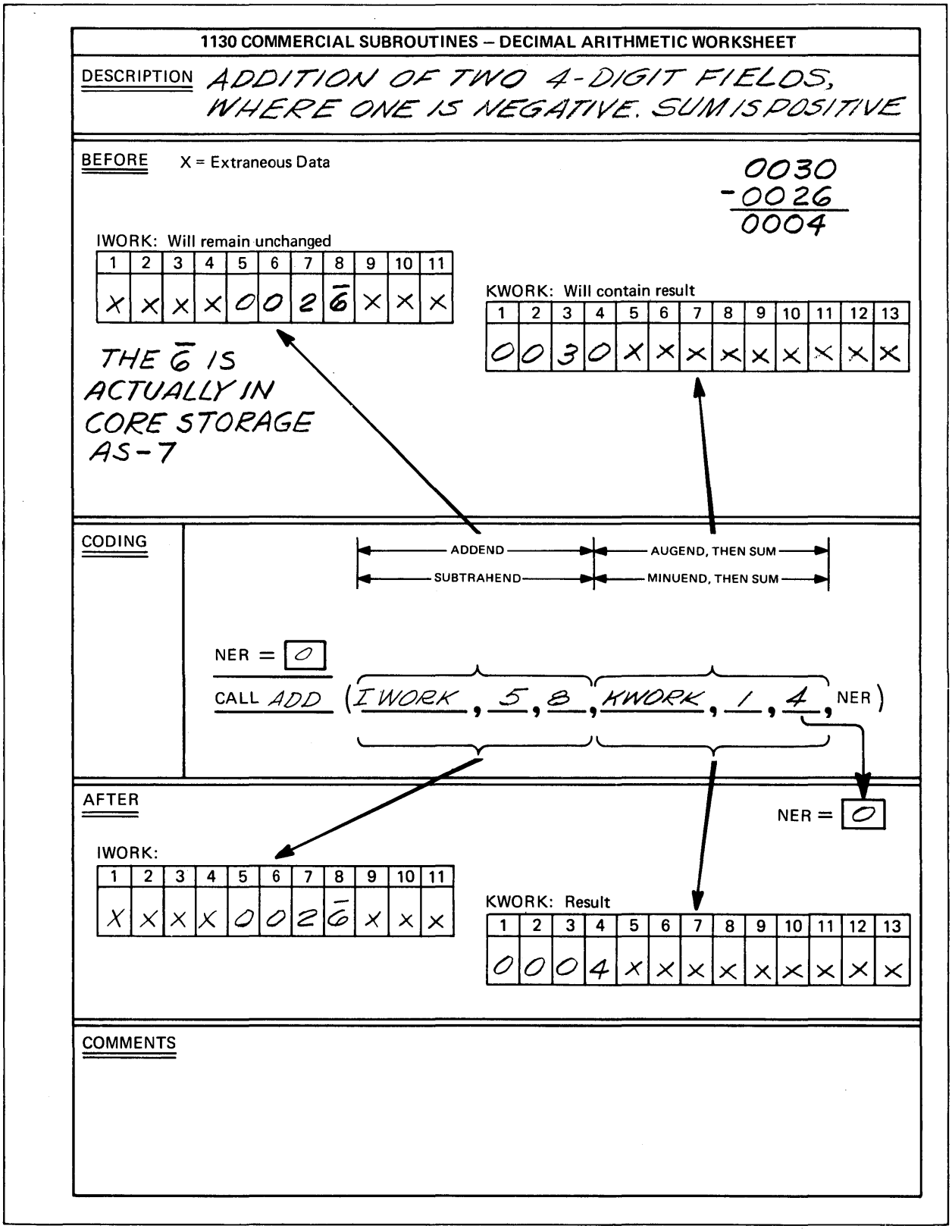

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION ADDITION OF TWO 4-DIGIT FIELDS, WHERE ONE IS NEGATIVE. SUM IS POSITIVE
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
0030
-0026
0004
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 0 0 2 6̄ X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 3 0 X X X X X X X X X
THE 6̄ IS ACTUALLY IN CORE STORAGE AS-7
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 5, 8, KWORK, 1, 4, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 0 0 2 6̄ X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 4 X X X X X X X X X
COMMENTS

Figure 70.2.

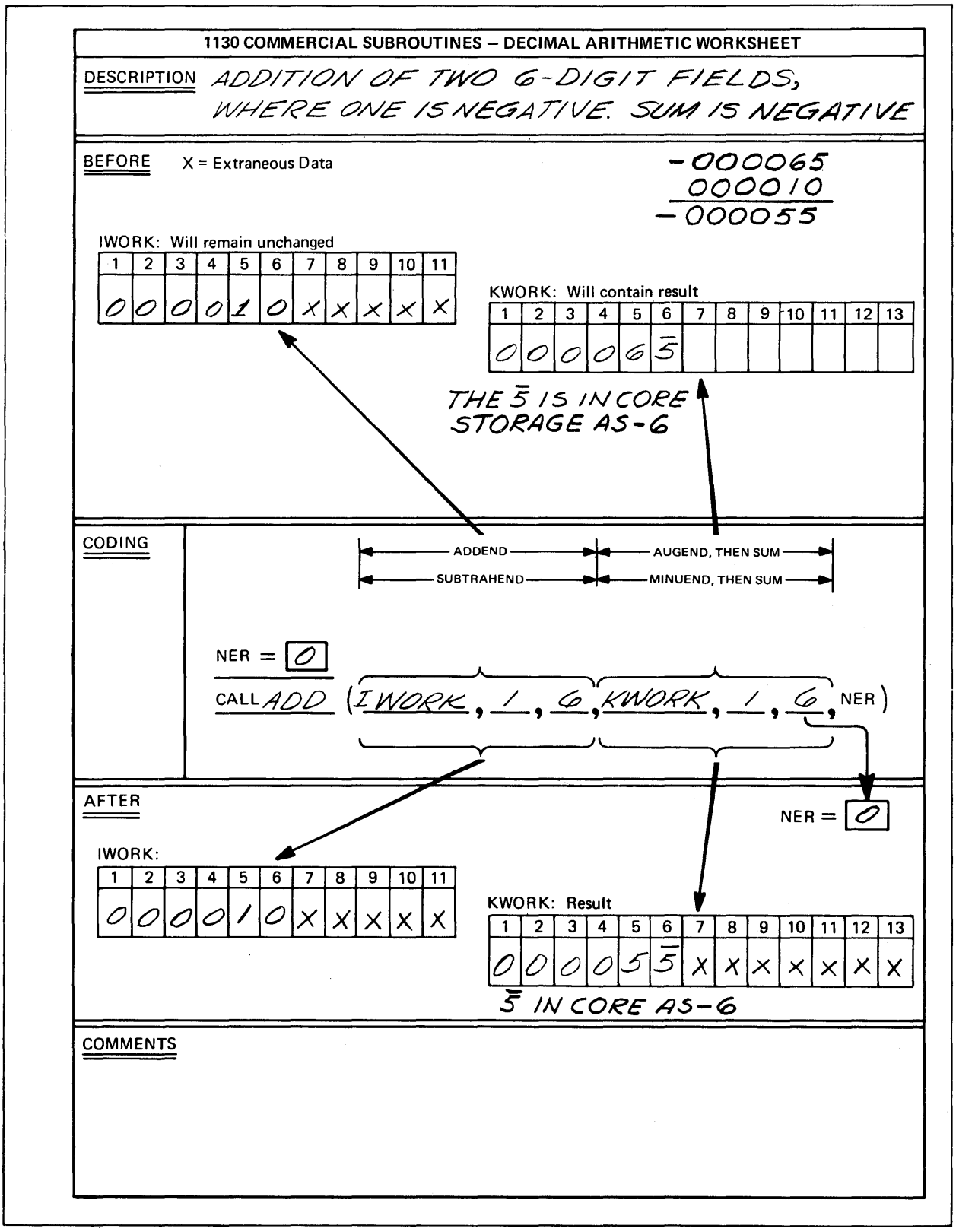

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION ADDITION OF TWO 6-DIGIT FIELDS, WHERE ONE IS NEGATIVE. SUM IS NEGATIVE
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
-000065
000010
-000055
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 0 1 0 X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 0 6 5̄
THE 5̄ IS IN CORE STORAGE AS-6
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 1, 6, KWORK, 1, 6, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 0 1 0 X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 0 5 5̄ X X X X X X X
5̄ IN CORE AS-6
COMMENTS

Figure 70.3.

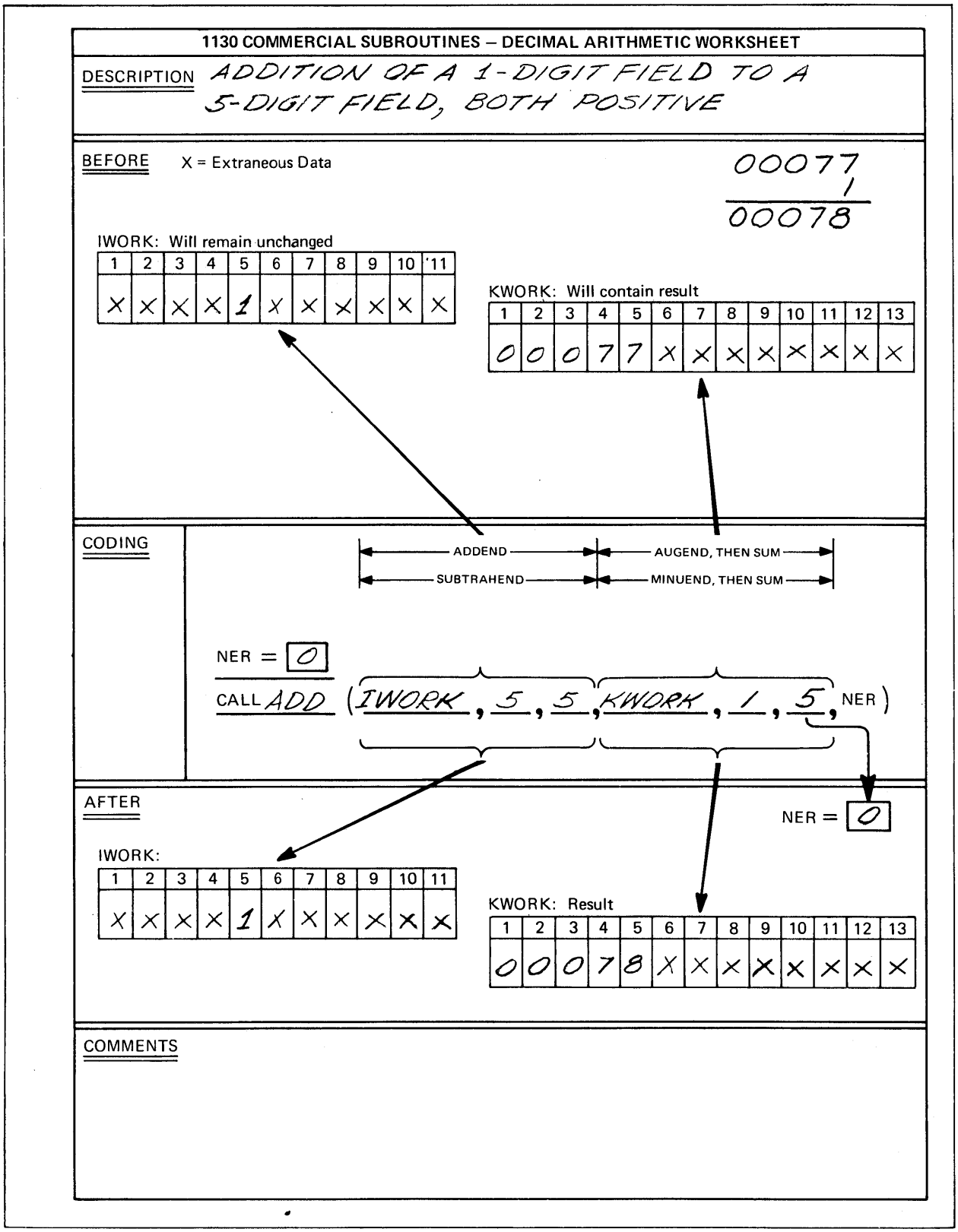

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION ADDITION OF A 1-DIGIT FIELD TO A 5-DIGIT FIELD, BOTH POSITIVE
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
00077
1
00078
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 1 X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 7 7 X X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 5, 5, KWORK, 1, 5, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 1 X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 7 8 X X X X X X X X
COMMENTS

Figure 70.4.

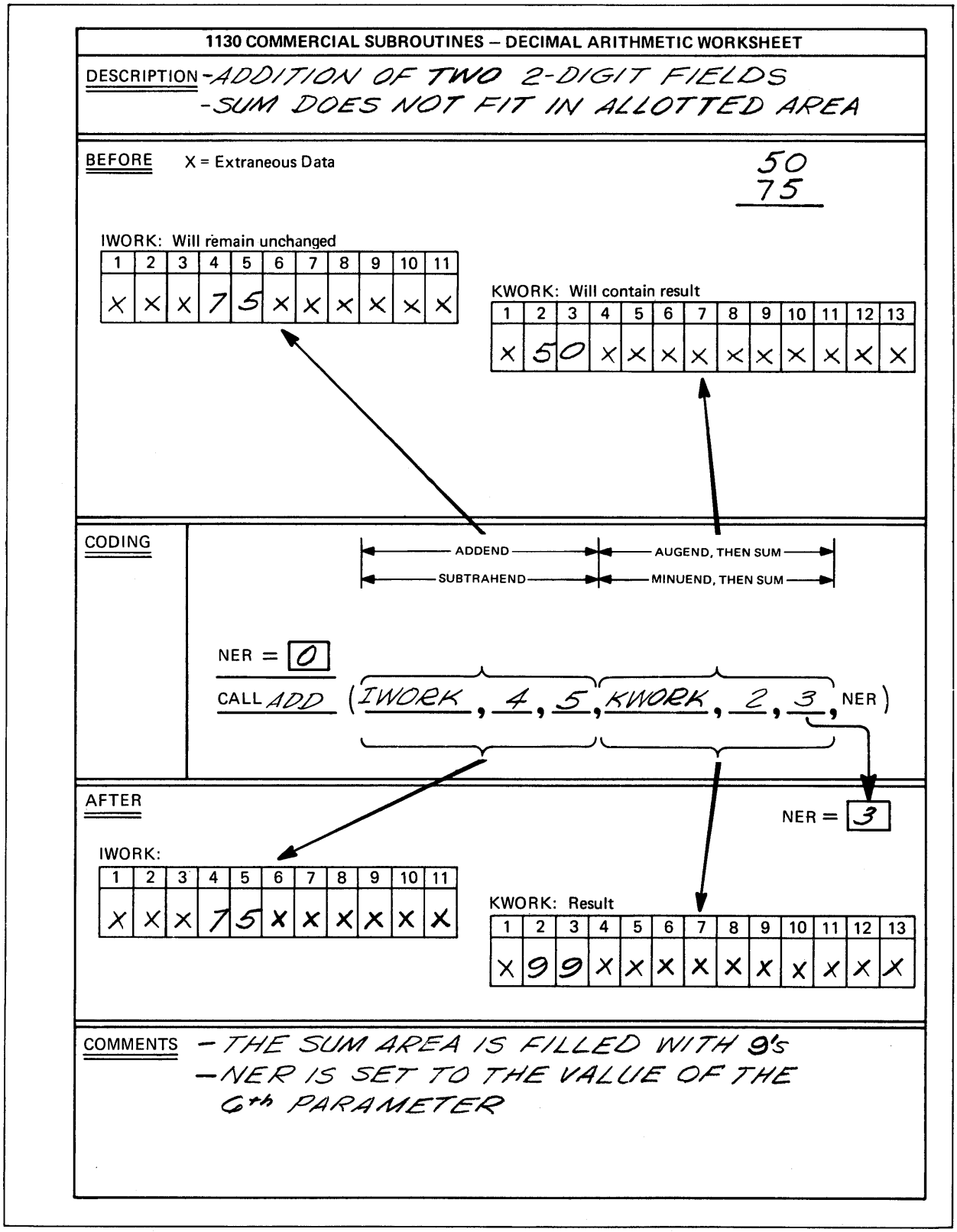

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION -ADDITION OF TWO 2-DIGIT FIELDS
-SUM DOES NOT FIT IN ALLOTTED AREA
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
50
75
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X 7 5 X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X 5 0 X X X X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 4, 5, KWORK, 2, 3, NER)
AFTER
NER = 3
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X 7 5 X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X 9 9 X X X X X X X X X X
COMMENTS -THE SUM AREA IS FILLED WITH 9's
-NER IS SET TO THE VALUE OF THE
6th PARAMETER

Figure 70.5.

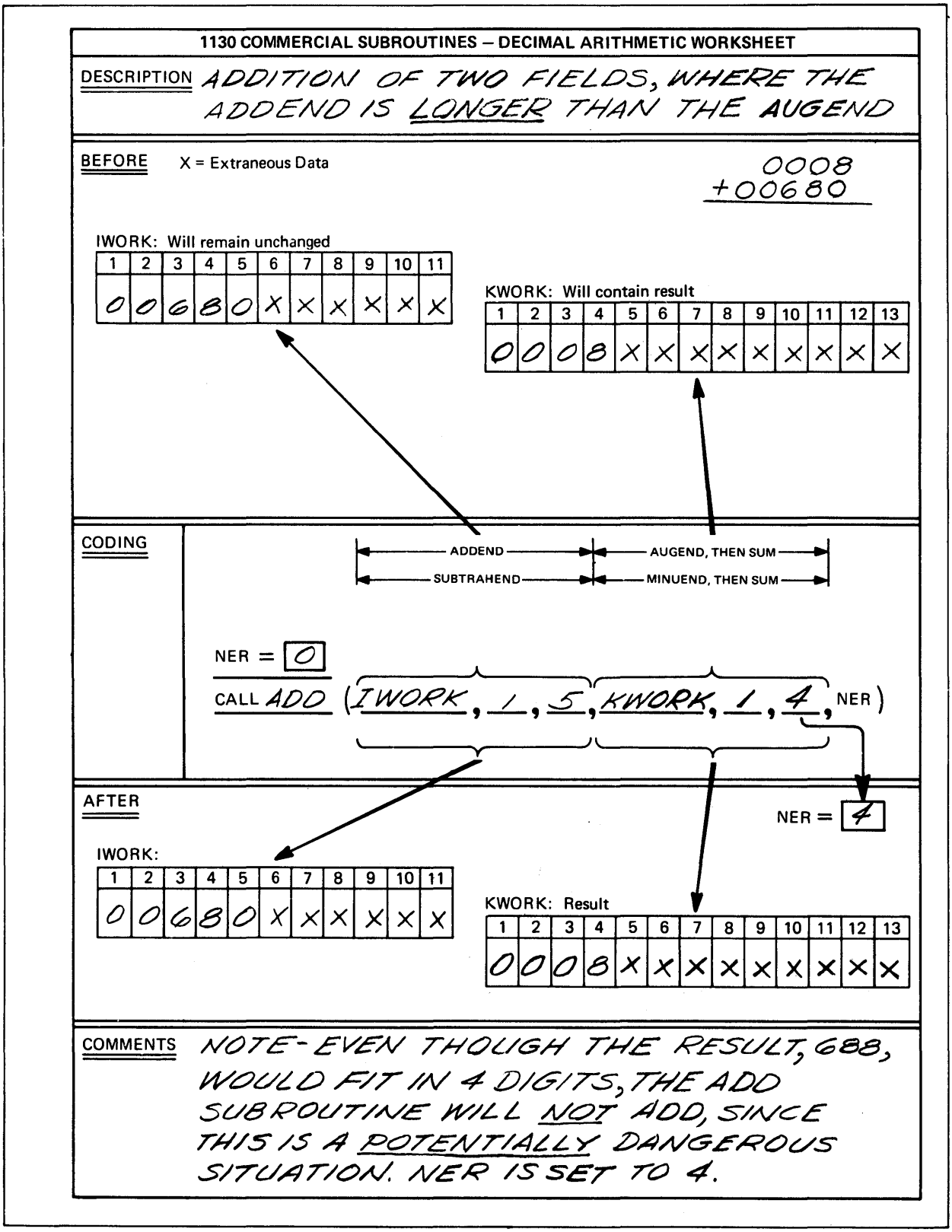

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION ADDITION OF TWO FIELDS, WHERE THE ADDEND IS LONGER THAN THE AUGEND
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
0008
+00680
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 6 8 0 X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 8 X X X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL ADD (IWORK, 1, 5, KWORK, 1, 4, NER)
AFTER
NER = 4
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 6 8 0 X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 8 X X X X X X X X X
COMMENTS NOTE-EVEN THOUGH THE RESULT, 688, WOULD FIT IN 4 DIGITS, THE ADD SUBROUTINE WILL NOT ADD, SINCE THIS IS A POTENTIALLY DANGEROUS SITUATION. NER IS SET TO 4.

Figure 70.6.

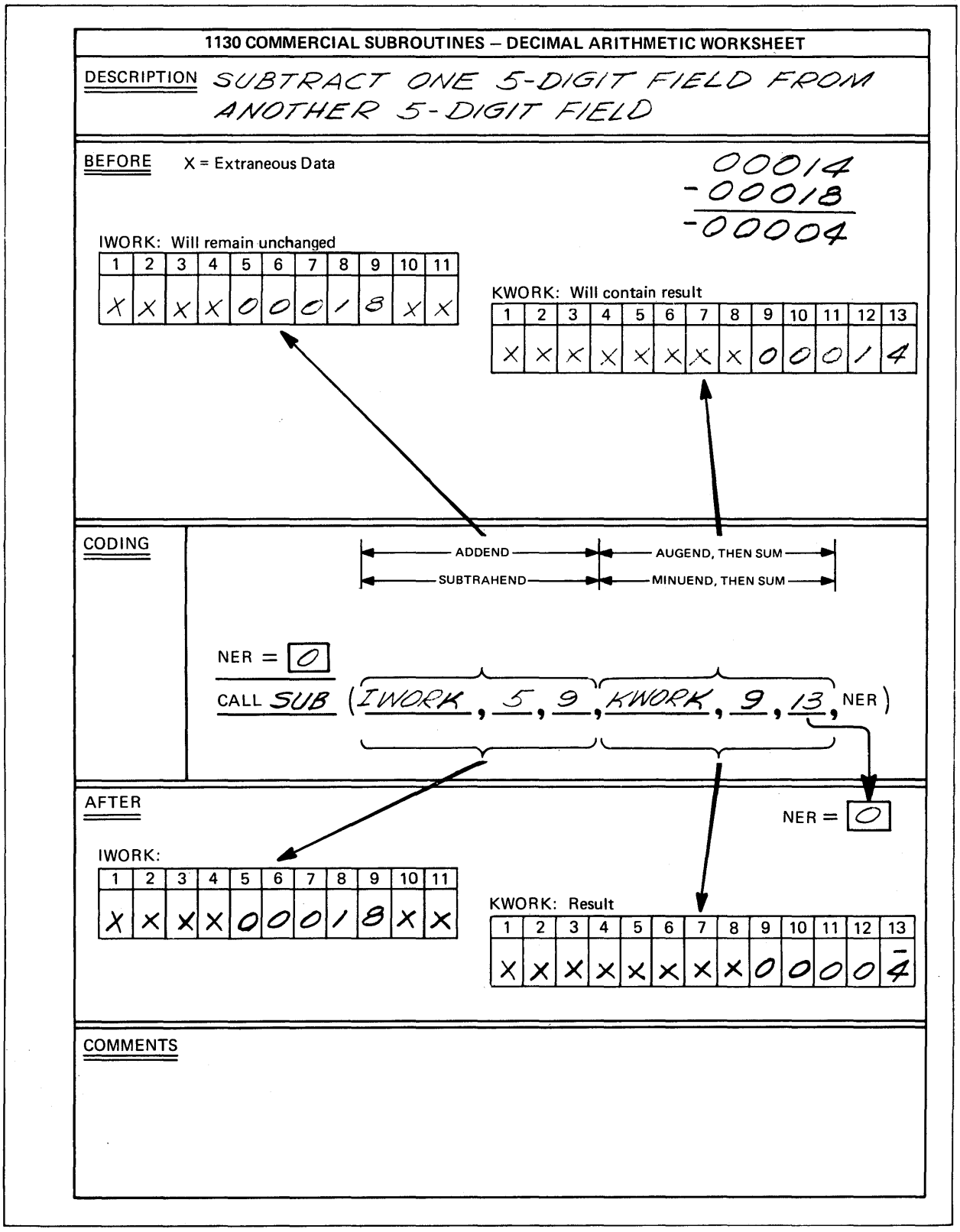

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION SUBTRACT ONE 5-DIGIT FIELD FROM ANOTHER 5-DIGIT FIELD
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
00014
-00018
-00004
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 0 0 0 1 8 X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X X X X X 0 0 0 1 4
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL SUB (IWORK, 5, 9, KWORK, 9, 13, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X 0 0 0 1 8 X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X X X X X 0 0 0 0 -4
COMMENTS

Figure 70.7.

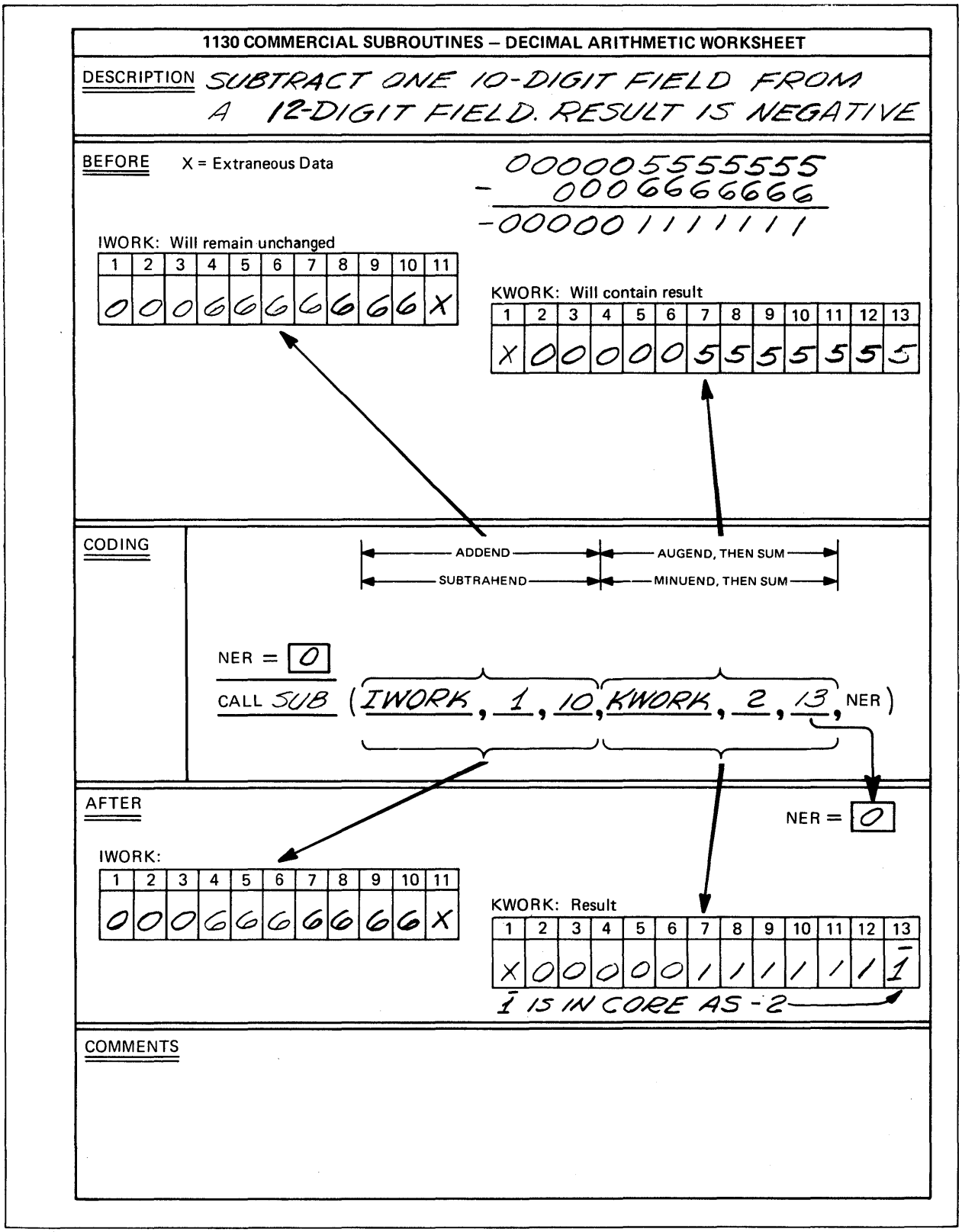

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION SUBTRACT ONE 10-DIGIT FIELD FROM A 12-DIGIT FIELD. RESULT IS NEGATIVE
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
000005555555
- 0006666666
-00000 1111111
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X 0 0 0 0 0 5 5 5 5 5 5
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL SUB (IWORK, 1, 10, KWORK, 2, 13, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
1 IS IN CORE AS -2
COMMENTS

Figure 70.8.

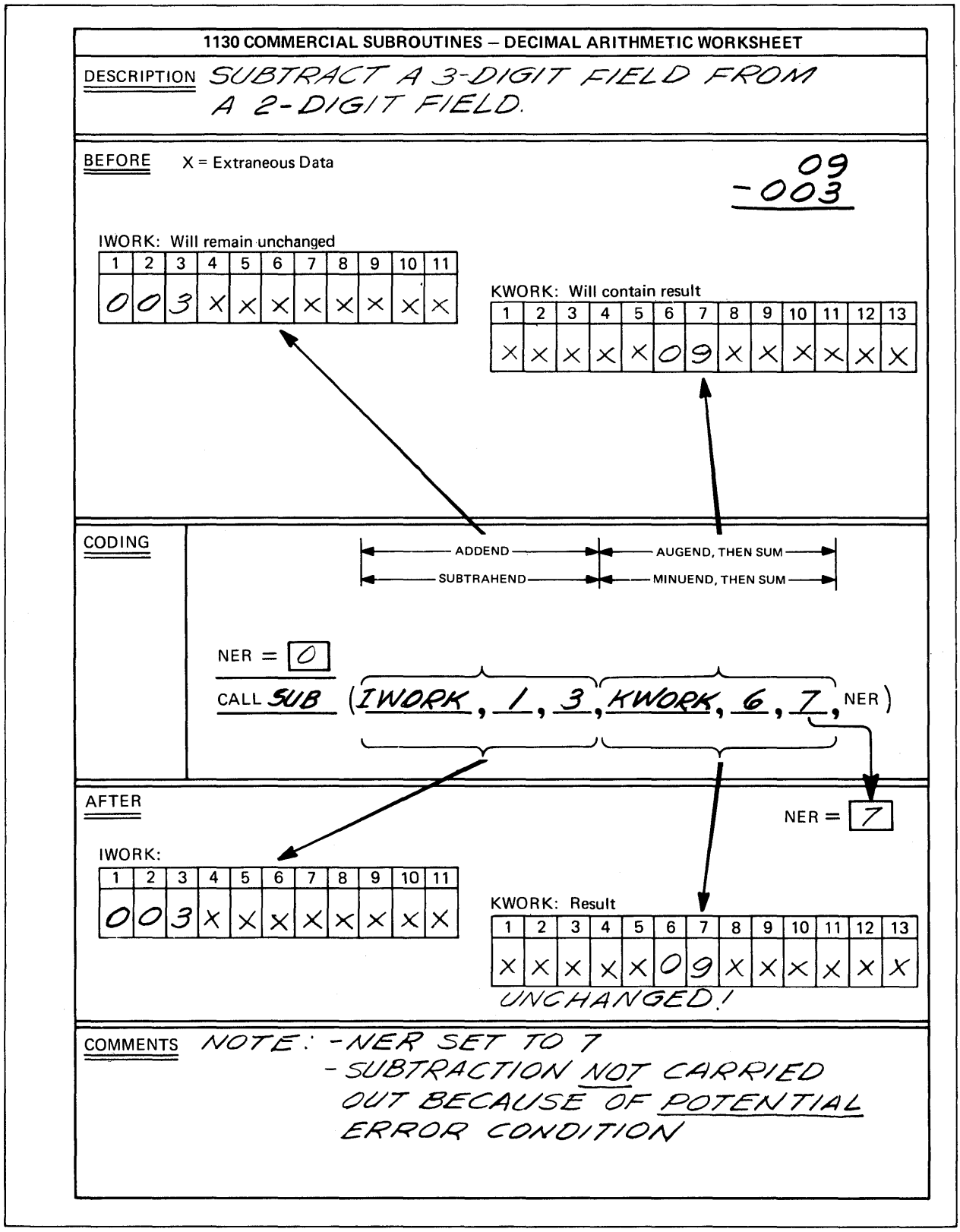

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION SUBTRACT A 3-DIGIT FIELD FROM A 2-DIGIT FIELD.
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
09
-003
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 3 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X X 0 9 X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL SUB (IWORK, 1, 3, KWORK, 6, 7, NER)
AFTER
NER = 7
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 3 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X X 0 9 X X X X X X
UNCHANGED!
COMMENTS NOTE: - NER SET TO 7
- SUBTRACTION NOT CARRIED OUT BECAUSE OF POTENTIAL ERROR CONDITION

Figure 70.9.

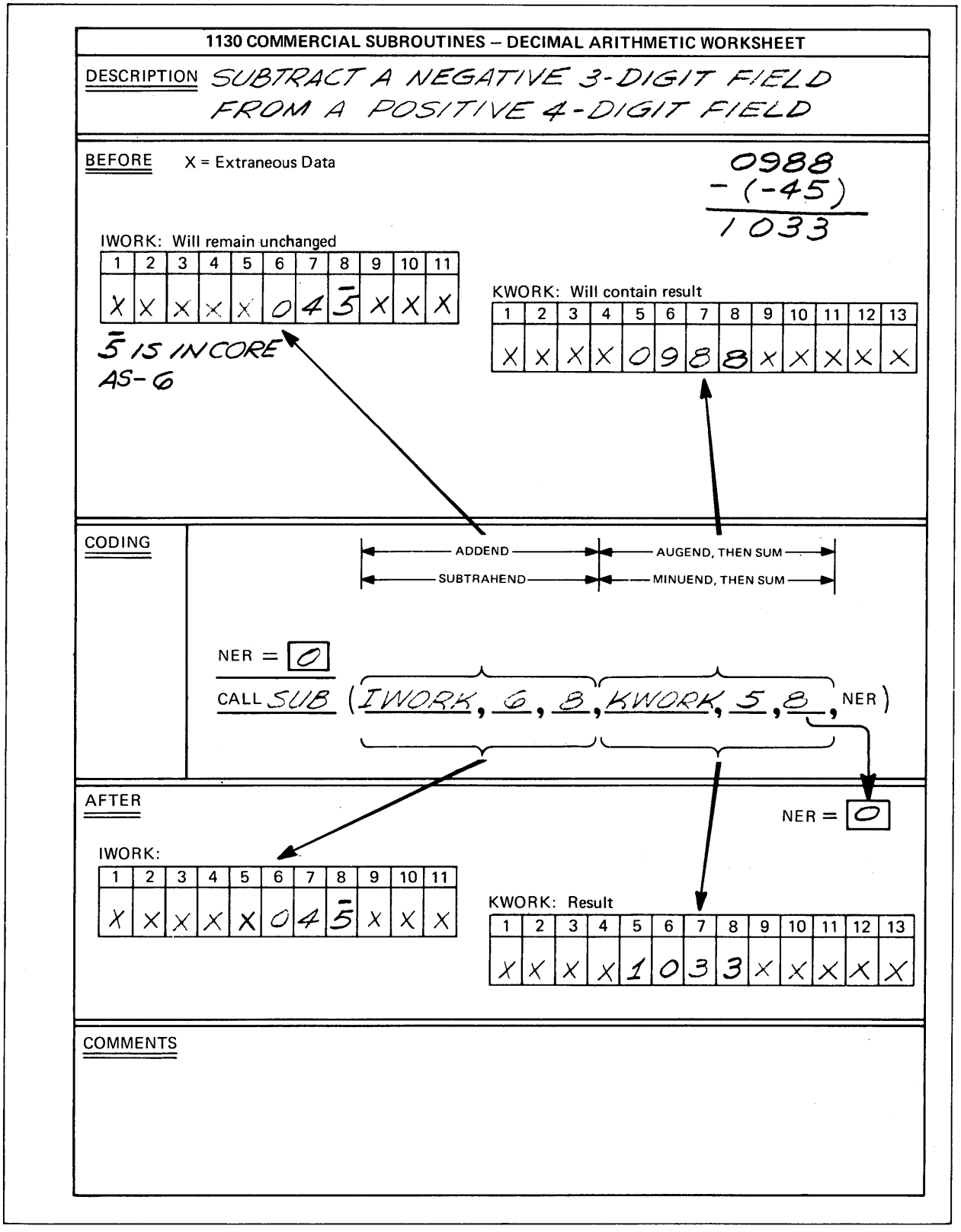

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION SUBTRACT A NEGATIVE 3-DIGIT FIELD FROM A POSITIVE 4-DIGIT FIELD
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
0988
-(-45)
1033
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X X 0 4 5 X X X
5 IS IN CORE AS-6
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X 0 9 8 8 X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL SUB (IWORK, 6, 8, KWORK, 5, 8, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X X 0 4 5 X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X 1 0 3 3 X X X X X
COMMENTS

Figure 70.10.

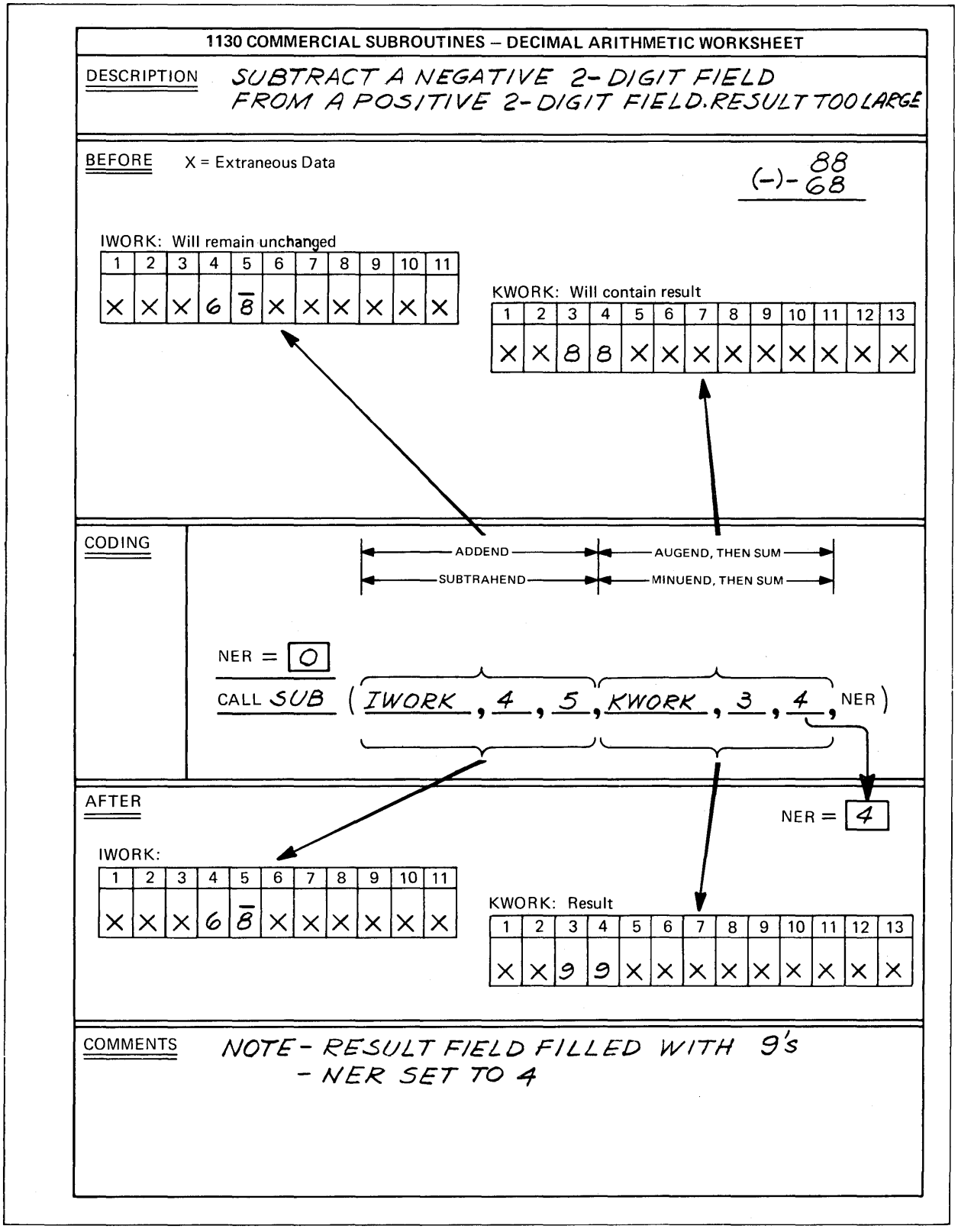

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION
SUBTRACT A NEGATIVE 2-DIGIT FIELD FROM A POSITIVE 2-DIGIT FIELD. RESULT TOO LARGE
BEFORE
X = Extraneous Data
88
(-)-68
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X 6 8 X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X 8 8 X X X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
NER = 0
CALL SUB (IWORK, 4, 5, KWORK, 3, 4, NER)
AFTER
NER = 4
IWORK:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X 6 8 X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X 9 9 X X X X X X X X X
COMMENTS
NOTE - RESULT FIELD FILLED WITH 9's
- NER SET TO 4

Figure 70.11.

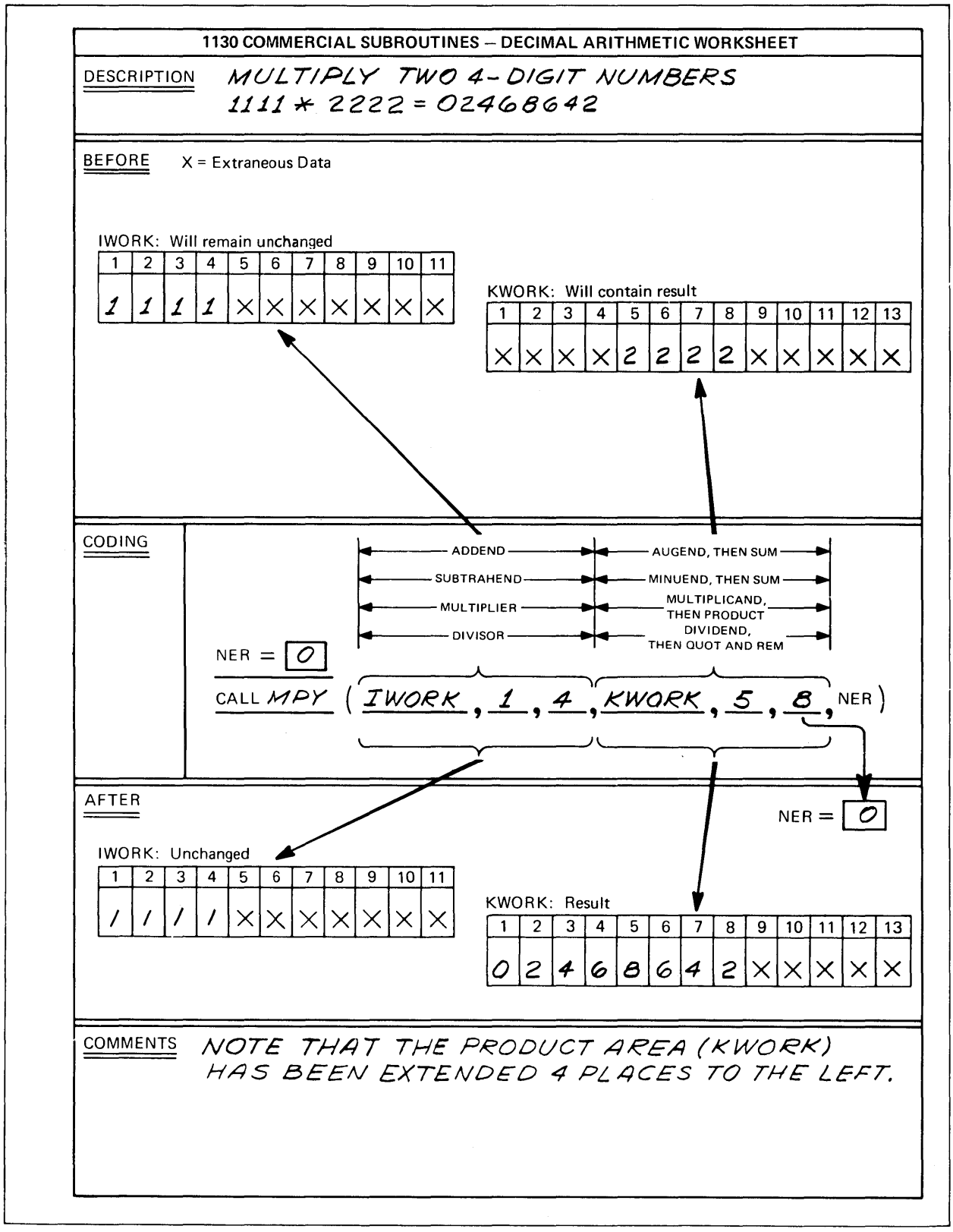

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION
MULTIPLY TWO 4-DIGIT NUMBERS
1111 * 2222 = 02468642
BEFORE
X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
1 1 1 1 X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X X 2 2 2 2 X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL MPY (IWORK , 1 , 4 , KWORK , 5 , 8 , NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
1 1 1 1 X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 2 4 6 8 6 4 2 X X X X X
COMMENTS
NOTE THAT THE PRODUCT AREA (KWORK)
HAS BEEN EXTENDED 4 PLACES TO THE LEFT.

Figure 70.12.

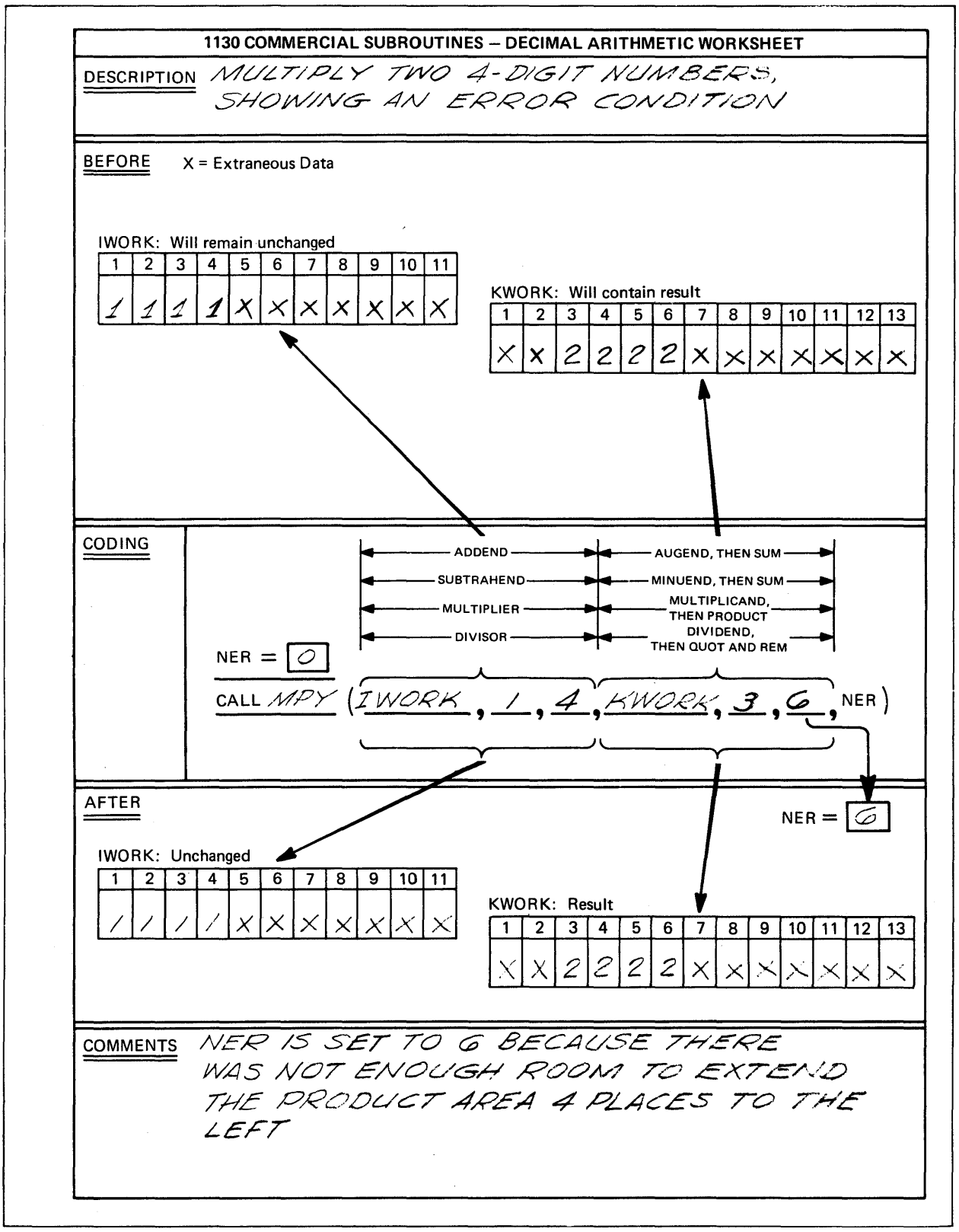

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION MULTIPLY TWO 4-DIGIT NUMBERS, SHOWING AN ERROR CONDITION
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
1 1 1 1 X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X 2 2 2 2 X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL MPY (IWORK, 1, 4, KWORK, 3, 6, NER)
AFTER
NER = 6
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
/ / / / X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X 2 2 2 2 X X X X X X X
COMMENTS NER IS SET TO 6 BECAUSE THERE WAS NOT ENOUGH ROOM TO EXTEND THE PRODUCT AREA 4 PLACES TO THE LEFT

Figure 70.13.

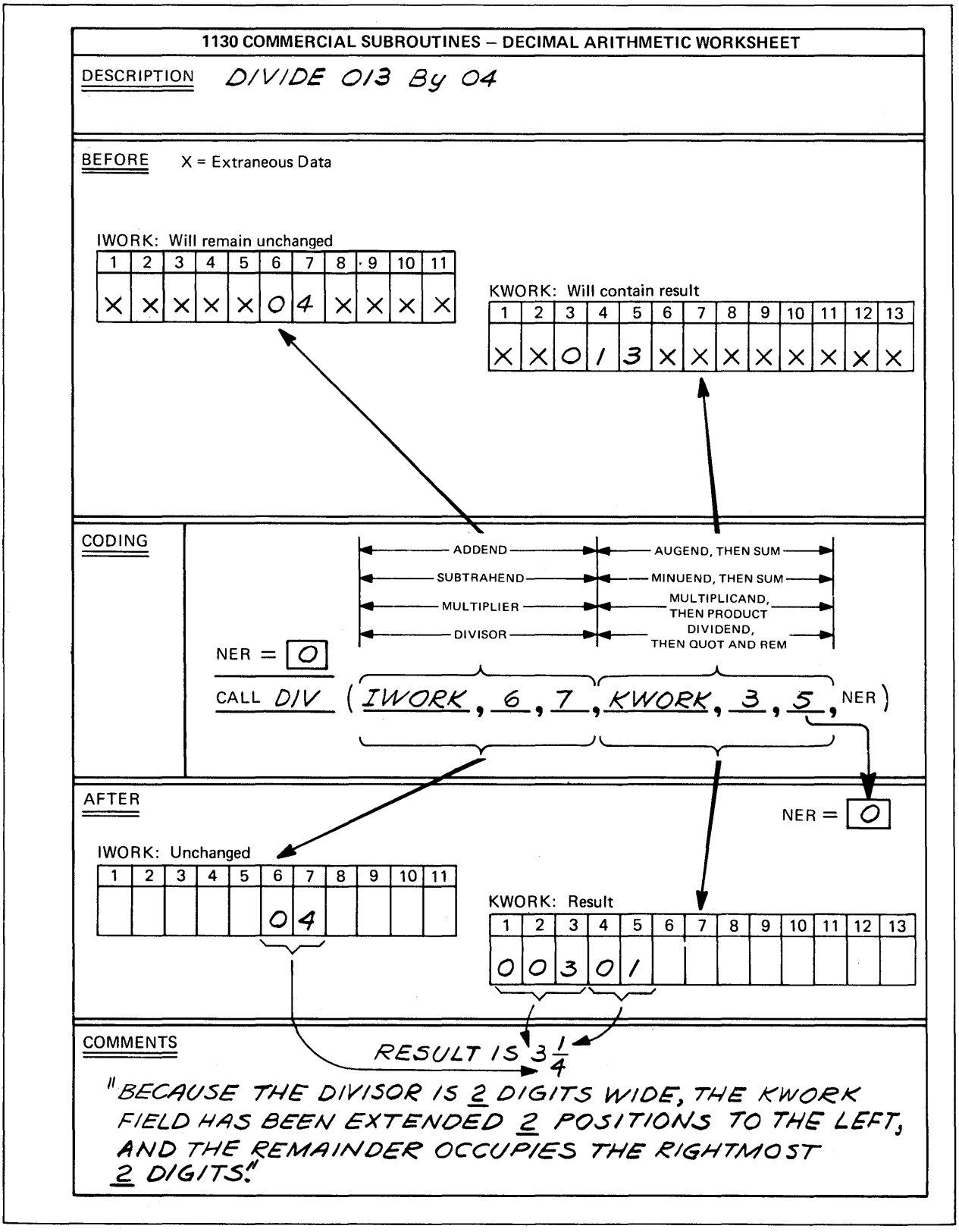

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION DIVIDE 013 By 04
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
X X X X X 0 4 X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X 0 1 3 X X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL DIV (IWORK, 6, 7, KWORK, 3, 5, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 4
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 3 0 1
COMMENTS
RESULT IS 3 1/4
"BECAUSE THE DIVISOR IS 2 DIGITS WIDE, THE KWORK FIELD HAS BEEN EXTENDED 2 POSITIONS TO THE LEFT, AND THE REMAINDER OCCUPIES THE RIGHTMOST 2 DIGITS."

Figure 70.14

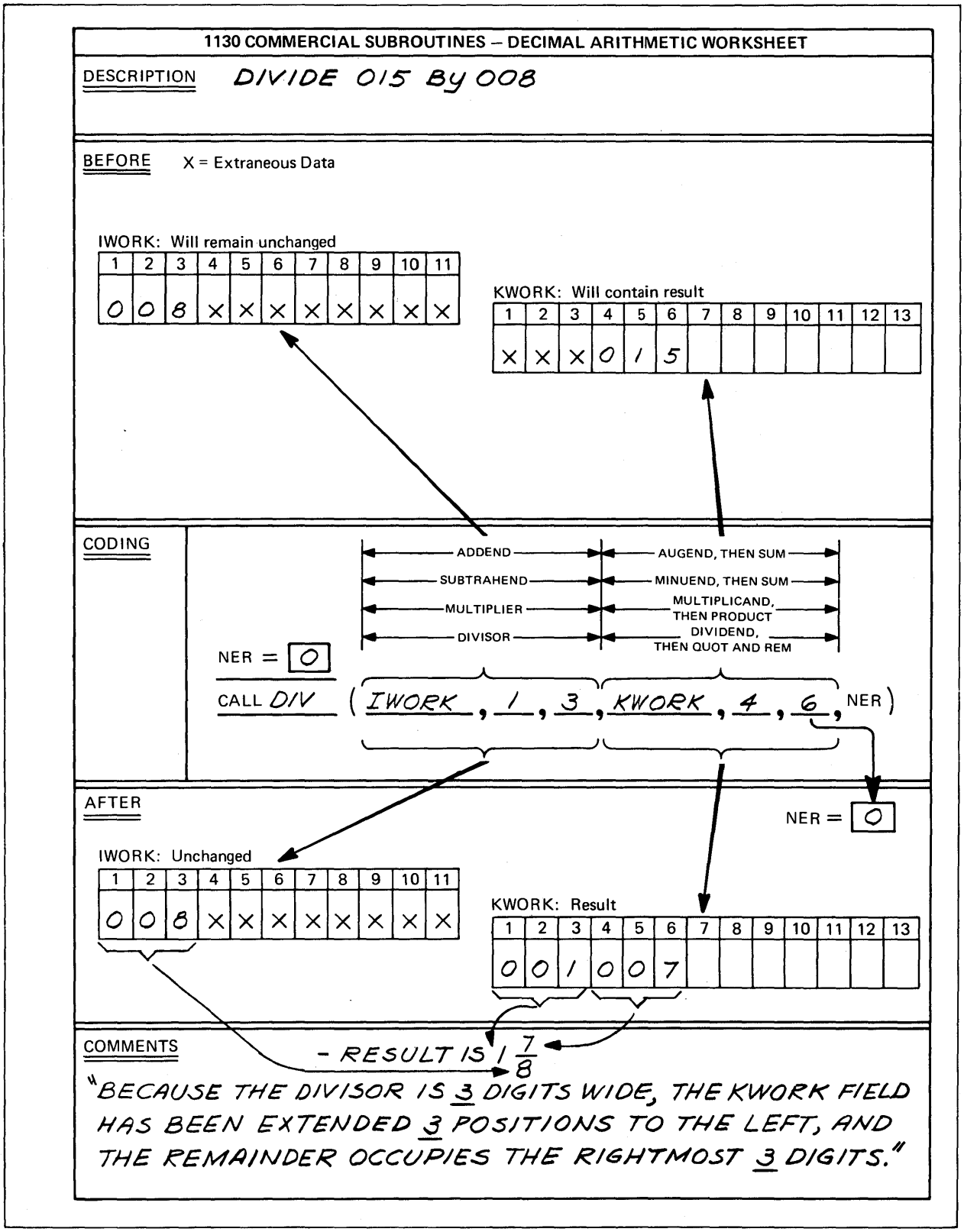

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION
DIVIDE 015 By 008
BEFORE
X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 8 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X 0 1 5
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL DIV (IWORK, 1, 3, KWORK, 4, 6, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 8 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 1 0 0 7
COMMENTS
- RESULT IS 1 7/8
"BECAUSE THE DIVISOR IS 3 DIGITS WIDE, THE KWORK FIELD HAS BEEN EXTENDED 3 POSITIONS TO THE LEFT, AND THE REMAINDER OCCUPIES THE RIGHTMOST 3 DIGITS."

Figure 70.15.

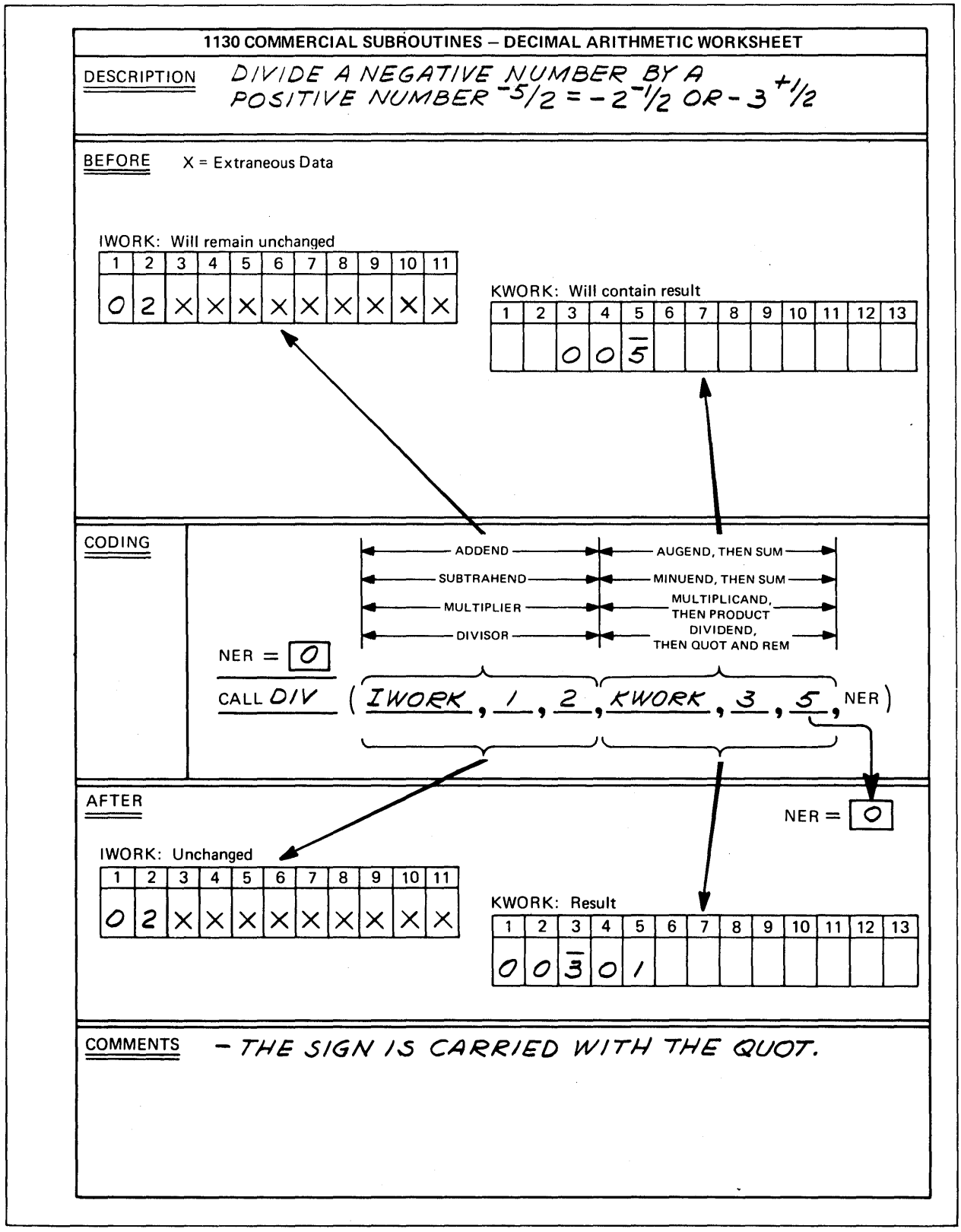

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION
DIVIDE A NEGATIVE NUMBER BY A POSITIVE NUMBER -5/2 = -2^-1/2 OR -3^+1/2
BEFORE
X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 2 X X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 5
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL DIV (IWORK, 1, 2, KWORK, 3, 5, NER)
AFTER
NER = 0
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 2 X X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 3 0 1
COMMENTS
– THE SIGN IS CARRIED WITH THE QUOT.

Figure 70.16.

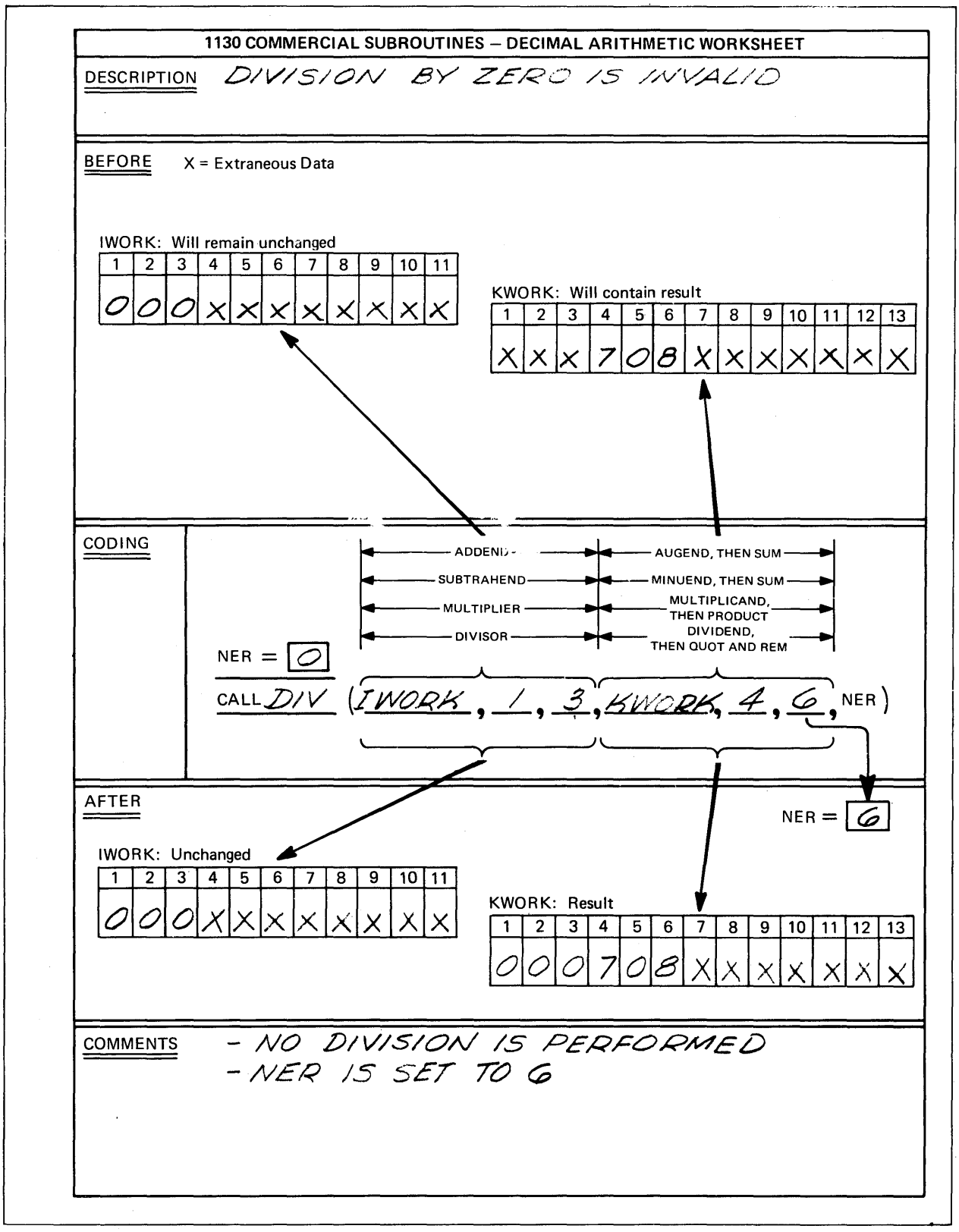

1130 COMMERCIAL SUBROUTINES – DECIMAL ARITHMETIC WORKSHEET
DESCRIPTION DIVISION BY ZERO IS INVALID
BEFORE X = Extraneous Data
IWORK: Will remain unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Will contain result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
X X X 7 0 8 X X X X X X X
CODING
ADDEND
AUGEND, THEN SUM
SUBTRAHEND
MINUEND, THEN SUM
MULTIPLIER
MULTIPLICAND, THEN PRODUCT
DIVISOR
DIVIDEND, THEN QUOT AND REM
NER = 0
CALL DIV (IWORK, 1, 3, KWORK, 4, 6, NER)
AFTER
NER = 6
IWORK: Unchanged
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
0 0 0 X X X X X X X X
KWORK: Result
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13
0 0 0 7 0 8 X X X X X X X
COMMENTS - NO DIVISION IS PERFORMED
- NER IS SET TO 6

Figure 70.17.

Constants

There are four ways in which you may create constants such as 1968, 40, 6600, etc. To illustrate, suppose you wish to create the constant 660000 (the Social Security deduction base, in cents) to be stored in an array named ISSD, DIMENSIONed as ISSD (6). The four options are:

1. Use FORTRAN equalities.

```
ISSD (1) = 6
ISSD (2) = 6
ISSD (3) = 0
ISSD (4) = 0
ISSD (5) = 0
ISSD (6) = 0
```

2. Use the DATA statement.

```
DATA ISSD/6, 6, 0, 0, 0, 0/
or
DATA ISSD/2*6, 4*0/
```

3. Use the FILL subroutine.

```
CALL FILL (ISSD, 1, 2, 6)
CALL FILL (ISSD, 3, 6, 0)
```

4. Read it from a card, tape, keyboard, or disk.

Option 2 is preferred, since it consumes less core storage than the other three methods.

Negative constants are handled in much the same way. Because of their special representation, however, it would be wise to make the constants positive and change the arithmetic. For example, rather than set up -1 and add it to something, it would be easier to subtract +1.

Testing and Modifying Signs

To facilitate testing and modifying the signs of decimal arithmetic fields, the subroutine NSIGN is available. It has four parameters:

NARRY The name of the array

NPOS The position in the array to be tested

NEWS "New sign", indicating what you want done to the previous sign:

+1	Make it positive
0	Reverse it
-1	Make it negative
NOLDS	Leave it alone

NOLDS "Old sign", returned to you, indicating what the previous sign was:

+1	It was positive
-1	It was negative

You, the programmer, send the subroutine the first three parameters; it returns the last. To illustrate, suppose you wish to test the sign of the 18th position in the K array:

- Case 1: It Is Now Positive:

NOLDS is returned as +1
K(18) is made + if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, +1, NOLDS)
```
K(18) is changed to - if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, 0, NOLDS)
```
K(18) is made - if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, -1, NOLDS)
```
K(18) remains + if you said
```
CALL NSIGN((K, 18, NOLDS, NOLDS)
```

- Case 2: It Is Now Negative:

NOLDS is returned as -1 and
K(18) is made + if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, +1, NOLDS)
```
K(18) is changed to + if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, 0, NOLDS)
```
K(18) is made - if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, -1, NOLDS)
```
K(18) remains - if you said
```
CALL NSIGN (K, 18, NOLDS, NOLDS)
```

Moving Signs

The NSIGN routine may also be used to move signs. The two statements

CALL NSIGN (NARRY, I, NOLD, NOLD)
CALL NSIGN (KARRY, J, NOLD, JUNK)

will make KARRY (J) have the same as NARRY (I).

Comparing Decimal Fields

The FUNCTION ICOMP is used to compare two variable length decimal fields. In practice, it is typically used within the parentheses of an IF statement;

IF (ICOMP (IWORK, 1, 5, KWORK, 6, 10))1, 2, 3

This statement will compare (IWORK, 1, 5) with (KWORK, 6, 10), and branch to

Statement 1 if the first is less than the second.
Statement 2 if they are equal.
Statement 3 if the first is greater than the second.

As was true with the ADD and SUB subroutines, the first field must not be longer than the second. Since no error code is returned from this subprogram, there is no way to tell that such an error has occurred, and the results will therefore be meaningless.

Section	Subsections		Page
70	10	40	01

Summary

If exact results are desired, you must take certain precautions regarding arithmetic calculations.

1. Use one of the following:
   Integer arithmetic
   Decimal arithmetic
   Real, fixed-point arithmetic, with no fractions
2. If fractions are allowed to occur (floating-point real arithmetic), your results are likely to show inaccuracies. These inaccuracies will be slight, but enough to cause significant problems.
3. If no number will ever exceed 8,388,607., you may use standard precision, real, fixed-point arithmetic.
4. If no addition will ever exceed 2,147,483,647., you may use extended precision, real, fixed-point arithmetic.
5. If the result of a multiplication will exceed 1,073,741,823., you should consider using decimal arithmetic, since real extended precision arithmetic will be inaccurate above this limit.
6. If the result of an addition or subtraction falls in the range 1,073,741,824. to 2,147,483,647., you should not attempt to output it with the standard FORTRAN F Format; use the PUT subroutine instead.
7. If any number will exceed 2,147,483,647. (now or in the foreseeable future), use decimal arithmetic rather than real arithmetic.

OVERLAPPED INPUT/OUTPUT

Introduction

As a machine, the IBM 1130 Computing System is capable of performing many tasks simultaneously. For example, it can print, type, read a card, and compute, all at the same time. This can be done through its "cycle-stealing" I/O channels and the priority interrupt system. Each I/O device may, through an interrupt, signal the CPU that it requires service, and steal a cycle (3.6 or 2.2 microseconds) from some other process to do what it needs done. This process is commonly referred to as "overlapping".

For example, in the case of the disk, one data word travels past the read/write heads every 27.8 microseconds. However, it only takes one cycle (3.2 or 2.2 microseconds) to transfer that word from core storage to the disk (if it is being written) or from the disk to core storage (if it is being read). This means that only a little more than 10% of the CPU time is required to read and write on the disk; the remainder is available for other use.

Although most of the 1130's I/O devices can be overlapped, standard 1130 FORTRAN permits only two of them to operate in this fashion: the disk and the 1403 Printer. There are several good reasons for this limitation. For example, suppose you wrote a program to read two numbers from a card, add them together, and print the result. With full overlap, the addition could conceivably be under way before the two numbers had even been placed in core. Obviously, this would not be satisfactory.

To take full advantage of the potential of the machine, in FORTRAN, it would be necessary to develop a special FORTRAN, which would then violate the USASI standards set up for that programming language. Avoiding this, IBM has developed the Commercial Subroutine Package (CSP) -- a set of subroutines operating within the FORTRAN system, rather than as part of the FORTRAN language itself.

The Commercial Subroutine Package Overlapped I/O Subroutines

CSP subroutines may be divided into three groups:

- The I/O subroutines themselves
- Several I/O utility subroutines
- Those character handling routines necessary for proper use of the I/O routines

This section discusses the former two groups; the latter is covered later in this section under "Character Handling Techniques".

General

All of the overlapped I/O subroutines operate on data in A1 format -- one alphabetic character per word, left-justified. If you wish to read 80 card columns, you must set up an array 80 positions long to receive the data, and convert the A1 data to whatever format you require for later processing. There are no FORMAT statements; you must handle all conversions (see "Character Handling Techniques").

Unlike standard FORTRAN, the overlapped I/O subroutines are oriented toward a sign punch over the low-order digit of a field. For example, a negative number or credit of -$6.50 would be punched with an 11-punch over the zero, rather than in a separate column, as would be done if FORTRAN FORMAT were used.

In general, for your non-disk I/O, you must choose either one system or the other: FORTRAN FORMAT or overlapped I/O. They may not be mixed within the same program.

For further detail on these subroutines, see the SRL manual H20-0241.

READ a Card, 1442-6 or 7

The subroutine READ will read a card from the 1442 Model 6 or 7, overlapping reading with the conversion from card code to A1 format. The CPU will not proceed any further until the last desired card column has been read and converted. Therefore you need not be concerned that processing will be started before the desired values have reached core storage.

A typical call to this routine would be

```
NER = -1
CALL READ (INOUT,1,80,NER)
```

which would read and convert 80 columns, and place the result in the array INOUT. It should be followed by a

```
IF (NER) xxx, xxx, xxx
```

If NER is still -1, everything is normal; if it is zero, the card just read was the last card in the hopper; if it is +1, there was a read or feed check (1442 malfunction).

It is equivalent to

```
      DIMENSION INOUT(80)
   77 FORMAT (80A1)
      READ (2,77) INOUT
```

PUNCH a Card, 1442-6 or 7

The subroutine PUNCH will punch a card on the 1442 Model 6 or 7. Nothing will be overlapped with this activity. A typical use is

```
NER = -1
CALL PUNCH (INOUT, 1, 20, NER)
```

which will punch the first 20 words of the INOUT array into the first 20 columns of a card.

It is equivalent to

```
    DIMENSION INOUT (80)
77  FORMAT (80A1)
    WRITE (2, 77) (INOUT(K), K=1, 20)
```

The use of the error parameter, NER, is identical to the READ subroutine.

Select STACKer, 1442-6 or 7

Subroutine STACK permits the FORTRAN programmer to direct a card into the alternate stacker on the 1442 Model 6 or 7. After the statement

```
CALL STACK
```

the last card read (and only the last card) will be selected into the alternate stacker.

The placement of the CALL STACK statement is important:

- If the program reads and punches into the same card, the statement may be placed between the READ and WRITE, or after the WRITE.
- If the program reads (but doesn't punch), the CALL STACK goes after the READ statement that read the card to be stacked.
- If the program only punches (and does not read), the CALL STACK should be placed after the WRITE statement that punches the card to be stacked.

PRINT on 1132

Subroutine PRINT enables you to write on the 1132 Printer, overlapping printing with other processing. A typical use of this routine is

```
NER = 1
CALL PRINT  (INOUT,1,120,NER)
```

This will initiate the printing of the 120-word array INOUT on the 1132, then continue processing. Because of its overlapped capability, it can drive the 1132 Printer substantially faster than the equivalent FORTRAN/FORMAT statements:

```
      DIMENSION INOUT (120)
   88 FORMAT (120A1)
      WRITE (3,88) INOUT
```

Like READ and PUNCH, it should be followed with a test of NER:

- If it is still 1, nothing unusual happened.
- If it is 3, the line being printed matches with a channel 9 punch on the carriage control tape.
- If it is 4, the line being printed matches with a channel 12 punch in the carriage control tape.

Note that the first position is not used to control the printer carriage, as it is with standard FORTRAN. The SKIP routine must be used if you wish to skip to channel 1, double-space, etc.

SKIP on 1132

Subroutine SKIP permits full use of the carriage control tape mechanism on the 1132. Skipping is significantly faster than printing blank lines and should be used wherever possible. A typical use of this routine is

```
CALL SKIP (KODE)
```

where the allowable values of KODE, and their meaning, are as shown in Figure 70.18.

Value of KODE	Action Taken by the 1132
12544	Immediate skip to channel 1
12800	Immediate skip to channel 2
13056	Immediate skip to channel 3
13312	Immediate skip to channel 4
13568	Immediate skip to channel 5
13824	Immediate skip to channel 6
14592	Immediate skip to channel 9
15360	Immediate skip to channel 12
15616	Immediate space of 1 space
15872	Immediate space of 2 spaces
16128	Immediate space of 3 spaces
0	Suppress space after printing

Figure 70.18. SKIP codes for 1132 Printer

Type on Console Printer

Subroutine TYPER will initiate typing on the console printer, and then continue processing. Actual printing time will be overlapped with other processing (printing on the 1132, reading cards, computing, etc.). A typical call is

```
CALL TYPER (INOUT, 1, 50)
```

which will type the first 50 values of the INOUT array. There is no error parameter connected with this routine.

In addition to printing, this subroutine also permits several typewriter control functions. If the values listed below are inserted in the INOUT array, the corresponding action will be performed at that point:

Value	Action
1344	Tabulate
5184	Shift to black
13632	Shift to red
5696	Backspace
5440	Carrier return
9536	Line feed

Because TYPER does not start each line with an automatic carrier return, you may want to place a 5440 in position 1 of the output array.

Accept Data from Console Keyboard

Subroutine KEYBD will read characters entered from the console keyboard, Only 60 characters at a time may be read with this routine. This activity is not overlapped with any other function. An example of the use of this subroutine is

```
CALL KEYBD (INOUT, 1, 30)
```

which will read 30 characters from the keyboard. This is no error parameter.

A Precaution -- IOND

Because of the properties of the overlapped I/O subroutines, all I/O activity must be completed before you cause the 1130 to PAUSE or STOP. The subroutine IOND will do this for you by testing the status of the interrupts and looping until none are pending.

IOND is required only when Version 1 of the Monitor is used; it should not be used if Version 2 of the Monitor is in use.

The call to IOND should always be placed immediately before each PAUSE or STOP statement:

```
CALL IOND
PAUSE 1234
```

or

```
CALL IOND
STOP 5678
```

Using The Overlapped I/O System

General

If you are to gain the full potential of the overlapped I/O routines, you should know several basic principles of this system:

- You must decide whether your non-disk I/O will be done by FORTRAN FORMAT READs and WRITEs or by the overlapped I/O subroutines. A program cannot use both. Note that the disk I/O is completely independent of the overlapped I/O system and does not enter into this discussion.
- Certain devices are not overlapped by these routines, making the placement of the subroutines CALLs quite important.

Overlapping and Your Program

As far as your program is concerned, only two I/O devices are really overlapped: the 1132 Printer and the console printer. The other devices are either not overlapped at all or overlapped with various housekeeping chores (for example, code conversion) rather than with your program. In other words:

These subroutines initiate an action, then continue processing:	These subroutines start an action and finish it before they continue processing:
PRINT	READ
SKIP	PUNCH
TYPER	KEYBD

Thus the sequence in which you use these routines becomes important. For example, suppose you have a program that develops some result, then must print a line on the 1132 and punch a card. How should this be done?

Alternative A	Alternative B
Develop results	Develop results
CALL PRINT ( )	CALL PUNCH ( )
CALL PUNCH ( )	CALL PRINT ( )

With alternative A, PRINTing is initiated, then PUNCHing, and the two I/O functions are overlapped. Alternative B, on the other hand, does not overlap these two functions, since the 1130 will wait until PUNCHing is completed before starting PRINTing. Alternative B does, however, overlap whatever follows the PRINT statement.

To gain maximum overlap, then, the three truly overlapped routines (PRINT, SKIP, and TYPER) should be placed as early in the processing cycle as possible. Figure 70.19 gives some examples of good and bad usage of these routines.

Example	Bad Practice	Good Programming
1	processing processing CALL PRINT CALL SKIP	processing processing CALL SKIP CALL PRINT
2	processing processing CALL PRINT CALL PRINT	processing CALL PRINT processing CALL PRINT
3	CALL PUNCH CALL PRINT	CALL PRINT CALL PUNCH
4	WRITE disk CALL PRINT	CALL PRINT WRITE disk

Figure 70.19.

FORTRAN TRACE Not Permitted with Overlapped I/O Routines

If you use the overlapped I/O routines, you must not include any of the non-disk I/O devices on the *IOCS control record; only *IOCS (DISK) is permitted. This means that you may not take advantage of the standard FORTRAN TRACE facility, but must instead program your own trace. If this is done while the program is being developed, it presents little difficulty.

Several methods may be used -- for example:

- A series of numbered pauses, to display your progress through the program.
- A set of extra PRINT or TYPER statements, to function much the same as the standard TRACE. It might be useful to code a subroutine called TRACE, which would do this after testing Data Switch 15.

Alphabetic Headings with the Overlapped I/O System

Since you may not use FORMAT statements in conjunction with the overlapped I/O routines, you must enter alphabetic headings and other constants in some other manner. Several methods are available.

1. Use the DATA statement. This allows alphabetic constants to be entered, in the proper format, at the start of the program.
2. Read the alphabetic data from the card deck. You may lay out all the alphabetic data required (headings, error messages, etc.) so as to fit in one large array, then read that array from a deck of cards each time the program is executed. Because it is done only once, those program steps could be made into a LINK, in which case it could use FORTRAN I/O, regardless of which system the main program used.
3. Same as 2, except that the read-in program is run only once and places the array of heading information on the disk. This data is then read from the disk each time the main program is executed. This is somewhat more foolproof, since you do not have to worry about assembling the card deck each time the main program is run.

THE INTERACTION OF ARITHMETIC AND I/O

You have seen that two options are available for I/O:

Standard FORTRAN FORMAT
Overlapped I/O subroutines

You have also seen that, for all practical purposes, two options are available for arithmetic:

FORTRAN real arithmetic
Decimal arithmetic, variable length.

While you may choose any desired combination, certain combinations appear easier to use than others. You can see from Figure 70.21 that some provision must in all cases be made for conversion from input code to some arithmetic code, then from some arithmetic code to output code. If you use standard FORTRAN exclusively, you specify, with the FORMAT statement, what conversions you want. If you use any of the other three combinations, you must specify the desired code conversion with the character handling routines supplied by the Commercial Subroutine Package: GET, PUT, EDIT, DECA1, A1DEC, PACK, and UNPAC. (These routines are covered in later sections of this Guide.)

Figure 70.22 summarizes the advantages and disavantages of each alternative. You can see that the convenience items (ease of programming, readability, etc.) are gradually sacrificed in order to make gains in the area of capability and performance.

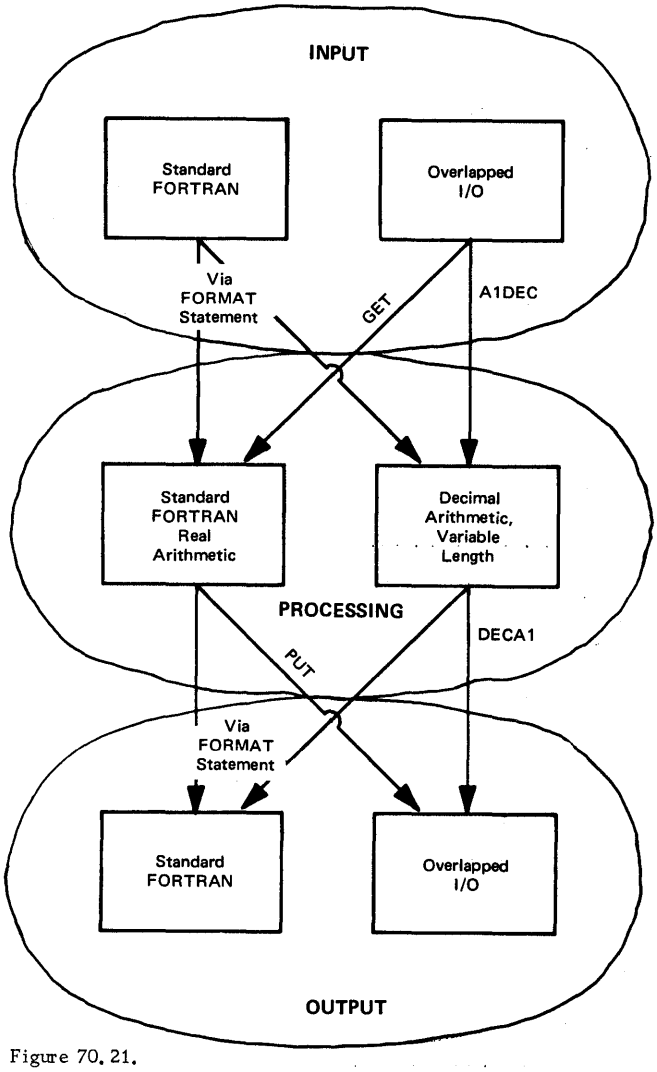


Figure 70.21.

	Convenience Items			Capability and Performance Items				
	Easily Programmed ?	Easily Readable Program ?	Easy to Debug? Trace?	Maximum Size of Numerical Values ?	Read a Record of Unknown Format ?	Edited Output ?	Zone Punches Allowed ?	I/O Over-lapped ?
Standard FORTRAN	easy	very good	yes	9 digits	no	no	no	no
Standard FORTRAN Extended with GET, PUT and EDIT	a little harder	very good	yes	9 digits	yes	yes	no	no
Standard FORTRAN Arith, with GET, PUT and EDIT, and overlapped I/O	a little harder	very good	no	9 digits	yes	yes	yes	yes
FORTRAN I/O with GET, PUT, EDIT and Decimal Arith.	a little harder	good	can trace, but not too effectively	unlimited	yes	yes	no	no
Overlapped I/O with Decimal Arith.	a little harder	good to fair	no	unlimited	yes	yes	yes	yes

Figure 70.22.

CHARACTER HANDLING TECHNIQUES

General

A great deal of the programming effort in most commercial applications falls into the general classification of character handling -- code conversion, editing, moving data, testing zone punches, comparing alphabetic data, etc. This section covers many of these tasks in detail, showing how they may be accomplished with the Commercial Subroutines.

Code Conversion

As you saw earlier, code conversion is essential to any program, commercial or technical. If you use standard FORTRAN, you must specify the desired conversions with the FORMAT statement. If you are using FORTRAN augmented by the Commercial Subroutines, you can also use the GET, PUT and EDIT subroutines for special formatting. If you are using the overlapped I/O routines, you must specify all the code conversions with the Commercial Subroutines (except A1 format), since no FORMAT statements may be used.

Basically there are five internal codes with which you might be concerned:

Integer
Real
Alphabetic -- one character per word (A1)
Alphabetic -- two characters per word (A2)
Decimal -- one digit per word

Very few programs can avoid converting from one code to the other. Figure 70.23 shows the tools at your disposal to effect all possible conversions. The common ones are handled by a single subroutine; those less often needed require a combination of two or three subroutines.

The A1 code is particularly important since all the overlapped I/O routines require data in that format. In addition, GET, PUT, and EDIT work with data in the A1 format.

The A2 code is used primarily when writing alphabetic data on the disk, since it holds twice as much data per word as A1 format.

Decimal code is encountered only if you are using the decimal arithmetic, variable length routines of CSP.

FROM	TO				
	Integer	Real	Alpha (A1)	Alpha (A2)	Decimal
Integer		FLOAT	PUT (FLOAT)	FLOAT, then PUT, then PACK	FLOAT, then PUT, then A1DEC
Real	IFIX		PUT	PUT, then PACK	PUT, then A1DEC
Alphabetic (A1)	IFIX (GET)	GET		PACK	A1DEC
Alphabetic (A2)	UNPAC, then GET, then IFIX	UNPAC, then GET	UNPAC		UNPAC, then A1DEC
Variable Length Decimal	DECA1, then GET, then IFIX	DECA1, then GET	DECA1	DECA1, then PACK	

Figure 70.23.

Integer to Real -- FLOAT

The FLOAT function, a FORTRAN standard, is used to convert an integer to a real number. A typical use of this function is

```
X = FLOAT (K)
```

which will set the real variable X equal to the value of K. The same conversion can also be accomplished by coding

```
X = K
```

This also uses the FLOAT function, even though it does not appear.

Real to Integer -- IFIX

The IFIX function, also a FORTRAN standard, is used to convert a real number to an integer. A typical use is

```
K = IFIX(X)
```

which will take the real variable X, convert it to an integer, and store it as K. If X is 6.0, then K = 6; if X is 87.9, then K = 87; and so on.

This can also be accomplished by coding K = X; this too uses the IFIX function.

A1 to Real -- GET

IBM supplies the GET function as part of the 1130 Commercial Subroutine Package (CSP). The original A1 data may have resulted from a FORTRAN READ with an A1 FORMAT, or from use of one of the CSP Overlapped Input routines, which always results in A1 format.

If you have a five-place array, in A1 format

K(1) = 1
K(2) = 9
K(3) = 8
K(4) = 6
K(5) = 8

and you say

X = GET(K,1,5,1.0)

then X = 19868.

The last parameter (1.0) is a shift factor, and will usually be 1.0 if you want accurate results. (If it had been .1, X would be 1986.8; however, since the fraction .8 is present, you could expect it to be inaccurate.) Subsection 70.10.20 explains why fractions should be avoided in commercial work.

Basically, the above use of GET can be thought of as equivalent to an F5.0 in a FORMAT statement. A shift factor of .1 would be an F5.1; a shift of .01 would be F5.2; a shift of .001 would be F5.3; etc.

A1 to Integer

As shown in Figure 70.23, this step requires use of both IFIX and GET, in the following manner:

J = IFIX(GET(K,10,12,1.0))

where positions 10 through 12 of the K array are converted first to a real number, then to an integer called J.

Real to A1 -- PUT

This step is quite commonly required -- if you are using the overlapped I/O routines, if you wish to do further editing, etc. It is accomplished with the PUT subroutine supplied with CSP.

Suppose you have just computed a gross pay figure, GROSS, which might have a typical value of 275869., understood to be mills. Again, note that you are working in whole numbers, so that no fraction problems are encountered. This value is to be rounded off and the result placed in the first ten postions of array KGROS for later editing and output. The statement

CALL PUT (KGROS,1,10,GROSS,5.,1)

will take GROSS, add 5. to it, truncate the last 1 digit, and place it in A1 format in the KGROS array as 0000027587, with leading zeros and no decimal point.

The last two parameters, the adjust factor and the truncate factor, usually form a logical pair. Obviously, if you add 5. to half-adjust, you won't want to print the resulting digit. The table below shows the common pairs:

5th parameter (half-adjust factor)	6th parameter (how many digits to truncate from right end)
.5	0
5.	1
50.	2
500.	3
etc.	etc.

Half-adjust factors of less than .5 should not be used, since this will bring up the problem of inexact fractions.

If GROSS is negative, an 11-zone punch will be added to the code for the low-order digit. For example, if GROSS is -275869., the result will be 000002758P, where the character P is equivalent to a 7,11 punch.

Integer to A1

This requires two steps, since PUT operates on real numbers, not integers. If you have an integer I, which you want converted to A1 format, you must first convert it to real format:

```
      X = I
or    X = FLOAT(I)
```

then use the PUT subroutine. Or, in one step:

CALL PUT (KGROS,1,10,FLOAT(I),5.,1)

will perform this conversion.

A1 to Decimal -- A1DEC

This conversion will be needed if you have chosen to use the decimal arithmetic system of CSP. The A1 field being converted was read by FORTRAN with an A1 format, or by the overlapped I/O routines.

Suppose a card contained 1968 in columns 1 through 4, and you read it with the overlapped I/O CALL READ. It would be in A1 format, in an array KOL, one character per word:

KOL (1) contains the alphabetic 1b
KOL (2) contains the alphabetic 9b
KOL (3) contains the alphabetic 6b
KOL (4) contains the alphabetic 8b

If you want to use this value in decimal arithmetic computations, it must be converted to decimal format, one digit per word. To do this, you simply code

CALL A1DEC (KOL, 1, 4, NER)

and it will be converted, in place. Note that the A1 coding is replaced by the decimal coding. The NER is an error parameter, and will be set to the position at which it last encountered an invalid character (not 0 through 9 or a blank).

The exception to this is the last (rightmost) character, which may contain an 11 or 12 punch, indicating a sign. See the table below for allowable punches:

Digit or character without a zone punch	with an 11 punch	with a 12 punch
blank	- (dash)	&
0	(- zero)	(+ zero)
1	J	A
2	K	B
3	L	C
4	M	D
5	N	E
6	O	F
7	P	G
8	Q	H
9	R	I

Decimal to A1 -- DECA1

If you are using decimal arithmetic, you must print the answers either with a series of I1 formats, or in A1 format. The latter will be the case if you desire any editing or are using the overlapped I/O routines.

The DECA1 subroutines will perform this conversion, thus operating in reverse fashion from A1DEC.

A typical use would be

CALL DECA1 (IWORK, 6, 10, NER)

which will convert the 6th through the 10th items in the IWORK array from decimal to A1 format. The NER error parameter is present but should be of limited use, since the decimal arithmetic routines should not leave any invalid digits in the field.

The rightmost digit is assumed to carry the sign and, if negative, will be converted to the proper character plus an 11 punch.

A1 to A2 -- PACK

This conversion is very desirable if you wish to store alphabetic data on the disk. For input, output, and editing, your data must be in A1 format, however, A2 format will pack twice as much data in an equivalent number of words.

The PACK subroutine gives you the ability to convert from A1 to A2 format. For example, suppose the array IUNPK contains 123bGO:

IUNPK (1) contains an alphabetic 1
IUNPK (2) contains an alphabetic 2
IUNPK (3) contains an alphabetic 3
IUNPK (4) contains an alphabetic blank
IUNPK (5) contains an slphabetic G
IUNPK (6) contains an alphabetic O

Now suppose we say

CALL PACK (IUNPK, 1, 6, IPAKD, 1)

The data is packed and moved from IUNPK to IPAKD:

IPAKD (1) contains an alphabetic 1 and 2
IPAKD (2) contains an alphabetic 3 and blank
IPAKD (3) contains an alphabetic G and O

The IUNPK array remains unchanged. An even number of characters will be packed. Therefore, the A1 field should contain an even number of characters; otherwise, the last character in the IPAKD array will be meaningless.

A2 to A1 -- UNPAC

To convert A2 data back to A1, the UNPAC subroutine may be used. A typical call to UNPAC would be

CALL UNPAC (IPAKD, 1, 3, IUNPK, 1)

which would unpack the 123bGO packed in the previous example.

Other Code Conversions

As Figure 70.23 shows, there are other code conversions that you may require. However, since they are unusual and can be performed as a combination of several other steps, they will not be discussed in detail.

Other Character Handling Techniques

Editing Output--EDIT

Most commercial applications are strongly oriented toward the format and appearance of the output results, as opposed to the technical job, where all you want is the answer. For example:

- Dollar amounts should have commas, dollar signs, and so on.
- Invoices should show a CR symbol after negative values.
- Balance sheets should have a minus sign following a negative item.
- Punched card output should have leading zeros, so that the cards may be handled properly with a mechanical sorter.

The EDIT subroutine enables you to do all these formatting tasks. Its use requires two fields, stored in A1 format in integer arrays:

1. The source field or the field which will be edited
2. The edit mask, a field which you have coded to indicate how you want the edited output to appear.

A typical call to the EDIT subroutine is

```
CALL EDIT (KSOUR,1,10,MASK,1,13)
```

where the source field consists of items 1-10 in the KSOUR array, and the mask consists of items 1-13 in the MASK array. After editing, the MASK field is replaced by the edited source field; if you wish to use it again, therefore, you must save it somewhere else. Usually, the mask will be moved into the output area, and the source field will be edited into the output array. Thus the original mask is not destroyed. For example:

```
CALL MOVE (MASK, 1,13,KOUT,36)
CALL EDIT (KSOUR, 1,10,KOUT,36,48)
```

Figure 70.24 is a worksheet that you may use for setting up an edit mask. The principles involved are shown best by examples (see Figures 70.25-70.30).

Moving Data Fields--MOVE

Often it becomes necessary to move the data in one array into another array--especially if you are using CSP. The MOVE subroutine has been included in CSP to facilitate such operations. Its use is quite simple, since it does no more than move data from one place to another. For example:

```
CALL MOVE (IFROM,6,8,ITO,14)
```

will move

```
IFROM (6) to ITO (14)
IFROM (7) to ITO (15)
IFROM (8) to ITO (16)
```

leaving the IFROM array undisturbed.

Note that the ending position in the ITO array is not supplied as one of the parameters.

The format of the data items is not affected. They may be A1, A2, decimal, or integer (but not real).

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM PROGRAMMER DATE

COMMENTS:

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING. HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD -..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK,□, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK,□, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... □ a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... □ b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

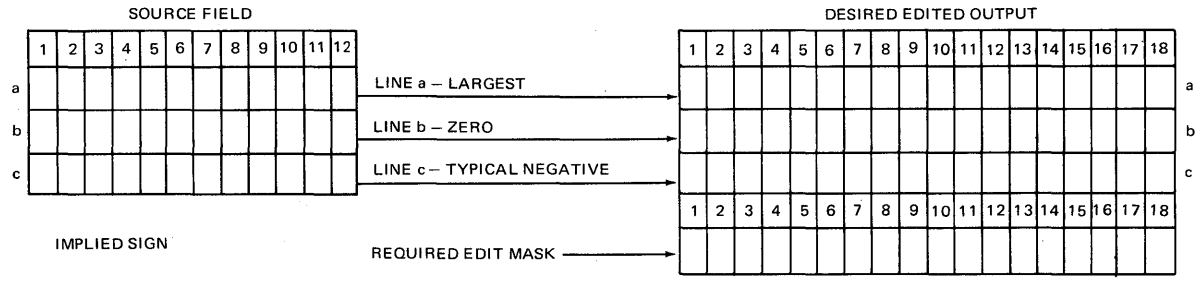


Figure 70.24.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM PROGRAMMER DATE

COMMENTS: MONETARY FIELD, TO BE PUNCHED INTO CARD WITH LEADING ZEROS DESIRED, BUT NO COMMA'S OR DEC PT. 11 PUNCH OVER RIGHTMOST (UNITS) POSITION IF NEGATIVE.

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING. HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK,□, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK,□, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 9 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 10 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

SOURCE FIELD

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
a	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9				LINE a – LARGEST
b	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0				LINE b – ZERO
c					6	6	6	6	6̄				LINE c – TYPICAL NEGATIVE

IMPLIED SIGN

DESIRED EDITED OUTPUT

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
a	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9										a
b	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0										b
c	0	0	0	0	0	6	6	6	6̄										c
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
	b	b	b	b	b	b	b	b	b	b									REQUIRED EDIT MASK

Figure 70.25.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM PROGRAMMER DATE

COMMENTS: MONETARY FIELD, WITH FLOATING $, AND NEGATIVE INDICATOR (A-IN COLUMN FOLLOWING).

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING. HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK,□, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK,□, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 10 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 10 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

SOURCE FIELD

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
a	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9		
b	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
c						1	1	1	1	J		

IMPLIED SIGN

LINE a – LARGEST
LINE b – ZERO
LINE c – TYPICAL NEGATIVE

DESIRED EDITED OUTPUT

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
a	$	9	9	,	9	9	9	,	9	9	9	.	9	9					a
b										$	0	.	0	0					b
c								$	1	1	1	.	1	1	-				c
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
REQUIRED EDIT MASK →	b	b	b	,	b	b	b	,	b	$	b	.	b	b	-				

Figure 70.26.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM | PROGRAMMER | DATE

COMMENTS: SOCIAL SECURITY NO.

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING.
HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

```
CALL NZONE (MASK,□, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
      CALL NZONE (MASK,□, NOLDZ, JUNK)
```

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 9 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 9 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

SOURCE FIELD

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
a	1	1	1	2	2	3	3	3	3				LINE a – LARGEST
b													LINE b – ZERO
c													LINE c – TYPICAL NEGATIVE

IMPLIED SIGN

DESIRED EDITED OUTPUT

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
a		1	1	1	-	2	2	-	3	3	3	3							a
b																			b
c																			c
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
REQUIRED EDIT MASK →		6	6	6	-	6	6	-	6	6	6	6							

Figure 70.27.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM | PROGRAMMER | DATE

COMMENTS: *DATE*

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING. HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK, ☐, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK, ☐, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 5 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 5 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

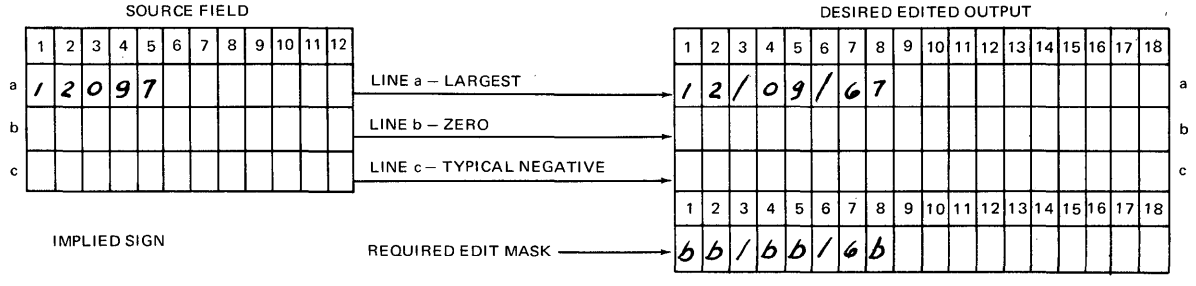


Figure 70.28.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM | PROGRAMMER | DATE

COMMENTS: DATE

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING.
HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

OR b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK, □, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK, □, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 5 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 5 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

SOURCE FIELD

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
a	1	2	0	6	7								LINE a – LARGEST
b													LINE b – ZERO
c													LINE c – TYPICAL NEGATIVE

IMPLIED SIGN

DESIRED EDITED OUTPUT

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
a	M	O	=	1	2	,	D	A	Y	=	0	6	,	Y	R	=	6	7	a
b																			b
c																			c
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
	M	O	=	b	b	,	D	A	Y	=	b	b	,	Y	R	=	6	b	

REQUIRED EDIT MASK

Figure 70.29.

EDIT WORKSHEET

PROGRAM | PROGRAMMER | DATE

COMMENTS: MONETARY FIELD, WITH CR SYMBOL, LEADING *

STEP 1. FILL IN LINE a, SHOWING THE LARGEST POSSIBLE SOURCE FIELD, AND WHAT YOU WANT IT TO LOOK LIKE AFTER EDITING. HINT: PUT POSITION 1 OF THE SOURCE FIELD IN POSITION 2 OF THE MASK, AND SO ON, LEFT TO RIGHT.

STEP 2. IF YOU HAVE INSERTED ANY SPECIAL CHARACTERS INTO THE EDITED OUTPUT, PUT THEM IN THE EDIT MASK IN THE SAME POSITION IN WHICH THEY APPEAR.

NOTE: THIS DOES NOT APPLY TO *'s (ASTERISKS), b's (BLANKS), OR $'s (DOLLAR SIGNS). DO NOT PLACE THEM IN THE EDIT MASK YET.

NOTE: ALLOWABLE SPECIAL CHARACTERS ARE A THRU Z, 1 THRU 9, AND /, - + = etc.

STEP 3. FILL IN LINE b, SHOWING HOW YOU WANT ZERO TO APPEAR IN YOUR EDITED OUTPUT.

STEP 4. WHAT DID YOU DO WITH LEADING ZEROS? (YOU MAY ONLY CHOOSE ONE OPTION)

a) LEFT THEM AS ZEROS? THEN DO NOTHING TO THE MASK.

b) REPLACED THEM WITH ASTERISKS? IF SO, NOTE THE RIGHTMOST ASTERISK AND PUT AN ASTERISK IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

c) REPLACED THEM WITH BLANKS? IF SO NOTE THE RIGHTMOST BLANK AND PUT A ZERO IN THE MASK IN THE SAME POSITION.

d) REPLACED THEM WITH A STRING OF BLANKS AND A DOLLAR SIGN? (FOR EXAMPLE bbbb$). IF SO, NOTE THE POSITION OF THE DOLLAR SIGN AND PUT A DOLLAR SIGN IN THAT POSITION IN THE MASK.

STEP 5. FILL IN LINE c, SHOWING A TYPICAL NEGATIVE FIELD, AND HOW YOU WANT IT TO APPEAR.

STEP 6. WHAT DO YOU WANT DONE WITH A NEGATIVE FIELD INDICATOR? CHOOSE ONE.

a) NOTHING, FIELD WILL NEVER BE NEGATIVE..... DO NOTHING.

b) LETTERS 'CR' AFTER THE FIELD ..... PUT A 'CR' IN THE MASK TO THE RIGHT OF THE FIELD.

c) MINUS SIGN IN ITS OWN COLUMN, AFTER THE FIELD..... PUT A MINUS SIGN IN THE POSITION RIGHT AFTER THE FIELD.

d) 11-PUNCH OVER ONE OF THE CHARACTERS..... SAME AS OPTION C, THEN USE NZONE SUBROUTINE TO MOVE ZONE PUNCH TO THE DESIRED POSITION'

CALL NZONE (MASK,☐, 5, NOLDZ)
MOVE ZONE FROM HERE TO HERE
CALL NZONE (MASK,☐, NOLDZ, JUNK)

CAUTION: "CERTAIN ZONE PUNCHES (11, 0 AND 12, 0) CANNOT BE HANDLED BY FORTRAN I/O. IF THESE PUNCHES WILL OCCUR, YOU MUST USE CSP I/O."

STEP 7. HOW MANY CHARACTERS WERE IN THE FIRST SOURCE FIELD?... 8 a
HOW MANY BLANKS REMAIN IN THE MASK?..... 8 b

CAUTION: a CAN BE EQUAL TO OR LESS THAN b, BUT CANNOT BE LARGER!

STEP 8. DON'T FORGET; THE SOURCE FIELD MUST BE IN A1 FORMAT, WITH THE SIGN OVER THE RIGHTMOST CHARACTER.

SOURCE FIELD

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
a	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9				
b	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0				
c					1	2	3	4				

IMPLIED SIGN

LINE a – LARGEST
LINE b – ZERO
LINE c – TYPICAL NEGATIVE
REQUIRED EDIT MASK

DESIRED EDITED OUTPUT

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
a	*	9	9	9	,	9	9	9	.	9	9								a
b	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	0	.	0	0								b
c	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	2	.	3	4	C	R						c
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
	b	b	b	b	,	b	*	b	.	b	b	C	R						

Figure 70.30.

Filling a Field with a Specific Character--FILL

If your program requires that you create long strings of the same digit or character, the FILL subroutine may be used. The statement

```
CALL FILL (KARRY, 10, 36, IT)
```

will place the coding of IT in positions 10-36 of the array KARRY. IT may be any integer between +32767 and -32768.

In a standard FORTRAN program, this is a useful way to clear a set of totals to zero.

If you are using the decimal arithmetic routines, this can also be used to clear a total field to zero.

When using the overlapped I/O routines, it is often necessary to fill an area with blanks, dashes, or some other character.

A table of the decimal equivalent of various EBCDIC (A1) characters may be found in the CSP manual. However, it is usually easier to obtain their value indirectly with a DATA statement. For example, to fill a printer output line with dashes, you would place a DATA statement in the beginning of your program:

```
DATA IDASH/' - '/
```

placing the dash character between the quotes or apostrophes. Then the FILL statement

```
CALL FILL (IOUT, 1, 120, IDASH)
```

would fill the IOUT array with the A1 code for a dash.

Comparing Alphabetic Fields--NCOMP

The requirements for alphabetic comparisons can usually be broken into two main classifications:

1. Comparing to determine whether there is a match/no match condition.
2. Comparing to determine whether one field is higher than, lower than or equal to another field.

Because the first is quite a bit simpler than the second, these two types of alphabetic compares will be discussed separately.

Match/No Match Alpha Compare. This operation is common to many commercial applications:

- An employee time card may contain a four-letter code describing what job he worked on, and the program must look up a corresponding rate.
- An inventory card may contain a two-letter code indicating unit of measure--LB, GR, EA, etc.
- The name field on each input card is compared with the name field on the preceding card; if they are not the same, branch to the "control break" section of the program.

If the fields to be compared are one or two characters long, they may be read into a single integer variable and compared like any other intergers. For example, if their names are ITHIS and ITHAT, the statement:

```
IF(ITHIS-ITHAT) 1,2,1
```

will branch to statement number 2 if they are identical, and statement number 1 if they are different. The format (A1 or A2) does not matter, except, of course, that it must be the same for both.

If the fields are longer than two characters, they should be read into integer arrays, in A1 format, and compared with the NCOMP function. Using the previous example, suppose ITHIS and ITHAT are arrays, each containing ten alphabetic characters.

```
IF(NCOMP(ITHIS,1,10,ITHAT,1))1,2,1
```

will work the same as the simple IF statement shown earlier.

Don't try to compare alphabetic fields that have been stored as real variables. Two six-character fields, called THIS and THAT, may be read from a card and moved about in core just like any other real variables; however, they cannot be compared validly. The statement

```
IF(THIS-THAT)1,2,1
```

will not always branch to statement number 1 if the two fields are different.

High/Low/Equal Alpha Compare. Everything said about the Match/No Match compare also applies here, with two exceptions:

1. The fields to be compared should always be in A1 format.
2. The A1 representation for a blank must be changed if you want it to fall in the proper collating sequence.

Figure 70.31 shows the decimal representation of various characters in A1 format. Note that the blank falls after the letters and numbers. If it is left there, alphabetic compares will yield an ascending sequence--for example:

WILLIAMSON
WILLIAMSbb
WILLIAMbbb

rather than the correct

WILLIAMbbb
WILLIAMSbb
WILLIAMSON

This can easily be corrected if blanks are converted from 16448 to something less than -16064, the letter A. In fact, you might as well change it to -16448. With a DO loop, the input record can be scanned for +16448s, and each one found can be changed to -16448.

They need not be converted back to +16448 for printed output, since any invalid character (such as -16448) will be printed as a blank anyway. For punched output, however, this will not be so, and the -16448s should be changed back to +16448s.

Character	A1 Decimal Equivalent
A	-16064
B	-15808
C	-15552
D	-15296
E	-15040
F	-14784
G	-14528
H	-14272
I	-14016
J	-11968
K	-11712
L	-11456
M	-11200
N	-10944
O	-10688
P	-10432
Q	-10176
R	-9920

Character	A1 Decimal Equivalent
S	-7616
T	-7360
U	-7104
V	-6848
W	-6592
X	-6336
Y	-6080
Z	-5824
0	-4032
1	-3776
2	-3520
3	-3264
4	-3008
5	-2752
6	-2496
7	-2240
8	-1984
9	-1728

Character	A1 Decimal Equivalent	
blank	16448	← Note position of blank
. (period)	19264	
< (less than)	19520	
(	19776	
+	20032	
&	20544	
$	23360	
*	23616	
)	23872	
-(minus)	24640	
/	24896	
,	27456	
%	27712	
#	31552	
@	31808	
' (apostrophe)	32064	
=	32320	

Figure 70.31.

Working with Zone Punches -- NZONE

The top three rows of the data processing card are commonly called the "zone" rows, and a punch in one of them is called a zone punch. The top row is called the 12 zone; the next, the 11 zone; and the next (the 0 row), the 0 zone. (See Figure 70.32.) A digit overpunched with a 12 zone punch is taken to be positive; an 11 punch indicates negative. This is quite reasonable, since an 11 punch alone is a minus sign, and a 12 punch is an ampersand (&) or plus sign (+), depending on the coding scheme and cardpunch used. (While many people use the term "X punch" instead of 11 punch, both mean the same.)

The 12 punch is rarely used, since it is easier to have no zone punch for positive numbers.

The zone punch, when used to indicate the sign, should be placed over the units (rightmost) position of the field. For example, -1675 would be punched with an 11 punch over the 5.

This practice will result in a card code equivalent to one of the letters J through R, or a negative zero. The table below shows the card code equivalents:

These punches	Mean either this	Or this
11,0	-0	$\bar{0}$
11,1	-1	J
11,2	-2	K
11,3	-3	L
11,4	-4	M
11,5	-5	N
11,6	-6	O
11,7	-7	P
11,8	-8	Q
11,9	-9	R

If the card containing the $167\bar{5}$ field were interpreted, or listed character for character, it would appear as 167N, where the character N is equivalent to a 5 and an 11 punch.

In a few cases, zone punches may also be found in card columns other than the low-order digits of a numeric field. This is particularly true in installations that once had a unit record, or punched card, system. In such a system, zone punches provided an easy way to pack additional data into a punched card.

One of the advantages of the CSP overlapped I/O routines is that they allow the input and output of fields with zone punches. This is normally quite difficult with standard FORTRAN READs and WRITEs, since the 11,0 (- zero) punch is not permitted.

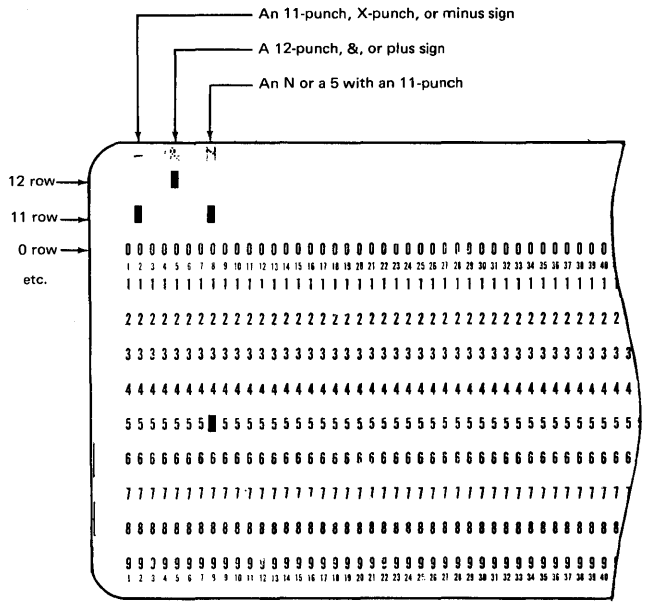


Figure 70.32.

The NZONE Subroutine. The NZONE subroutine has been included in CSP to allow you to interrogate a zone punch, obtaining a code that indicates its status, and to modify a zone punch. If you wished to operate on the 18th character in the INOUT array, the call to NZONE would be

CALL NZONE (INOUT, 18, NEWZ, NOLDZ)

NOLDZ will be returned to you, indicating what zone punch was present:

NOLDZ	Zone Punch	Character
1	12	A--I
2	11	J--R
3	0	S--Z
4	none	0--9
more than 4	-	special character

Note that an NOLDZ of 4 or more does not tell you what zone punch was present, but only that INOUT(18) contains a special character.

You supply the NEWZ parameter, indicating to the subroutine what you want done with the old zone punch:

NEWZ	Action Taken
1	Make the zone a 12
2	Make the zone an 11
3	Make the zone a 0
4	Remove the zone
more than 4	Let the zone alone

FORTRAN CORE SAVING TIPS

General

The way in which you code your FORTRAN programs will have a considerable effect on their size. The difference between efficient and inefficient coding might be as much as several hundred words. This may mean the difference between a program that fits in core and one that doesn't, or the difference between one that requires many time-consuming overlays and one that requires none.

In general, the larger a program, the more slowly it will run--not because it does more, but because of the overlays (SOCALs, LOCALs and LINKs) required to fit it into core. When writing your programs, therefore, you should make every effort to keep them small. One way to do this is to know which FORTRAN techniques save core storage, and which ones consume it excessively. A better way is to design programs that do just one job, rather than many. (Subsection 25.30.20 contains a discussion of the advantages of modular programming.) Still another way is to use efficient overlays (see Section 65).

The core storage requirements for any particular program can be split into three major elements:

- The object code generated by the compiler
- The subroutines, which actually do the work
- The data area, where all variables and constants are stored

You should realize that very little actual work is done "in line" by your program; when the end-of-compilation summary says your program size is 1000 words, it means that your program has been translated into 1000 words of branches or linkages to subroutines, plus some housekeeping to prepare the linkages. The exception to this statement is integer arithmetic, which is done in line, without subroutines. However, all subscript calculation, real arithmetic, and input/output is accomplished by subroutines.

Some of the core saving tips in this section are directed toward reducing the subroutine requirements, while others will reduce the amount of in-line coding.

If you modify an existing program, incorporating some of these tips, don't expect to find all the savings reflected in the end-of-compilation summary. Check the list of required subroutines; you may have eliminated some of them.

Reducing Program Size

Use the DATA Statement

The DATA statement is a recent addition to 1130 FORTRAN, having been incorporated into Version 2 of the 1130 Monitor System. Basically, it is used to create constants at the time the program is compiled, rather than each time the program is executed. It saves some time, but this should not be enough to notice in the overall run time of most programs. Much more important, the DATA statement saves core storage.

It is a nonexecutable statement, like the TYPE, DIMENSION, EQUIVALENCE, etc., statements, and requires no core storage. It provides only a starting value for variables. For exact rules concerning the use of the DATA statement, see the 1130 FORTRAN manual; in this section you will see some examples of its use.

- Case 1: Initialize Tables at the Beginning of a Program

Almost every program begins with statements such as

```
      DO 16 J = 1,50
      TOT(J) = 0.0
   16 SUBT(J) = 0.0
```

This coding, which requires about 27 words of storage, can be replaced with

```
      DATA TOT/50*0.0/, SUBT/50*0.0/
```

which requires no storage.

Let us stress three facts at this point:

1. You still require two 50-position arrays. The DATA statement merely takes care of initializing their values.
2. If you say TOT (1) = 1.5 later in the program, this will be done, and TOT (1) will no longer be 0.0.
3. If you want to clear out these tables again during the execution of the program, you must use the conventional DO loop. You cannot GO TO or reexecute the DATA statement, since it is a nonexecutable statement and, in fact, no longer exists once the program is loaded.

- Case 2: Initialize Indicators, etc.

The program PAY04, listed in Subsection 70.50.30, contains the following FORTRAN statements:

```
      T = 0.
      IERR = 0
      ICOL = 1
      IN1 = 1
      XOT = 0.
      XBN = 0.
      XSP = 0.
      XREG = 0.
      IPAGE = 0
      LINE = 50
```

which require 40 words of object coding. They may be replaced by

```
DATA T/0./, IERR/0/, ICOL/1/, etc., etc.
```

- Case 3: Setting a Variable to Different Values

Again inspecting the same program, PAY04, we find

```
      GO TO (76,77,78,79,80,81),NOPLT
   76 ILST=250
      GO TO 83
   77 ILST=90
      GO TO 83
   78 ILST=200
      GO TO 83
   79 ILST=50
      GO TO 83
   80 ILST=150
      GO TO 83
   81 ILST=30
   83 continue
```

which requires 44 words of object coding. It may be replaced by a combination of

```
      DIMENSION IFACT (6)
      DATA IFACT/250, 90, 200, 50, 150, 30/
```

and the statement (using eight words)

```
      ILST = IFACT(NOPLT)
```

Placing the six constants in the IFACT array adds no core requirements, since they were in core before, as INTEGER CONSTANTS (see listing at end of compilation).

• Case 4: Creating Alphabetic Masks for the EDIT Subroutine

If you want to print or punch your FORTRAN results with commas, floating dollar signs, etc., you are probably using the EDIT subroutine found in CSP. This subroutine requires an Edit mask, which may look like

bb, bb$. bbCR

There are two ways to obtain this mask, which must be in A1 format in an eleven-word integer array (call it MASK). You can read it off a card, or you can look up the decimal equivalents of the EBCDIC codes, and set each one equal to the desired character:

MASK (1) =	16448	blank
MASK (2) =	16448	blank
MASK (3) =	27456	comma
MASK (4) =	16448	blank
MASK (5) =	16448	blank
MASK (6) =	23360	dollar sign
MASK (7) =	19264	period
MASK (8) =	16448	blank
MASK (9) =	16448	blank
MASK (10) =	-15552	letter C
MASK (11) =	-9920	letter R

The DATA statement allows you to eliminate this sixty-six-word series of commands, replacing it with DATA MASK/'b','b',',','b','b','$','.','b','b','C','R'/ where b indicates a blank.

Keep FORMAT Statements Compact

1130 FORTRAN includes a very flexible repertoire of FORMAT codes, and often gives you several different ways to achieve the same results. For example, you can specify either (F6.2, F6.2, F6.2) or (3F6.2). With alphabetic heading data, there are more options. To type a line which reads

bbbbbbbbbTOTAL

you can use as FORMAT statements the following:

a. FORMAT(14Hbbbbbbbbb TOTAL)
b. FORMAT('bbbbbbbbbTOTAL')
c. FORMAT(9X,'TOTAL')
d. FORMAT(9X,5HTOTAL)
etc.

If you suspected that some options used more core storage than others, you would be correct. Options a and b force the compiler to allocate nine words for this FORMAT STATEMENT; options c and d only require six words.

The main difference between the two styles is the manner in which you have generated nine blank columns -- 9X or 'bbbbbbbbb'. The 9X is coded and compressed into one word; the 'bbbbbbbbb' requires one word, plus a string of five words, each containing two alphabetic blanks.

The difference does not appear to be great, but consider your typical commercial report writing program with its many long FORMAT statements. The difference between the best (smallest core requirement) and what the programmer has actually used may be substantial.

This topic is further complicated by the fact that the X specification is best for large numbers of spaces, while the literal or ' ' specification is best for small numbers. In summary, to get one or two spaces, it is best to enclose blanks within quotes (or use the H specification). To get three or more spaces, use the X specification.

Code Efficient I/O Statements

The manner in which you code your I/O statements can have a significant effect on the size of your program. The FORTRAN compiler will generate a certain fixed amount of coding for each READ or WRITE:

READ	3 words
WRITE	4 words

plus a certain additional amount (average) for each item in the I/O list:

variable -- e.g., AB or I	2 words
variable, constant subscript -- e.g., X(3)	4 words
variable, variable subscript -- e.g., X(J)	5 words
array name	3 words
implied DO loop e.g., (X(N), N=1, 6)	19 words

If you wish to WRITE a line containing eight real variables, you may code

```
WRITE (3,XXX) A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H
```

and use 4 + (8 x 2) or 20 words. Or you could EQUIVALENCE each of the eight items to a variable in the ANSWR array

```
EQUIVALENCE (A, ANSWR(1))
EQUIVALENCE (B, ANSWR(2))
etc.
```

and code

```
WRITE (3,XXX) ANSWR
```

which would require only 4 + (1 x 3) or 7 words.

You would not want to use

```
WRITE (3,XXX) (ANSWR(K), K=1, 8)
```

since that would require 23 words, more than the original. In fact, the implied DO loop I/O format should be avoided wherever possible. This can usually be accomplished with the EQUIVALENCE statement. For example, if you want to WRITE the first six items of the eight-item ANSWR array, you would code

```
DIMENSION ANSWR(8), ANS6(6)
EQUIVALENCE (ANS6(1), ANSWR(1))
....
....
....
WRITE (3,XXX) ANS6
```

saving 23-7 or 16 words.

Avoid Long Subroutine Argument Lists

The coding generated for CALLs to subroutines is quite similar to that of READs and WRITEs -- an initial CALL (two words) plus a certain number of words for each argument:

Type of Argument	Approximate Core Required
None	0 words
Constant -- e.g., 6	1 word
Unsubscribed Variable -- e.g., X or I	1 word
Array Name, -- e.g., IARRY	1 word
Variable with Constant Subscript -- e.g., A(7)	8 words
Variable with Variable Subscript -- e.g., A(N)	13 words

You can see that there is quite a difference between

a. CALL SUB	2 words
b. CALL SUB (X, Y, Z)	5 words
c. CALL SUB (IARRY)	3 words
d. CALL SUB (A(1), A(2), A(3))	26 words
e. CALL SUB (A(I), A(J), A(K))	41 words

There are many ways to avoid those types of CALLs that consume core storage.

Item d, CALL SUB (A(1), A(2), A(3)), could be replaced by

```
EQUIVALENCE (A(1), X)
EQUIVALENCE (A(2), Y)
EQUIVALENCE (A(3), Z)
.
.
```

and

```
CALL SUB (X, Y, Z)
```

or by

```
DIMENSION XA(3)
EQUIVALENCE (XA(1), A(1))
.
.
```

and

```
CALL SUB (XA)
```

or by placing the A array in COMMON and using

```
CALL SUB
```

with no arguments.

Item e, CALL SUB (A(I), A(J), A(K)), could be replaced by

```
CALL SUB (A, I, J, K)
```

which would require a revised subroutine but would save 41 -6 or 35 words. Or it could be replaced by

```
CALL SUB (I, J, K)
```

with the A array placed in COMMON.

Avoid Arithmetic with Variables Having Constant Subscripts

In the average arithmetic statement, a variable with a constant subscript (TOTAL(10)) will require two words more coding than an unsubscripted variable (TOTDF). Such usage can always be avoided by an EQUIVALENCE statement such as

EQUIVALENCE (TOTDF, TOTAL(10))

Then, rather than say

TOTAL(10) = TOTAL(10) + AMT

you would code

TOTDF = TOTDF + AMT

and save two words.

In a large program, the saving can be considerable. Furthermore, it makes the program more readable, since TOTDF can be a more descriptive name than TOTAL(10).

The data can be referred to by either name:

- TOTDF when doing arithmetic
- TOTAL(10) when you want it subscripted -- for example, when clearing an array of totals, when writing an array of totals on the disk, etc.

Reducing Subroutine Requirements

Raising a Real Number to a Whole Power

FORTRAN allows you two ways to do this. For example, to square X, a real number, either X**2 or X**2. may be used. While the two look almost identical, the first will use the "real base to integer exponent" routines (about 82 words) and the second will use the "real base to a real exponent" routines (about 242 words).

In this case you should code X**2 and save about 160 words of core storage, unless, of course, your program really requires a real base to a real exponent somewhere else.

A programmer will often use this form of arithmetic to obtain the various powers of ten -- for example:

```
10**N
10**0 = 1
10**1 = 10
10**2 = 100
```

However, if this is the only way in which the double asterisk is used in a particular program, it will usually be more economical to code:

```
DATA TEN/1.,10.,100.,1000.,etc./
```

and then use subscripting

```
...TEN (N+1).....
```

This will eliminate the 82-word subroutine.

SQRT vs **.5

To take the square root of a number, you have two alternatives: the SQRT function or the 1/2 power option (**.5). While both will give the same result, the core storage required is quite different. The SQRT routine is about 76 words in length; the "real base to real exponent" routine, about 242 words. The difference, about 166 words, is substantial.

Of course, if your program must use the "real base to real exponent" routine (for example X**A), you need those routines anyway. If that is so, use the **.5 option rather than SQRT; otherwise, you will have both packages in core storage.

Don't Include Unneeded I/O Devices on *IOCS Card

In many installations, a stack of all-purpose *IOCS cards is left on the card reader, or nearby, to save the trouble of punching a new card for every program. However, you should be aware that the card

*IOCS(CARD, DISK, TYPEWRITER, KEYBOARD, 1132 PRINTER)

will cause all those I/O routines to be added to your program, whether you use the devices or not. The size of the package to handle those devices listed above is about 620 words for the disk, and 1780 words for the non-disk group. Because of the way in which the SOCAL system operates, your program may still fit in core, but with more overlays, thus causing it to run more slowly.

It would be wiser to maintain a set of cards with only one device per card

```
*IOCS(CARD)
*IOCS(1132 PRINTER)
*IOCS(DISK)
etc.
```

and use only those that are really needed. In this way no unnecessary I/O packages will be included with your program.

Remove FIND Statements If You Have SOCALs or LOCALs

Even if you have included FIND statements in your program, they will not be executed if SOCALs or LOCALs are being used. The FIND subroutine (SDFND), however, remains in core storage.

Therefore, if you know you are going to have SOCALs or LOCALs, remove all FIND statements, and you will save about 80 words of core storage, plus three words for each statement.

Remove the TRACE from Production-Status Programs

The trace features furnished in 1130 FORTRAN are an invaluable aid in debugging. Most users, when they compile their programs, include the *ARITHMETIC TRACE and *TRANSFER TRACE cards, just in case something goes wrong. However, since these features consume both core space and time, they should be eliminated when no longer needed.

Core requirements are increased by about 140 words, and execution time is slowed down for each equal (=) sign, IF statement, or computed GO TO executed. This is true regardless of the status of Sense Switch 15. In addition, the object coding generated may be slightly greater.

FORTRAN EXECUTION TIMES

Processing

It is possible to estimate the length of time it will take to execute an arithmetic block of FORTRAN coding. Inspect your coding sheets, or program listings, and count the average number of times the operations shown in Figure 70.33 will be executed. Then use the times shown in Figure 70.33 to estimate the total execution time.

Note that you must consider the probability of execution, not just the number of appearances. If a certain loop will be executed 15 times, on the

Operation	Approximate* time in Microseconds,** each execution (time for standard precision use in parentheses)	Operation	Approximate* time in Microseconds,** each execution (time for standard precision use in parentheses)
GET	2250 + 2190C	real =	300 (360)
PUT	3450 + 3090 C	integer =	22
EDIT	630 + 90 S + 180 M		
MOVE	300 + 45 C	+real	440 (460
FILL	300 + 30 C	+integer	12
WHOLE	1400	-real	490 (560)
NCOMP	250 + 75 C	-integer	12
NZONE	350	*real	790 (560)
ICOMP	500 + 95 C	*integer	30
NSIGN	240	/real	2100 (800)
ADD	2160 + 216 L	/integer	80
SUB	2160 + 216 L		
MPY	2400 + 120 P	real**real	13300 (8000)
DIV	4000 + Q(445 + 667 DIV)	integer**integer	4700 (3800)
A1DEC	700 + 54 A	FLOAT	330
DECA1	180 + 117 A	FIX	140
A1A3	470 + 1084 A	subscript (no variable)	25
A3A1	545 + 156 A		
PACK	360 + 63 A	subscript (one variable)	280
UNPAC	420 + 66 A		
DPACK	392 D	subscript (two variables)	390
DUNPK	360 D		
SIN	5400 (3000)	subscript (three variables)	530
COS	5900 (3400)		
ATAN	8900 (5300)	DO	22 + 50 N
SQRT	10400 (4500)	IF (real)	190 (210)
EXP	4400 (2000)	IF (integer)	30
ALOG	8000 (5100)		
TANH	8100 (4300)	GO TO	7
		GO TO ( ), N	7

N = The number of times through the DO loop
C = Length of the field, in characters
S = Length of the source field
M = Length of the edit mask
P = Length of the multiplier field x length of the multiplicand field (significant digits only — don't count leading zeros)
A = Length of the A1 field
D = Length of the packed decimal (D4) field
L = Length of the longer of the two fields (significant digits only — don't count leading zeros)
Q = Number of significant digits in the quotient (result) field
DIV = Number of significant digits in the divisor (denominator) field

* Most timings are approximate and are based on test runs of "typical" cases, using fields of "average" size, magnitude, etc. Unusual cases may (or may not) differ significantly from the timings obtained from the given equations. This is particularly true of the decimal arithmetic routines (ADD, SUB, MPY, DIV).

** Based on 3.6-microsecond CPU cycle speed. Multiply by 0.6 to obtain timings on 2.2-microsecond CPU.

Figure 70.33.

average, every operation within it should be counted 15 times. If, in the other hand, a certain routine is only executed half the time, it should be counted as half an execution. To illustrate:

```
        X=X+6
        IF(X-77.)1,2,1
1       Z=X*14.
        GO TO 3
2       Z=X*16./W
3       CONTINUE
```

If you assume extended precision, and a probability of one-third for path 1 and two-thirds for path 2, the estimated execution time is

Operation	No. of Times	x	Unit Time *	Total*
=	1+1/3+2/3=2		330	660
+	1		440	440
-	1		490	490
*	1/3+2/3=1		790	790
/	2/3		2100	1400
FLOAT (6 to 6.0)	1		330	330
IF (real)	1		190	190
GO TO	1		7	7
				4307

*In microseconds

On the average, then, this portion of your program will require 4307 microseconds, or 4.307 milliseconds, or .004307 seconds.

Figures 70.34 through 70.40 show some additional examples.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
      X = X + 6
      IF (X - 77.) 1, 2, 1
1     Z = X * 14.          ONE OUT OF EVERY 3 TIMES
      GO TO 3
2     Z = X * 16. / W      TWO OUT OF THREE TIMES
3     CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
real =	1+1/3+2/3	330	660
+ real	1	440	440
FLOAT	1	330	330
- real	1	490	490
IF (real)	1	190	190
GO TO	1	7	7
* real	1/3+2/3	790	790
/ real	2/3	2100	1400
		TOTAL =	4217

Figure 70.34.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
      X(I) = X(I)+6
      IF(X(I)-77.) 1, 2, 1
1     Z = X(I) * 14.
      GO TO 3
2     Z = X(I)* 16./W
3     CONTINUE
```

Same as Figure 70.34 except that X is subscripted

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
same as Figure 70.34			4217
Subscripts, 1 var.	4	280	1120
		TOTAL =	5337

Figure 70.35.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
C  COUNT TO 1000 - DO LOOP
   DO 17 I = 1, 1000
   .  .  .
   .  .  .
   .  .  .
   .  .  .
17 CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
DO loop	1000	22+50N	50022
		TOTAL =	50022

Figure 70.36.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
C  COUNT TO 1000 (INTEGERS)
   I = 0
7  IF(I-1000) 1, 2, 2
1  I = I + 1
   GO TO 7
2  CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
integer =	1000	22	22000
-integer	1001	12	12012
IF(integer)	1001	30	30030
GO TO	1000	7	7000
+integer	1000	12	12000
TOTAL =			83042

Figure 70.37.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
C     COUNT TO 1000
C     STANDARD PRECISION
      X=0.0
7     IF (X-1000) 1,2,2
1     X = X + 1.
      GO TO 7
2     CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
real =	1000	360	360000
-real	1001	560	560560
IF(real)	1001	190	190190
GO TO	1000	7	7000
+real	1000	460	460000
	TOTAL =		1,577,750

Figure 70.38.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
C     COUNT TO 1000
C     EXTENDED PRECISION
      X=0.0
7     IF (X-1000.) 1, 2, 2
1     X = X+1.
      GO TO 7
2     CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
real =	1000	330	330000
-real	1001	490	490490
IF(real)	1001	190	190190
GO TO	1000	7	7000
+real	1000	440	440000
TOTAL =			1457680

Figure 70.39.

Section	Subsections		Page
70	60	10	09

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

```
C  COUNT TO 1000, DECIMAL ARITH
C  ASSUME IX FIELD TEN DIGITS LONG
C  ASSUME TWO-DIGIT CONSTANT OF ONE (K1)
C  ASSUME TEN-DIGIT CONSTANT OF 1000(K1000)
   CALL FILL (IX,1,10,0)
7  IF(NCOMP(IX,1,10,K1000,1,10)) 1,2,2
1  CALL ADD(IX,1,10,K1,1,2,NE)
   GO TO 7
2  CONTINUE
```

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
IF(integer)	1001	30	30030
GO TO	1000	7	7000
FILL	1	300+10×30	600
NCOMP	1001	250+10×75	100100
ADD	1000	2160+4×216	3024000
		TOTAL =	4,062,630

Figure 70.40.

Summary and Conclusion

From the examples shown you may draw some conclusions:

1. Integer arithmetic is much faster than real arithmetic.
2. Extended precision and standard precision real arithmetic are of essentially the same speed.
3. Decimal arithmetic is fairly slow.
4. Subscripting adds a considerable amount of time to arithmetic calculations. (It also increases the size of your program.)
5. Unnecessary use of mixed mode expressions can add somewhat to execution time.

FORTRAN TIMING ESTIMATE WORKSHEET

CODING

Component	Number of Executions	Time per Execution, Microseconds	Extension, Microseconds
		TOTAL =	

Section 75: SORTING WITH YOUR 1130

CONTENTS

Introduction 75.01.00
Some Preliminary Information 75.10.00
Alternate Approaches 75.20.00
  Use of File Organization 75.20.10
    Pure Sequential
    Indexed Sequential
    Random
  Sorting Offline 75.20.20
Methods of Sorting 75.30.00
  Introduction 75.30.01
    Key Compare vs Key Value
    (Radix) Techniques
    Sequence-Creating vs
    Sequence Reducing Techniques
    Degree of Data Accessibility
    Degree of Generality
  Internal Sorting Methods 75.30.10
    Selection
    Exchanging
    Merging
    Insertion
    Replacement Selection
    Address Calculation
  External Sorting Methods 75.30.20
    Key (Tag) Sorting
    Key Sort vs Record Sort
A Detailed Look at an 1130 Record
Sort 75.40.00
Summary 75.50.00

INTRODUCTION

Most data processing applications require a sequential arrangement of the information to be processed. Frequently, a collection of related information, or file of data records, is to be updated by adding, deleting, or changing information as new transactions occur. Before the new transactions can be applied against the main or master file, however, a method must be established whereby a transaction can be associated with a master. One such method would be to arrange the transactions in the same sequence as the master file (see Figure 75.1). For this purpose, the master and transaction files are sequenced by some common identifying characteristic, such as part number, account number, employee number, etc. Similarly, when payroll earnings are to be computed or data is to be tabulated in accordance with some scheme of classification, it is necessary to arrange the information in a sequence that facilitates processing.

Sorting is simply a systematic method for arranging or rearranging a file of data records in sequence by some group of characters that constitute the control field, or control word, of the record. (Control words are sometimes called the key.)

This section discusses sorting with your 1130 but attempts first to show you (1) a possible way to avoid sorting with your 1130 and (2) a way to ease the task of writing a sort program, if one must be written.

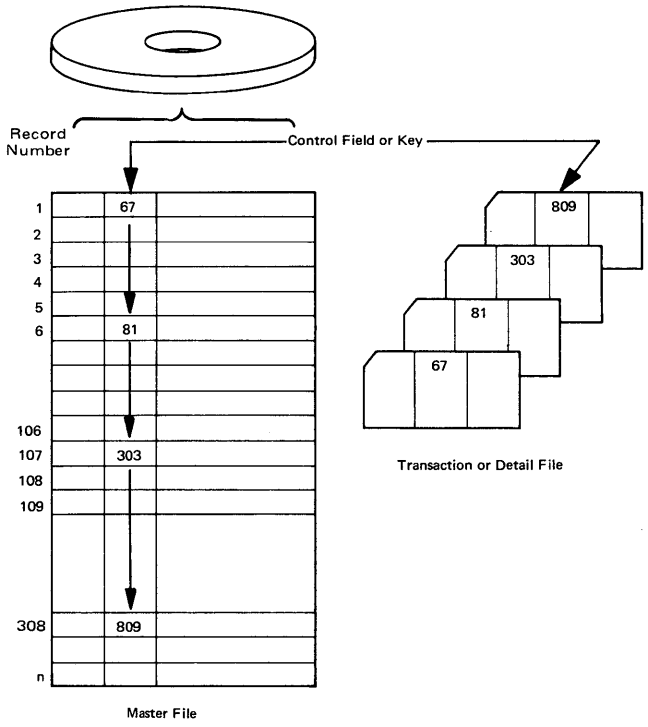


Figure 75.1. Transaction file and master file in same sequence

SOME PRELIMINARY INFORMATION

It may be useful to review the meaning of some basic terms and concepts that are part of sorting terminology. As already stated, sorting concerns the arrangement of a file which is a collection of related data records stored in a data storage medium (cards or disk). The file size specifies the total number of records contained in the file. The input file is the collection of data records introduced as input to the sorting process, while the output file represents the collection of records properly sorted and stored.

To place a file into a specified sequence, each of its records must somehow be uniquely identifiable. The identification is made by means of the control key, a group of characters arranged in a certain way. The contiguous groups of characters that are placed in order within the control key are called control fields. Each of the control fields bears certain identifying information, such as payroll number, name, organization code, address to which checks are sent, etc. The data record control field that is most important in sequencing the records is called the major control field. When two records contain identical data in their major control field, they must be compared by the next most significant, or minor, control field in order to be sorted into the proper sequence. If even the minor control fields are equal, the next most significant or minor control field must be considered, and so on. Thus, for the purpose of successive comparison, all the control fields within the control key are arranged in major-minor (that is, decreasing) order of significance (see Figure 75.2).

Since the control fields of a record may consist of numbers, letters, or special characters ($, -, +, etc.), an order must be prescribed for the characters of the control field to determine which is greater and which is less. Such an order of characters, upon which the sequencing of records is based, is known as the collating sequence. In the 1130, the collating sequence is A-Z, 0-9, blank, and special characters, in ascending order (see 70.40.20). The collating sequence determines the proper order of the control keys.

Using these definitions, sorting may now be defined more accurately as the process whereby a file of records is placed in order by the collating sequence of the control keys of the records.

A considerable body of specific sorting terms has been generated over the years. To simplify

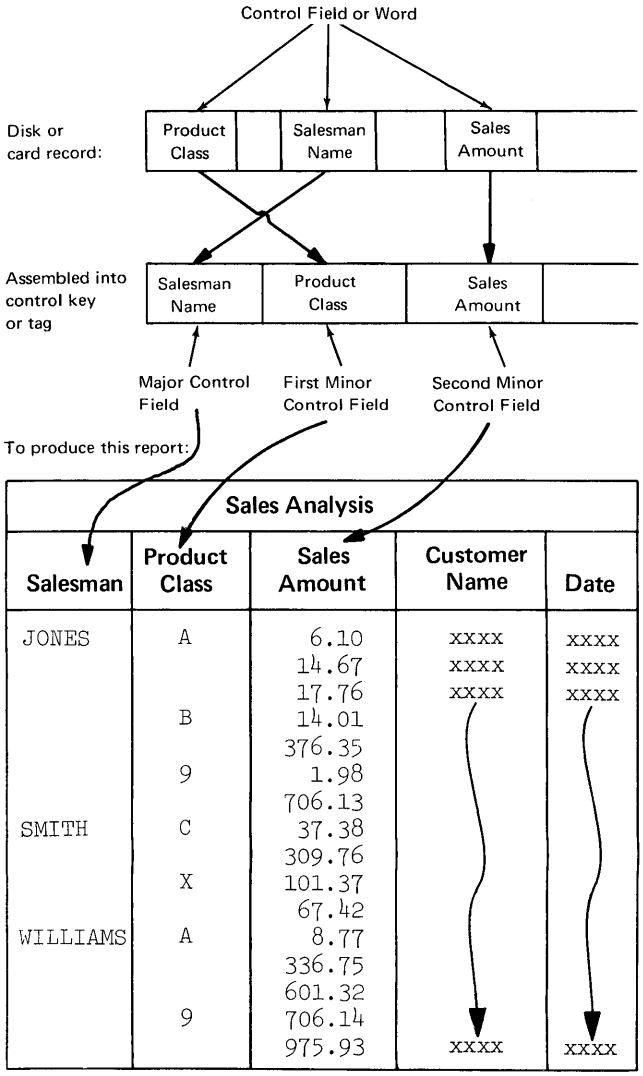


Figure 75.2.

the ensuing discussion, some of the more commonly used terms are explained here.

The object of a sort is (to restate it) to place a file of records in a desired sequence. Any group of data records in which the control keys are in the desired collating sequence is called a "sequence" -- or, sometimes, a "string". The length of each sequence can be one or more data records. It has been assumed till now that a sort must be in ascending sequence; that is, the final sequence of records is such that the control key of each successive record collates (compares) equal to or higher than that of the preceding record. This need

not be the case, however. A sort can be in a descending sequence, with the control key of each successive record collating equal to or lower than that of the preceding record.

Frequently, two or more sorted files have to be merged into a single file of sequenced records. In general, "merging" is a technique that collates several sequences of data records to form a single sequence. The number of files to be combined during a merging operation is known as the order of merge, or "merge order". Thus, a merge of order m is called an "m-way merge". The processing of all the records once through the merge is termed a "merge pass", or simply, a "pass". The object of a pass is to reduce the number of sequences (strings) by increasing the number of records contained in each sequence. During a single pass, the number of sequences is usually reduced by a factor equal to the order of merge (m). Several intermediate passes may be required to reduce the file to a single sequence. A multipass sort is a sort program designed to sort more data than can be contained within the internal storage of the central processing unit. In this case, intermediate storage (disk) is required.

It is customary to segment a sort program into a number of phases, each of which is executed as one core storage load. For example, a typical sort may be divided into four phases: an initialization phase, an internal (presort or premerge) phase within core storage, a merge phase (for combining the sequences), and a final output phase.

The sequencing of a group of data records contained at one time in core storage is known as an "internal sort". The size of the internal sort is the number of data records (abbreviated G) that can be sequenced at one time in core storage. Note, however, that since the number of data records to be sorted usually exceeds G (the number contained at one time in core storage), the internal sort process must generally be repeated until all the records in the file have been sequenced into strings that may later be combined, or merged.

It has been implied that sorting consists of moving data records around until their respective control keys are in the proper collating sequence. This is not always the case. In some sorting methods, the control keys upon which sequencing is based are read from the record and combined with the record number (called tag) to form a key-tag pair. Then the keys are sorted, rather than the original records. After sorting, the tags serve as an index for later retrieval of the data records in the desired sequence (see Figure 75.3).

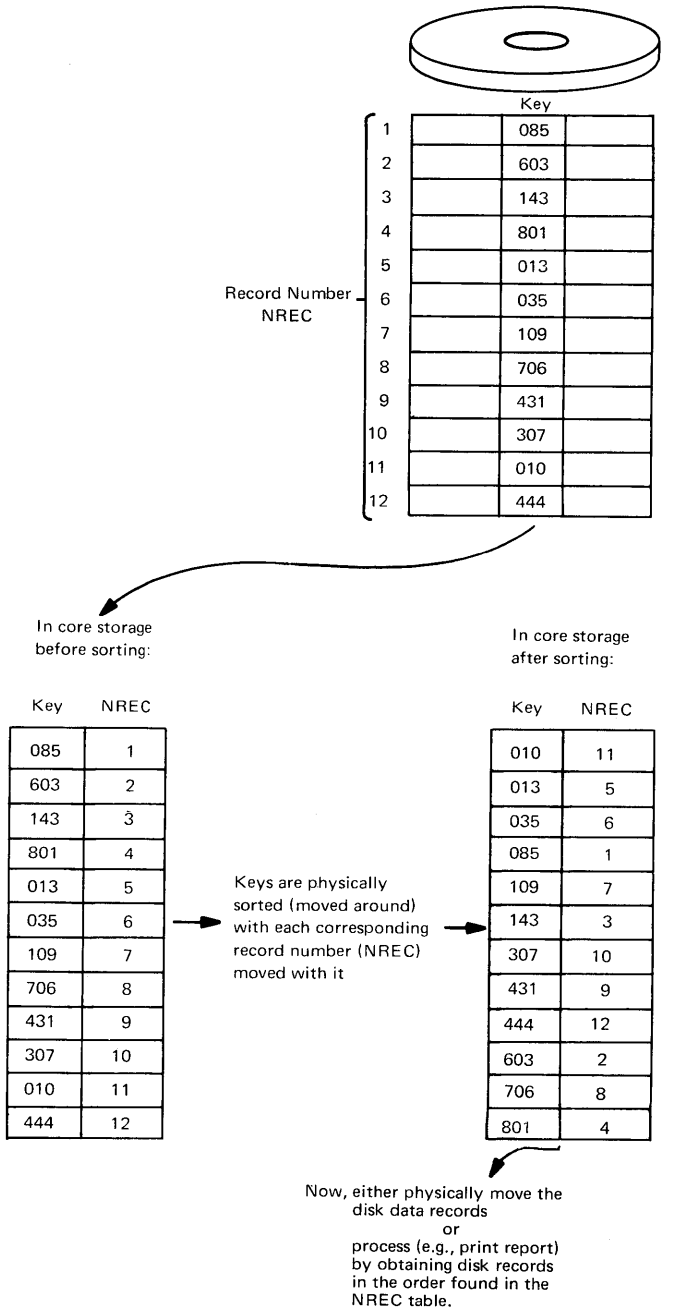


Figure 75.3. Tag sort

The effectiveness of a sort program is measured by the time it takes to sort a file of data records. If the sorting method alone determined the overall performance and speed, the choice of the best method would be relatively simple. In actuality, though, sort performance is the result of a complex interaction between the characteristics of the data file, the data processing system, the sorting method used, the objectives desired, and a number

of other characteristics. Thus a great many factors play a role in determining the efficiency and speed of a sort program.

Among the more important data file characteristics, the following may be cited: the degree of original ordering of the file (that is, is it in random order or do natural sequences exist?); the length, range, and location of control word data; and the number and length of the records.

Equally important in influencing sort performance are the characteristics of the storage facilities and the CPU of the computer. Among storage characteristics of interest are the capacity of the main internal storage and the mode of addressing it, as well as the availability and access times of external storage devices, such as disk files. Relevant machine and CPU characteristics include simultaneous read, write, and processing capability; the basic processing speeds of compare, add, and move operations; the structure of the OP-code set; and the availability of indexing, table lookup, etc.

For a given sorting method, the data file characteristics influence the primary sorting statistics, such as the total number of arithmetic operations or comparisons and the total number of passes. For a file of a given size, each method also has some inherent characteristics that influence the complexity and speed of the sort -- for example, the required working storage, the required number of comparisons, transfers, and exchanges, etc.

Finally, realistic sorting objectives must consider the specific data processing requirements, as well as the complexity and cost of the sort programming effort. A specific sort program should try to provide an optimum match between the specified data file, the given machine configuration, and the chosen technique. In sorting large files, a single sorting technique cannot always provide this optimum match. Frequently, therefore, a program combines two methods in order to take advantage of special machine features, minimize the effects of storage limitations, and provide increased speed.

ALTERNATE APPROACHES

Before you write a sort program for your 1130, examine your files and the reports to be produced from them. You may find that sorting on your 1130 is not necessary, or that sorting can be avoided.

Some alternate approaches to sorting on your 1130 are:

Use of file organization
Sorting offline

Use of File Organization

Is it possible to keep mulitple copies of your files, each in the sequence of a report to be produced? If so, you can avoid sorting. If not, however, as is likely with moderate to large files, the importance of your file organization scheme emerges.

Pure Sequential

An answer for files organized in a pure sequential manner is to maintain multiple copies on multiple disk cartridges. This eliminates sorting but may cause problems in processing. (See Figure 75.4.) Generally, with pure sequential files that are too large for multiple copies, the solution is offline sorting.

Indexed Sequential

Is it possible to keep multiple copies of your index, with each index in the sequence of a report to be produced? Since your index is considerably smaller than your file, this may be the ideal solution. Processing against the file would be random. (See Figure 75.5.) Again, if this solution cannot be used, you can still sort offline.

Random

In this case your files are usually organized in a sequence that does not relate to a report. The transactions (say, cards containing only control keys) must be sequenced appropriately; a sort is necessary. Hence, the only way to avoid sorting using your 1130 is to sort offline.

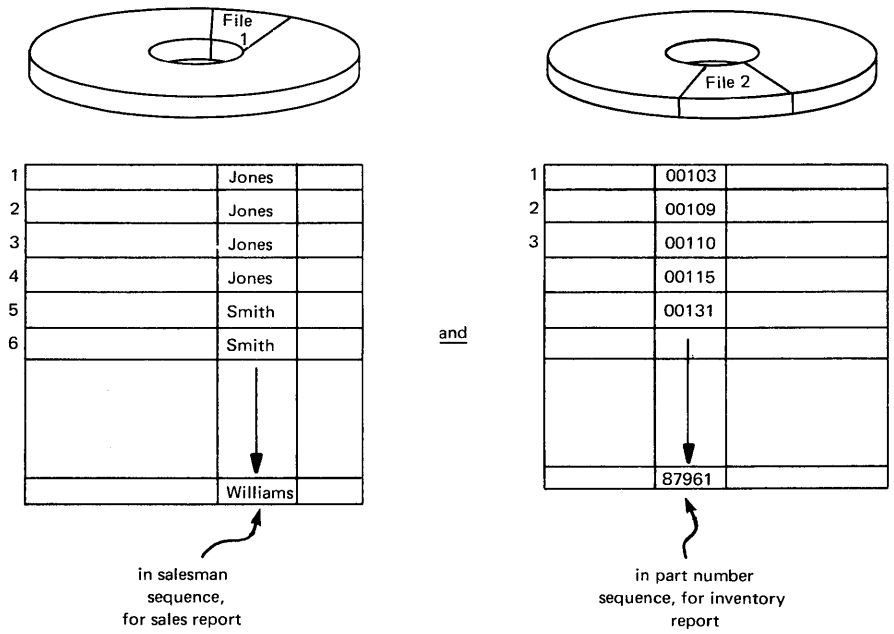


Figure 75.4. Same data in two files, but in different sequence

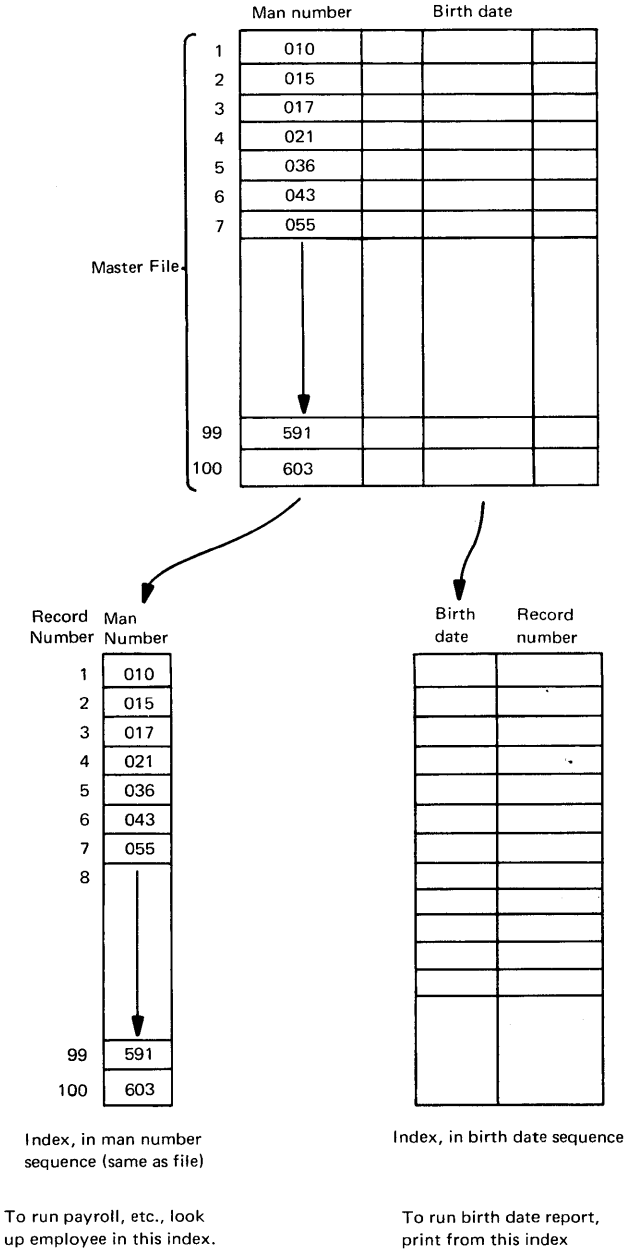


Figure 75.5. One file, but with a multiple index system

Sorting Offline

Sorting offline can be either a manual or a mechanized procedure. A manual procedure (by hand) should not be used unless volumes are very small. Even with small volumes, you will need a program to sequence-check the sorted cards.

A mechanized procedure involves the use of a sorter. IBM has mechanical sorters available that can process up to 2000 cards per minute.

The rule-of-thumb procedure for timing offline mechanized sorts is:

1. Compute the card-passing time for each column in the control key.
2. Sum these times.
3. Add 10% for card handling.

You must decide whether the time and money spent sorting offline will be less than the cost of programming and running a sort for your 1130.

METHODS OF SORTING

Introduction

Sorting and merging methods can be classified in accordance with certain distinguishing characteristics.

Key Compare vs Key Value (Radix) Techniques

Most sorting methods compare control keys of two or more records at a time and sequence the records on the basis of a high, low, or equal comparison of the keys. Despite variations, all key compare techniques are essentially similar in concept. An example of a key compare technique is the card player's way of inserting new cards into his hand in proper sequence, by comparing the value of each new card with the values of those he is already holding.

In some sorts, action is taken on the basis of the value of the individual digits in the key and their position, rather than by comparison of two keys. The value of the key digits -- or, more generally, of the key number base (radix) -- is used to determine into which particular slot each record should go. Key value or radix techniques are also known as digit sorts, which is a narrower term. The mechanical punched card sorter, with separate pockets for each key value, is an excellent example of a radix technique. Another illustration is the distribution of a deck of cards into four piles (or files), one for each suit.

Sequence-Creating (Internal) vs Sequence-Reducing (External) Techniques

Another fundamental way of viewing sorting is to distinguish between techniques that create sequences (starting with a random or unsorted file) and those that reduce the number of existing sequences to one. In theory, most techniques capable of creating sequences of at least two records, or keys, are also capable of lengthening those sequences to a point where, finally, all records are contained within a single sequence. In practice, however, the sequence-creating or internal sorts are usually only the prelude to the main or merge phase of the sort (hence the terms "presort" and "premerge"). Initial sequences are created by loading a group of records into core storage, sorting the records internally, and placing the resulting sequence on an intermediate storage device. This internal sort process is repeated until the input file is exhausted. The sequences thus created internally are then reduced to one by an external merge. If the entire file can be contained within core storage at one time, the sort is exclusively internal. In most cases, however, both internal (sequence-creating) and external (sequence-reducing) techniques are necessary to sort a large file.

Degree of Data Accessibility

Sorts also may be distinguished in accordance with their relative need of data accessibility. Most of the internal techniques are best suited to storage media that can provide rapid access to many groups or sequences of records. Core storage provides the most rapid and direct access, while disks furnish a lesser degree of data accessibility. A number of methods work well with disk.

Degree of Generality

Finally, sort programs may be categorized by the relative degree of specificity or generality for which they are designed. A large range of objectives exist between narrow, highly specific sorts and broad, generalized programs. On one end of this range there are specific sorts designed to operate on a specified input file and a specific computer configuration. Somewhere in between are generalized sorts that will accept the introduction of some parameters at execution time to adapt the sort program to the characteristics of the particular file and computer configuration. At the other extreme of the range, there are highly sophisticated, generalized sorts and sort generators that, virtually without user intervention, can generate a great variety of ordered results on a variety of file and computer configurations.

In most instances, a specific sort program will satisfy your sorting needs. The remainder of this subsection discusses some sorting methods (both internal and external) of the types described above. In addition, one of the easily implemented sorts is expanded in flowchart form for your more detailed examination.

Internal Sorting Methods

Internal sorting is defined as the sequencing of a group of data records contained in the core storage of your 1130. It generally involves reading successive records from disk storage into core storage, sorting the group in storage by one of the methods to be described, and then writing the sequenced group onto disk.

Since internal sorting is generally a part or a phase of other processing and programs, you must distinguish between methods according to the ultimate purpose they serve. Thus, some sorting routines found in compilers, assembly programs, and other applications are strictly internal; that is, a group of items is to be sequenced only in core storage, not written onto disk. On the other hand, in most generalized and specific sort programs, the file of records is too large to be contained, at one time, within core storage. Here the internal sort passes serve only as a prelude to the subsequent external merge phase of the sort and, hence, are frequently called presorts or premerge sorts. The purpose of the internal sort, then, is to form a number of sequences, or strings, which are placed into the output and subsequently merged. The more efficient the premerge sort, and the longer the strings it generates, the fewer external merge passes required.

In addition to the purpose of the sort, the following considerations apply in selecting an internal sort technique and evaluating its suitability for a specific application:

1. Characteristics of the machine (basic processing speed, internal storage capacity, etc.)
2. Input/output characteristics (number of disk drives).
3. Number and length of data records.
4. Length and range of control keys.
5. Degree of original file ordering (natural sequences).
6. The associated program.

Since there is no single best method for all types of applications, most sort programs represent a compromise between conflicting requirements. In general, they attempt to incorporate the following in as nearly optimal a manner as possible:

1. Sort internally as many records as can be packed into core storage.
2. Minimize total process time per record.
3. Function in a manner compatible with I/O operations and strive for a maximum overlap of read, write, and processing time.
4. Utilize existing sequences in the input file, if possible.
5. Write routines that are compact and that can be modified easily.
6. In a generalized program, accept and sort variable length records with any size control key.

Generally, records can be sorted by (1) physically moving them about until they are in order, (2) forming tables of record numbers (tags) in storage, which are then sorted, or (3) combining the control key and record number and sorting the resulting short key-tag pairs. Either tag sorting or key sorting is the preferred method today. The sorted keys are then used as an index to the file.

In addition to an explanation, the advantages and limitations of each sorting method will now be evaluated briefly with respect to major file and machine characteristics. Additional methods and additional information on each of the methods discussed may be found in Sorting Techniques (C20-1639).

Selection

Sorting by selection -- perhaps the simplest, and also the slowest, of the internal sorting methods -- consists essentially of an examination of the input file to find the record with the smallest key (for an ascending sort) and placing this record or its key in the output area as the first item of the new file. The source file is then scanned for the smallest key of the remaining records, which becomes the second item of the new file, and so on, until all items have been placed in the output file.

When the selection process is carried through the entire file in one stage, it is called "linear selection"; when the original file is broken up into groups, and the smallest key of each group is chosen, and then the smallest of these smallest keys, the process is termed "quadratic selection".

Selection requires a relatively small working storage area in core, equal to the number of items being sorted internally. However, the number of passes over the file also equals the number of items (one for each record), and the total number of comparisons required increases with the square of the number of items to be sorted (for linear selection); this rapidly becomes inefficient for a large file.

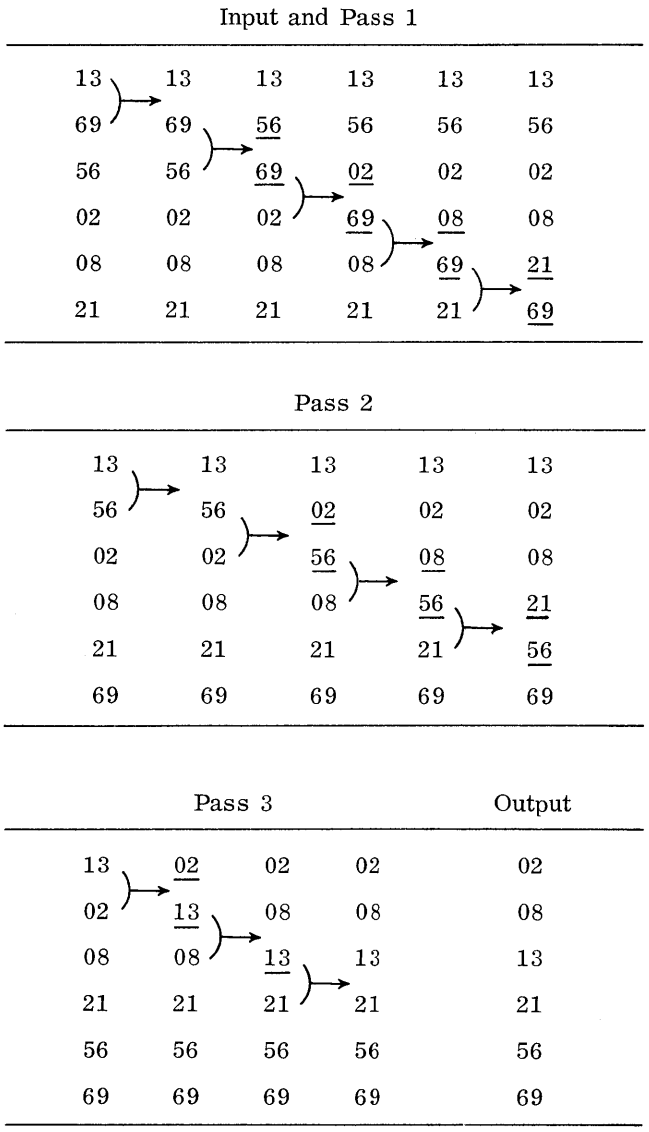
Exchanging

The technique of sorting by exchanging consists essentially of comparing the keys of successive records -- either one by one or pair by pair -- and exchanging out-of-sequence items. The sort is completed when no exchanges are made during a pass through the file. Many variations of this general procedure are possible.

The major advantages of exchange techniques are the relative ease of their programming and the fact that all work is done in the area in which the original file is stored; no separate working storage area is required. Among the drawbacks are the dependence of exchange methods upon the distribution of the control fields in the original file and upon the number of records in the file. If the file is almost in sequence, one pass will generally suffice. In the worst case, reverse sequencing, the number of passes may equal the number of items (G) to be sorted, and the number of exchanges (key and/or record movements) may become very large. Since the number of comparisons required increases with the square of the number of items to be sorted, exchange methods are most efficient for sorting a relatively small file of records. Perhaps the simplest exchange technique, and the easiest to program, is pair exchange. The keys of adjacent records are compared; whenever they are not in ascending sequence, they are interchanged. During the first pass, the keys of the first and second records are compared, then of the second and third, of the third and fourth, and so on, until all keys in the file have been compared and interchanged, when necessary. Each successive pass will process one less record. The sort is completed when no interchanges occur during a pass. The example below illustrates the procedure. In general, the maximum number of passes (for the worst case) is equal to G - 1. The average total number of comparisons (C) is

$$\frac{G(G-1)}{2}$$

where G is the total number of items to be sorted.



The size of the file is of great importance, since the total number of comparisons and interchanges increases roughly with the square of the number of records in the file.

Merging

Merging is the process of combining several sequences of records to form a single specified sequence. The same rules by which sequences are combined may also be used to form sequences (of two or more items). Thus, the merging process has, essentially, a dual nature: it can be used for creating sequences (usually in an internal sort), and it is also capable of reducing previously created sequences to one (usually in an external sort). This dual capability contrasts with the selection and exchange techniques described thus far, which are useful primarily for internal sorting of relatively short files of records. The versatility, speed, and simplicity of merging make it one of the most widely used sorting techniques.

There are two basic methods of merge sorting: (1) straight or standard merging, with fixed-length sequences, and (2) natural merging, with variable-length sequences, or strings. (The words "sequence" and "string" are often used interchangeably in merging terminology.)

In straight merging, the input file is distributed initially into two or more work areas, depending upon the number of sequences to be combined during each merge (that is, the order of merge). For example, in a method of two-way straight merging, the first merge pass alternates between two storage areas to form strings of two records, one from each area. Subsequent passes double the length of the strings each time (for example, 4, 8, 16, etc.), until the last pass produces a single sequence of all the records. The length of the strings during each pass and the number of passes are fixed.

The natural merge sort takes advantage of "natural" sequences in the original file, which occur with a certain "probable" frequency. The length of the strings on each pass is no longer fixed, but depends upon the existing sequences. The total number of passes required to sort a given file, then, also depends on the number of natural sequences in the original file. For a file that is in correct sequence, only a single pass is required -- to verify that sequence. In the worst case, the number of passes is the same as for straight merging.

Insertion

A fairly effective method for sorting a small number of items, the insertion technique, places each item in sequence as soon as it is encountered. The records (or tags) are brought into storage one at a time, the key is examined, and the item inserted in the correct place of an output file. Earlier members of the partial file are moved aside, when necessary, to make room for new items. The method is straightforward and easy to program, but is relatively slow compared with other techniques.

Sorting by simple insertion has two inherent drawbacks: (1) the partial file must be searched each time to locate the correct place for inserting the new item, and (2) excessive shifting of the sorted records is necessary for each new insertion. The first limitation can be overcome, to some extent, by subdividing the area that must be searched in order to locate the correct position of each new item. The second drawback -- the large amount of record movement -- can be avoided by sorting record numbers (tags), rather than the record themselves. Even with these improvements, the method is too slow for larger files.

Replacement Selection

The internal sorting methods described thus far are all capable of sorting a group of records (G) that can be contained at one time in core storage. The maximum string length is, therefore, limited to G items. An auxiliary technique, known as replacement (sometimes, replenishment), tries to keep the core storage area filled with G items by replacing records that have been withdrawn during the sort. As a result, for a file in random order, an average string length of 2G items is developed in an area with a capacity of only G records. For a given amount of available core storage, the replacement technique produces the maximum possible sequence length. This characteristic makes the technique eminently suitable as a premerge sort and permits a significant reduction in the number of merge passes required for a subsequent external (disk) sort. The price paid for this advantage is increased complexity of programming, relatively long processing time per record, and a slight increase in the required working storage. Also, the number and length of the sequences are variable and, hence, not predictable. Most replacement sorts, however, will generate string lengths approximating 2G.

Essentially, the replacement selection method determines the lowest record in the record storage area, moves it to the output area, and then replaces it with a new record from the input file. If the new record is lower than the one just moved to the output, it cannot be part of the current sequence and, therefore, is flagged or held for the next sequence. The process then continues with the selection of the next-lowest record, and so on, until there are no more replacement records in the record storage area that fit into the current sequence. A new sequence is then started, and the procedure continues until the entire input file is processed.

Address Calculation

When the approximate distribution of the key values is known, it becomes possible to sort a file internally by estimating the eventual (sorted) position of each key. This method is called "address calculation" or "pigeonhole sorting".

Briefly, it consists of calculating the correct record number of each item within the file by a predetermined linear formula of the form y= a +bx. If the location at that record number is empty, the item (record or key) is placed there; if it is full, a search is made to find the closest empty space in the vicinity of the calculated record number. The item at the calculated record number and the adjacent items are then moved so that the new item can be inserted in its proper place in the sequence.

Address calculation is similar to the insertion method in that each item is placed directly in its proper relative position within the file, and the entire file is in order just after the last item has been inserted. The method differs from insertion, however, in that some foreknowledge of the range and distribution of the keys is required to estimate the relative location for each item. When this is available, address calculation is a relatively simple and rapid method for sorting a medium-size file (several hundred to a few thousand items) of small to medium-length records. The major disadvantage of the method is the need for a fairly large storage area -- about two or three times the size of the area needed for the original file. If only a relatively small working storage area is available, or if the distribution within the file is not as forecast, a great deal of processing time will be spent in redistributing the records.

To illustrate this method, let us consider a hypothetical case: Many years ago, the ABC Company set up a man-number system based on a three-digit number. Since they had about 150 employees, each man was assigned, in alphabetic order, a number evenly divisible by 5 (005, 010, 015, 020, 025, ...,995). However, there are now about 240 employees, and the system is not quite as neat as it once was.

Some of the men (50 of them) have been assigned numbers out of the normal pattern (for example, 862 in between 860 and 865). They are still in alphabetic order, though.

The address calculation sort could be used to place this employee file onto the disk in alphabetic (man-number) sequence in the following way:

1. Set up a file containing 500 records.
2. As each man-number is encountered, divide it by 2.5, and convert the result to an integer (call it N).
3. Check record number N to see whether there is already an employee there.
4. If there isn't, put the man just processed into that record.
5. If there is someone there already, move the adjacent records up (or down) until there is room to insert the new man.

This will be quite fast, provided the "moving around" (step 5) is not required too frequently. If it is, the file could be increased to 600 records, and the man-number divided by 2. This, however, would waste a considerable amount of space on the disk.

External Sorting Methods

When a file cannot be contained within core storage, additional external passes and intermediate storage devices, such as disks, are required to sort the file. The internal sort, then, is only one phase of a generalized multiphase (or multipass) sort that may have three or four phases. In such a multiphase sort, the internal sort phase is concerned with the creation of suitable sequences from the main file, while the external sort, or merge phases, are devoted to the reduction of those sequences to one continuous sequence.

Practically all the internal sorting techniques described earlier can also be used -- with varying success -- for external sorting by changing the terms of reference appropriately. Thus, the internal storage area is replaced by several input and output areas on disk.

It has been suggested earlier that sorting techniques could be categorized according to the degree of and relative need for data accessibility. Thus far, sorting techniques suitable for one extreme of data accessibility have been described. The internal sorts were seen to be best suited to high-speed, direct (random) access storage media, such as magnetic core storage. In these media, any record or string of records can be accessed immediately, without the need for passing over other, unwanted records.

Despite their name, direct (random) access file storage media (such as disks) provide a degree of data accessibility less than core storage. The time to access a record in these devices is not completely independent of the location of the previously accessed record (as in core storage), but neither does it depend on the entire sequence of records stored before it (as in magnetic tape). The time to access the next record depends on the number of cylinders the access mechanism must be moved from the previous record. (Each one or two cylinder move on the 2310 disk drive requires 15 milliseconds.) However, since internal core storage is generally insufficient to hold an entire file, auxiliary storage devices such as disks are usually necessary.

With disks some attention must be given to the relative advantages of key or tag sorting and sorting of complete records. It has been found in internal sorting that key or tag sorting (involving either record numbers only or short control records) is considerably faster than sorting of complete records. However, because of the substantial seek time, this is no longer true for disks, when the orginal records must be retrieved at the end of the sort.

The following paragraphs explore some of the considerations pertinent to disk sorting.

Key (Tag) Sorting

In general, key sorting consists of extracting the control key from each record and adding the record number to form a key-tag pair. These pairs, rather than the original records, are then sorted. (Sorting is done with the key; the record number is merely moved about so as to remain with its associated key.) After sorting is completed, the pairs provide an index for later retrieval of the data records in proper sequence. The obvious advantage of key sorting is the more rapid processing of the key-tag pairs, rather than the much longer original records. During internal sorting, more pairs can be sorted into strings; thus, fewer strings and, probably, fewer merge passes will result. The eventual retrieval of the data records (if needed) from external storage is done using the final sorted key-tag file.

A typical key sort with disk storage proceeds in either two or three phases, depending upon whether final retrieval of the data records is necessary. Phase 1 is an internal key sort; phase 2 merges the internally formed strings of key records; and phase 3, if required, retrieves the input records in proper sequence. The approximate procedure during each phase is described below.

Phase 1 (Internal Sort) consists of the following steps:

1. Place input records on the disk file in order of occurrence.
2. Form key-tag pairs by lifting the control field(s) from each input record and adding to it (them) the disk record number.
3. Read G key-tag pairs at a time into core storage and sort them internally (by any standard method) into strings of length G. (G refers to the number of items that can be contained at one time in internal core storage.)
4. Write the stings of G pairs successively onto the disk file, using as many sectors or files as necessary (usually no more than five files of strings).

Phase 2 (Merge). The merge phase of the sort consists of merging the strings of pairs from the separate files on disk. The merge is completed when a single sequence of key-tag pairs has been written onto disk. During the final merge pass, the control keys are stripped from the key-tag pairs, leaving only the disk record numbers or tags. These record numbers then serve as an index for placing the input records in sequence. At your option, sorting can end at this point.

Phase 3 (Record Retrieval). This phase is necessary if the data records are to be retrieved from the disk file in their sorted order. (Remember, only the tags have been sorted, not the records themselves.) The manner in which this is done has a greater effect on overall timing than phases 1 and 2 combined. The simplest way (also the slowest) consists of retrieving the records one by one in the order indicated by the successive disk record numbers. If the original input records constitute a large file extending over several cylinders of the disk, the probability is high that a seek must be executed for the retrieval of each record. This will add considerably to the time required, since the seek time necessary to retrieve the records will probably dominate the overall sort time.

A number of ways have been devised to minimize this seek time during the retrieval of records in phase 3. One method consists of bringing the disk record numbers (from phase 2 of the sort) into internal storage in some multiple of the output blocking factor. The disk record numbers are then sorted internally in ascending sequence, thereby reducing the seek time between records. The input records are read initially from the disk in ascending record number sequence; blocks of records are then placed in proper sequence (in accordance with the original sequences of disk record numbers); and the sorted records are finally written back onto the disk file. The method reduces seek time substantially, at the expense of more complex programming.

Another method of modifying the key sort consists of blocking the sorted keys so that the number of items in each block plus an equal number of original records just fills the core working area. The items in each block are then sorted again to place the disk record numbers in ascending sequence. As before, the records indicated in each block can then be retrieved sequentially from the file and sorted internally into the proper sequence.

It will be found, however, that in most cases, and for large files in particular, these methods of reducing the seek time still result in a greater overall sort time than might have been required to perform a complete record sort.

Key Sort vs Record Sort

Usually, key sorting is of no advantage, even with large disk files, when most or all of the original records are to be retrieved. Modifying the sorting and reading schemes to minimize the total seek time can have a considerable effect, but the advantage, generally, still lies with record sorting. Whether a record sort or a key sort should be used to sort a disk file depends largely on the ultimate disposition of the sorted records.

If only an index of sorted records is necessary, and few of the sorted records are actually used, key sorting would appear to have the edge. Exception reports extracted from the sorted file are an example of this type of situation. On the the other hand, if most or all of the original records are to be retrieved, record sorting is preferable to key sorting. Moreover, the advantage increases with the size of the file.

A DETAILED LOOK AT AN 1130 RECORD SORT

An improvement on the simple exchange technique consists of making alternate passes in opposite directions, attempting to move the high records to the bottom and the low records to the top of the file. This is called an alternating pair exchange sort.

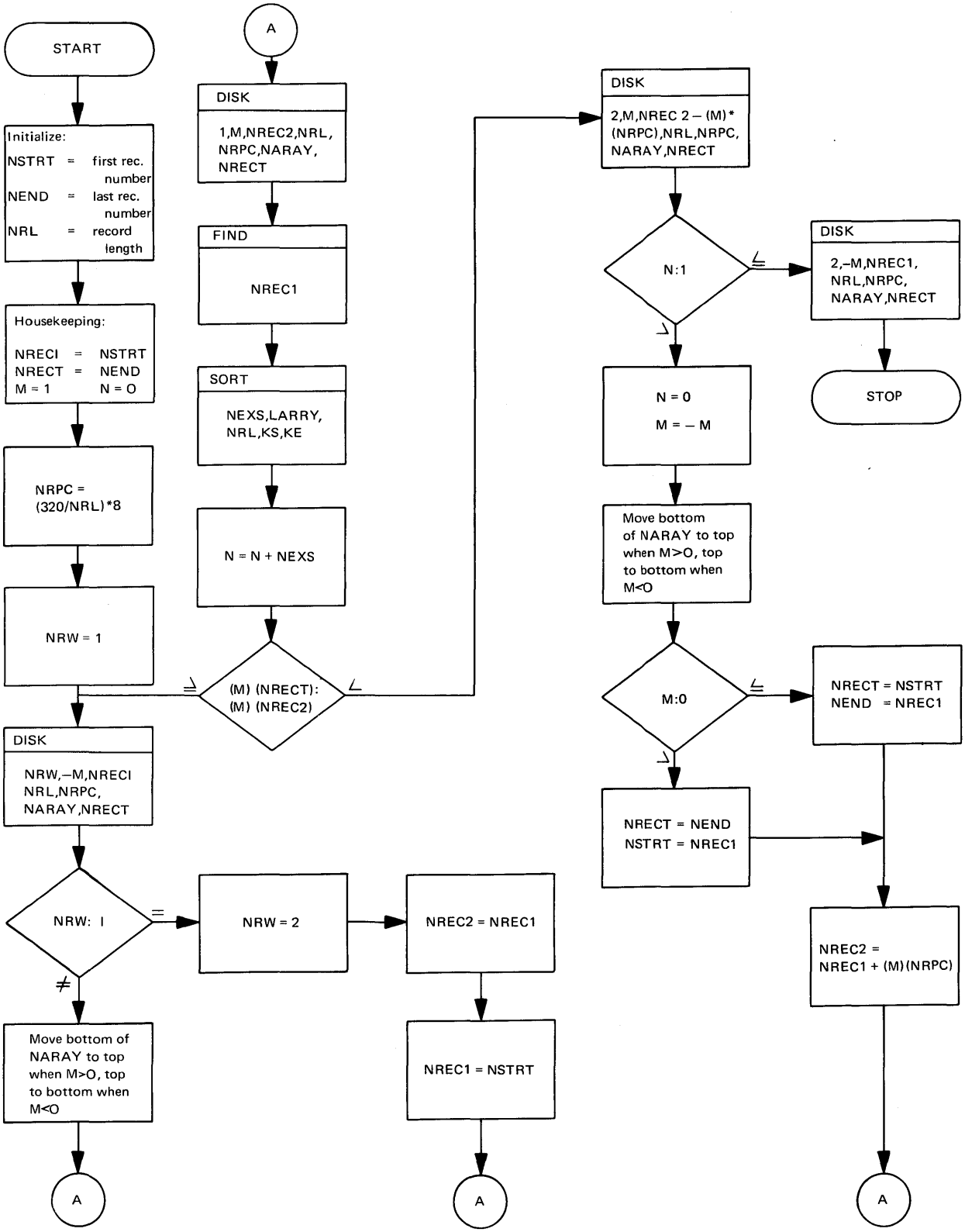
The procedure starts in exactly the same manner as in pair exchange, by comparing the keys of successive records. After an exchange is made, the high key is compared with the key of the next record in sequence, and these comparisons continue until either a higher key is found or the end of the file is reached. All intermediate records (and their keys) are shifted up one position. During this first downward pass, therefore, a high record can move down many positions, but lower records can move up only one position.

The second pass is in the upward direction (from the bottom to the top of the file) and tends to move the smaller records closer to the beginning. During this, and during every other even-numbered pass, a high record can move down only one position, but a low record can move up many positions. Successive passes continue to alternate, with odd-numbered passes in ascending sequence and even-numbered passes in descending sequence. The file is in sequence when no interchanges occur during a pass. A final output pass is required to verify the correct sequence.

The example below illustrates the alternating exchange technique. The first pass, proceeding downward, recognizes that 89 and 56 are out of sequence and exchanges them. The high of the compare, 89, is then compared, in turn, with 02, 08, and 21; since 89 is higher in each case, it moves to the bottom of the file. The low of the compare, 56, moves up one, and all intermediate keys also move up one position. In the second pass, the comparisons start with 89 and move upward. The first out-of-sequence keys are 02 and 56. The 56 drops down one position, while the 02 moves up two positions, since it is lower than the 13. During the next downward pass, the 56 and 08 are out of sequence; the 08 moves up one position, and the 56 moves down two positions, since it is higher than the intermediate 21. During the fourth (upward) pass the out-of-sequence 08 and 13 are interchanged. The final output pass is needed to check the completion of the sort.

Input	End Pass 1	End Pass 2	End Pass 3	End Pass 4	Output
13	13	02	02	02	02
89	56	13	13	08	08
56	02	56	08	13	13
02	08	08	21	21	21
08	21	21	56	56	56
21	89	89	89	89	89

The arrows indicate the direction of the pass. The example shows that the maximum number of passes is equal to the distance, measured in number of keys or records, which is the largest separation of a key from its final place in the sequence. In this case, 89 is four positions away from its final (bottom) position in the file and, therefore, at most four passes (plus the output pass) are required to complete the sort. In general, the alternating exchange method requires slightly more complex programming than the earlier exchange method, but it results in a smaller number of compares and, frequently, fewer passes. The following pages show this method in more detail.


START
Initialize:
NSTRT = first rec. number
NEND = last rec. number
NRL = record length
Housekeeping:
NRECI = NSTRT
NRECT = NEND
M = 1
N = O
NRPC = (320/NRL)*8
NRW = 1
DISK
NRW,–M,NRECI NRL,NRPC, NARAY,NRECT
NRW: I
=
NRW = 2
NREC2 = NREC1
NREC1 = NSTRT
≠
Move bottom of NARAY to top when M>O, top to bottom when M<O
A
A
A
DISK
1,M,NREC2,NRL, NRPC,NARAY, NRECT
FIND
NREC1
SORT
NEXS,LARRY, NRL,KS,KE
N = N + NEXS
(M) (NRECT): (M) (NREC2)
DISK
2,M,NREC 2 – (M)* (NRPC),NRL,NRPC, NARAY,NRECT
N:1
DISK
2,–M,NREC1, NRL,NRPC, NARAY,NRECT
STOP
N = 0
M = – M
Move bottom of NARAY to top when M>O, top to bottom when M<O
M:0
NRECT = NSTRT
NEND = NREC1
NRECT = NEND
NSTRT = NREC1
NREC2 = NREC1 + (M)(NRPC)

Section	Subsections		Page
75	40	00	03

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

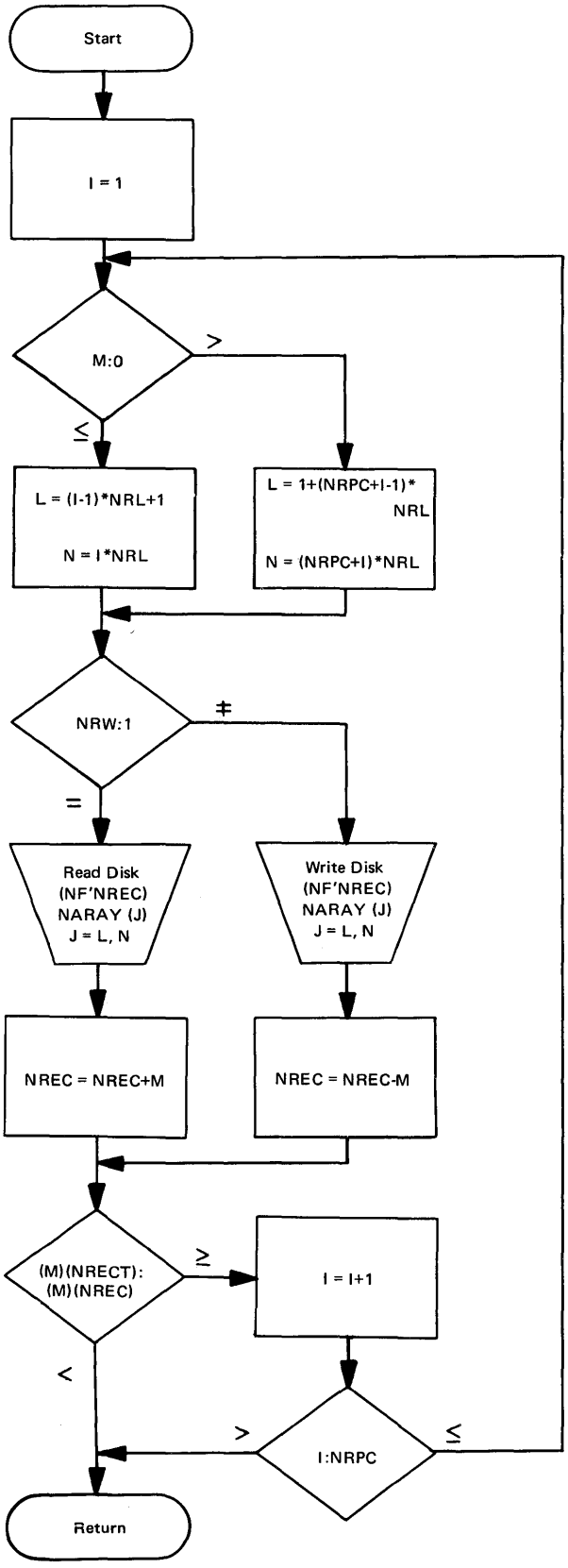
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application: ALTERNATING PAIR EXCHANGE SORT Date: 10/23/67

Program Name: Main line No. Programmer

VARIABLES NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
DISK	—	—	—	—	—	A subroutine to (1) fill the RSA with unsorted records and (2) empty the RSA of sorted records
FIND	—	—	—	—	—	The FORTRAN statement to move the disk access mechanism in an overlapped fashion
*KE	I	1	User I	user option	1	End of the control key, its ending position
*K5	I	1	User I	user option	1	Beginning of the control key, its starting position
*LARRY	I	1	User I	user option	5120	Length of NARAY, the Record Storage Area. Should be at least two cylinders (5120). Make maximum in allowable core.
M	I	1	T	1	-1	Direction of sort; up the file or down the file, -1 or +1.
N	I	1	T	up to the number of records	0	A count of the number of exchanges in a pass
NARAY	A1	2560	T	—	—	Name of array for Record Storage (RSA).
*NEND	I	1	User I	user option	2	The record number of the last record in the file
NEXS	I	1	T	Up to NRPC	0	The number of exchanges during the sort of a pair of cylinders.
NRECT	I	1	T	NEND	NSTRT	The record number ending a pass
NREC1	I	1	T	NEND	1	The record number for WRITing back to the file
NREC2	I	1	T	NEND	1	The record number for READing from the file
*NRL	I	1	User I	320	2	The record length.
NRPC	I	1	T	1280	8	Number of records per cylinder.
NRW	I	1	T	2	1	READ/WRITE switch. Read=1, Write=2.
*NSTRT	I	1	User I	user option	1	The record number of the first record in the file.
SORT	—	—	—	—	—	A subroutine to sort the contents of NARAY, the record storage area.
*						Must be set by the user.

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic,


Start
I = 1
M:0
>
≤
L = (I-1)*NRL+1
N = I*NRL
L = 1+(NRPC+I-1)* NRL
N = (NRPC+I)*NRL
NRW:1
≠
=
Read Disk (NF'NREC) NARAY (J) J = L, N
Write Disk (NF'NREC) NARAY (J) J = L, N
NREC = NREC+M
NREC = NREC-M
(M)(NRECT): (M)(NREC)
≥
I = I+1
<
>
I:NRPC
≤
Return

Section	Subsections		Page
75	40	00	05

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

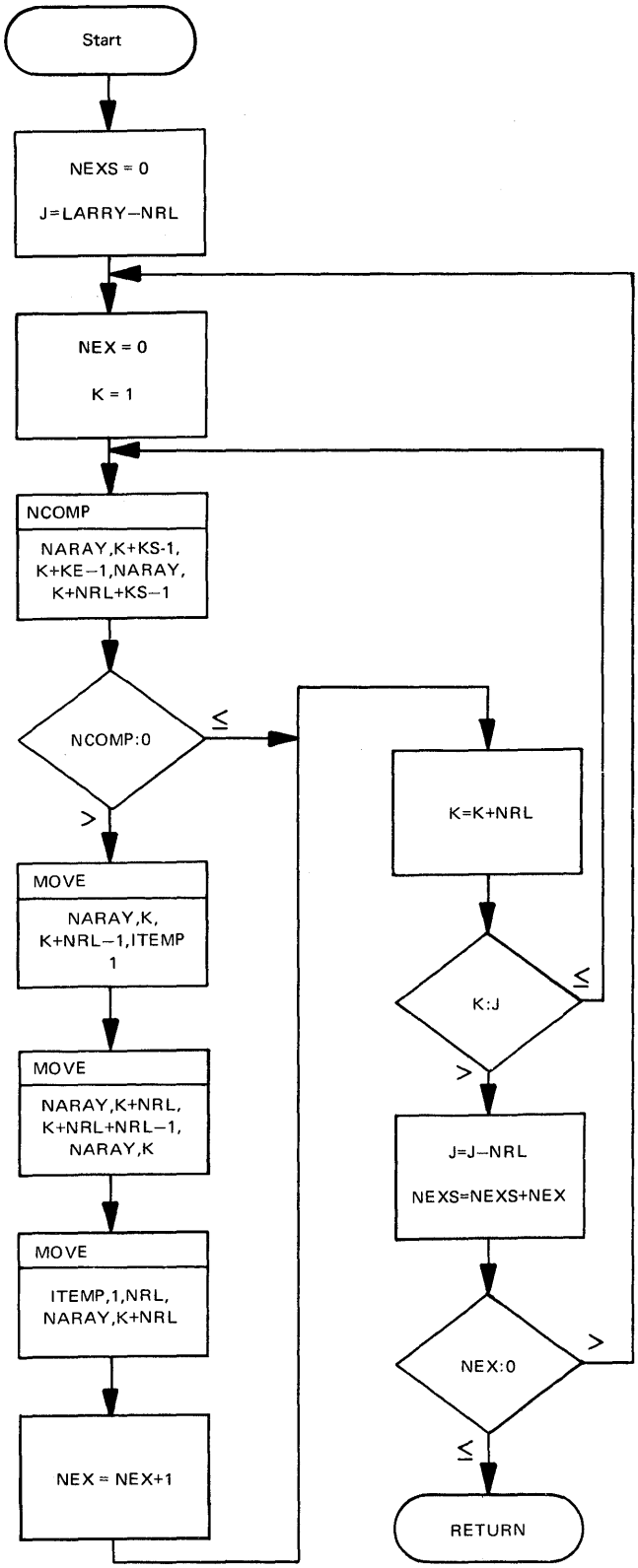
VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application ALTERNATING PAIR EXCHANGE SORT Date 10/23/67

Program Name Disk Subroutine No. Programmer

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
I	I	1	T	NRPC	1	Used as index in Read/Write loop
J	I	1	T	2560	1	Used in indexed Read/Write
L	I	1	T	2560-NRL+1	1	Beginning of current record being read/written
M	I	1	I	+1	-1	M=-1 use top half of NARAY, M=+1 use bottom half
N	I	1	T	2560	NRL	End of current record being Read/Written
*NARAY	A1	520	I/O	—	—	Name of array for Record Storage (RSA)
NF	I	1	I	32767	1	File number to be sorted
*NREC	I	1	I/O	32767	1	Current record number for I/O
*NRECT	I	1	I	32767	1	Last record number in this pass
*NRL	I	1	I	320	1	Record Length
*NRPC	I	1	I	1280	8	Number of records per cylinder
*NRW	I	1	I	2	1	Read/Write Switch. Read=1, Write=2
*						Calling parameters

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic,


Start
NEXS = 0
J=LARRY–NRL
NEX = 0
K = 1
NCOMP
NARAY,K+KS-1,
K+KE–1,NARAY,
K+NRL+KS–1
NCOMP:0
≤
>
MOVE
NARAY,K,
K+NRL–1,ITEMP
1
MOVE
NARAY,K+NRL,
K+NRL+NRL–1,
NARAY,K
MOVE
ITEMP,1,NRL,
NARAY,K+NRL
NEX = NEX+1
K=K+NRL
K:J
≤
>
J=J–NRL
NEXS=NEXS+NEX
NEX:0
>
≤
RETURN

Section	Subsections		Page
75	40	00	07

VARIABLES

IBM 1130 COMPUTING SYSTEM

VARIABLE SUMMARY SHEET

Application ALTERNATING PAIR EXCHANGE SORT Date 10/23/67

Program Name Sort subroutine No. Programmer

FUNCTION OF VARIABLES

NAME	MODE*	No. of Words	INPUT/TEMP OUTPUT	MAX. VALUE	MIN. VALUE	FUNCTION OF VARIABLES
*ITEMP	A1	NRL	I	-	-	A temporary area for storing one record during an exchange
J	I	1	T	5118	4800	The last record out of order
K	I	1	T	5118	1	Used as index in loop
*KE	I	1	I	user option	2	End of the control key, its ending position
*KS	I	1	I	user option	1	Beginning of the control key, its starting position
LARRY	I	1	I	User option	5120	Length of the Record Storage Area (RSA)
MOVE	-	-	-	-	-	A subroute to move a record
*NARAY	A1	5120	I/O	-	-	Name of array for Record Storage (RSA)
NCOMP	-	-	-	-	-	A subroutine to compare two control keys
NEX	I	1	T	number of records in 2 cyls.	0	A count of the number of exchanges during a single two-cylinder sort pass
*NEXS	I	1	I/O	very large	0	A count of the total number of exchanges during
*NRL	I	1	I	320	2	The record length
*						Calling Parameters

*Mode: I = integer, R = real, D = decimal, A = alphabetic

SUMMARY

Generally there are two approaches to sorting with your 1130:

1. Avoid sorting
2. Write a sort program

The ways in which you can avoid sorting are:

1. Maintain multiple copies of your files.
2. Maintain multiple copies of your index, if an index exists.
3. Sort offline.

If you decide that sorting is necessary, many techniques are available. The methods available and a brief evaluation of each were given earlier.

Section 80: USE OF THE DISK FOR DATA STORAGE

CONTENTS

General 80.01.00
The Physical, or Hardware, Structure of the Disk 80.10.00
The Disk as Seen by the FORTRAN Programmer 80.20.00
The Interrelationship of the Physical and Logical Structures 80.30.00
The DEFINE FILE Statement 80.30.10
The *STOREDATA and *FILES Cards .. 80.30.20
Record Lengths and Sector Utilization .. 80.40.00
A Trick to Get Long Records and/or Better Packing 80.40.10
Computing Record Length 80.50.00
Shortening Record Length 80.60.00
Some Examples of Disk File Setup 80.70.00
Example 1 ..... 80.70.10
Example 2 ..... 80.70.20
Example 3 ..... 80.70.30

GENERAL

To make effective use of your disk storage capability, you need to know the way the disk is organized and the way your data will be set up on it. This section deals exclusively with the use of the disk as a data storage device. Although it is desirable (and often necessary) to store programs and subprograms on the disk, these normally present little difficulty, since the 1130 Monitor system handles most of the details involved.

The way in which the disk is used can significantly affect:

1. The amount of data that can fit into the available disk space
2. The running speed of programs using disk data files
3. The basic practicality of many jobs. (An improperly organized disk file can make the space and time requirements of some jobs appear excessive, when in reality they need not be.)

THE PHYSICAL, OR HARDWARE, STRUCTURE OF THE DISK

Each IBM 2315 disk cartridge contains 512,000 words organized into 200 cylinders of eight sectors each; a sector, in turn, contains 320 words (see Figure 80.1). This is a very rigid organization dictated by the basic design of the 1130.

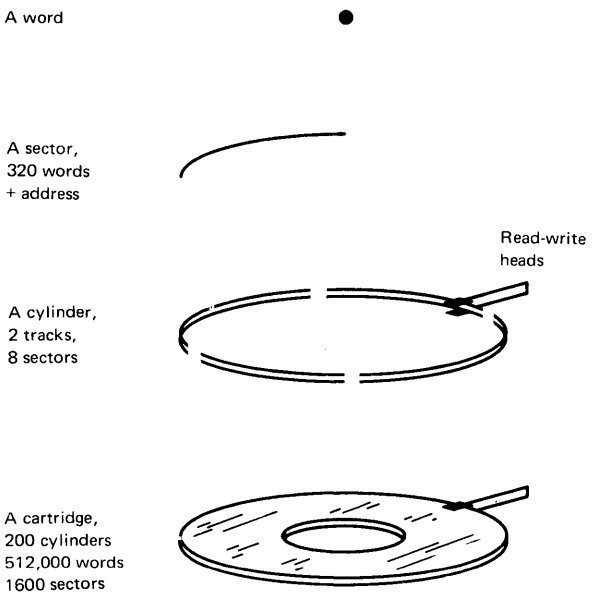


Figure 80.1. Disk storage definitions

An entire cylinder (eight sectors) is accessed by one setting of the disk read/write heads. If you wish to read or write from a cylinder other than the one at which the heads are now set, the disk arm must be moved to the new cylinder. The disk mechanism moves the arm directly from the old position to the new position in steps of one or two cylinders. (It does not return to a "home" position first, as some other disk units do.) Both single steps and double steps take the same length of time: 15 milliseconds (.015 seconds). To move nine cylinders, you need four 2-cylinder moves (4x15 or 60 milliseconds) plus one 1-cylinder move (15 milliseconds) -- a total of 75 milliseconds. A move of ten cylinders takes the same amount of time -- five 2-cylinder moves (5x15 or 75 milliseconds). Figure 80.2 shows some representative arm movement times.

Move This Many Cylinders	Seek Time	Stabilization Time	Average Rotational Delay Time	Read or Write	Total
None	0	0	20	10	30
1 or 2	15	25	20	10	70
3 or 4	30	25	20	10	85
5 or 6	45	25	20	10	100
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
199 or 200 (maximum)	1500	25	20	10	1555

Figure 80.2.

THE DISK AS SEEN BY THE FORTRAN PROGRAMMER

When programming in 1130 FORTRAN, the disk appears to be an entirely different device than the one just described. It consists of a data area which can be subdivided into any number of files, whose physical size, symbolic names, and symbolic numbers have been determined by you.

You may further subdivide each file into some number of equal-size blocks known as records. You choose the size of the record, and each record has a symbolic record number, starting with 1.

Within the record you can place fields, which may be real, decimal, or integer numbers, or alphameric data.

This is an extremely flexible system, as opposed to the rigid subdivisions and addresses of the actual hardware. It is still one and the same disk, however, and you must have a good knowledge of both systems to use the disk effectively. This section presents the basic guidelines by which you can relate these seemingly diverse systems:

The physical, or hardware, system

The logical, symbolic, or software system

THE INTERRELATIONSHIP OF THE PHYSICAL AND LOGICAL STRUCTURES

The DEFINE FILE Statement

For every data file you wish to access on the disk, there must be a DEFINE FILE statement in your FORTRAN program specifying certain details. A typical DEFINE FILE statement is

```
DEFINE FILE 47(400,85,U,NEXT)
```

which indicates a file numbered 47, having 400 records of 85 words each. The U is always required and specifies an unformatted record. NEXT is the name of an integer variable that will always be set to the record number of the next record in the file, a number between 1 and 400. For example, if you have just given the command

```
READ (47'K) A,B,I,J
```

where K was 96, NEXT will equal 97, the record number of the next record. The incrementing of NEXT occurs automatically and you may choose to ignore it completely. In this case, you are addressing your file by the symbol K, doing your own manipulation of K, and not using NEXT at all. If you wish to read the next record, you can say either

```
READ (47'NEXT) A, B, I, J
```

or

```
K = K + 1
READ (47'K) A, B, I, J
```

An 85-word disk record allows three records per sector (Figure 80.2), so that your file of 400 records will require 134 sectors (the exact answer, 133 1/3, must be adjusted upward to the next higher whole number).

(If your record length could somehow be shortened to 80 words, you could place four records per sector, reducing the sector requirement from 134 to 100, a substantial savings -- see 80.40.00.)

If you do not want to save this data file for use by a subsequent program, the DEFINE FILE statement is the only place you need reference it.

The DEFINE FILE statement specifies a mixture of physical (actual) and logical (symbolic) subdivisions:

File number (symbolic)
Number of records (symbolic)
Number of words per record (actual)

Cylinders, sectors, and fields are nowhere mentioned.

The READ (or WRITE) statements specify only symbolic designations:

File number (symbolic)
Record number (symbolic)
Field names (symbolic)

The *STOREDATA and *FILES Cards

In some programs, the DEFINE FILE statement is all that is required to specify the details of a data file. The file is placed in Working Storage (WS), and records may be read or written by that program and/or its subprograms.

If, on the other hand, you have a data file that is to be used by more than one program, you must do more than just specify it in a DEFINE FILE statement. You must get it out of Working Storage (WS) and into the User Area (UA) or Fixed Area (FX), where it will be protected from accidental destruction. Working Storage is true to its name: it is strictly a work area. Data placed in WS may still be there when it is needed; then again, it may not, since the IBM compilers, DUP, and other programs all use WS.

Working with data files in the User Area or Fixed Area requires the use of two additional cards: the *STOREDATA card and the *FILES card.

The *STOREDATA card is used first to create an entry in the LET or FLET, specifying the name, location, and size of your data file. In this case the *STOREDATA card, despite its name, does not really store your data; actually, your data has not even been written yet.

In the preceding example (file 47 -- 400 records of 85 words each, requiring 134 sectors) you must run a disk utility job

```
// JOB
// DUP
*STOREDATA  WS  UA  PAYRL 0134/1967  1967
```

which sets aside 134 sectors in the User Area (UA) of disk cartridge 1967 and labels it PAYRL. Notice that:

1. The information contained on the

DEFINE FILE 47(400, 85, U, NEXT)

card does not appear anywhere on the *STOREDATA card (and vice versa).

2. The *STOREDATA job is run before there is any data to place in the PAYRL file.

3. The *STOREDATA card contains mixed type information -- both actual (number of sectors) and symbolic (file name and cartridge identification number).

At this point you have run the *STOREDATA job, specifying certain data about the file named PAYRL, and compiled your FORTRAN program referencing the file numbered 47. How, when, and where can you tell the 1130 that these two files are one and the same?

How? With the *FILES card, which in this case would read

```
*FILES(47,PAYRL,1967)
```

When and where? This depends on the format (DSF or DCI) of your program. If the program is in DSF format, you must place the *FILES card after the execute card every time you execute the program.

```
// JOB
// XEQ          I
*FILES(47,PAYRL,1967)
```

If the program is to be built into core image format (DCI), the *FILES card must be placed after the *STORECI card

```
        END
// DUP
*STORECI    WS  UA  NAME      1/1967  1967
*FILES(47,PAYRL,1967)
```

and not after the // XEQ card.

As mentioned earlier, data may be placed in Working Storage (WS) if you do not intend to save it -- that is, if it is to be used for temporary storage within one JOB. In fact, data will be written in WS unless a *FILES card is used; likewise, any READ commands will assume that the data is in WS if no *FILES cards are present.

Using the *STOREDATA and *FILES combination, however, you have a choice as to where your data file will be placed -- either in the User Area (UA) or Fixed Area (FX). In most cases it does not matter which is chosen, since both areas are safe from accidental destruction. The main difference is that files in the Fixed Area are in a fixed position and will not be moved about as other files and programs are deleted.

This option is exercised by the characters punched in columns 17 and 18 of the *STOREDATA card -- UA indicating User Area, FX indicating Fixed Area. Columns 13 and 14 always contain WS, since the *STOREDATA always takes some number of sectors from WS and adds them to UA or FX.

Note that there is no Fixed Area on a disk cartridge unless you have defined one with a *DEFINE FIXED AREA card.

RECORD LENGTHS AND SECTOR UTILIZATION

Remember, the disk is physically composed of sectors, each containing 320 words. A symbolic record may not cross the boundary between two physical sectors; in other words, a record must lie entirely within one sector of 320 words. This means that a record cannot exceed 320 words in length. (Actually, it is possible to have records longer than 320 words, using a trick covered in a later subsection.) It does not mean that only one record may occupy a sector; it is possible that many records will be placed on one sector. For example, if your record size is twelve words, you may place 26 records onto each sector (26x12 = 312 words), with eight words (320-312) words remaining. These eight words will not be used for two-thirds of the 27th record, since that would violate the rule spelled out above. The remaining eight words will not be used, and are inaccessible to the FORTRAN programmer.

It goes without saying that you will gain the most efficient use of your disk if you utilize all 320 words of every sector. As the previous example shows, however, this may not always occur. Figure 80.3 shows the relationship between record size and sector utilization.

Clearly, certain record lengths result in very poor disk utilization. Take a 65-word record, for example. It will allow four records per sector, using 4x65 or 260 words, but leaving the remaining 60 words (about 20% of the sector) unused. On the other hand, if you could reduce the length of that record by one word, to 64, you could fit five records in a sector, using 5x64 or 320 words, and wasting none.

Inefficient use of the disk can have two major effects on your overall system:

1. A given number of records may require more space than is available on the disk. If you have 800 employee records at two per sector, you need 400 sectors or 50 cylinders, fully 25% of the disk. If you could fit three records per sector, your total sector requirements would drop to 234, or 30 cylinders. It is entirely possible that there are 30 cylinders available on a particular disk, but not 50. In this case you either have to abandon the job, delete something else from the disk, or shorten the record size.

2. Even if 50 cylinders are available, you cannot escape the fact that you are using them inefficiently. If your 800 employee records are spread out over 50 cylinders, rather than 30, you will spend proportionately more time in disk arm movement. Your records will be 67% further apart, and your disk arm seek time will be about the same percentage greater.

Thus you have two incentives to make your disk records as short as possible. Several techniques for doing so are given in the subsection 80.60.00.

For long records (46 words or more), you should inspect your record size to determine whether it is at or slightly above a boundary, or break point -- 46, 54, 65, 81, 107, or 161 words. (See Figure 80.3.) If this is the case, it is worth considerable effort to shorten this record enough to increase the "packing factor" by one.

For medium records (19 to 45 words in length) the record size is always near a boundary or break point, so the packing factor can be increased by one or two with a small reduction in record length. With records of this length, however, it becomes more difficult to find ways to shorten the records.

For short records (9 to 18 words in length), even greater improvements are theoretically possible, but are proportionately more difficult to obtain.

NOTE: When shortening disk record lengths, always keep future needs in mind.

Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector
1	320	10	32	19 - 20	16	41 - 45	7
2	160	11	29	21	15	46 - 53	6
3	106	12	26	22	14	54 - 64	5
4	80	13	24	23 - 24	13	65 - 80	4
5	64	14	22	25 - 26	12	81 - 106	3
6	53	15	21	27 - 29	11	107 - 160	2
7	45	16	20	30 - 32	10	161 - 320	1
8	40	17	18	33 - 35	9	cannot exceed 320	
9	35	18	17	36 - 40	8		

Figure 80.3.

A Trick to Get Long Records and/or Better Packing

If you have records exceeding 320 words in length, or records of a length that yields very poor packing, you may wish to employ a trick, or, more properly, an unorthodox usage of FORTRAN. This usage takes advantage of the fact that an 1130 FORTRAN READ/WRITE I/O list will be satisfied, regardless of the FORMAT or DEFINE FILE statement.

For example, if we say

```
DIMENSION ITEMS(500)
. . .
. . .
. . .
READ (6'N) ITEMS
```

500 ITEMS will be read from the disk, starting at record number N. It would not matter if the statement:

```
DEFINE FILE 6(100,100,U,NEXT)
```

were used, indicating 100-word records. In fact, no matter what the DEFINE FILE statement contains, the entire ITEM array will be read, whether it exceeds 320 or not.

The DEFINE FILE statement has one effect, however, in that it still defines the length of the "defined" record at 100 words. Reading the 500-word array merely means that we have read five "defined" records. If N were 100, you would have to increment it by five to read the next 500 words or block of five 100-word records.

The DEFINE FILE statement, then, must define:

1. A file that contains enough space to hold all the data to be placed in it
2. A record length less than 320
3. Preferably, a record length evenly divisible into 320 -- that is, 320, 160, 80, 64, 40, 32, 20, 16, 10, 8, 5, 4, 2, 1.

To illustrate, suppose you have a file containing 100 records, each with 400 words. Since

```
DEFINE FILE 1(100,400,U,N)
```

is not allowable, you could alternately specify

```
DEFINE FILE 2(200,200,U,N)
DEFINE FILE 3(400,100,U,N)
DEFINE FILE 4(800,50,U,N)
DEFINE FILE 5(500,80,U,N),
```

etc.

Note that all four files fulfill the first two rules: same number of words as file number 1 (40,000) and record length less than 320. However, only FILE 5 meets the third rule; 80 is evenly divisible into 320, while 200, 100, and 50 are not.

The reason for the third rule should be self-evident in light of the previous material in this section:

- The FILE 2 combination (200, 200) results in only one record per sector, with 320-200 or 120 words on each wasted. Total file size would be 200 sectors.
- FILE 3 (400, 100) gives three records per sector, with 320 -3 x 100 or 20 words wasted. Total file size is 400/3 or 134 sectors.
- FILE 4 (800, 50) yields six records per sector, with 320 -6 x 50 or 20 words wasted. Total file size is also 134 sectors.
- FILE 5 (500, 80) results in four records per sector, with 320 -4 x 80 or no words wasted. Total file size is 500/4 or 125 sectors.

To implement this trick, you need change only the DEFINE FILE statement and the incrementing/decrementing logic in existing programs. For example, if you have a file that formerly contained 400 records of 196 words each:

```
DEFINE FILE 6 (400, 196, U, NEXT)
```

you now realize that it will use each sector quite inefficiently. Therefore, you choose instead to use

```
DEFINE FILE 6 (1600, 50, U, NEXT)
```

which replaces the old 196-word record with four 50-word records. (In addition to better packing, you gain four words in each record.) In the body of your program, where you coded

```
N = N + 1
READ (6'N) data
```

you use instead

```
N = N + 4
```

and so on throughout the program.

Where you use the automatically incremented parameter NEXT

```
READ (6'NEXT) data
```

you need do nothing; NEXT will automatically reflect the number of defined records that have been processed, and will be incremented by 4 rather than 1.

COMPUTING RECORD LENGTH

Once you have decided what data will be included in your disk record, you may easily calculate the length of the record by listing the fields in the record, totalling the number of real fields (called R), the number of integer fields (called I), and using the table below to determine the number of words:

	*EXTENDED PRECISION Card Used	No Precision Card Used
*ONE WORD INTEGERS Card Used	WORDS = (3xR)+I	WORDS = (2xR)+I
No Integers Card Used	WORDS = (3xR)+(3xI)	WORDS = (2xR)+(2xI)

In the case of fields comprising the items of an array (often alphameric data), the number of items is the size of the array. For example, if you have a field consisting of a 16-character name, placed two characters per word (A2 format) in the array NAME, this will count as eight items rather than one, when you are calculating I.

The task is simplified by the fact that *ONE WORD INTEGERS should always be used, reducing all integers to one word per field. Except in very unusual cases, you should compile all of your programs using the *ONE WORD INTEGERS control card.

SHORTENING RECORD LENGTH

The following suggestions will help you shorten the length of disk records. The first three should be taken regardless of record length, since they represent good programming practice and involve little or no effort. Suggestions 4-7 involve more programming effort and core storage. You must determine how much effort it is worth to gain more space on the disk.

1. First and foremost, each item in the disk record should be inspected to determine whether it really must be in this record. Can it be eliminated entirely, or placed in a separate file?

2. You should decide whether standard or extended precision should be used. The decision is usually based on other considerations; extended precision is normally used, but it does no harm to re-ask this question.

3. You should make certain that the *ONE WORD INTEGERS control record is included when compiling all programs. If not, each integer will occupy two or three words, depending on the use of standard or extended precision.

4. Each real (floating point) field should be studied with an eye toward converting it to integer mode. Remember, in most cases integers require only one word; real fields, three words. Integers are limited to a magnitude of 32767, but many items in your application may never exceed this limit, which may be thought of as

32767	units, pieces
327.67	dollars, hours, percent
3.2767	pay rate, etc

where the decimal points are implied and handled by you. Some typical items that lend themselves to such treatment are:

- Discount and interest rates
- Prices or price differentials
- Inventory -- quantity on hand, quantity on order, etc.
- Payroll -- savings bond deduction, city and state taxes, miscellaneous deductions

5. Alphabetic data should be placed on the disk with two characters per word (A2) rather than one (A1). In many cases, data (numeric and alphabetic) will be read from a card using A1 format (one character per word) for later processing with the Commercial Subroutine Package. Before this data is written on the disk, it may be compressed into two-characters-per-word format (A2), using the PACK subroutine supplied with CSP. Typical items in this category include names and addresses, descriptions, Social Security numbers, etc.

6. If necessary, three alphabetic characters can be placed in one word for disk storage. This can be done by subroutine that involves a table of 40 EBCDIC codes and a packing/unpacking formula. Only 40 characters are allowed -- for example:

0123456789ABC.....XYZb-.,

where b signifies a blank.

If you have just read the three characters B2- (called LTR1, LTR2, and LTR3 respectively) from a card with A1 format, the subroutine can look up their positions in the table and find that:

LTR1, a B, is 12th
LTR2, a 2, is 3rd
LTR3, a -, is 38th

Then, using the formula

INA3 = LTR3 + 40*LTR2+ (LTR1-20)*1600

or INA3 = 38 + 40*3 + (12-20) * 1600

the subroutine obtains -12642.

This is a unique representation of the three characters B2-, and can be placed on the disk as one word.

To decode after reading from the disk, the subroutine manipulates INA3 to obtain LTR1, LTR2, and LTR3:

$$LTRI = \begin{cases} (32,000 + INA3)/1600 & \text{if negative} \\ INA3/1600 + 20 & \text{if positive} \end{cases} = 12$$

LTR2 = (INA3 - 1600 * LTR1-20)/40 = 3

LTR3 = (INA3 - 1600 * (LTR1-20) - 40*LTR2) = 38

Looking up these three codes from the same table, you may return to A1 format.

7. In many cases, several values may be combined into one word. For example, in a payroll file, you might have four different variables:

IE(Exempt or nonexempt)
1 = EXEMPT
2 = NONEXEMPT
MSC(Marital Status Code)
1 = SINGLE
2 = MARRIED
MORF(Male OR Female)
1 = MALE
2 = FEMALE
NDEP(Number of DEPendents)
0 through 99

One way to compress these four items into a five-digit word (called KODE) is:

Digit	1	2	3	4	5
Description	Exempt or nonexempt	Marital status code	Male or female	Number of dependents	
Variable Name	IE	MSC	MORF	NDEP	

For example, if KODE = 22103, this employee is:

- Nonexempt (digit 1 is 2)
- Married (digit 2 is 2)
- Male (digit 3 is 1)
- With three dependents (digits 4 and 5 are 03)

To compress these values before writing on the disk, all you need do is

```
KODE= (IE*10000)+(MSC*1000)+MORF*100)+NDEP
```

To decompress the word KODE after reading it from the disk, you could use a function similar to the one below, called NDIG

```
FUNCTION NDIG (N,IT)
DIMENSION IZ(6)
DATA IZ/32767,10000,1000,100,10,1/
NDIG = IT/IZ(N+1)-IT/IZ(N)*10
RETURN
END
```

Using this function

```
IE    = NDIG (1, KODE)
MSC   = NDIG (2, KODE)
MORF  = NDIG (3, KODE)
NDEP  = NDIG (4, KODE)*10+NDIG(5, KODE)
etc.
```

In this case, such a packing technique will save three words on each disk record (by using one word rather than four). This may or may not be worth the added programming involved, the additional core storage required for the function, and the packing/unpacking coding.

Don't forget that KODE is an integer, and its magnitude is limited to 32767. To be safe, you should plan for a limit of 29999 for such compressed words.

SOME EXAMPLES OF DISK FILE SETUP

Example 1.

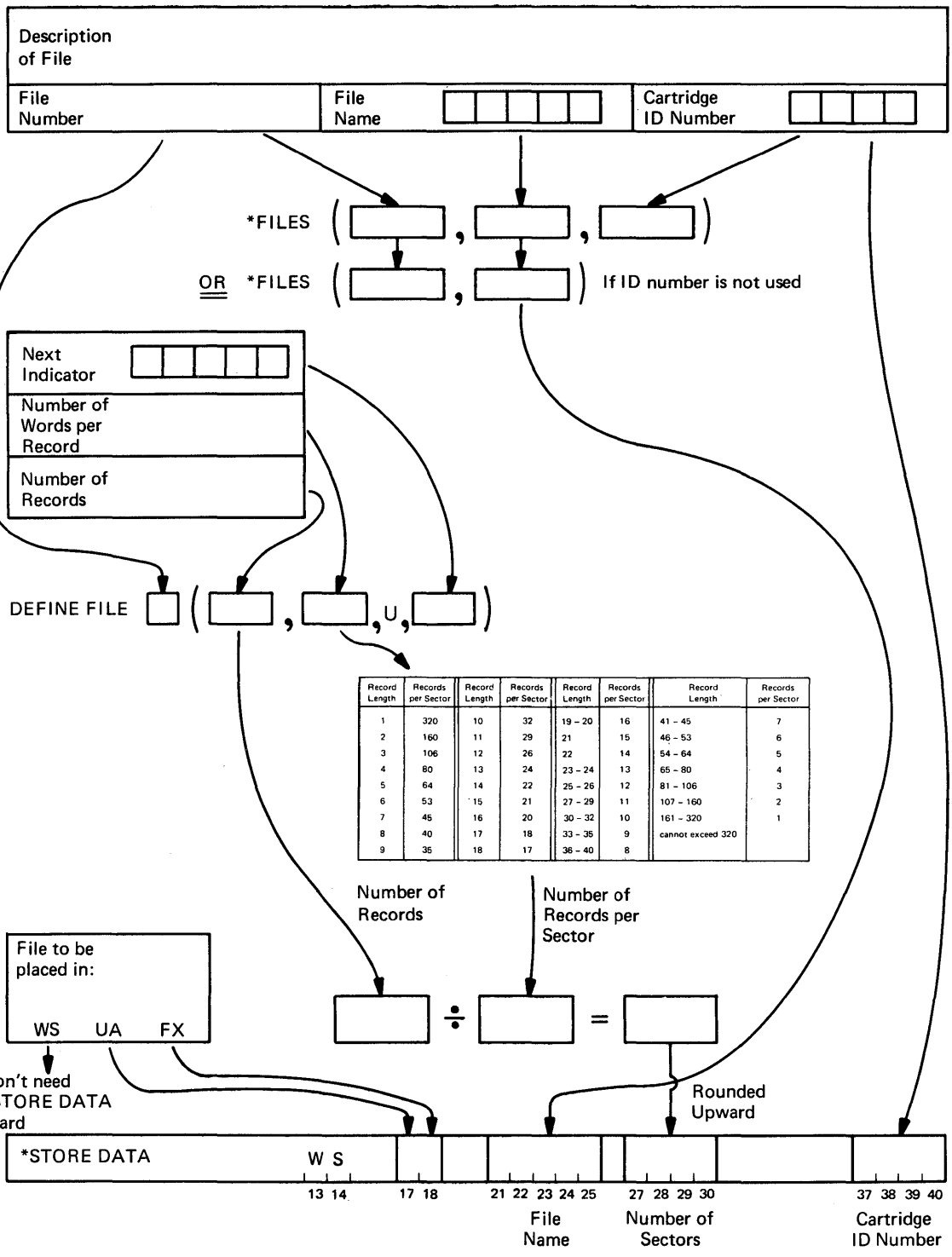
A program reads a deck of cards and builds two large tables of data. The individual data items are of no particular interest; however, after the last input card has beenprocessed, you want to summarize the data tables and print a summary report. The data tables required are so large that they cannot fit in core storage; therefore, you decide to use the disk as an extension of core storage to accumulate the two tables.

After this job has been run, you have no need for the data, so you decide to keep it in Working Storage (WS).

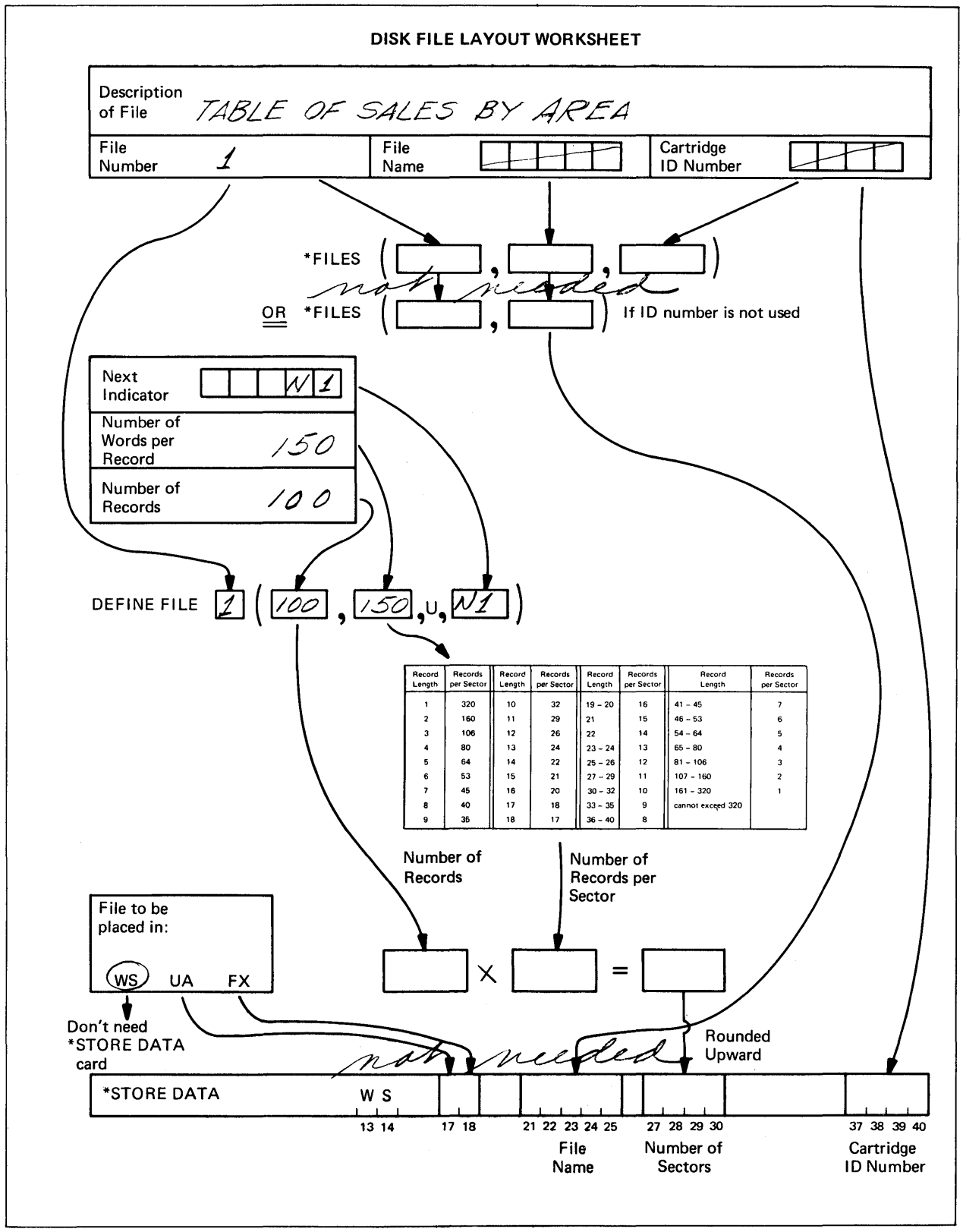
Two files are required, numbered 1 and 2, and any disk cartridge may be used. Each of the two files contains 100 records of 150 words each.

Since the files are of a temporary nature and will remain in Working Storage, neither a *STORE-DATA card nor a *FILES card is required; consequently the files have no names, only numbers. The next two exhibits show how the Disk File Layout Worksheet would be filled in for these two files.

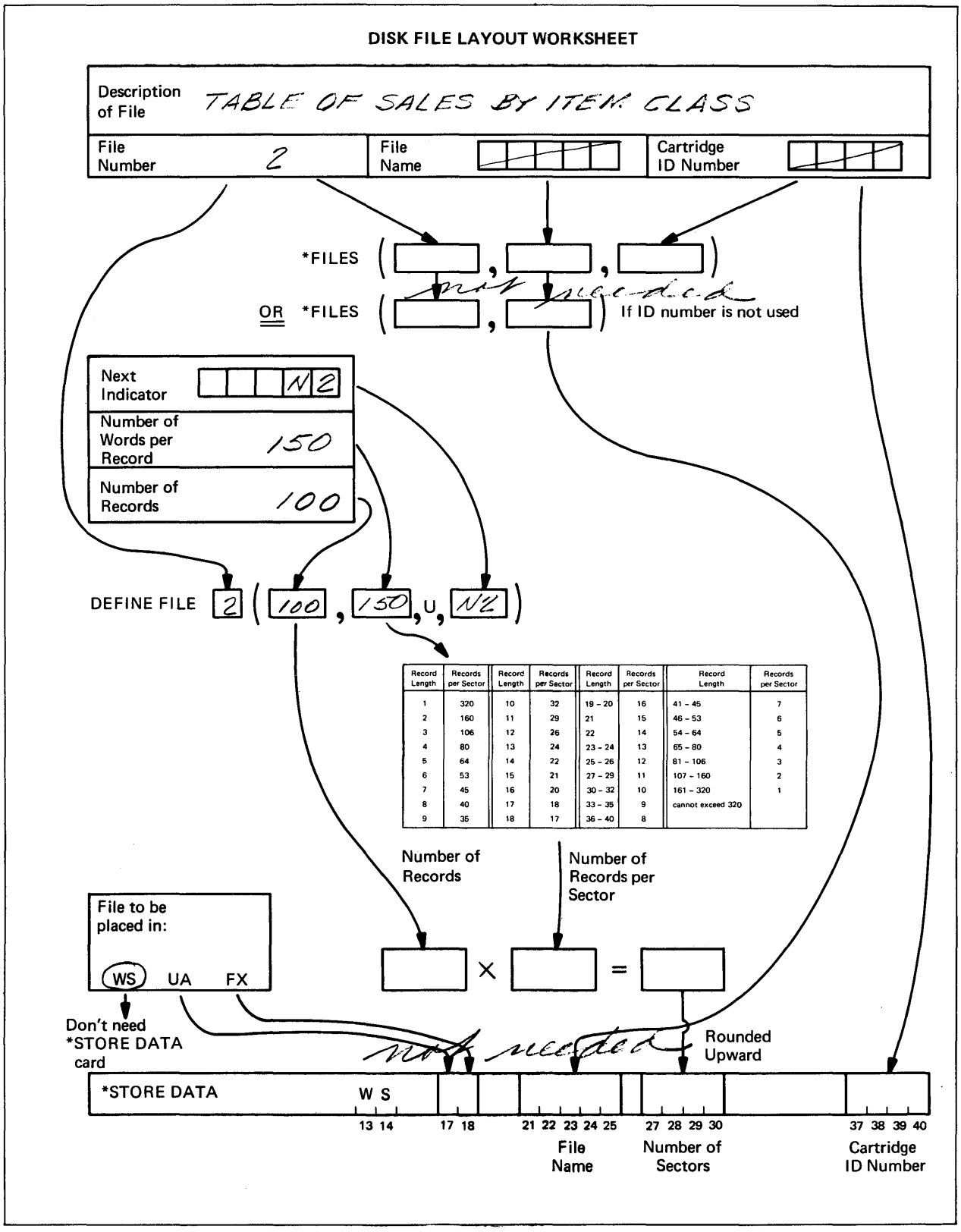
DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET



Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector
1	320	10	32	19 – 20	16	41 – 45	7
2	160	11	29	21	15	46 – 53	6
3	106	12	26	22	14	54 – 64	5
4	80	13	24	23 – 24	13	65 – 80	4
5	64	14	22	25 – 26	12	81 – 106	3
6	53	15	21	27 – 29	11	107 – 160	2
7	45	16	20	30 – 32	10	161 – 320	1
8	40	17	18	33 – 35	9	cannot exceed 320	
9	35	18	17	36 – 40	8		


DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
TABLE OF SALES BY AREA
File Number
1
File Name
Cartridge ID Number
*FILES
not needed
OR *FILES
If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
W 1
Number of Words per Record
150
Number of Records
100
DEFINE FILE
1
100
150
,U,
N1
Record Length
Records per Sector
1 320
2 160
3 106
4 80
5 64
6 53
7 45
8 40
9 35
10 32
11 29
12 26
13 24
14 22
15 21
16 20
17 18
18 17
19 - 20 16
21 15
22 14
23 - 24 13
25 - 26 12
27 - 29 11
30 - 32 10
33 - 35 9
36 - 40 8
41 - 45 7
46 - 53 6
54 - 64 5
65 - 80 4
81 - 106 3
107 - 160 2
161 - 320 1
cannot exceed 320
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS UA FX
Don't need *STORE DATA card
not needed
Rounded Upward
*STORE DATA
W S
13 14
17 18
21 22 23 24 25
File Name
27 28 29 30
Number of Sectors
37 38 39 40
Cartridge ID Number

DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET



Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector
1	320	10	32	19 - 20	16	41 - 45	7
2	160	11	29	21	15	46 - 53	6
3	106	12	26	22	14	54 - 64	5
4	80	13	24	23 - 24	13	65 - 80	4
5	64	14	22	25 - 26	12	81 - 106	3
6	53	15	21	27 - 29	11	107 - 160	2
7	45	16	20	30 - 32	10	161 - 320	1
8	40	17	18	33 - 35	9	cannot exceed 320	
9	35	18	17	36 - 40	8		

Example 2.

A payroll and project cost accounting system involves four disk data files:

EMPS - 300 employee records with 60 words per record.

PROJ - 100 project records with 20 words per record.

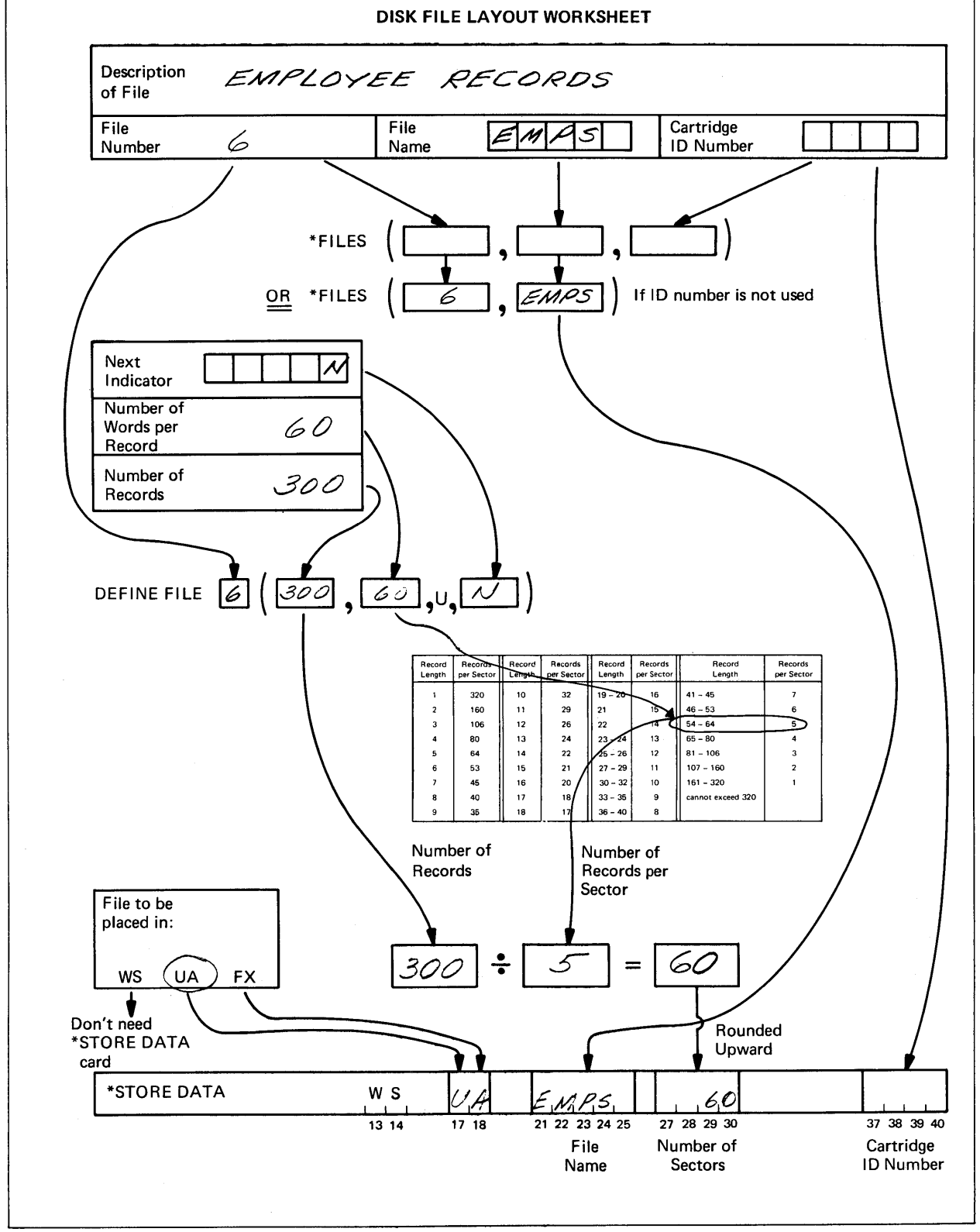
DDESC - 20 records of 18 words each, containing some alphabetic information for each of 20 departments.

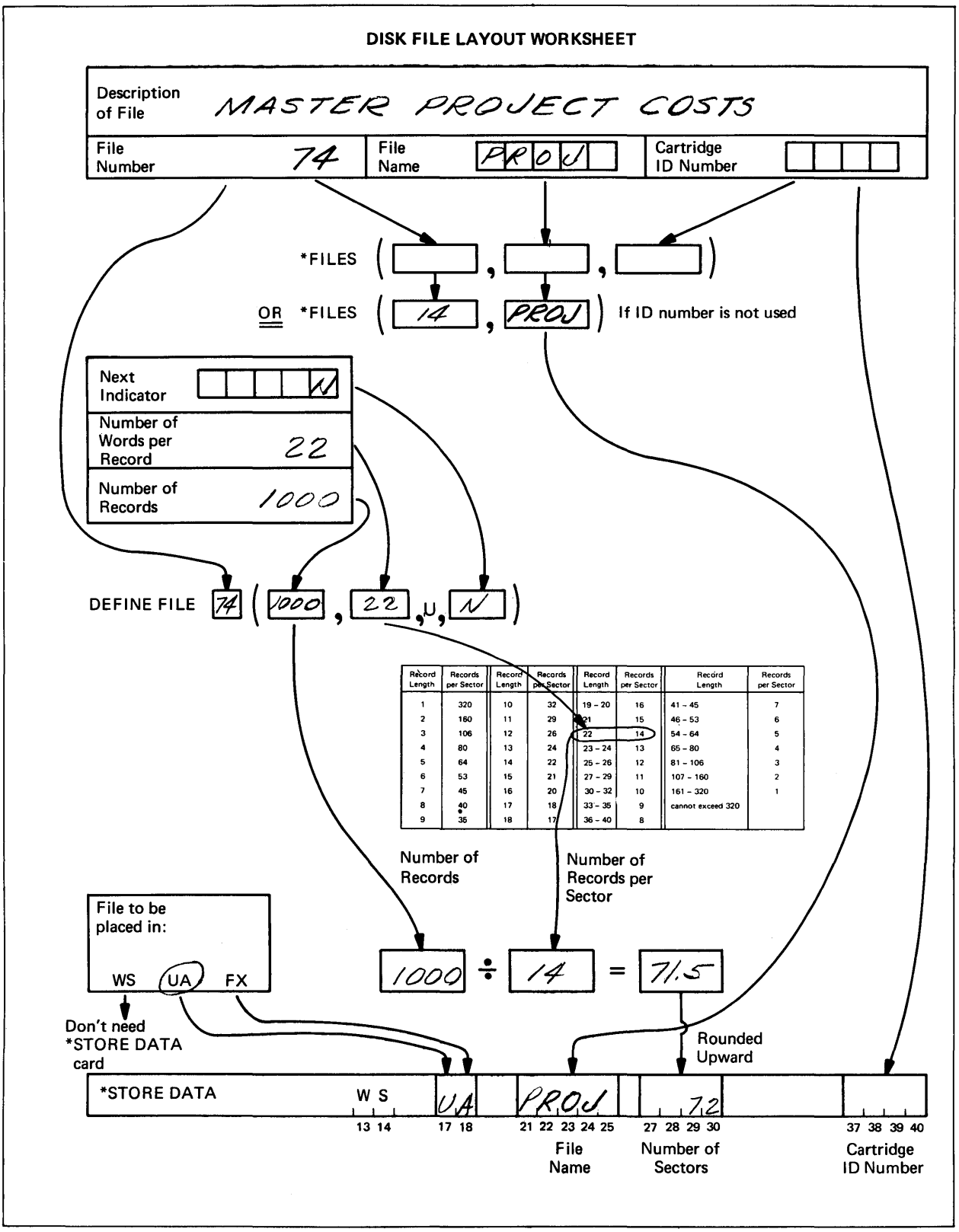
SUBT - 20 records of 60 words each, containing an array of subtotals of department worked for vs department charged to. This is a temporary file used only as an extension of core storage, not saved from job to job.

Assume you have only one disk drive and don't care which disk cartridge is mounted. (You really do, but you, rather than the Monitor, will make sure the correct disk is being used.)

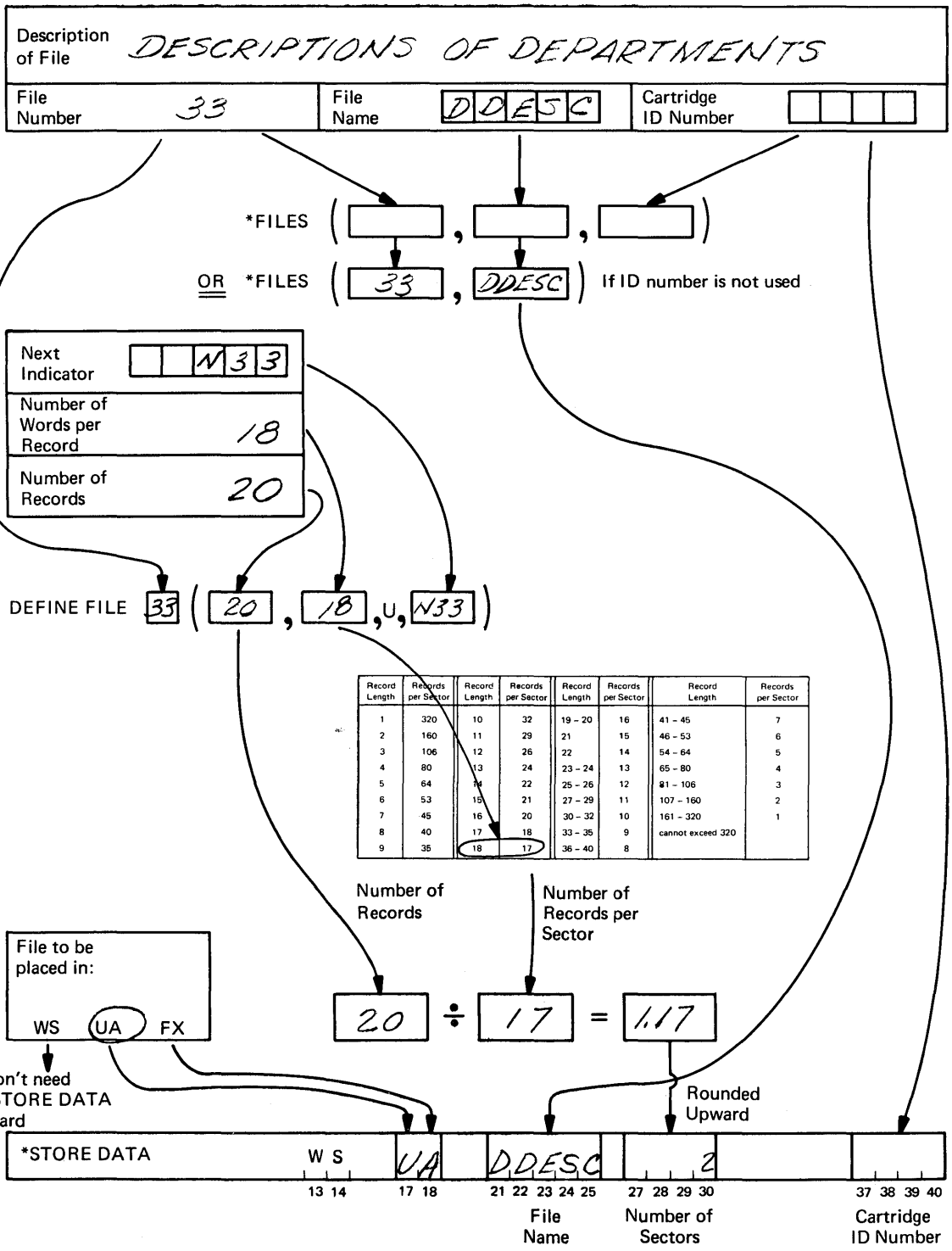
With this basic data, you can fill in the Disk File Layout Worksheets and punch the necessary cards. Note that file 9 (SUBT) does not need a *FILES OR *STOREDATA card, since it is not to be saved from one job to another. It does require a DEFINE FILE card.

DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET

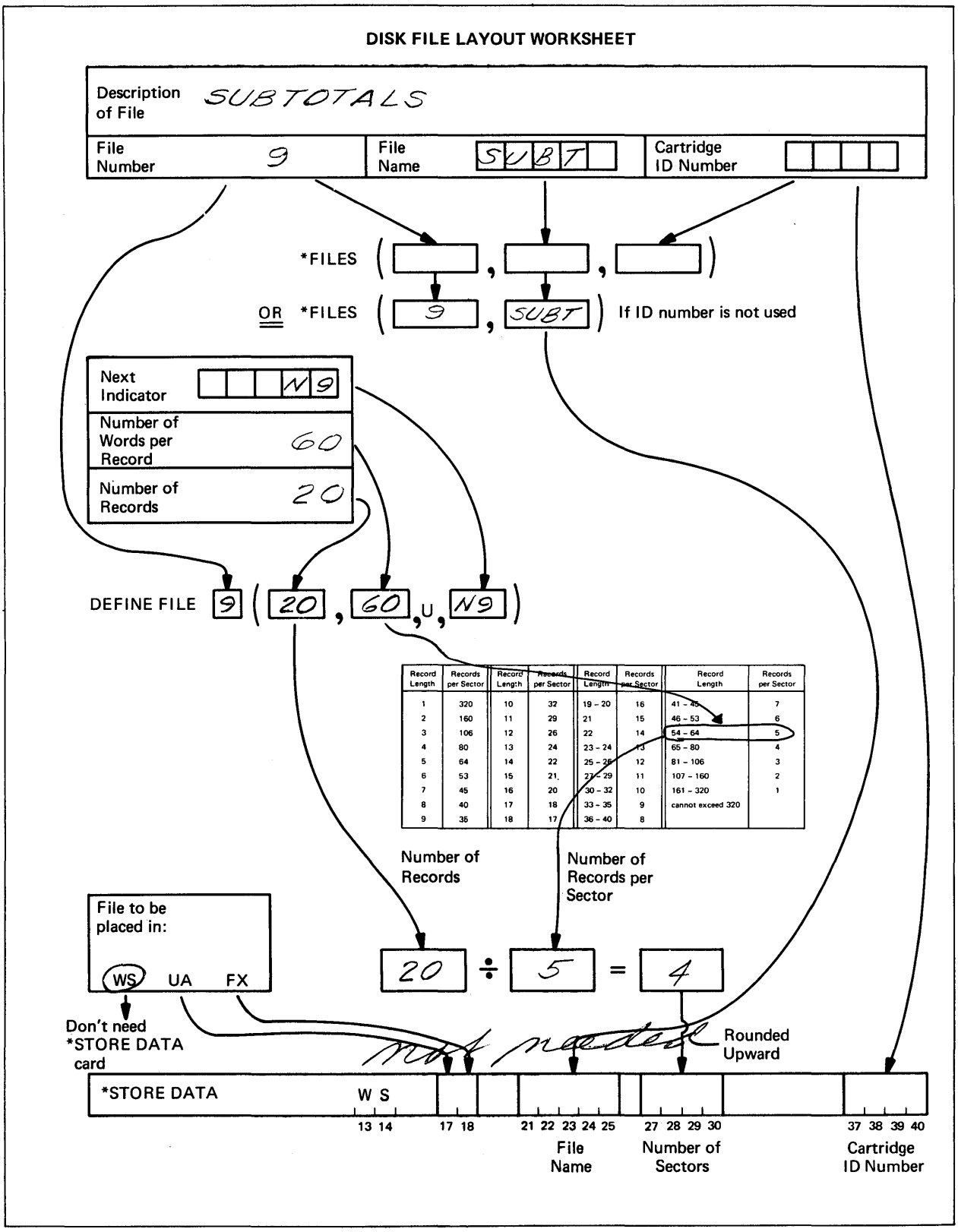



DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
MASTER PROJECT COSTS
File Number
74
File Name
PROJ
Cartridge ID Number
*FILES
OR *FILES
14
PROJ
If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
N
Number of Words per Record
22
Number of Records
1000
DEFINE FILE
74
1000
22
U
N
Record Length
Records per Sector
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS
UA
FX
1000
÷
14
=
71.5
Don't need *STORE DATA card
Rounded Upward
*STORE DATA
W S
UA
PROJ
72
13 14
17 18
21 22 23 24 25
27 28 29 30
37 38 39 40
File Name
Number of Sectors
Cartridge ID Number

DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET



Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector
1	320	10	32	19 – 20	16	41 – 45	7
2	160	11	29	21	15	46 – 53	6
3	106	12	26	22	14	54 – 64	5
4	80	13	24	23 – 24	13	65 – 80	4
5	64	14	22	25 – 26	12	81 – 106	3
6	53	15	21	27 – 29	11	107 – 160	2
7	45	16	20	30 – 32	10	161 – 320	1
8	40	17	18	33 – 35	9	cannot exceed 320	
9	35	18	17	36 – 40	8		

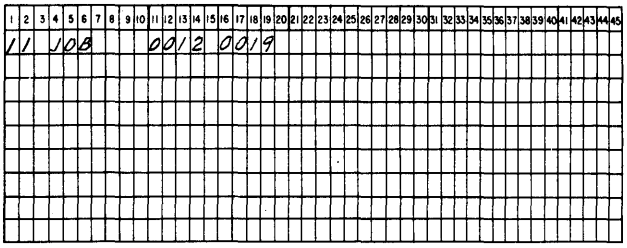

DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
SUBTOTALS
File Number
9
File Name
SUBT
Cartridge ID Number
*FILES
OR *FILES
9
SUBT
If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
N9
Number of Words per Record
60
Number of Records
20
DEFINE FILE
9
20
60
U
N9
Record Length
Records per Sector
1 320
2 160
3 106
4 80
5 64
6 53
7 45
8 40
9 35
10 32
11 29
12 26
13 24
14 22
15 21
16 20
17 18
18 17
19 - 20 16
21 15
22 14
23 - 24 13
25 - 26 12
27 - 29 11
30 - 32 10
33 - 35 9
36 - 40 8
41 - 45 7
46 - 53 6
54 - 64 5
65 - 80 4
81 - 106 3
107 - 160 2
161 - 320 1
cannot exceed 320
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS UA FX
20 ÷ 5 = 4
Don't need *STORE DATA card
not needed
Rounded Upward
*STORE DATA
W S
13 14
17 18
21 22 23 24 25
File Name
27 28 29 30
Number of Sectors
37 38 39 40
Cartridge ID Number

Example 3.

This is the same job as in example 2, except that two disk drives are now available and you are going to be more careful about which disk cartridge is mounted on which drive unit:

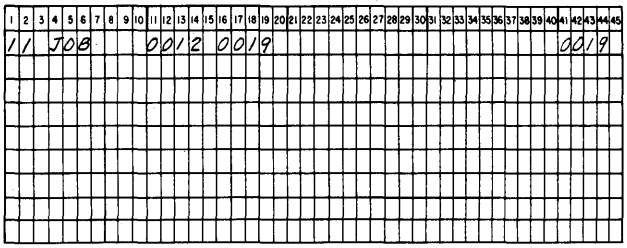
DRIVE 0			DRIVE 1		
CARTRIDGE ID 0012			CARTRIDGE ID 0019		
WS	UA	FX	WS	UA	FX
	EMPS		SUBT	PROJ DDESC	

First, you have decided that cartridge 0012 will be on drive 0 and cartridge 0019 on drive 1. How is this communicated to the Monitor? It is done with the // JOB card, which must be punched



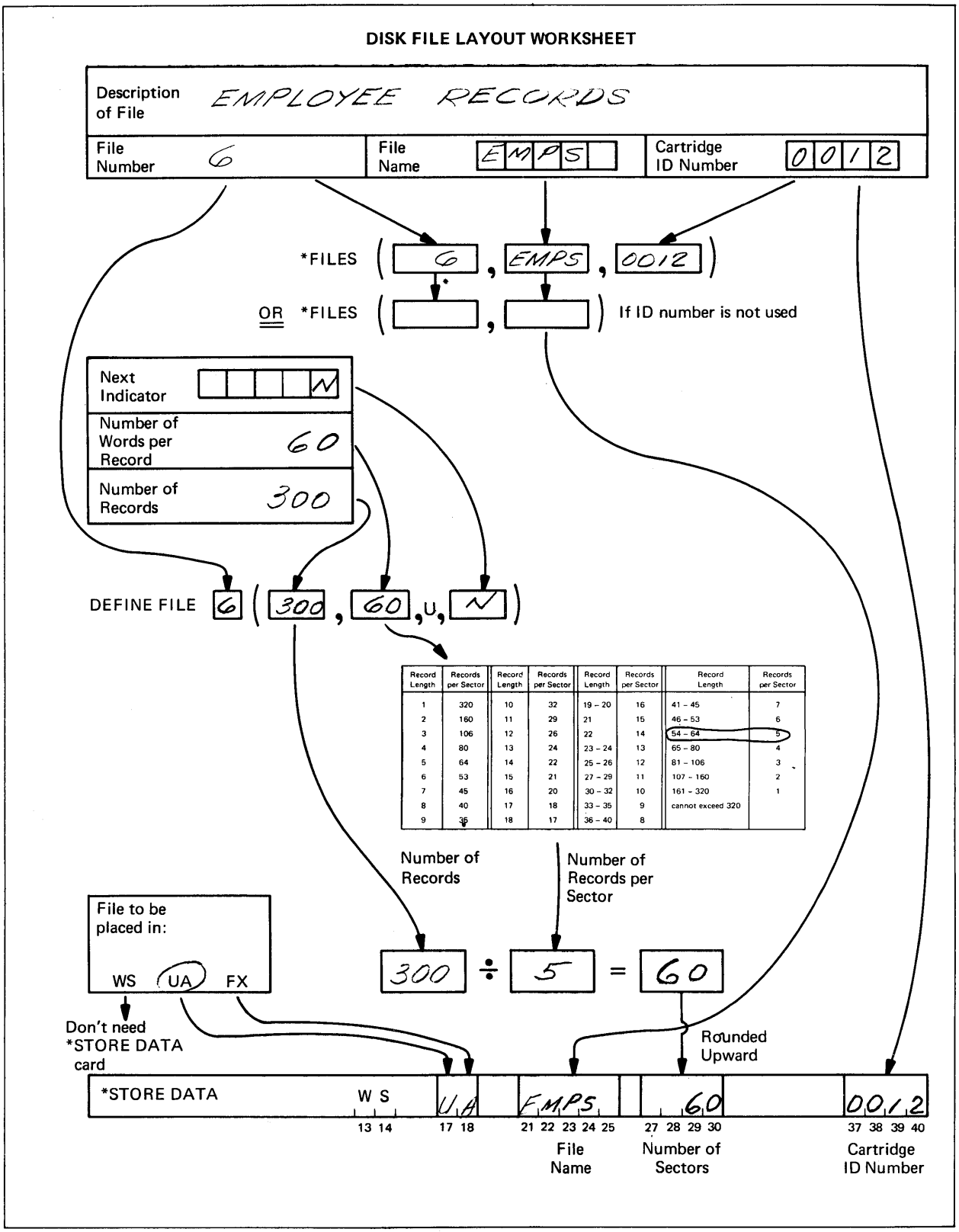
File SUBT, since it is in WS, really does not need a name (or a *FILES or *STOREDATA card). How, then, can you tell the 1130 Monitor on which disk drive it should be placed? Again, with the // JOB card. Columns 41-44 should contain the cartridge ID number of the disk to be used for Working Storage, in this case 0019.

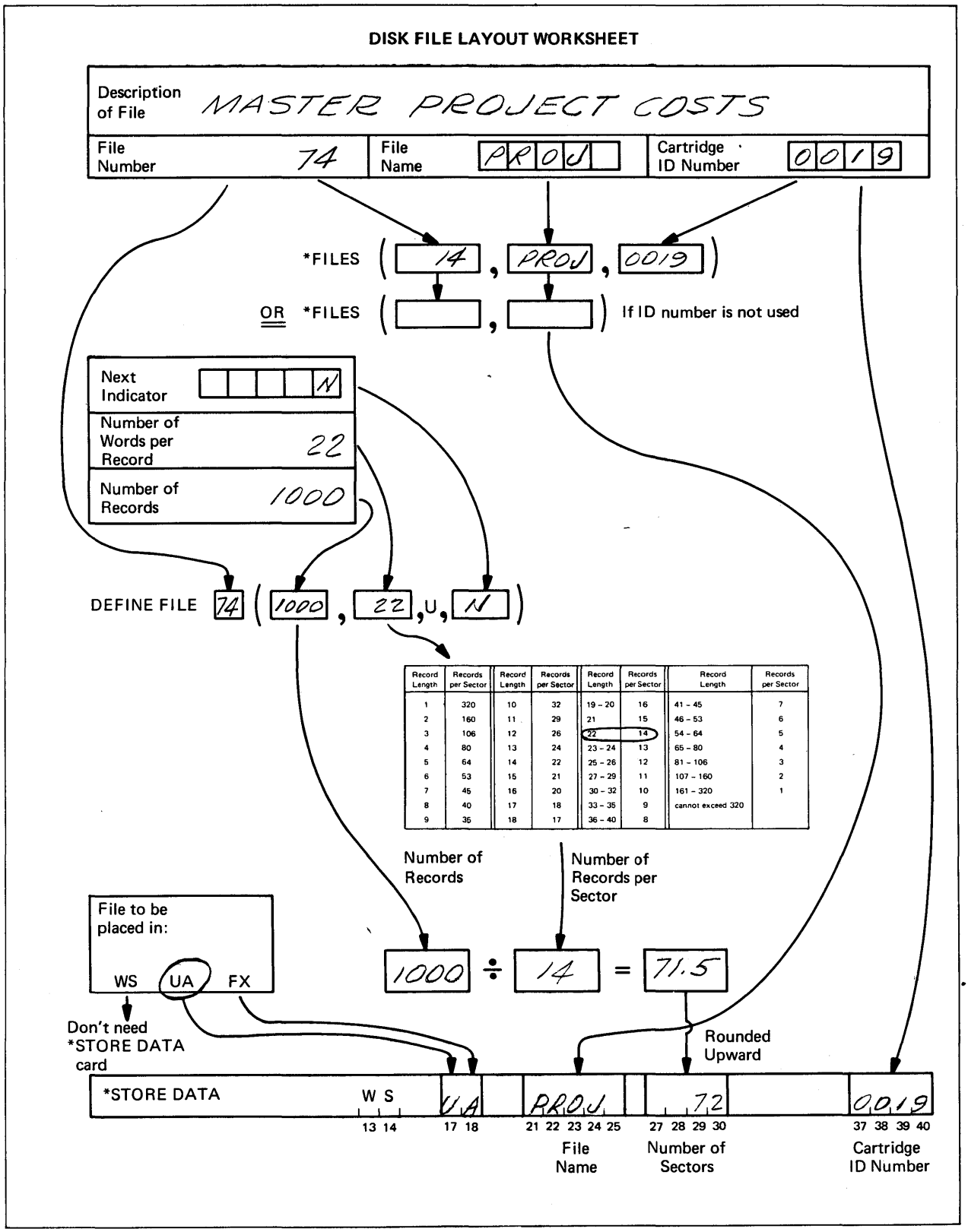
The special // JOB card

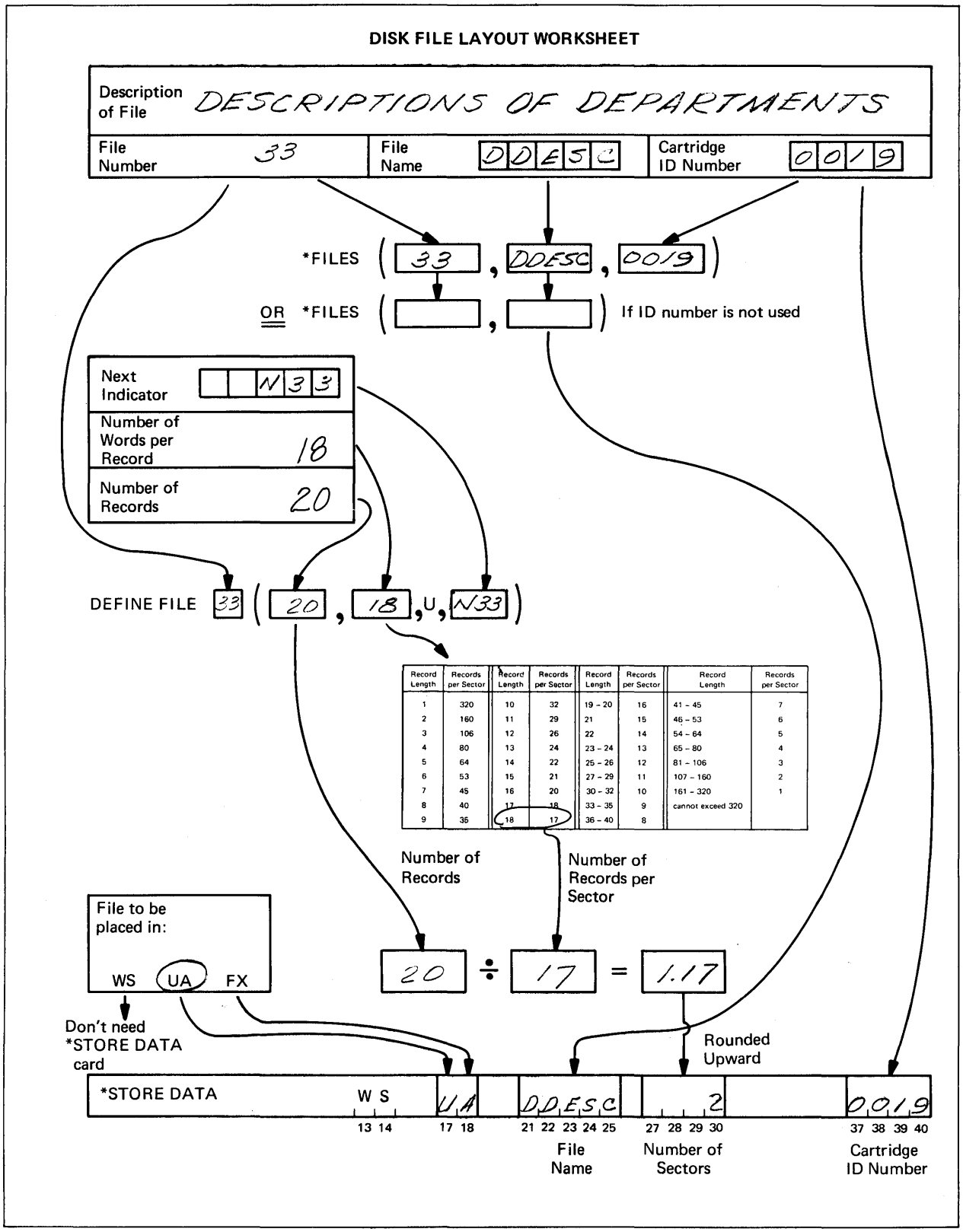


must be used when running the DUP *STOREDATA jobs and when executing the programs that use these files. Needless to say, the disk cartridges should be placed in the proper disk drive units.

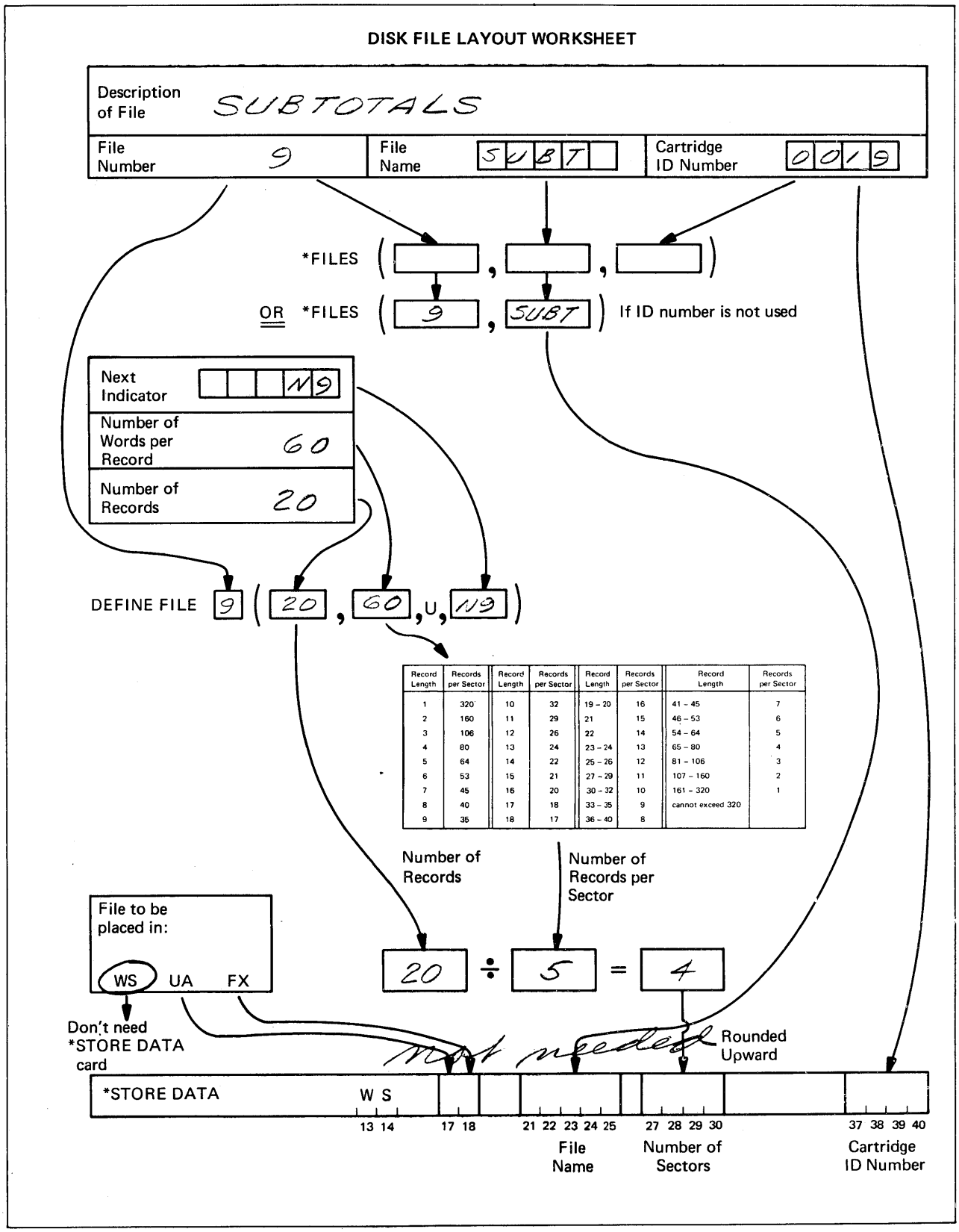
The remaining three files (EMPS, PROJ, AND DDESC) are handled in a different manner. Since they are to be in the UA, they do require *FILES and *STOREDATA cards, which contain a field for placing the cartridge ID number. These are shown on the Disk File Layout Worksheets following.


DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
EMPLOYEE RECORDS
File Number
6
File Name
EMPS
Cartridge ID Number
0012
*FILES (6 , EMPS , 0012)
OR *FILES (,) If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
N
Number of Words per Record
60
Number of Records
300
DEFINE FILE 6 (300 , 60 , U , N)
Record Length | Records per Sector | Record Length | Records per Sector | Record Length | Records per Sector | Record Length | Records per Sector
1 | 320 | 10 | 32 | 19 – 20 | 16 | 41 – 45 | 7
2 | 160 | 11 | 29 | 21 | 15 | 46 – 53 | 6
3 | 106 | 12 | 26 | 22 | 14 | 54 – 64 | 5
4 | 80 | 13 | 24 | 23 – 24 | 13 | 65 – 80 | 4
5 | 64 | 14 | 22 | 25 – 26 | 12 | 81 – 106 | 3
6 | 53 | 15 | 21 | 27 – 29 | 11 | 107 – 160 | 2
7 | 45 | 16 | 20 | 30 – 32 | 10 | 161 – 320 | 1
8 | 40 | 17 | 18 | 33 – 35 | 9 | cannot exceed 320
9 | 36 | 18 | 17 | 36 – 40 | 8
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS UA FX
300 ÷ 5 = 60
Don't need *STORE DATA card
Rounded Upward
*STORE DATA
W S
U A
F M P S
60
0 0 1 2
13 14
17 18
21 22 23 24 25
27 28 29 30
37 38 39 40
File Name
Number of Sectors
Cartridge ID Number


DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
MASTER PROJECT COSTS
File Number
74
File Name
PROJ
Cartridge ID Number
0019
*FILES
14
PROJ
0019
OR *FILES
If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
N
Number of Words per Record
22
Number of Records
1000
DEFINE FILE
74
1000
22
U
N
Record Length
Records per Sector
1 320
2 160
3 106
4 80
5 64
6 53
7 45
8 40
9 35
10 32
11 29
12 26
13 24
14 22
15 21
16 19 - 20
17 18
18 17
20 - 32 10
33 - 35 9
36 - 40 8
41 - 45 7
46 - 53 6
54 - 64 5
65 - 80 4
81 - 106 3
107 - 160 2
161 - 320 1
cannot exceed 320
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS
UA
FX
1000
÷
14
=
71.5
Rounded Upward
Don't need *STORE DATA card
*STORE DATA
W S
U A
PROJ
72
0019
13 14
17 18
21 22 23 24 25
27 28 29 30
37 38 39 40
File Name
Number of Sectors
Cartridge ID Number


DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET
Description of File
DESCRIPTIONS OF DEPARTMENTS
File Number
33
File Name
DDESC
Cartridge ID Number
0019
*FILES (33 , DDESC , 0019)
OR *FILES (,) If ID number is not used
Next Indicator
N33
Number of Words per Record
18
Number of Records
20
DEFINE FILE 33 (20 , 18 ,U, N33)
Record Length
Records per Sector
Record Length
Records per Sector
Record Length
Records per Sector
Record Length
Records per Sector
1 320 10 32 19 - 20 16 41 - 45 7
2 160 11 29 21 15 46 - 53 6
3 106 12 26 22 14 54 - 64 5
4 80 13 24 23 - 24 13 65 - 80 4
5 64 14 22 25 - 26 12 81 - 106 3
6 53 15 21 27 - 29 11 107 - 160 2
7 45 16 20 30 - 32 10 161 - 320 1
8 40 17 18 33 - 35 9 cannot exceed 320
9 36 18 17 36 - 40 8
Number of Records
Number of Records per Sector
File to be placed in:
WS UA FX
20 ÷ 17 = 1.17
Don't need *STORE DATA card
Rounded Upward
*STORE DATA
W S
UA
DDESC
2
0019
13 14 17 18 21 22 23 24 25 27 28 29 30 37 38 39 40
File Name
Number of Sectors
Cartridge ID Number

DISK FILE LAYOUT WORKSHEET



Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector	Record Length	Records per Sector
1	320	10	32	19 – 20	16	41 – 45	7
2	160	11	29	21	15	46 – 53	6
3	106	12	26	22	14	54 – 64	5
4	80	13	24	23 – 24	13	65 – 80	4
5	64	14	22	25 – 26	12	81 – 106	3
6	53	15	21	27 – 29	11	107 – 160	2
7	45	16	20	30 – 32	10	161 – 320	1
8	40	17	18	33 – 35	9	cannot exceed 320	
9	35	18	17	36 – 40	8		

SECTION 85: DISK DATA FILES -- ORGANIZATION AND PROCESSING

CONTENTS

General 85.01.00
Organization 85.10.00
  General 85.10.01
  Pure Sequential 85.10.10
    Searching a Pure Sequential File
    Adding Items to the File
  Indexed Sequential 85.10.20
    Choosing an Index Step Size
    Building the Index
    Searching the Index
    Maintaining the Index
    Adding Items to the File
  Direct, or Random Organizations 85.10.30
    Direct
    Computed Direct
    Partitioned Direct
    Summary
Processing 85.20.00
The Interaction of Organization and Processing 85.30.00
  Introduction 85.30.01
  Choosing the Organization 85.30.10

GENERAL

Data records should be filed according to a plan. The relationships between file organization and data processing should be carefully considered before this plan is chosen. With a disk, both storage and processing can be accomplished by either of two basic methods - sequential or direct (or random). Thus the following four storage-processing approaches are available:

Sequential processing of sequentially organized data
Random processing of sequentially organized data
Sequential processing of randomly organized data
Random processing of randomly organized data

The first two are the most commonly used approaches. The third and fourth are of limited use in most applications. However, the fourth offers some benefits (in selected applications), particularly when the data files undergo frequent additions and deletions, or when most of the transactions must be processed randomly.

ORGANIZATION

General

In a sequentially organized file, records are stored on the disk in control key sequence, so that records with successively higher control keys have successively higher record numbers. It is not necessary (or customary) for the control key to be the same number as the record number. The only requirement is that the control keys be in sequence, and in sequential (not necessarily consecutive) locations. Often, to narrow the search for a record in a sequential file, an index is consulted for the record number. This index is a sequential list of the keys of selected data file records with their corresponding record numbers. An example of a sequentially organized data file is a telephone directory, in which people are listed one after the other, in alphabetic order, the control key being the last name/first name combination, and the data being the telephone number.

In a randomly organized file, the records are generally stored in the sequence of their control keys. However, a mathematical transformation of the control key yields the record number. To find a record in such a file, the record number is computed from the control key by using the same transformation formula. In the random approach no index tables are required.

Pure Sequential

In a purely sequential disk data file, your records are placed on the disk in some logical order, with no attempt to organize them or to keep track of where they are placed. If a certain record is desired, the disk is searched sequentially until that record is found.

Searching a Pure Sequential File

Searching a pure sequential file is simple, but finding any particular record may be time-consuming in the case of large files. (If you are processing only a small number of records, however, the effect on the overall running time may be slight.) If you have a file of 1000 records, you can search for the item with key KEYXX, using the following FORTRAN statements:

```
      DO 14 NREC=1,1000
      READ (NFILE'NREC) KEY
      IF (KEY-KEYXX) 14, 77, 14
14    CONTINUE
      . . .
      . . .
77    KEYXX has been found at record NREC.
```

KEY is the control key on the disk record, and KEYXX is the key you are searching for. If KEYXX is the 608th item, you will read, check, and get "no hit" on 607 items before reaching the 608th. A better way to search such a file is obvious: read every nth record until you pass the key being sought, then back up one record at a time until you find KEYXX.

```
      DO 14 NREC=1,1000,NTH
      IREC = NREC
 8    READ (NFILE'IREC) KEY
      IF (KEY-KEYXX) 14, 77, 66
66    IREC = IREC-1
      GO TO 8
14    CONTINUE
      . . .
      . . .
77    KEYXX has been found at record IREC.
```

If n is 20, you will read and check 32 records (1, 21, 41, 61, ... 601, 621) until you have passed the desired item (KEYXX, the 608th). Then 13 more records in the backing-up portion of the search (620, 619, 618, ... 609, 608) must be read. Here, the "skip" search has reduced your disk reads from 608 to 45, with a concurrent drop in processing time.

A further improvement can be made if you search first in large increments (say 100), then, when you pass the desired item, back up with a smaller increment (say 20) and, after passing the desired item the second time, switch to an increment of 1. Again, looking for the 608th item, the search will be - 1, 101, 201, 301, 401, 501, 601, 701, 681, 661, 641, 621, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, which involves 20 disk reads.

All the methods shown above, however, have one disadvantage: because they start at record number 1, the disk arm must move back to that record each time. A more elegant search technique would involve starting from wherever you found the last record, rather than from the beginning of the file. This assumes that the disk arm is still positioned over the last record, but it will not be so positioned if you have meanwhile used LOCAL or SOCAL subroutines or accessed a record in another file on the same disk. This technique, therefore, is often impractical.

Another technique involves the method of halving, sometimes called a binary search. Suppose you have a file of 1000 records and you want to find the record whose key is KEYXX. First, halve the file size to obtain 500, and check the 500th record. If you do not find KEYXX there, halve the 500 to obtain 250 and, if the 500th record KEY was higher than KEYXX, check 500-250 or 250 next; if it was lower, check 500+250 or 750 next. The increment next becomes 125, then 63 (62.5 rounded upward), then 32 (31.5 rounded upward), etc. Using the previous example (KEYXX is the 608th item), your search pattern would have been:

	500	first try
low, so	+250	
	750	second try
high, so	-125	
	625	third try
high, so	- 63	
	562	fourth try
low, so	+ 32	
	594	fifth try
low, so	+ 16	
	610	sixth try
high, so	- 8	
	602	seventh try
low, so	+ 4	
	606	eighth try
low, so	+ 2	
hit	608	ninth try

a sequence of only nine disk reads.

Programming such a search is easy:

```
      NREC = 0
      INC = 500
3     INC = (INC+1)/2
      READ (NFILE'NREC) KEY
      IF (KEY-KEYXX) 8, 9, 10
8     NREC = NREC + INC
      GO TO 3
10    NREC = NREC-INC
      GO TO 3
9     KEYXX has been found at record NREC.
```

Adding Items to the File

Adding new records to a sequential file involves some advance planning. If your employee file now consists of 188 employee records in man number sequence

018, 023, 067, 107, 109,.....667, 691, 806, 902

where should you put the newest employee, who has just been assigned man number 098? You could rebuild the entire file, but that might prove time-consuming in the case of large files.

One way to handle file additions is to set up a separate "addition area" on the disk, either as a separate file or as a special area in the main file. With the latter option, new employees would be placed at the end of the file, starting with the last record and working backward.

For example, suppose the 188 employee records have been placed in a 200-record file. When man number 098 is added, it is placed in record number 200; the next new man number goes in 199; and so on.

The search programming becomes somewhat more involved: if a man number is not found in the main (sequential) portion of the file, the "addition area" is searched. If it is not found in either place, an error message is printed.

Since this added work will slow the running of the program, the file should be reorganized periodically, and new man numbers put in their proper places in the sequential file.

Indexed Sequential

An indexed sequential file is essentially the same as a pure sequential file except that you maintain a table or index to the file, making it easier to find records. Suppose you have an inventory file containing 2500 items, with stock numbers ranging from 00001 to 28406. The stock number is kept as an integer, and the items have been placed on the disk in stock number sequence. In order to find an item on the disk, you will maintain an index consisting of the stock number of every 25th item. This will be a FORTRAN array in core storage. It will require 2500/25 or 100 entries in the index table:

INDEX (1) = 67, the stock number of the 25th item
INDEX (2) = 103, the stock number of the 50th item
INDEX (3) = 297, the stock number of the 75th item
. . .
. . .
. . .
INDEX (99) = 28073, the stock number of the 2475th item
INDEX (100) = 28406, the stock number of the 2500th item

When it comes time to find an item on the disk, you first look for it in the core storage array INDEX. You probably will not find that particular item in the INDEX array, but you can get a good idea of its location. Suppose you have just read a card containing ITEM number 181. You look it up in the INDEX table as follows:

INDEX (1) = 67, which is lower than 181
INDEX (2) = 103, which is lower than 181
INDEX (3) = 297, which is higher than 181

The search stops here, since it is obvious that you have just passed item number 181 in the process of moving from INDEX (2) to INDEX (3). Since INDEX (2) is the 2x25 or 50th disk record and INDEX (3) is the 3x25 or 75th disk record, you know item 181 is between records 51 and 75.

Now resume your search for item 181, this time on the disk rather than in core. You may start at 51 and work your way up, or at 74 and back down. In the latter case, your program reads record 74, checks the stock number to see if it is 181, then reads record 73, 72, 71, 70, 69, 68, etc., down to record 51. If 181 is on the disk and in the right order, you will find it relatively quickly.

Choosing an Index Step Size

In the above example, 25 was arbitrarily chosen as the index step size; in other words, every 25th item in the file is recorded in the index table. What is the best index step size? First, for convenience, it should be an even divisor of the number of records in the file. If it is not, it complicates programming. Second, it should be about the same as or less than the number of records in a cylinder. For example, say your record size is 48 words. This allows six records per sector, and 8x6 or 48 records per cylinder. If you have 5000 records, you can choose 40 as your step size, making your INDEX array length 5000/40 or 125. The smaller the step size, the more likely you are to hit the right cylinder on the first disk arm movement. The probability that you will find the desired record on the first cylinder accessed is:

$$1 - ((\text{STEP SIZE}-1)/(2 * \text{NO RECS PER CYL}))$$

or in this case:

$$1 - ((40-1)/(2x48))$$

or about 0.6.

In other words, with 48 records per cylinder, and an index of every 40th record, there are six chances in ten that the desired record can be found with one disk arm movement (seek), and four chances in ten that a second seek and read will be required. Such a second step will take about 65 milliseconds.

If you processed 225 inventory items, this second seek and read would add about one minute to the total running time of the job.

If you increase your step size to 50, the size of your index table in core drops from 125 to 100 items, but your probability of a second seek and read increases from .40 to .51.

On the other hand, if you decrease your step size to 25, your index table requires 200 entries, but your probability of a second seek drops to .25.

Building the index

Building your index of every 25th (or 90th, or whatever) item in your file presents no difficulty.

Option 1: Build the index at the same time that you load the data on the disk. All you need do is to keep a sequential number for each item (NO) and place its item number (or stock number, or employee number) in the INDEX array at position

```
NO / (ISS + 1) + 1
```

where ISS is the index step size. In FORTRAN, keeping an index of every four ITEMs (ISS=4) can be done like this:

```
    ISS = 4
    NO = 1
55  READ (card) ITEM
    K = (NO-1) / ISS+1
    INDEX(K) = ITEM
    WRITE (file'NO) ITEM, etc.
    NO = NO + 1
    GO TO 55
```

Tracing through this coding, you will see that in addition to creating the data file on the disk:

The ITEM number from this card	will be placed on this disk record	and at this position in the INDEX table
first	1	1
second	2	1
third	3	1
fourth	4	1
fifth	5	2
sixth	6	2
seventh	7	2
eighth	8	2
ninth	9	3
etc.		

When finished, the INDEX table will contain the ITEM numbers of the 4th, 8th, 12th, 16th, etc., records on the disk, just as desired. The INDEX can now be written on the disk as a separate file, for further use.

Option 2: Create an index file after the data records have been placed on the disk. This is even easier, since you need only read every 4th (or 20th, etc.) record from the disk and place its ITEM number in your INDEX table. Because this would be relatively slow, you would want to do it only once, with a separate program, storing the INDEX as a separate data file. Then, each program using the file could read it from the disk.

Searching the Index

Unlike pure sequential organization, which is searched on the disk, indexed sequential gives an index to search in core storage. The simplest approach is to search the table sequentially, one entry at a time, starting at the top. When you find an equal-or-less-than condition, you have found what you are looking for. The subroutine shown in Figure 85.1 illustrates a typical method of searching an index.

You would CALL the subroutine FINDM with the known values of:

ITEM -- the item you are searching for
ITABL -- the name of the index table
LTABL -- the length of the index table
ISS -- the index table step size
NFILE -- the number of the file

```
// FOR
*EXTENDED PRECISION
*TRANSFER TRACE
*ONE WORD INTEGERS
*LIST ALL
*ARITHMETIC TRACE
      SUBROUTINE FINDM(NREC,ITEM,NFILE,ITABL,LTABL,ISS,IER)
      DIMENSION ITABL(1)
      IER = 1
      DO 1 N = 1 , LTABL
      IF ( ITEM - ITABL(N) ) 2 , 2 , 1
1     CONTINUE
C     ITEM IS LARGER THAN THE LARGEST VALUE IN THE INDEX TABLE
      IER = 2
      RETURN
2     NREC = ISS * N
      DO 3 N = 1 , ISS
      READ ( NFILE ' NREC ) KEY
      IF ( KEY - ITEM ) 4 , 5 , 6
6     NREC = NREC - 1
3     CONTINUE
C     ITEM IS NOT IN THE FILE  IN THE AREA WHERE IT SHOULD BE
4     IER = 3
5     RETURN
      END
VARIABLE ALLOCATIONS
     N(I )=0000        KEY(I )=0001

STATEMENT ALLOCATIONS
 1    =0033  2    =0042  6    =005B  3    =0061  4    =006A  5    =006E

FEATURES SUPPORTED
 TRANSFER TRACE
 ARITHMETIC TRACE
 ONE WORD INTEGERS
 EXTENDED PRECISION

CALLED SUBPROGRAMS
 SIAR    SIIF    SUBSC   SUBIN   SDRED   SDI

INTEGER CONSTANTS
     1=0004      2=0005      3=0006

CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR FINDM
 COMMON      0  VARIABLES      4  PROGRAM    108

 END OF COMPILATION
```

Figure 85.1.

The subroutine returns:

NREC -- the record number where ITEM may be found

IER -- an error code:

1 -- ITEM has been found on the disk.
2 -- ITEM is larger than any entry in the index table.
3 -- ITEM is not on the disk where the index table indicates that it should be.

If IER is 2 or 3, the value of NREC returned is meaningless.

For example, suppose you have an index of 150 entries, called ITABL, representing every 60th item in an inventory file. After reading an inventory detail card containing a field called ITEM, you want to find the inventory record for that item. By using subroutine FINDM

```
CALL FINDM (NR,ITEM,NFILE,
            ITABL,150,60,IER)
```

you obtain, perhaps, an NR of 731 and an IER of 1, meaning that the desired ITEM has been found, at record 731. You can now read the inventory record for that item:

```
READ (NFILE'NR) data
```

Maintaining the Index

When using an indexed sequential disk data file, you must make sure that the index agrees completely with the file. If you rearrange records in the file without rebuilding the index, you may expect great difficulty in locating items in the file. Rebuilding the index is a rather simple matter, and two methods are given in a preceding section.

The file index is typically stored on the same disk as the file itself, and is read into core once, at the beginning of each program that uses the file it indexes.

Adding Items to the File

Adding items to an indexed sequential file can be handled in much the same manner as for pure sequential files. New records are placed in a separate file, or at the "high" end of the main file.

These new items will not be reflected in the index, but this does not matter too much. The index may be used to facilitate looking up records in the main portion of the file, and, if an item is not found there, it can be sought in the addition area.

Direct, or Random, Organizations

Direct

The simplest of all organizations exists when the record number is the same as the control key. For example, in a payroll application requiring one record per employee, the record number would be the same as the employee number. If you had a three-digit employee number, 001 to 999, you would set up a file of 999 records:

```
      DEFINE   FILE   1   (999,XXX,U,NEXT)
```

If you read an employee number from a card

```
 77   FORMAT(I4)
      READ   (2,77)   NEMP
```

you can immediately find that employee on the disk with

```
      READ   (1'NEMP)   data
 or   WRITE  (1'NEMP)   data
```

The advantages of this scheme are obvious, but the disadvantages may override them. In all probability, although there are 999 employee numbers, there are not really 999 employees, so there will be many "holes", or unused records, on the disk. Furthermore, 999 records, if they are large, may take up an inordinate amount of space on the disk. Even if they do fit on the disk, they will be spread out so far that programs using this file will run very slowly, because of the amount of "seeking", or disk arm movement, required.

One remedy would be to make the employee numbers more compact. If there are 300 employees, why not renumber them from 001 to 300? Or renumber your customers in a billing file? Or renumber your part numbers? Or job numbers?

Usually, this is more easily said than done, and you can expect difficulty in convincing management that they should change established systems just to make it easier for you or the computer.

Computed Direct

Sometimes it is possible to take an employee number (or part number, etc.) and modify it to make a usable record number. For example, if you have 300 employees with employee numbers between 3000 and 9000, you could take this number, NEMP, subtract 3000, divide by 20 (which is (9000-3000)/300), and add 1:

```
NREC = (NEMP-3000) / 20 + 1
```

This results in an NREC between 001 and 301. This is compact and wastes no space; however, two (or more) employee numbers may quite possibly result in the same record number. These are known as synonyms. There are many ways to handle this problem, but they require a certain added amount of programming and disk space.

Partitioned Direct

The disk addressing used by 1130 FORTRAN makes this method applicable in some cases. At one installation, there are about 150 employees, each with a four-digit employee number. The first two digits indicate the department number; the second two digits are sequential numbers. The distribution is as follows:

Dept. No.	Maximum No. of Employees	Range of Employee Numbers	Number of Possible Employee Numbers
1	5	101 - 110	10
3	35	301 - 340	40
4	10	401 - 420	20
5	10	501 - 520	20
6	30	601 - 650	50
7	60	701 - 770	70
10	10	1001 - 1020	20
11	20	1101 - 1130	30
12	20	1201 - 1230	30
15	50	1501 - 1570	70
	250		360

This user noticed that he could use this breakdown of employee numbers to advantage by setting up ten files:

```
DEFINE FILE  1 (10,X,U,N1)
DEFINE FILE  3 (40,X,U,N3)
DEFINE FILE  4 (20,X,U,N4)
DEFINE FILE  5 (20,X,U,N5)
DEFINE FILE  6 (50,X,U,N6)
DEFINE FILE  7 (70,X,U,N7)
DEFINE FILE 10 (20,X,U,N10)
DEFINE FILE 11 (30,X,U,N11)
DEFINE FILE 12 (30,X,U,N12)
DEFINE FILE 15 (70,X,U,N15)
```

requiring a total of 360 records to hold 250 employees. This wastes about one-third of the available records but results in much simplified programming, since the user can read the employee department and man number from a card:

```
77 FORMAT (I2,I2)
   READ (2,77) NDEP,NEM
```

and access that employee with a

```
READ (NDEP'NEM) data
```

statement.

Many numbering systems fit this general type and may lend themselves to this disk organization approach.

Summary

Each of the techniques described above has its advantages and disadvantages, as has been pointed out earlier. In general, indexed sequential files require more core and disk storage (because of the index) and tend to increase processing time because of the searching involved. Random (direct) organizations make for fast access, with little extra core or disk requirements, but are usually difficult to set up because of the synonym problem.

PROCESSING

Just as sequential and random are two basic ways to organize a file, they are also two ways to process or access a file.

If you process records in the same order as that in which they lie on the disk, you are processing sequentially; if you process in a different order, you are processing randomly. Thus the same two words (sequential and random) have substantially different meanings when used in the area of processing, since the definition of each depends on the organization of the file. This was not so when considering organization; a file was sequential or random depending on the order in which control keys were placed on the disk.

Consider the telephone directory -- a sequential file because the control keys (names) are in alphabetic order. If you scan through the directory, from front to back, looking for people who live on Main Street, or for men whose first name is John, you are processing sequentially, in the same order as the keys.

If you are looking for the telephone numbers of three friends -- J. DOE, P. ADAMS and L. SMITH -- and you look for them in that order (not alphabetic), you are processing randomly. On the other hand, if you sort them into alphabetic order -- ADAMS, DOE, and SMITH you are processing sequentially.

THE INTERACTION of ORGANIZATION and PROCESSING

Introduction

As you have seen, the two factors, organization and processing, are tied together quite intimately. Often, for this reason, it is not easy to make the basic decision as to which combination of techniques to use:

Sequential organization, sequential processing
Sequential organization, random processing
Random organization, sequential processing
Random organization, random processing

Actually, it is often impossible to use only one type. You can (and, perhaps, must) process in many sequences; but your file can have only one organization at any one time.

Choosing the Organization

Because of the interaction between processing and organization, there are few concrete guidelines for the user who must make this decision. However, the following outline will help lead the way toward one organization or the other. The payroll application is given as the example.

1. List the processing that must be done to this file and the required order of inputs and outputs (see Figure 85.2).

Application	Required Order of:				
	INPUT		OUTPUT		
	No order or doesn't matter	Other	Doesn't matter	Same as input	Other
Edit input cards		Same as later process.		✓	
Calculations		Employee number		✓	
Payroll register		Employee number		✓	
Payroll checks		Employee number	✓		
941 report		Employee number		✓	
Name and address stickers	✓		✓		

Figure 85.2.

2. How many different sequences are there?
   a. None. No one really cares what the processing sequences are (order of card input, order of output on reports, etc.). Make sure this is so. If it is, go to step 3.
   b. One. There is only one basic processing sequence desired; go to step 4.
   c. More than one. This complicates the matter. Go to step 5. Processing sequences needed:
      1.
      2.
      3.
      4.
      5.
3. No one cares what the processing sequence is. This is unusual but does sometimes occur. If this is so, you can forget about processing, and choose an organization as an isolated problem, entirely separate from processing.
4. This file will never be processed in more than one sequence. Therefore, it would seem like a good idea to organize it either sequentially or randomly, in the same order as that required by processing.
5. This file must be processed in more than one order; however, it can be in only one order at any one time. Recheck step 1. Can any of the inputs be hand- or machine-sorted into the same order as another input? Can some of the output orders be relaxed? Can you somehow reduce the number of orders required? If you can reduce it to one, you can go to step 3 or 4. If not, you must sort your file from one order to the other, or otherwise work around this problem.

Section 90: IMPROVING YOUR SYSTEM -- PERFORMANCE

CONTENTS

General 90.01.00
The Role of the Monitor..... 90.10.00
- General 90.10.01
- The Effect of the Monitor on Performance 90.10.10

The Role of the Programmer..... 90.20.00
- Planning for Performance..... 90.20.10
- Organizing for Performance -- How to Use LOCALs 90.20.20
- Programming for Performance 90.20.30
  - Reducing Core Storage Requirements
  - Programming Techniques to Increase Speed
    - The FIND Statement

The Role of the 1130 Hardware 90.30.00
- General 90.30.01
- Productive Time That Cannot be Improved by Hardware Changes..... 90.30.10
- Productive Time That Can be Improved by Hardware Changes..... 90.30.20
  - Plotting
  - Card Reading
  - Card Punching
  - Printing
  - Computing
- Nonproductive Time That Can be Reduced by Hardware Changes 90.30.30
  - Additional Core Storage
  - Additional Disk Drives

Some Case Studies of Performance Improvements 90.40.00
- General 90.40.01
- Case I 90.40.10
- Case II..... 90.40.20
- Case III 90.40.30
- Summary..... 90.40.40

GENERAL

This section covers many items of interest to all 1130 users:

- How to conserve core storage
- How to increase the running speed of a program
- How to segment programs
- The proper (and improper) use of LOCAL and SOCAL subroutines, etc.

The general theme of this chapter, is, however, how to improve your system, or, how to increase system performance.

The performance of your programs should be one of the major considerations of your programmer. Unfortunately, however, performance is all to often forgotten in the drive to produce a working program. The programmer, usually working against a deadline, devotes all his energy and ingenuity to the TEST/DEBUG/CORRECT/RETEST cycle, finally producing an error-free program with no time to spare, and with little thought given to efficiency.

Remember, however, that this program now enters production status, to be run weekly, or possibly daily, where its performance may greatly affect the overall operation of the 1130 system.

Program performance is affected by three factors, each of which will be discussed in more detail:

The Monitor, or software
The programmer
The system itself, or 1130 hardware

Section	Subsections		Page
90	10	01	01

THE ROLE OF THE MONITOR

General

The 1130 Monitor system has an outstanding feature, known as the "system overlay scheme", designed to assist you in fitting your programs into core storage.

This scheme is covered in some detail in Section 65, under "SOCALs".

Recapping that section briefly, the Core Load Builder, which is given the task of building a core load, or ready-to-execute package, also is given the task of resolving the problem of more program than core storage (if this problem arises).

Typically, many blocks of programming are competing for core storage: your programs, your subprograms, the IBM subprograms, and the Monitor control package itself. All must be in core storage when required.

As a first step, the CLB attempts to fit the entire package into core storage simultaneously. If that does not fit, the CLB splits the IBM subprograms into four groups:

Group 0	Basic
Overlay 1	Arithmetic (add, subtract, multiply, etc.)
Overlay 2	Non-disk Input/Output (cards, printer, etc.)
Overlay 3	Disk Input/Output

As step 2, the CLB determines whether the package will fit in core if Overlay 1 and Overlay 2 share the same area in core storage (the SOCAL area). The SOCAL area must be large enough to contain Overlay 3 plus the larger of Overlays 1 and 2.

If this does not provide enough room, step 3 is taken. Here, all three overlays (1, 2, and 3) will share the same area, which must now be as large as the largest overlay.

Step 4, taken if step 3 does not work, consists of a message informing you that this program is too large to fit in core storage.

To illustrate this graphically, Figure 90.1 shows the layout of the SOCALs required by a "typical" commercial job. This "typical" program:

- Is written in FORTRAN.
- Adds, subtracts, multiplies, and divides.
- Uses the 1132 Printer, the 1442 Card Read Punch, and the console typewriter (but not the keyboard).
- Contains at least one PAUSE, STOP, and CALL DATSW statement.
- Contains disk READ, WRITE, and FIND statements.

If you punch an L in column 14 of the // XEQ card, the CLB will print a core storage map of your program and all its subprograms, indicating which are SOCAL or LOCAL, and what overlay level is in effect.

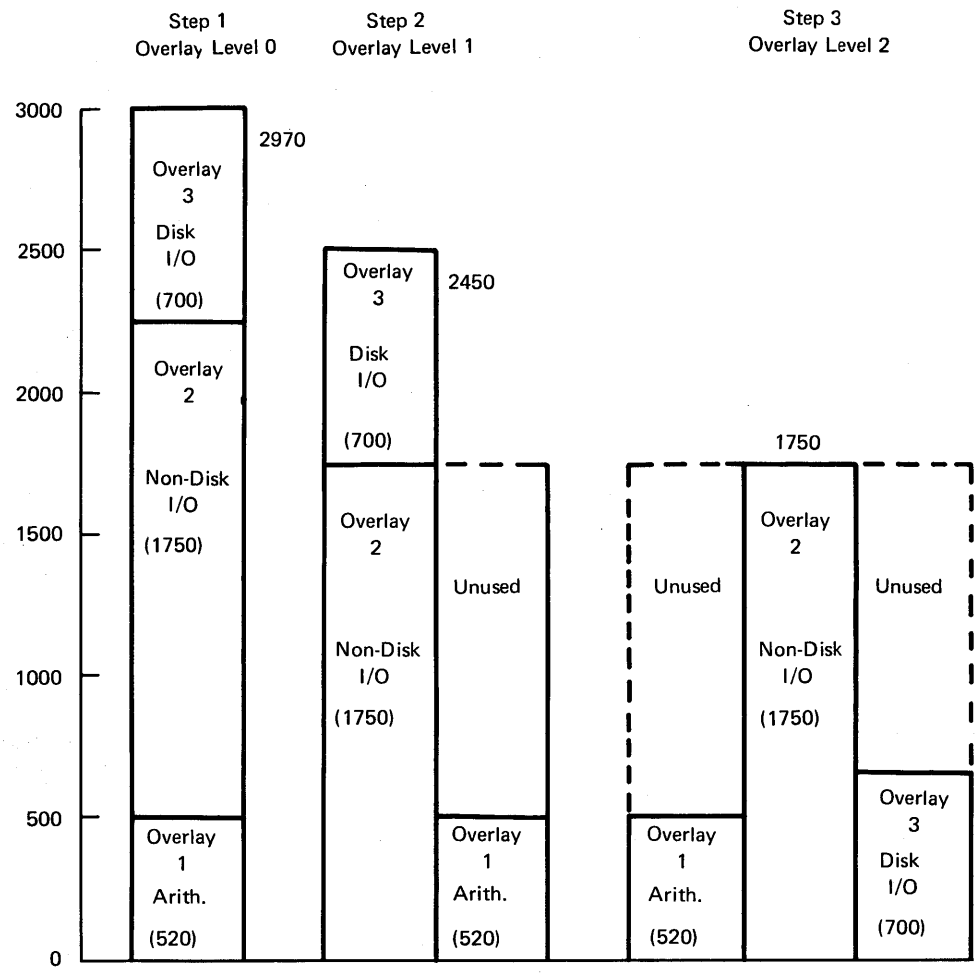

Step 1
Overlay Level 0
Step 2
Overlay Level 1
Step 3
Overlay Level 2
3000
2500
2000
1500
1000
500
0
2970
Overlay 3 Disk I/O (700)
Overlay 2 Non-Disk I/O (1750)
Overlay 1 Arith. (520)
2450
Overlay 3 Disk I/O (700)
Overlay 2 Non-Disk I/O (1750)
Unused
Overlay 1 Arith. (520)
1750
Unused
Overlay 2 Non-Disk I/O (1750)
Overlay 1 Arith. (520)
Unused
Overlay 3 Disk I/O (700)

Figure 90.1.

The Effect of the Monitor on Performance

To return to the main subject of this chapter, you may ask, "How does all this affect performance?" To answer this, we can construct a flowchart of a "typical" commercial job. Let us say it is basically of the type:

1. Read a card.
2. Taking a key item number from the card, look up its approximate disk location in an index table (indexed sequential organization).
3. Read a disk record.
4. Determine whether it is the right disk record. If it is, continue; if not, decrease the record number by 1 and go back to step 3.
5. Do some calculations based on the data obtained from the disk and from the card.
6. Write an updated disk record.
7. Print a line of answers on the 1132 Printer.
8. Do some arithmetic (reset indicators, clear totals, etc.) and go back to step 1.

For the purposes of this analysis you may ignore routines that are executed only once (initialization, final totals) or infrequently (error messages, etc.). Figure 90.2 shows this job in the form of a rough flowchart.

If this program is of a size that requires no overlays, it will run at some base speed or throughput rate. If its size is such that it must run at SOCAL level 1, Overlay 1 (Arithmetic) and Overlay 2 (Non-disk I/O) must be read from the disk whenever required. Figure 90.3 shows when these overlays would be required. This will lengthen the base running time.

Each pass will require four overlays and two disk arm moves. The arm moves are required because the disk data file and the SOCAL overlays are on different areas of the same disk. The time required for these arm movements varies, depending on several factors, but it may be considerable. A good average might be about 250 milliseconds or 1/4 second.

If the program must run at Overlay level 2, the picture changes considerably, as seen by Figure 90.4. If it hits the correct disk record on the first try, it will require seven overlays and four disk arm moves. For each additional disk read looking for the correct record, add two overlays and two arm moves. Running time will be further lengthened.

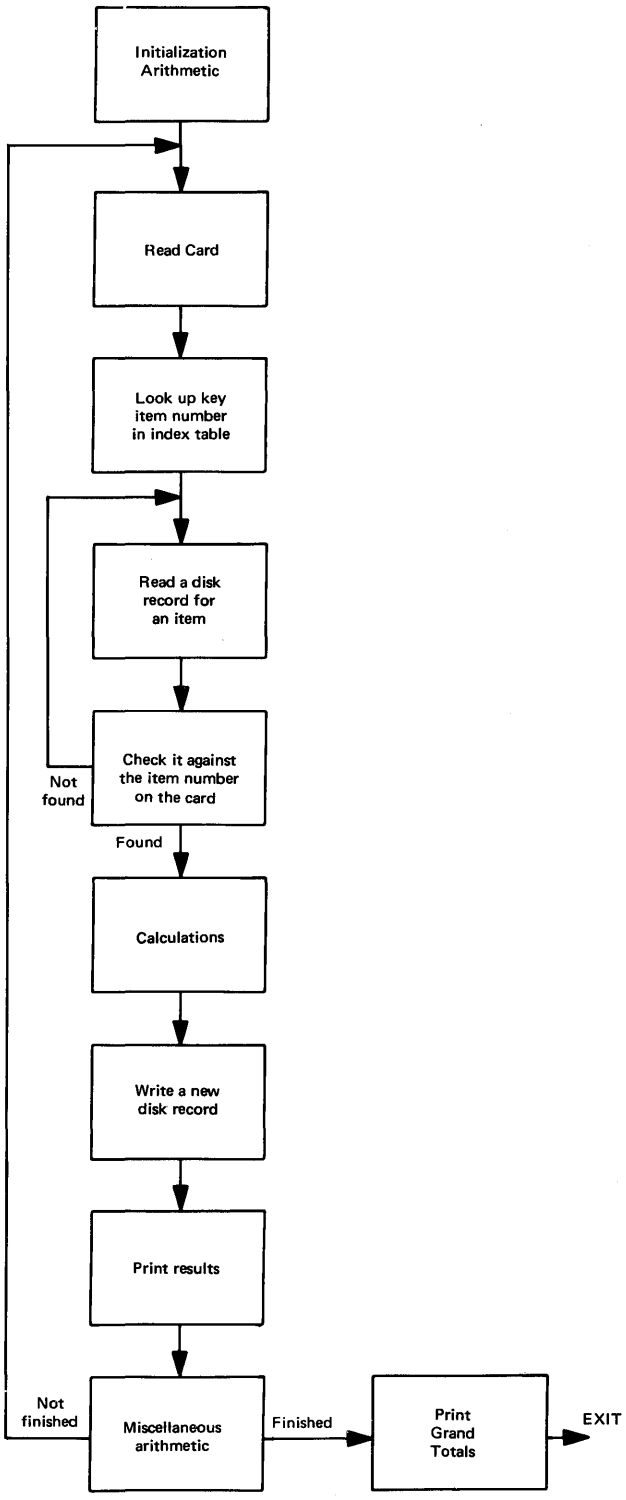


Figure 90.2. "Typical" commercial job -- rough flowchart

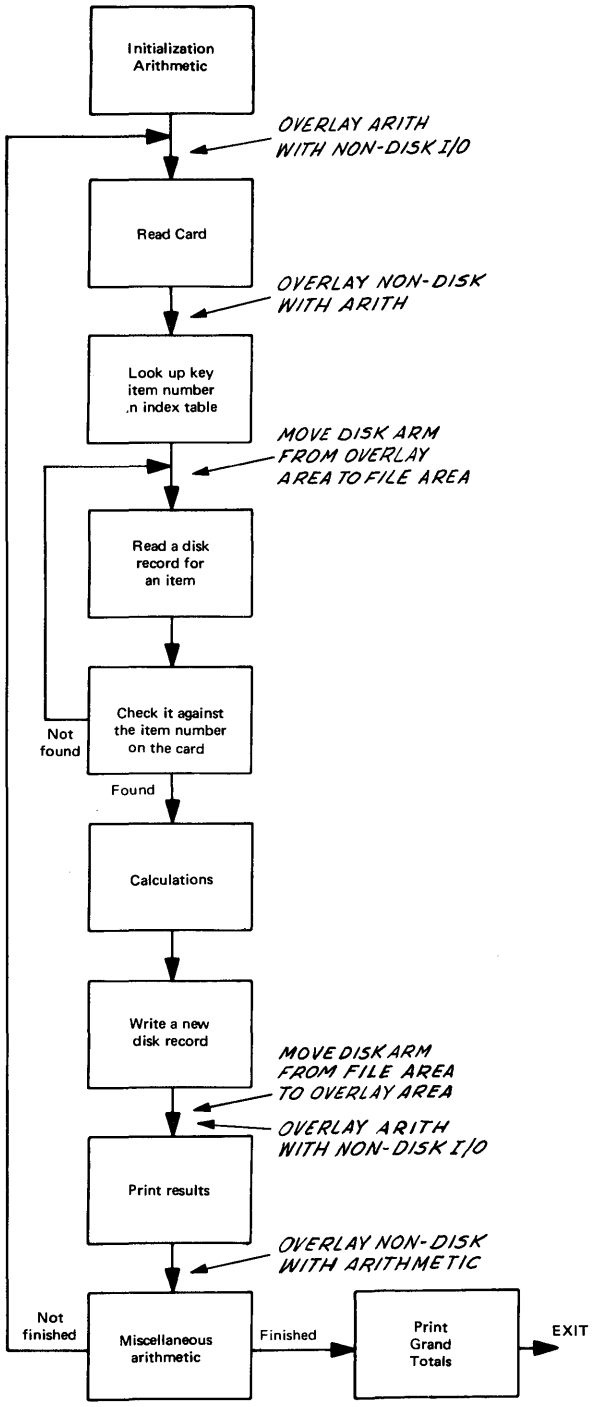


Figure 90.3. Overlays and disk arm movements required at SOCAL level 1

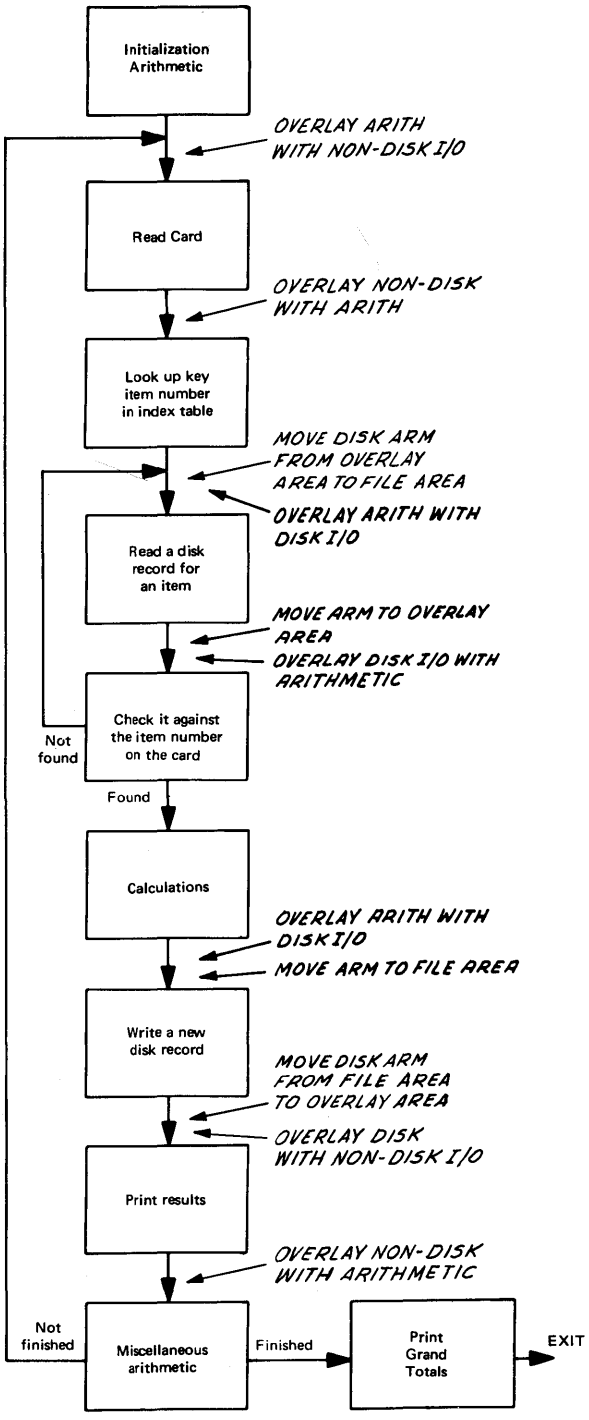


Figure 90.4. Overlays and disk arm movements required at SOCAL level 2

Figure 90.5 summarizes the overlay pattern as it varies with the disk search.

You can see the Overlay level 1 will not hurt performance too much. If each arm movement takes about 1/4 second, the processing time per card might jump from 8 to 8 1/2 seconds. Overlay level 2, on the other hand, may cause this program to run significantly more slowly. A typical indexed sequential file might require 15 disk reads to find the correct record. This would increase the time per card from 8 seconds to 16 seconds, or half the throughput rate. This could become even worse if the data file being searched were large or distant from WS, since the SOCAL area would be proportionately further away from the file area.

The overlay time itself may be ignored, since it is quite small compared with the disk arm movement time.

This example illustrates two principles:

1. The disk data file must be organized so that items may be found quickly (see Section 85).

2. For programs involving disk search techniques, as does the example, you should try diligently to avoid SOCAL Overlay level 2.

The difference between level 2 and level 1 is either 620 words (READ and WRITE disk) or 700 words (READ, WRITE, and FIND disk), but this does not mean that you must cut 620 or 700 words from your program to drop from level 2 to level 1.

The CLB will use level 2 if the program is too big for level 1. (It may be one word too big or 700 words too big.) Every word you can cut from the size of the program increases the probability that the program will fit at level 1 rather than level 2. For this reason, you should strive to keep your programs as small as possible. Several means of doing this are discussed in the next subsection. Also, Section 70 gives many FORTRAN core saving tips.

Note that the above analysis applies to single disk drive 1130 systems; the addition of a second disk drive would eliminate all the overlay-caused arm movements -- assuming of course, that you have placed your data file on one disk and Working Storage on another.

Number of disk READs to find the desired record	Overlay level 0		Overlay level 1		Overlay level 2	
	Overlays	Arm moves	Overlays	Arm moves	Overlays	Arm moves
1	0	0	4	2	7	4
2	0	0	4	2	9	6
3	0	0	4	2	11	8
4	0	0	4	2	13	10
5	0	0	4	2	15	12
.						
.						
10	0	0	4	2	25	22
.						
15	0	0	4	2	35	32
.						
20	0	0	4	2	45	42
.						
.						

Figure 90.5. Single-drive 1130 system

THE ROLE OF THE PROGRAMMER

In reading the preceding subsection, you may have got the idea that the 1130 Monitor has the major effect on the performance of your programs and that you do not enter the picture unless the "system overlay scheme" fails to squeeze your program into core storage.

Nothing could be further from the truth. The program the CLB was manipulating was, after all, planned, organized, and programmed by you, not by the CLB.

Any one of these three functions, if not properly done, can force the CLB into building an inefficient package -- one that may take five or ten times longer in execution than a similar (but better planned) program doing the same job.

As mentioned earlier in this section there are many things you can do to avoid such inefficiencies; most of them are easy to understand, remember, and implement.

Planning for Performance

The major factor affecting program performance is core storage and how it is used. Therefore, you should try to avoid core storage difficulties by planning for reasonably sized program packages. It may seem quite efficient to have the entire payroll processed by one comprehensive program, but, overall, it would probably turn out to be quite inefficient. Because it would be a very large program, it would probably involve many overlays and could run for eight hours, whereas four smaller programs might take only five or six hours.

Section 60 contains many hints on how you may write small, modular programs. Besides helping to gain performance, modular programs have many other advantages over large, all-inclusive ones (they are easier to test, tend to keep errors from spreading, etc.).

After its scope has been determined, a program should be organized into logical blocks that lend themselves to efficient segmentation. You should organize your program expecting to have problems concerning core storage. If you do not have problems, very little time is lost. If you do, as is typical in most cases, you are in a position to create your own overlay scheme, if that of the loader will degrade the performance of your program.

As you have seen, in Section 65, the Monitor gives you two overlay or segmentation methods: LOCAL subprograms and program LINKs. These two overlay schemes are entirely planned and executed by you, in contrast to the Core Load Builder's automatic SOCALs.

The three interact in one important way: If you can conserve enough core with LOCALs and LINKs, the CLB will not have to resort to SOCALs. As you saw earlier, SOCAL Overlay level 2 can seriously degrade the performance of some programs, particularly those that search a disk data file looking for a certain key (man number, part number, etc.).

If you have a program such as this running at a comparatively slow rate, you should investigate it closely; if the program is using level 2 overlays, you should make a determined effort to reduce its size enough to allow CLB to use level 1. (To find out which overlay level is in use, execute the program with an L punched in column 14 of the // XEQ card.)

Figure 90.6 shows the same program used earlier as an example. To it has been added:

INIT	The Initialization routine
WRAP	The wrap-up routine (grand totals)

and three exception subroutines:

BADCD	"Bad input card" message
NOHIT	"No such item on disk" message
NEWPG	Page heading routine

In addition, the following have been made into subroutines:

READC	Read card
CALC1	Calculations Part 1
CALC2	Calculations Part 2
CALC3	Calculations Part 3
MISC	Miscellaneous arithmetic

How should you go about reducing the size of this program? Many programmers, irked at the fact that their program does not fit in core storage, take an "I'll show 'em" attitude and make all subroutines LOCAL. This probably will eliminate

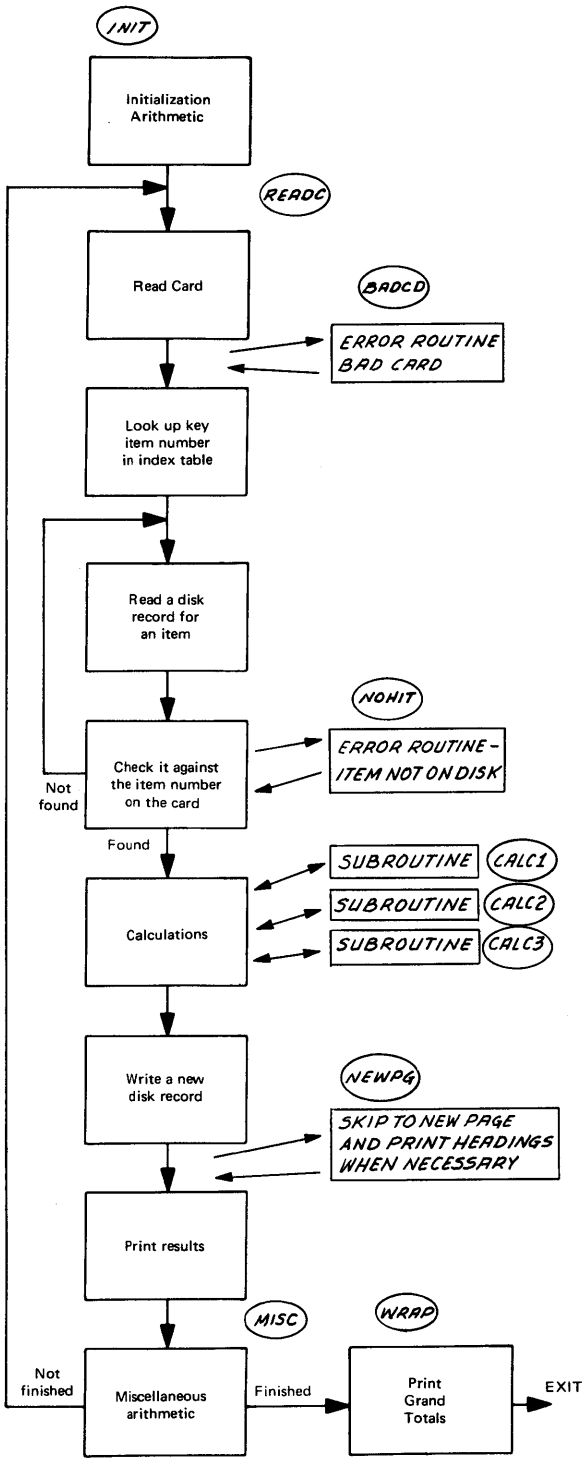


Figure 90.6.

the need for Overlay level 2, but is a rather extreme case of over-reacting to a problem. Figure 90.7 shows the way in which this program would run, if all seven subroutines were LOCAL and Overlay level 1 were used. Each card processing cycle would involve 11 overlays (7 LOCALs, 4 SOCALs) and 4 arm movements (these figures are not dependent on the number of times the disk must be read before finding the desired item).

Reviewing Figure 90.7, it seems that you are somewhat better off than if you had used Overlay level 2, but you still require an excessive number of overlays and arm movements.

It would have been far more prudent to LOCALize only BADCD, NOHIT, and NEWPG, three subroutines that are only used occasionally. This would reduce your LOCAL overlays drastically and might save enough core storage for Overlay level 1 to be used.

Another technique that would reduce the size of this program is the use of LINKs. The blocks called INIT and WRAP could easily be separated from the main program, and made into what can be called "one-shot LINKs". This might save enough core storage to eliminate the need for LOCALs and SOCAL level 2 altogether.

Another LINK is possible here -- a type you might call a "repetitive LINK". Suppose you split the main program into:

PART1
- a. Read card
- b. Look up key in index
- c. CALL LINK (PART2)

PART2
- a. Read disk
- b. Check if correct record found
- c. Calculations
- d. Write new disk record
- e. CALL LINK (PART3)

PART3
- a. Print results
- b. Miscellaneous arithmetic
- c. CALL LINK (PART1) if not finished
  CALL LINK (WRAP) if finished

This arrangement is particularly good, for several reasons:

- It cuts the original program into five pieces (two small and three large).
- It isolates the I/O into separate LINKs -- for example:

PART1 uses neither the disk nor the printer.
PART2 uses neither card nor printer.
PART3 uses neither card nor disk.

This reduces the sizes of these LINKs substantially

- It probably eliminates the need for SOCALs and LOCALs altogether.

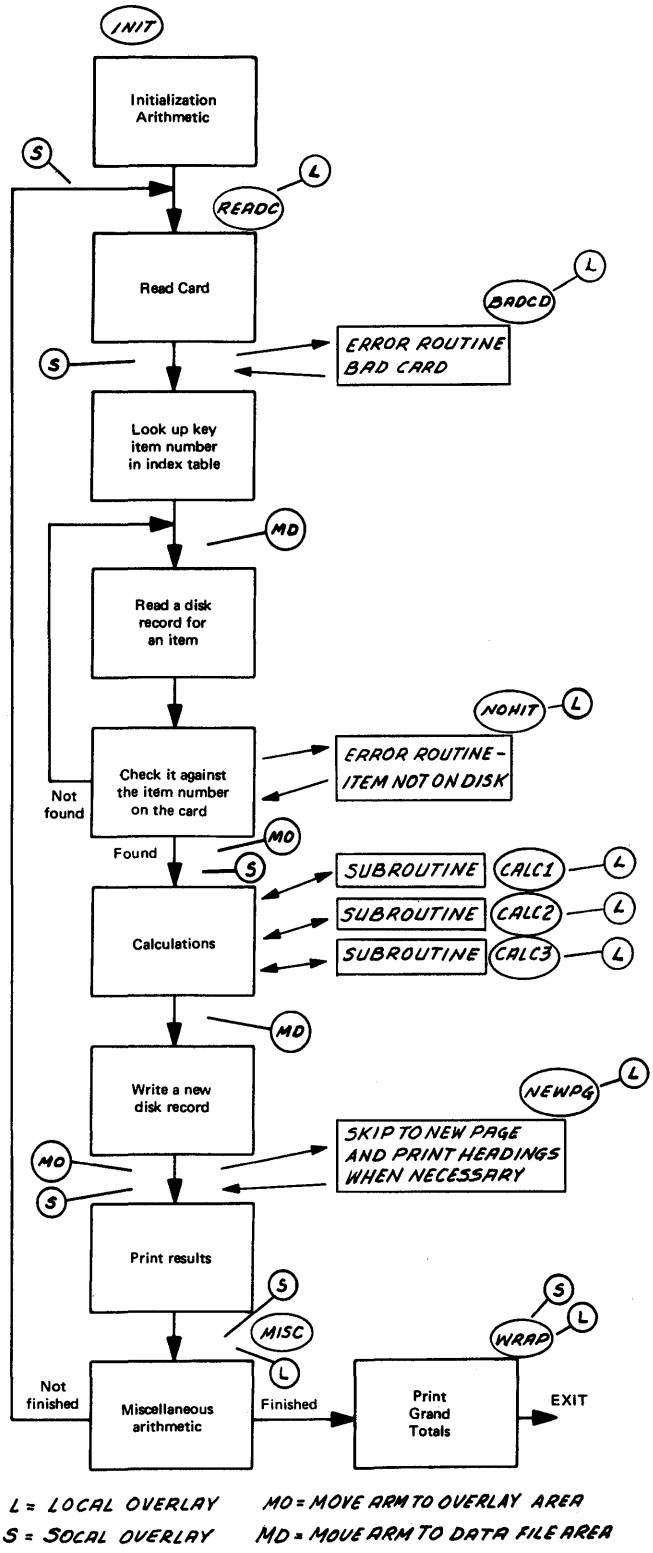


Figure 90.7.

To summarize, a typical program has been segmented in several different ways, and the probable effect of each way on performance has been discussed. The purpose has not been to illustrate that LINKs are better than LOCALs, or that LOCALs are better than SOCALs, or any other hard and fast rule. The purpose has been to illustrate that the options must be chosen wisely, not blindly. The easiest way, letting the CLB do it with SOCALs, may or may not be the best in terms of performance. The next easiest way -- LOCALs -- may or may not be best. The only way to determine which is best is to draw a flowchart of the type shown and to tailor the overlay option to the program.

You can generalize somewhat, with some common-sense do's and don'ts:

1. DON'T worry about the performance of a program that runs for only a few minutes, or that is used only occasionally. Concentrate your efforts on the long-running, everyday jobs.

2. DON'T place an overlay, or cause one to be placed, within a loop that reads from the disk. For example, take the problem discussed above, where you have a loop of the type:

    Read disk record
    Compare disk key to sought-for key
    If not equal, repeat

SOCAL level 2 will overlay the Disk I/O package (required for the Disk READ) and the Arithmetic package (required for the subtraction within the IF statement parentheses). Furthermore, the disk READ command requires the disk arm to move away from the SOCAL disk area. This repetitive disk arm movement may have a disastrous effect on the running time of the program.

If you place a LOCAL subroutine within this loop, it will have the same effect as if the CLB had included a SOCAL.

3. DON'T LOCALize subprograms that are always used, unless it is absolutely necessary to get the program into core storage. DO LOCALize subprograms that are the exception rather than the rule (error messages, new page headings, initialization, final totals, unusual payroll deductions, etc.).

4. DO minimize the amount of coding between DISK I/O commands. This, in turn, will minimize the chance of an overlay (SOCAL or LOCAL) which will require that the disk arm move from the data area to the overlay area and back again.

5. Also, DON'T LOCALize a subprogram that is called between two disk statements. For example, suppose a program has the following sequence:

    DISK I/O
    CALL SUB
    DISK I/O

In this case SUB should not be made LOCAL, since it will force excessive disk arm movement.

6. DO plan for problems with performance -- either a program too large for core or a program that does not run as fast as it might. Keep the scope (and therefore the size) of each program modest; program as a series of LINKs; design the exception routines as subprograms; etc.

Programming for Performance

You have seen in the preceding examples that system performance is very closely related to the size of a program. In general, the larger the program, the more slowly it will run. This degradation is not evidenced in a gradual way; because of the SOCAL and LOCAL system, it will show up in sudden jumps or drops in throughput rates. Suppose you have an 1131 Model 2B (8K) and the familiar "typical" program. With no overlays you have about 4500 words for your program; with Overlay 1, about 4920 words; with Overlay 2, about 5620 words. Assuming these figures to be exact, this means that:

If your program size is	It will:
1 -- 4500 words	Fit with no overlays
4501 -- 4920 words	Require Overlay 1
4921 -- 5620 words	Require Overlay 2
5621 words or more	Not fit in core storage without further work

If you add 1 word to a 4920-word program, it will suddenly require Overlay 2 and may take twice as long to execute. (It may also take no longer than before -- this depends on the program.)

Conversely, if you have a program at level 2, it may take anywhere from one word to 700 words to make it drop to level 1. If it was 4921 before, it will take only one word; if it was 5620, it will take 700 words.

Reducing Core Storage Requirements

To make a long story short, every word counts. You should always keep this fact in mind and strive to write efficient programs. Section 70 gives many core saving tips; Section 65 also gives some ideas for improving the SOCAL system. Repeating the FORTRAN tips (the details are given in Section 70.50.20):

1. Use the DATA statement wherever possible.
2. Keep FORMAT statements compact.
3. Take square roots and raise numbers to powers in the most efficient manner.
4. Code efficient I/O statements.
5. Avoid long subroutine argument lists.
6. Don't include unneeded I/O devices on the *IOCS card.
7. Avoid arithmetic with constant subscripts.
8. Remove the TRACE from production status programs. The trace package requires about 140 words of core storage. In addition, it requires that Data Switch 15 be interrogated every time you "execute" an equal sign, IF statement, or computed GO TO. This requires 150 to 200 microseconds each time; some programs may do this tens of thousands of times in the course of one run.

Programming Techniques to Increase Speed

Just as reduced program size can improve performance, so can several programming techniques. All involve utilizing the overlapped I/O capability of the 1130. The hardware of the 1130 allows for the overlapping of almost all I/O devices; however, the programming system used determines which units can actually be made to run concurrently with other units, or with the central processor. (See Figure 90.8.)

Overlapping means that you can:

1. Tell the device what it is to do.
2. Start it going (printing, punching, etc.).
3. Then continue with other processing before the device has actually finished what it has started.

This section covers those units that can be overlapped by standard FORTRAN. The use of the overlapped I/O feature of the Commercial Subroutine Package is discussed in Section 70.

Unit	FORTRAN	FORTRAN with Commercial Subroutine Package	Assembler
1442-6 or -7 Reader		Yes	Yes
1442-6 or -7 Punch		Yes	Yes
1442-5 Punch		Yes	Yes
Console Typewriter		Yes	Yes
Console Keyboard			Yes
1132 Printer		Yes	Yes
1403 Printer	Yes	Yes	Yes
Disk - Arm Movement (FIND)	Yes		Yes
- Reading			Yes
- Writing			Yes
2501 Reader		Yes	Yes
1627 Plotter	Yes		
1134 Paper Tape Reader			Yes
1055 Paper Tape Punch			Yes

Figure 90.8. Programming systems permitting overlapped operations

The FIND Statement. Because it is an optional feature of FORTRAN, some programmers are unaware of, and/or neglect, the use of the FIND statement. However, in many disk-oriented programs it can increase performance significantly. It can be added to any program quite easily and is simple to use.

Suppose your program calls for a disk read from record NR of file 6:

```
READ (6'NR) DATA
```

The disk subroutine will automatically compute where that record resides, move the disk arm to the proper position, and read the data. As mentioned many times earlier, the second job, the movement of the disk arm, may take much longer than the other two functions.

The FIND statement

```
FIND (6'NR)
```

ahead of the READ (or WRITE) will cause the subroutine to compute the location of record NR, start the disk arm moving to that location, and then continue processing other FORTRAN statements.

The secret of the FIND statement is self-evident: it should be placed as far in advance of the actual READ or WRITE statement as possible. In this way you can get the arm moving, overlapping its movement or "seek" time with computations, printing, etc.

Let us take a portion of a FORTRAN program that looks like this:

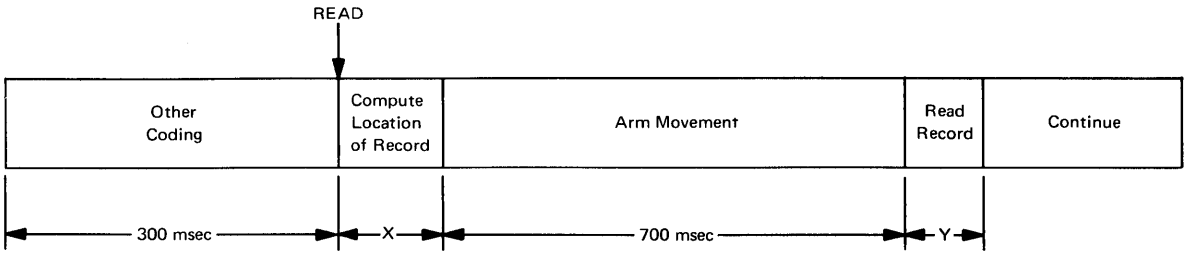
```
FIND (6'NR)
....
....
other FORTRAN coding
....
READ (6'NR) DATA
```

Suppose it takes 700 milliseconds to move the disk arm to record NR from where it happens to be now. Suppose also, that the "other FORTRAN coding" shown takes 300 milliseconds. Without the overlapping gained by the FIND statement, the total time would be 700+300 or 1000 milliseconds. With the FIND statement, the total time would drop to 700 milliseconds, since the 300 milliseconds is "buried" within the 700 milliseconds seek time. Figure 90.9 illustrates this graphically. This might amount to only 20 or 30 minutes a day, but it is so easy to implement that it is certainly worth the trouble of punching a few FIND cards.

If you are using LOCALs, and/or the CLB has included SOCALs, the FIND statement will not be executed. The Monitor will take care of this automatically. The reason is obvious: if you FIND a

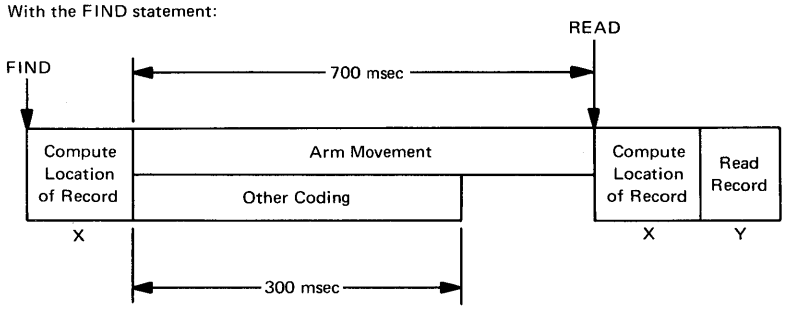
record then call a LOCAL or SOCAL subprogram, the entire purpose of the FIND will have been negated, and you will wind up increasing disk seek time rather than decreasing it. If you know you will have LOCALs or SOCALs, you may want to remove all the FIND statements from your program, eliminating the SDFND subroutine, which is approximately 80 words long.

Without the FIND statement:



Total time = 700 + 300 + X + Y
X is small compared with the others.

With the FIND statement:



Total time = 700 + X + X + Y
X is small compared with the others.

Figure 90.9.

THE ROLE OF THE 1130 HARDWARE

General

The last component in the user/hardware/software trio is the 1130 hardware itself. Because this section is concerned primarily with increasing performance, the discussion will concentrate on the ways you can improve throughput by the use of alternative hardware configurations.

The first step is the separation of run time into four basic elements:

1. Productive time that cannot be improved by hardware changes
2. Productive time that can be improved by hardware changes
3. Nonproductive time that cannot be improved by hardware changes
4. Nonproductive time that can be improved by hardware changes

The third is included only for completeness; using the definitions, there are no meaningful items to discuss in this area.

Productive time is the time that the 1130 occupies itself doing something you want it to do. Nonproductive time applies to activities that may be necessary, but that are unproductive from your point of view. Some examples of the latter are disk seeks, reading LOCAL and SOCAL overlays, etc.

Productive Time That Cannot Be Improved by Hardware Changes

Some of the 1130 system components are available in only one model; therefore, it is impossible to increase performance by changing them. The typewriter, the console keyboard, the paper tape reader, and the paper tape punch are four such devices. In addition, the reading/writing speed of the disk is constant, which means that the reading/writing of your data records cannot be speeded up through hardware changes. However, because more disk drives may be added, certain other times relative to the disk (seeks, reading of overlays) may be reduced; they are therefore covered in a later section.

Productive Time That Can Be Improved by Hardware Changes

There are five elements of productive time that can be improved by changing the model or speed of an 1130 component. That is, you can:

- Reduce plotting time by switching to a faster plotter
- Reduce card reading time by obtaining a faster card reader
- Reduce card punching time by obtaining a faster card punch
- Reduce printing time by obtaining a faster printer
- Reduce computing time by changing to a faster CPU

Plotting

This is a somewhat special case; two plotting speeds are available, but they are tied to carriage sizes. The 1627 Model 1, with an 11-inch carriage, is twice as fast as the Model 2, which has a 29 1/2-inch carriage. However, most users have chosen one model or the other on the basis of carriage size, rather than speed, and are not in a position to change models just to increase speeds.

Card Reading

There are four different card readers that may be attached to the 1130 system, each with a different card-read time:

Reader	Milliseconds per card (approx.)
1442 Model 6	200
1442 Model 7	150
2501 Model A1	100
2501 Model A2	60

If your programs use standard FORTRAN, none of the specified card read time will be overlapped with any other activity.

If you have a 1442-6 on your 1130, for example, the time to read ten cards will be 10 X 200 or 2000 milliseconds. This is in addition to whatever manipulation must be performed on the data on those cards. In a FORTRAN program, the system must, at the very least, convert the Hollerith card codes to EBCDIC, break that down according to the specified FORMAT statement, and, finally, place the resulting data in the proper core location.

The rated speed of the 1442-6 is 300 cards per minute, but this assumes that the 1130 reads a card every 200 milliseconds. It is true that the reading of each card will take 200 milliseconds, but the system may not read a card every 200 milliseconds. If the intervening processing takes 100 milliseconds, it will read one card every 300 milliseconds, yielding a speed of 200 cards per minute.

You see, then, that rated I/O device speeds are difficult to use when evaluating potential system improvements. You must compare alternatives on the basis of the time per card that the CPU is prevented from doing something else.

Suppose you have a 1442-6, and you time one of your representative jobs. It reads 2100 cards, and runs for ten minutes (600,000 milliseconds). You know, from the timing table, that the 1130 must have spent 2100 X 200 or 420,000 milliseconds reading cards, and 600,000-420,000 or 180,000 milliseconds doing something else.

If you changed to a 1442-7, the card read time would drop to 2100 X 150 or 315,000 milliseconds, the "something else" would remain at 180,000 milliseconds, and the total run time would drop from 600,000 milliseconds to 495,000 milliseconds, or from ten minutes to about 8 1/4 minutes.

The 2501, because of its clutch arrangement, requires a special analysis. The 2501-A1, the 600-card-per-minute reader, will read at fixed speeds of

600 cpm (100 millisec)
300 cpm (200 millisec)
200 cpm (300 millisec)
150 cpm (400 millisec)
120 cpm (500 millisec)
100 cpm (600 millisec)
etc.

and the 2501-A2, the 1000-card-per-minute reader, will read at fixed speeds of

1000 cpm (60 millisec)
500 cpm (120 millisec)
333 cpm (180 millisec)
250 cpm (240 millisec)
200 cpm (300 millisec)
166 cpm (360 millisec)
etc.

To calculate the expected improvement in timing due to a 2501-A1, we must, as before, substitute 100 milliseconds for the 200 milliseconds (1442-6), to get 2100 x 100 or 210,000 milliseconds read time, add the 180,000 milliseconds other time, obtaining 390,000 milliseconds or 15 minutes. Dividing this into the number of cards read (3000), we find that this yields a rate of 323 cards per minute.

However, the clutch arrangement of the 2501-A1 will not allow it to run at 323 cards per minute, so the next lower speed (300 cpm) must be assumed. 2100 cards at 300 cpm yields a total time of seven minutes.

A similar analysis for the 2501-A2 gives a theoretical speed of 412 cpm, but, choosing the next lower speed, 333 cpm, the total run time is calculated as 6.6 minutes.

Card Punching

Three different card punches are available for use on the 1130 system; all three operate in the same mode, punching one column at a time.

Card Punch	Milliseconds per Card Column Punched or Spaced
1442 Model 6	12.5 plus 12.5 per column
1442 Model 7	6.5 plus 6.5 per column
1442 Model 5	6.5 plus 6.5 per column

Models 6 and 7 both read and punch; Model 5 only punches.

The overall speed is determined by the last column punched, rather than the number of columns punched. If you skip the first 20 columns and punch into the 21st, you have punched or spaced 21 columns and the time for that number will apply. Figure 90.10 gives the punching time for the three models, as they vary with the last column punched.

To continue the previous example, suppose that of the 2100 cards read, the program punched into

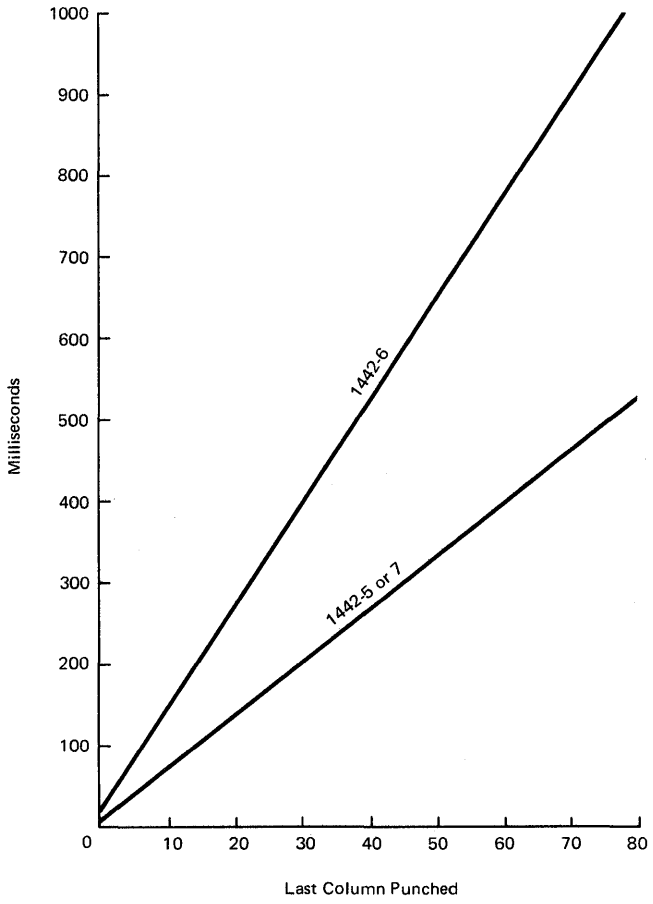


Figure 90.10.

the first 20 columns of 500 of them. For the 1442-6, the breakdown now becomes:

Operation	Milliseconds
Read 2100 cards	420,000
Punch 20 columns, 500 cards	131,250
Something else	48,750
Total	600,000

With the 1442-7, it becomes:

Read 2100 cards	210,000
Punch 20 col. 500 cards	68,250
Something else	48,750
Total	327,000

or 5.5 minutes

Note that the times shown apply only to the time actually spent punching. If the card being punched was previously read, the punch time may be simply added to the total. If the card being punched was not previously read, you must add 200 or 150 milliseconds of read time per card to allow for the feeding of cards past the read station, even though they were not read. This will always be the case with the 1442-5, which cannot read cards.

Printing

Three different line printers may be attached to the 1130 system, each having different print and skip times:

Printer	Approximate Time in Milliseconds	
	Print 1 Line	Skip 1 Line
1132	750	16
1403 Model 6 or Model 7	175 (3.6-microsecond CPU) 100 (2.2-microsecond CPU)	5

To illustrate the improvement possible in this area, let us take an example similar to the last one. Suppose you have a program that is essentially a card listing job. In ten minutes it reads 600 cards, prints 600 lines, and skips 100 lines. This can be broken down as follows:

Operation	Milliseconds
Read card (1442-6)	120,000
Print (1132) 600 @ 750	450,000
Skip 100 @ 16	1,600
"Everything else"	28,400
Total	600,000 (10 minutes)

If you replace the 1132 with a 1403-6, your print and skip times drop:

Print (600 @ 175)	105,000
Skip 100 @ 5	500

Added to the card read time and the "everything else" time, which remains the same, this results in a total time of 253,900 milliseconds, or about 4 1/4 minutes, as opposed to 10 minutes.

Note that despite this dramatic increase in throughput, the 1403 is printing at only 141 (600/4.25) lines per minute, far below its rated speed of 340. The 1132 was also below its rated speed of 80 lpm, since it printed 600 lines in ten minutes, or 60 lpm.

This shows again that rated speeds of cards per minute, lines per minute, etc, cannot be used when investigating alternate approaches to improving throughput. The only usable figure is the length of time the CPU is tied up-- that is, prevented from doing something else.

This example has assumed a 3.6-microsecond CPU; if the 1130 were a Model C (2.2 microseconds), a 1403 time of 100 milliseconds would be used. The overall time would drop to 3.5 minutes, for a speed of 172 lpm.

In all cases of 1403 timing investigations, you must calculate the resulting lines per minute to make sure that it does not exceed the rated speed of the

printer. For example, an analysis that indicates a 1403 speed of 450 lpm must be modified if the printer considered is a 1403-6, which cannot exceed 340 lpm.

The 750-millisecond time for the 1132 is based on standard FORTRAN, which is not overlapped.

The 176 (or 100) millisecond time for the 1403 consists mainly of the conversion from EBCDIC to 1403 code - the 1403 itself is buffered, and the time required to fill the buffer is quite small. The 176 milliseconds drops to 100 on a 2.2 microsecond CPU because of the faster CPU. See the next subsection.

Computing

The 1131 Central Processing Unit is available with one of two basic cycle times: 3.6 microseconds (Models 1 and 2) or 2.2 microseconds (Model 3). In more basic terms, the Model 3 will compute in .61 the time of the Model 1 or 2.

However, in this area it is not quite as easy to calculate the improvement to be expected from the faster CPU. The problem is that you often don't know how much time you were computing before (with a 3.6-microsecond CPU), in which case you cannot possibly tell what effect the 2.2-microsecond CPU will have.

Let us review the previous example: 1442-6 and 1132; ten minutes run time, read 600 cards, print 600 lines, skip 100 lines. The times in milliseconds, were:

Card read	120,000
Print and skip	451,600
"Everything else"	28,400
Total	600,000 (10 minutes)

The only way you determined the 28,400 milliseconds of "everything else" was by subtracting one known value (I/O times) from another known value (total run time).

If you know that all 28,400 milliseconds were spent in computing, you can calculate that the 2.2-microsecond CPU will do the same amount of work in 61% of that time, or 17,300 milliseconds, a reduction of 1,100 milliseconds or 1.8 minutes.

If those 28,400 milliseconds had included any disk operations, you could not have made the above estimate, since you would have had no way to determine the split between disk activity and computing. Aside from a good estimate, which would be quite an achievement, the only way to evaluate the effect of a new CPU in this case would be to take your program to such an 1130, run it, and time it.

Nonproductive Time that Can Be Reduced by Hardware Changes

By definition, three items fall into this category:

1. DISK seek, to get from one data record to the next
2. DISK seek, to get from data area to overlay area, and vice versa
3. DISK read to read overlay

All three items are necessary, but unproductive as far as you are concerned. Note that item 1 is required whenever you are using data files, item 3 whenever you are using overlays (SOCALs, LOCALs, and/or LINKs), and item 2 whenever you have both overlays and data files.

The time requirements of all three are difficult to determine, so an exact analysis will not be attempted, as with the card readers, punches, etc.

There are two hardware changes that will reduce these times:

1. More core storage, which will probably eliminate overlays, and therefore items 2 and 3.
2. More disk drives, which will allow a redistribution of files and overlays, and reduce items 1 and 2.

Additional Core Storage

Asside from programmer convenience, the main advantage in adding more core storage is its probable effect on performance, or run time. If you can execute your programs without any overlays, they can be expected to run at some "top" speed, governed mainly by the amount of productive work you want done.

Additional Disk Drives

Unlike core storage, which will probably be augmented to improve performance, additional disk drives are likely to be considered primarily to increase capability -- the capability to copy disks, the additional storage gained, etc. In many cases, however, the move from a single to a multiple disk 1130 system may be accompanied by a gain in throughput or performance. This will be true only if you plan your system so that the LOCAL/SOCAL overlays are on a cartridge other than the one on which the data files reside.

The location (cartridge ID number) of the data files is specified on the *FILES card. The LOCAL/SOCAL overlays are either (1) in Working Storage, if the program is executed immediately after compilation, or (2) with the mainline program (in UA or FX), if the program has been stored in core image format. If they are in Working Storage, the Monitor should be informed, with the JOB card, to use the Working Storage on a disk cartridge other than the data file cartridge. If they are with the mainline program (in UA or FX), you should make sure the core load is stored on a cartridge other than the data file cartridge.

SOME CASE STUDIES OF PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENTS

General

This section is designed to present a general guide to the principles involved in improving performance. It also shows many of the techniques used to fit a large problem into core, stressing how to do so without adversely affecting performance.

In order to best illustrate these principles, three case studies, or sample problems, are shown in detail:

- Case I -- a commercial job, typical of a payroll-type application
- Case II -- a commercial job, typical of an accounting type application
- Case III -- a scientific or technical job, involving mostly computation, with little or no input/output

All examples are based on an 8K 1130 system, but the principles are the same for any size machine.

Case I

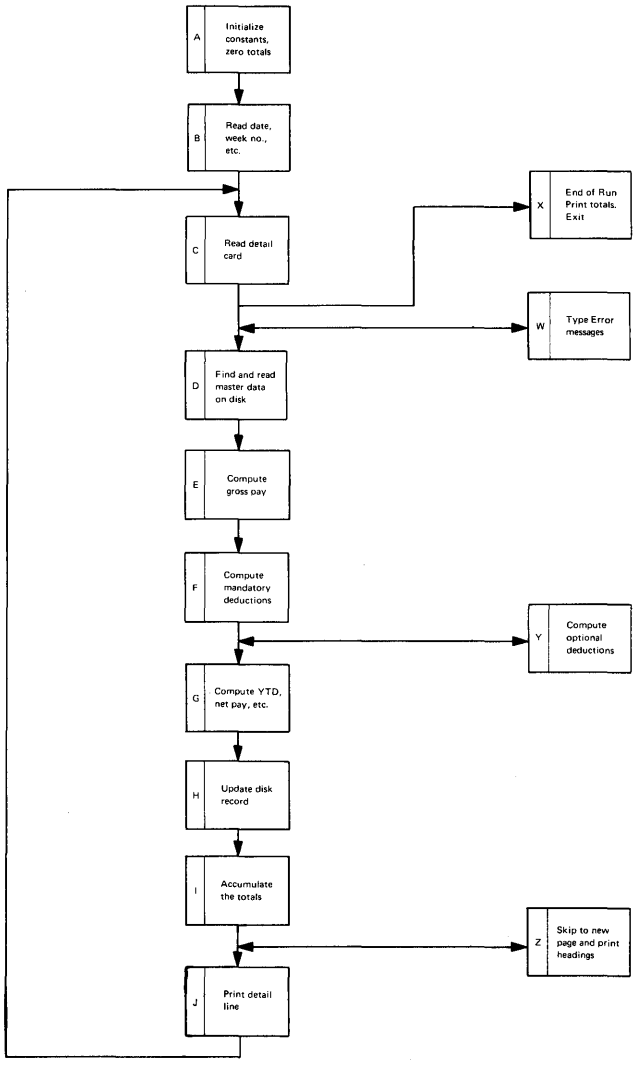
The first example uses a typical payroll-type application to show one approach to improving performance. It may not be the best approach, but it results in a set of programs that produce the desired result, fit in core storage, and operate at a near-maximum throughput rate.

A rough block diagram of this job, marked to show what action has been taken, is included with each step.

Step 1

The first time we are able to try to execute the program PAYRO we are informed that it does not fit in core storage, needing 388 (hexadecimal) or 904 words.

```
// XEQ PAYRO L  1
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  07AD (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01FC (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 40  0388 (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 18 PAYRO LOADING HAS BEEN TERMINATED
```

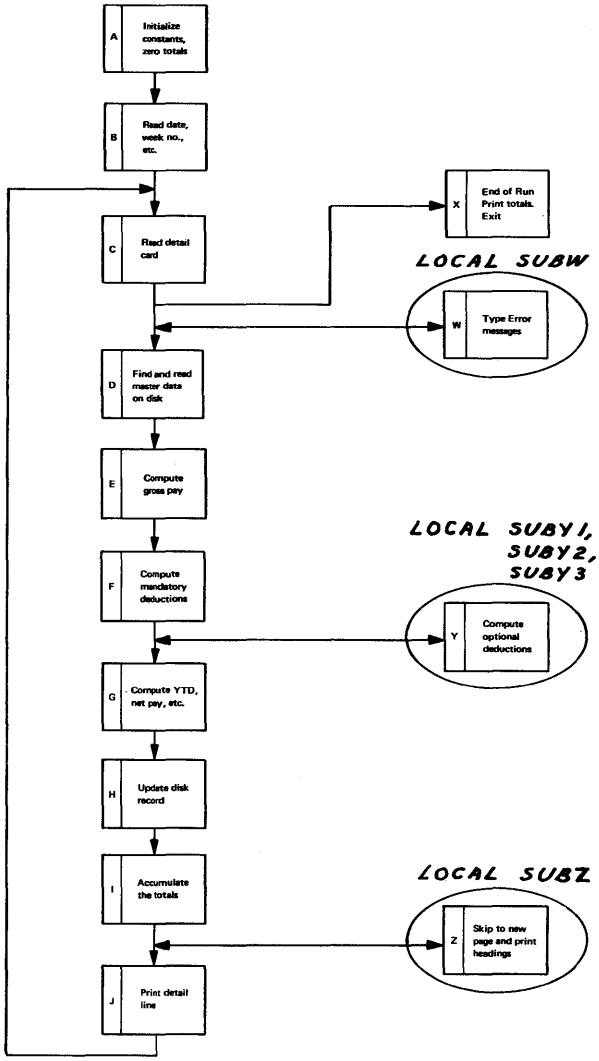


Step 2

In order to test the program, we make all five subroutines LOCAL and find that it now fits in core, but requires SOCAL level 2. Running of the program is accompanied with quite a bit of disk arm movement, which slows it down considerably.

The subroutines are:
SUBW -- Error message (hardly ever called)
SUBZ -- New page headings (once every 25 employees)
SUBY1 -- FICA routine (almost always called)
SUBY2 -- Special deductions (one out of every six employees).
SUBY3 -- Savings Bond deduction (one out of every three employees)

```
// XEQ PAYRO L  2
*FILES(1,FILEN)
*LOCALPAYRO,SUBW,SUBZ,SUBY1,SUBY2,SUBY3
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  03E3 (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01FC (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 41  00A4 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 DATSW  1902 SOCAL 1
 SUBY3  1701 LOCAL
 SUBY2  17C9 LOCAL
 SUBY1  17C9 LOCAL
 SUBZ   1701 LOCAL
 SUBW   1765 LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB  1EBB SOCAL 2
 EADDX  1883 SOCAL 1
 XDD    1988 SOCAL 1
 FARC   1966 SOCAL 1
 XMD    1924 SOCAL 1
 ELDX   1528
 NORM   1594
 HOLEZ  1E52 SOCAL 2
 EBCTB  1E4F SOCAL 2
 GETAD  1E06 SOCAL 2
 IFIX   1568
 PAUSE  18EC SOCAL 1
 ESBR   18D8 SOCAL 1
 EADD   187D SOCAL 1
 EDIV   1824 SOCAL 1
 EMPY   17F6 SOCAL 1
 EDVR   17DE SOCAL 1
 FLOAT  155E
 SUBSC  1540
 ESTO   1516
 ELD    152C
 PRNTZ  1D48 SOCAL 2
 CARDZ  1C9E SOCAL 2
 WRTYZ  1C62 SOCAL 2
 SFIO   18D9 SOCAL 2
 SDFIO  1885 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
 ILS01  1EC2
 ILS00  1EDD
 FLIPR  15DC
      14B7 (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```



Step 3

Studying the flowchart, we see that this program could be split into three smaller programs, or LINKS:

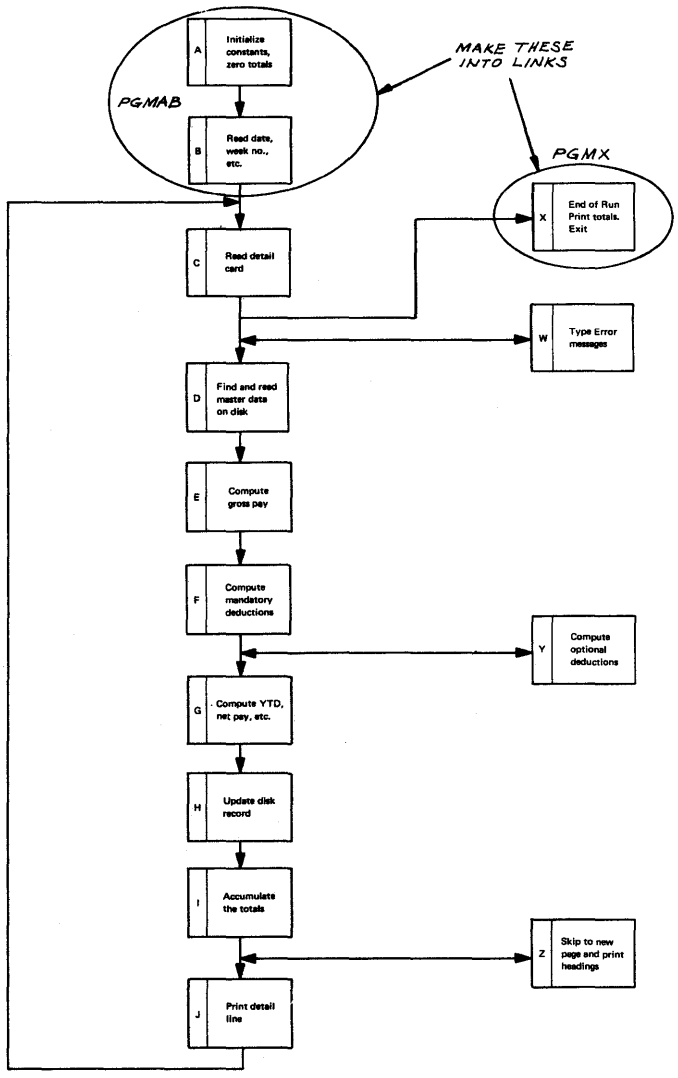
PGMAB, which is made up of blocks A and B

PGMX, which was block X

MAIN, which is the main program

Executing with no LOCALs, we find that the program MAIN requires SOCAL level 2 to fit into core, and that it runs no faster than before.

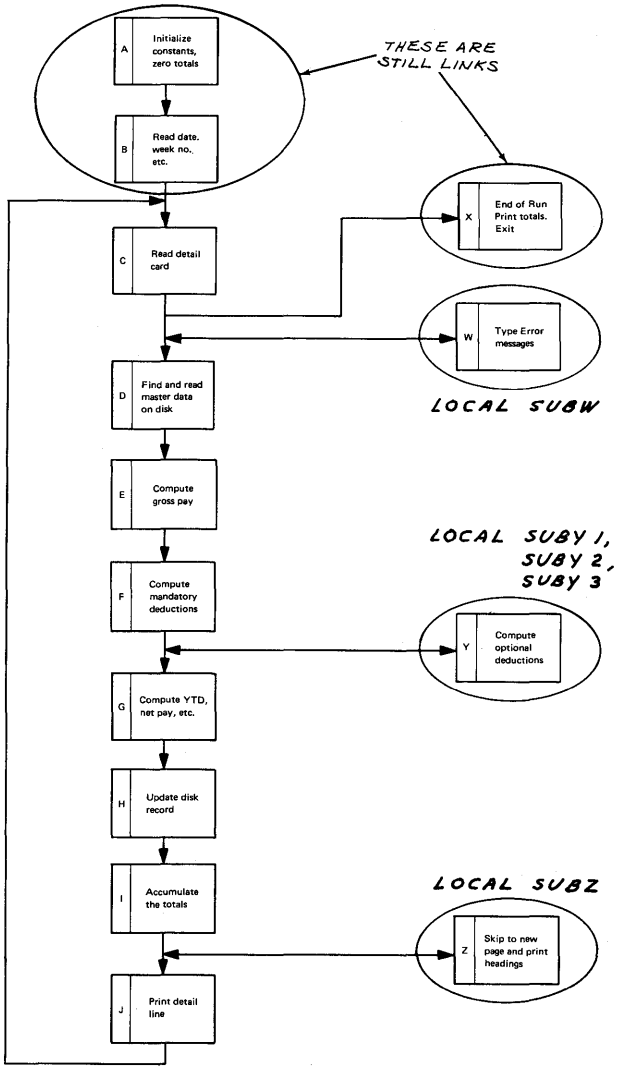
```
// XEQ MAIN  L  1
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  03C5 (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01FC (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 41  005E (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 SUBW   1753
 SUBZ   1627
 SUBY1  155F
 SUBY2  13CF
 SUBY3  123F
 DATSW  1946 SOCAL 1
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB  1EFF SOCAL 2
 EADDX  18C7 SOCAL 1
 XDD    19CC SOCAL 1
 FARC   19AA SOCAL 1
 XMD    1968 SOCAL 1
 ELDX   1140
 NORM   1788
 HOLEZ  1E96 SOCAL 2
 EBCTB  1E93 SOCAL 2
 GETAD  1E4A SOCAL 2
 IFIX   175C
 PAUSE  1930 SOCAL 1
 ESBR   191C SOCAL 1
 EADD   18C1 SOCAL 1
 EDIV   1868 SOCAL 1
 EMPY   183A SOCAL 1
 EDVR   1822 SOCAL 1
 FLOAT  1176
 SUBSC  1158
 ESTO   112E
 ELD    1144
 PRNTZ  1D8C SOCAL 2
 CARDZ  1CE2 SOCAL 2
 WRTYZ  1CA6 SOCAL 2
 SFIO   191D SOCAL 2
 SDFIO  18C9 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
 ILS01  1F06
 ILS00  1F21
 FLIPR  17B2
      10CF (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```



Step 4

Making all five subroutines LOCAL again, we find this is just enough to eliminate SOCALs, but does not speed up the program, since SUBY1, the FICA routine, is called for almost every employee and causes the disk arm to be moved from the data file area back to the overlay area, and vice versa.

```
// XEQ MAIN  L  2
*LOCALMAIN,SUBW,SUBZ,SUBY1,SUBY2,SUBY3
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 41  0004 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 DATSW  1B7E
 SUBY3  1E9F LOCAL
 SUBY2  1F67 LOCAL
 SUBY1  1F67 LOCAL
 SUBZ   1E9F LOCAL
 SUBW   1F03 LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB  1D59
 EADDX  1AFF
 XDD    1CDC
 FARC   1CBA
 XMD    1C78
 ELDX   1A12
 NORM   1C4E
 HOLEZ  1C18
 EBCTB  1C15
 GETAD  1BCC
 IFIX   1BA0
 PAUSE  1B68
 ESBR   1B54
 EADD   1AF9
 EDIV   1AA0
 EMPY   1A72
 EDVR   1A5A
 FLOAT  1A48
 SUBSC  1A2A
 ESTO   1A00
 ELD    1A16
 PRNTZ  193E
 CARDZ  1894
 WRTYZ  1858
 SFIO   14CF
 SDFIO  11D9
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
 ILS01  1F74
 ILS00  1F8F
 FLIPR  1D7A
      10CF (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```



Step 5

Since SUBY1 as a LOCAL is slowing down the program, we must try to keep it in core storage at all times. However, the previous load map showed that there are only four words unused by the package, and SUBY1 is 400 words long. If we could free up 396 words, SUBY1 could be taken out of the LOCAL category, and the program would be speeded up.

(Realize, of course, that SUBY1 could easily be made non-LOCAL, but that SOCALs would then be required. The secret is to avoid both SOCALs and a LOCAL SUBY1).

Note also that SOCALs would cause the program to run even slower. Since the sequence of the program is a repetition of

a. I/O
b. DISK
c. ARITH, including SUBY1
d. DISK
e. ARITH
f. I/O

SOCAL level 1 will cause the disk arm to be moved between the data area and the overlay area between steps

a and b
b and c
c and d
d and e

while SUBY1 as a LOCAL will require such a movement only between steps

b and c
c and d

After considerable study, we decide that there is very little that can be done to further improve the performance of this program, unless, of course, we can reduce its size by 396-100 or 296 words (Flipper would no longer be required).

Because SUBY1 handles the FICA calculation, it will be called less and less as the year progresses, since more employees will attain a "paid up" status. (This won't be true, however, if your test for "paid-up" is done inside the subroutine! It should be made in the mainline program, otherwise SUBY1 will be called every time, whether the employee gets a deduction or not.)

Discussion of Case I

Here you have seen one way to fit this "typical" program into core, at little or no sacrifice in throughput. There may be other ways to do the same thing; there may be better ways.

Basically, common sense is used -- a step-by-step segmentation of the program, with each step having a greater effect on performance:

1. Make LOCALs out of those subroutines that are not always called.
2. Break the program into LINKs.

Case II

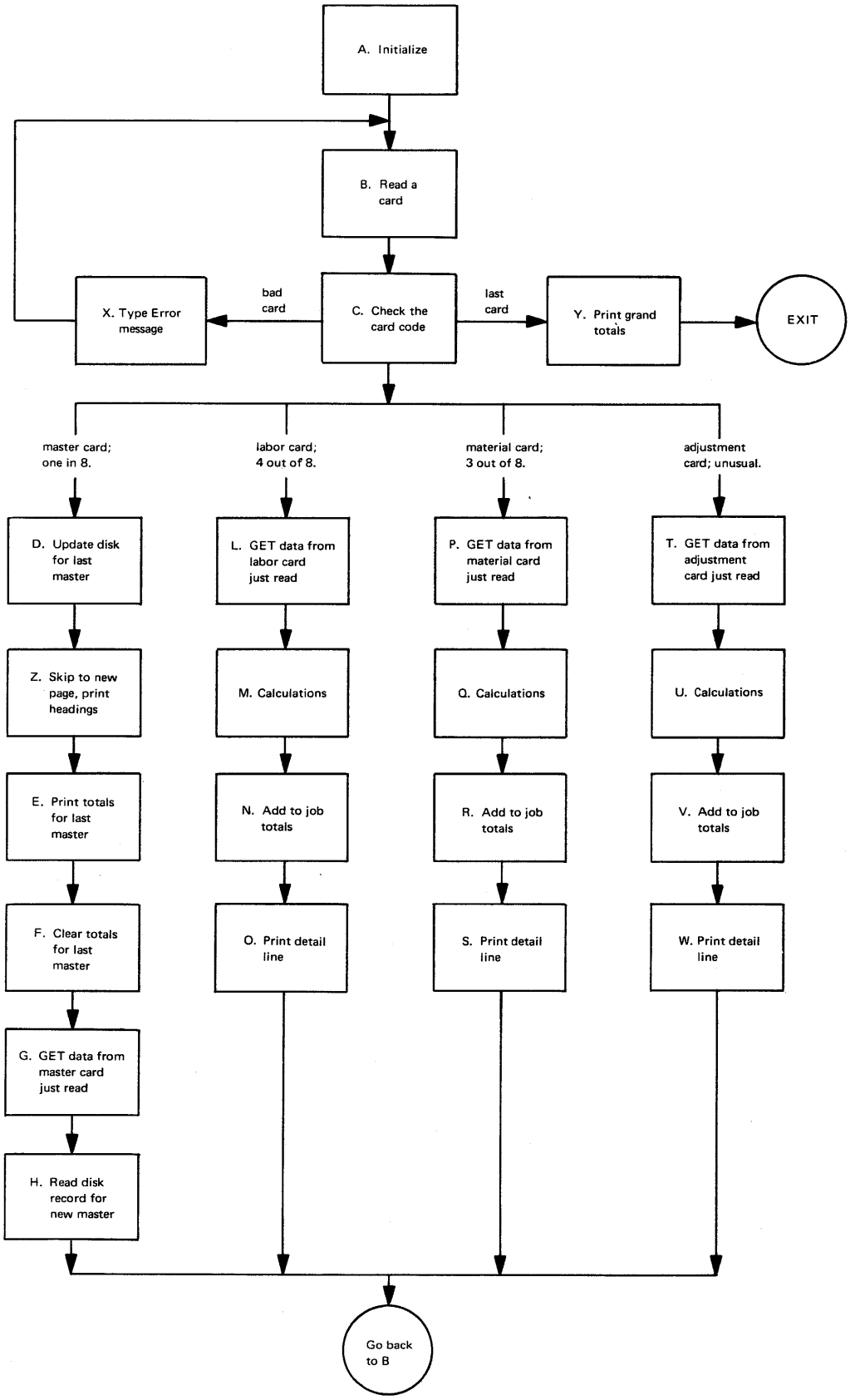
This program is of a basically different organization than Case I. It is typical of a job in which the input consists of a master card followed by a variable number of detail cards, with the sequence repeated many times. Some good examples of this type of job are billing, accounting, cost systems, etc.

Assume that this application is some type of project cost system, with a master card for each project, followed by a series of detail or change cards pertaining to that project. These detail cards may be due to labor or materials charges against the project or, in a few cases, an accounting department adjustment.

Step 1

After several tries, the program COST achieves a successful compilation, only to be met by the R40 and R18 messages shown. Even after SOCAL level 2 has been attempted, this program package exceeds core storage by 43E or 1086 words.

```
// XEQ COST  L  1
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  084C (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01E6 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 40  043E (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 18 COST  LOADING HAS BEEN TERMINATED
```


A. Initialize
B. Read a card
C. Check the card code
bad card
X. Type Error message
last card
Y. Print grand totals
EXIT
master card; one in 8.
labor card; 4 out of 8.
material card; 3 out of 8.
adjustment card; unusual.
D. Update disk for last master
Z. Skip to new page, print headings
E. Print totals for last master
F. Clear totals for last master
G. GET data from master card just read
H. Read disk record for new master
L. GET data from labor card just read
M. Calculations
N. Add to job totals
O. Print detail line
P. GET data from material card just read
Q. Calculations
R. Add to job totals
S. Print detail line
T. GET data from adjustment card just read
U. Calculations
V. Add to job totals
W. Print detail line
Go back to B

Step 2

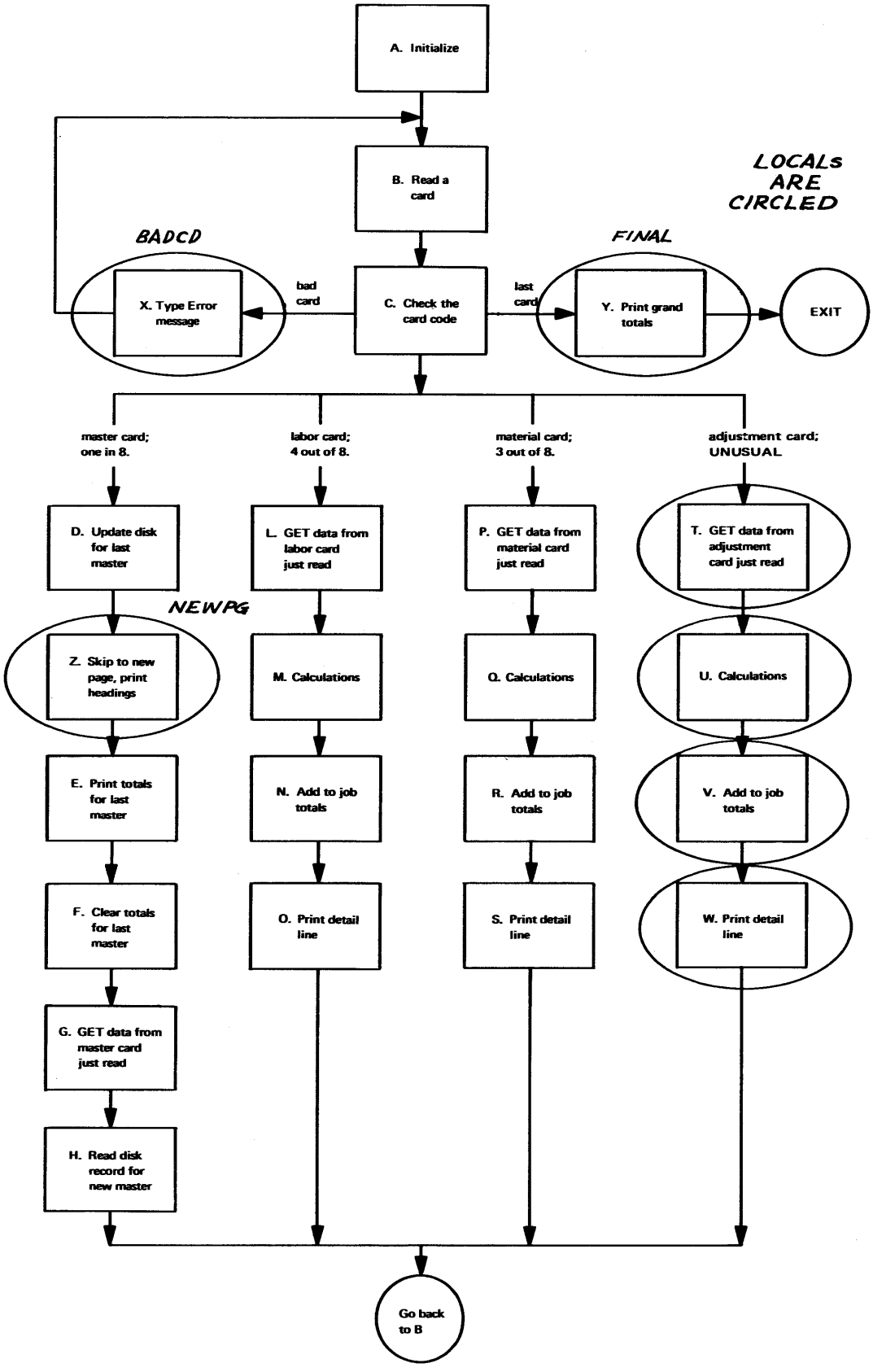
Observing the flowchart, we see that we are fortunate in having several subroutines that are seldom, if ever, called:

- BADCD, the illegal card message
- NEWPG, the skip to new page routine
- FINAL, the final total routine
- T, U, V, W, four routines involved in the processing of an accounting adjustment card (an unusual occurrence)

These seven subroutines are ideal LOCALs, and, executing COST in this mode, we get the load map shown. The program (at SOCAL level 2) runs, but quite slowly. Checking the flowchart, we see we have two blocks involving disk READs/WRITEs, D and H, bracketing blocks E, F, and G, which use both arithmetic and non-disk I/O functions. Obviously, this will cause continuous disk arm movement between the disk data file area and the overlay area.

The only way we can reduce this time-consuming function is to eliminate the need for overlays between the disk READ and WRITE.

```
// XEQ COST  L  2
*FILES(1,FILEN)
*LOCALCOST,FINAL,NEWPG,BADCD,T,U,V,W
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A?
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  02FE (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01E6 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 41  0174 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 G       141D
 F       1355
 E       12F1
 D       128D
 DATSW   181A SOCAL 1
 W       162F LOCAL
 V       15CB LOCAL
 U       16F7 LOCAL
 T       15CB LOCAL
 BADCD   1567 LOCAL
 NEWPG   162F LOCAL
 FINAL   1693 LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB   1DE9 SOCAL 2
 EADDX   17B1 SOCAL 1
 XDD     18A0 SOCAL 1
 FARC    187E SOCAL 1
 XMD     183C SOCAL 1
 ELDX    10C6
 NORM    1452
 HOLEZ   1D80 SOCAL 2
 EBCTB   1D7D SOCAL 2
 GETAD   1D34 SOCAL 2
 IFIX    1426
 ESBR    1806 SOCAL 1
 EADD    17AB SOCAL 1
 EDIV    1752 SOCAL 1
 EMPY    1724 SOCAL 1
 EDVR    170C SOCAL 1
 FLOAT   10FC
 SUBSC   10DE
 ESTO    10B4
 ELD     10CA
 PRNTZ   1C76 SOCAL 2
 CARDZ   1BCC SOCAL 2
 WRTYZ   1B90 SOCAL 2
 SFIO    1807 SOCAL 2
 SDFIO   17B3 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04   00C4
 ILS02   00B3
 ILS01   1DF0
 ILS00   1E0B
 FLIPR   14A6
      104B (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

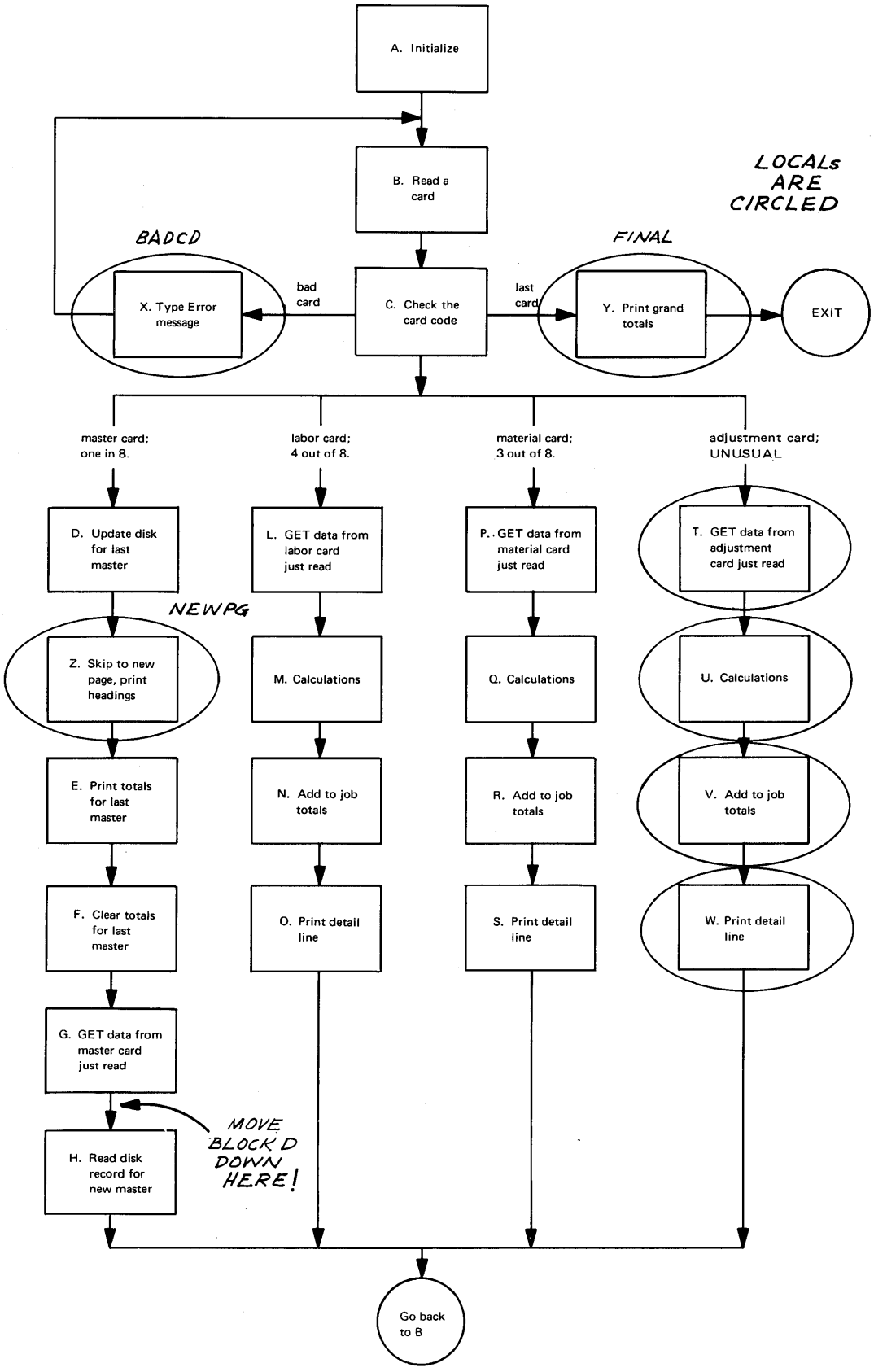

A. Initialize
B. Read a card
LOCALs ARE CIRCLED
BADCD
FINAL
X. Type Error message
bad card
C. Check the card code
last card
Y. Print grand totals
EXIT
master card; one in 8.
labor card; 4 out of 8.
material card; 3 out of 8.
adjustment card; UNUSUAL
D. Update disk for last master
L. GET data from labor card just read
P. GET data from material card just read
T. GET data from adjustment card just read
NEWPG
Z. Skip to new page, print headings
M. Calculations
Q. Calculations
U. Calculations
E. Print totals for last master
N. Add to job totals
R. Add to job totals
V. Add to job totals
F. Clear totals for last master
O. Print detail line
S. Print detail line
W. Print detail line
G. GET data from master card just read
H. Read disk record for new master
Go back to B

Step 3

As mentioned in Step 2, we now realize that there is no real reason for blocks E, F, and G to be sandwiched between the disk READ and the disk WRITE.

Rearranging the program slightly, to make the sequence Z, E, F, G, D, H, we reexecute and find that the program runs substantially faster than before. There is still some disk arm movement, but it is not quite as frequent. Actually, as long as we have disk data files and overlays, there will be some disk arm movement. The goal is to reduce it, if it cannot be eliminated altogether.

```
// XEQ COST  L  2
*FILES(1,FILEN)
*LOCALCOST,FINAL,NEWPG,BADCD,T,U,V,W
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  02FE (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01E6 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 47  0174 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 G       141D
 F       1355
 E       12F1
 D       128D
 DATSW   181A SOCAL 1
 W       162F LOCAL
 V       15CB LOCAL
 U       16F7 LOCAL
 T       15CB LOCAL
 BADCD   1567 LOCAL
 NEWPG   162F LOCAL
 FINAL   1693 LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB   1DE9 SOCAL 2
 EADDX   17B1 SOCAL 1
 XDD     18A0 SOCAL 1
 FARC    187E SOCAL 1
 XMD     183C SOCAL 1
 ELDX    10C6
 NORM    1452
 HOLEZ   1D80 SOCAL 2
 EBCTB   1D7D SOCAL 2
 GETAD   1D34 SOCAL 2
 IFIX    1426
 ESBR    1806 SOCAL 1
 EADD    17AB SOCAL 1
 EDIV    1752 SOCAL 1
 EMPY    1724 SOCAL 1
 EDVR    170C SOCAL 1
 FLOAT   10FC
 SUBSC   10DE
 ESTO    10B4
 ELD     10CA
 PRNTZ   1C76 SOCAL 2
 CARDZ   1BCC SOCAL 2
 WRTYZ   1B90 SOCAL 2
 SFIO    1807 SOCAL 2
 SDFIO   17B3 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04   00C4
 ILS02   00B3
 ILS01   1DF0
 ILS00   1E0B
 FLIPR   14A6
      104B (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

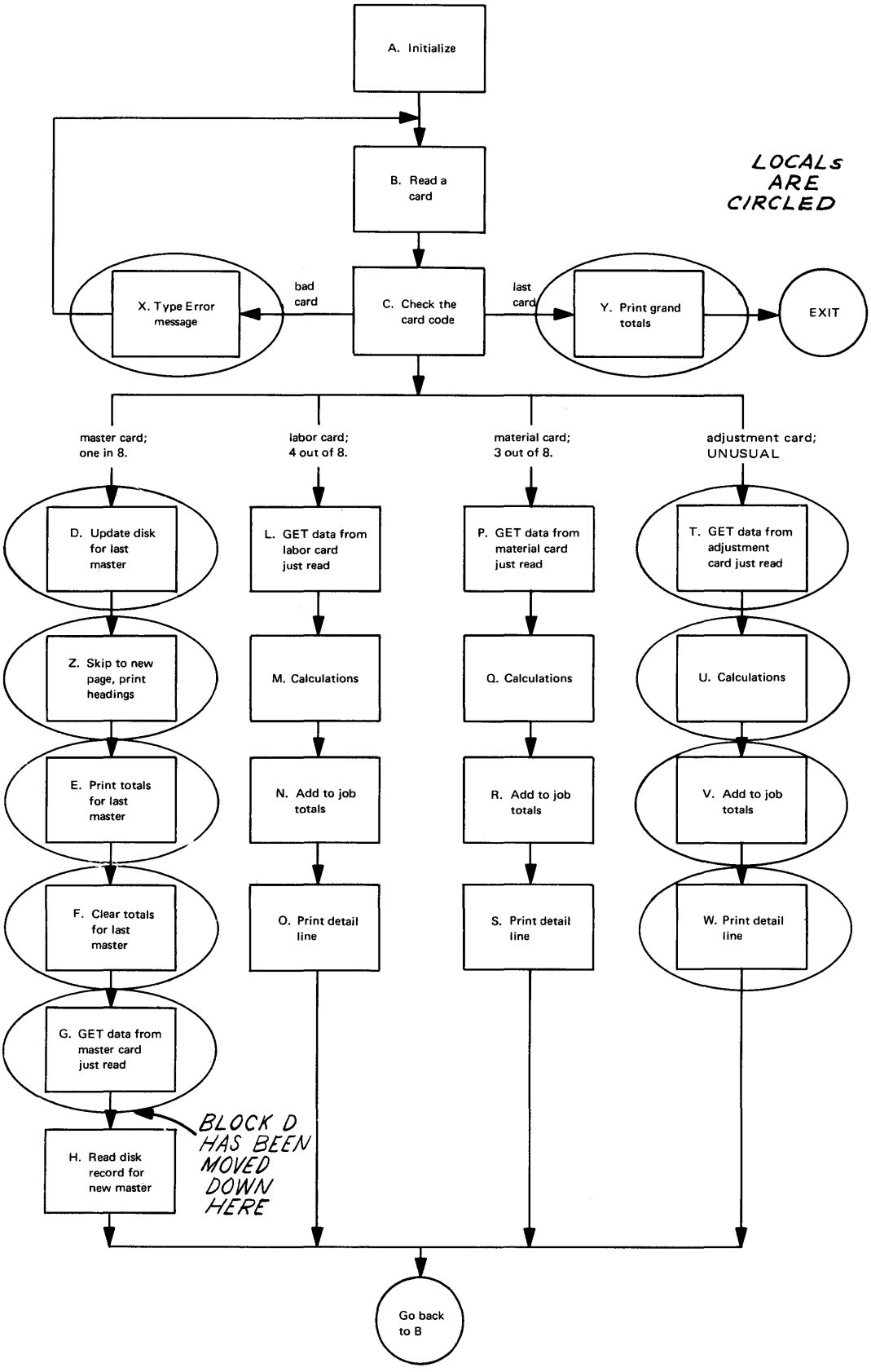

A. Initialize
B. Read a card
LOCALs ARE CIRCLED
BADCD
X. Type Error message
bad card
C. Check the card code
last card
FINAL
Y. Print grand totals
EXIT
master card; one in 8.
labor card; 4 out of 8.
material card; 3 out of 8.
adjustment card; UNUSUAL
D. Update disk for last master
L. GET data from labor card just read
P. GET data from material card just read
T. GET data from adjustment card just read
NEWPG
Z. Skip to new page, print headings
M. Calculations
Q. Calculations
U. Calculations
E. Print totals for last master
N. Add to job totals
R. Add to job totals
V. Add to job totals
F. Clear totals for last master
O. Print detail line
S. Print detail line
W. Print detail line
G. GET data from master card just read
MOVE BLOCK D DOWN HERE!
H. Read disk record for new master
Go back to B

Step 4

In step 3, we have prevented overlays from occurring between disk READs/WRITEs. The next logical step is to eliminate overlays altogether, or, if that is impossible, limit overlays to LOCALs or SOCALs that are infrequently called.

Further study of the flowchart reveals that a master card is somewhat exceptional, even though every eighth card or so is a master card. Adding D, E, F, and G to the LOCAL list, we again execute and find that the program now runs even faster than before, with disk arm movement only when a master card is encountered. The load map shows that SOCALs are no longer required.

```
// XEQ COST  L  2
*LOCALCOST,FINAL,NEWPG,BADCD,T,U,V,W,D,E,F,G
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 41  000A (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 DATSW  1AEE
 G      1E33 LOCAL
 F      1DCF LOCAL
 E      1DCF LOCAL
 D      1EFB LOCAL
 W      1E97 LOCAL
 V      1E33 LOCAL
 U      1F5F LOCAL
 T      1E33 LOCAL
 BADCD  1DCF LOCAL
 NEWPG  1E97 LOCAL
 FINAL  1EFB LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 HOLTB  1CC9
 EADDX  1A85
 XDD    1C4C
 FARC   1C2A
 XMD    1BE8
 ELDX   1998
 NORM   1BBE
 HOLEZ  1B88
 EBCTB  1B85
 GETAD  1B3C
 IFIX   1B10
 ESBR   1ADA
 EADD   1A7F
 EDIV   1A26
 EMPY   19F8
 EDVR   19E0
 FLOAT  19CE
 SUBSC  19B0
 ESTO   1986
 ELD    199C
 PRNTZ  18C4
 CARDZ  181A
 WRTYZ  17DE
 SFIO   1455
 SDFIO  115F
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
 ILS01  1F6C
 ILS00  1F87
 FLIPR  1D0E
      104B (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```


A. Initialize
B. Read a card
LOCALs ARE CIRCLED
C. Check the card code
bad card
X. Type Error message
last card
Y. Print grand totals
EXIT
master card; one in 8.
labor card; 4 out of 8.
material card; 3 out of 8.
adjustment card; UNUSUAL
D. Update disk for last master
Z. Skip to new page, print headings
E. Print totals for last master
F. Clear totals for last master
G. GET data from master card just read
H. Read disk record for new master
BLOCK D HAS BEEN MOVED DOWN HERE
L. GET data from labor card just read
M. Calculations
N. Add to job totals
O. Print detail line
P. GET data from material card just read
Q. Calculations
R. Add to job totals
S. Print detail line
T. GET data from adjustment card just read
U. Calculations
V. Add to job totals
W. Print detail line
Go back to B

Discussion of Case II

Here, as in Case I, we take a similar series of common-sense steps to improve performance:

1. Make the exception subroutines LOCAL.
2. If that still requires SOCALs, consider separating the program into LINKs. In this case, this approach did not seem to be too effective.
3. Since SOCALs seem unavoidable, we try to rearrange our program steps to reduce their effect.

Case III

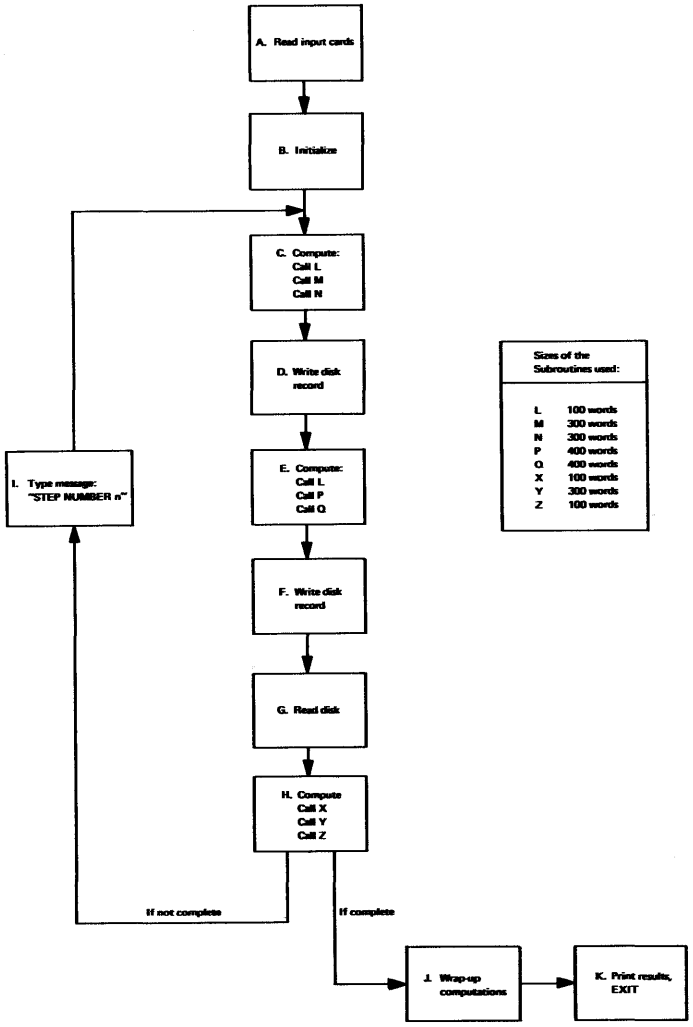
Here you have a technically oriented job, with a great deal of iterative or trial-and-error computation and very little input/output. The program reads a deck of ten cards, computes for quite some time, then prints a page of answers. On the basis of a similar program, you estimate that the computations should take about 15 minutes.

Section	Subsections		Page
90	40	30	02

Step 1

Attempting to execute this program, TECH, for the first time, we are informed that it exceeds core storage by 2A0 or 528 words.

```
// XEQ TECH  L  1
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILE.1
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  068C (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01C4 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  06E8 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 40  02A0 (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 18 TECH  LOADING HAS BEEN TERMINATED
```



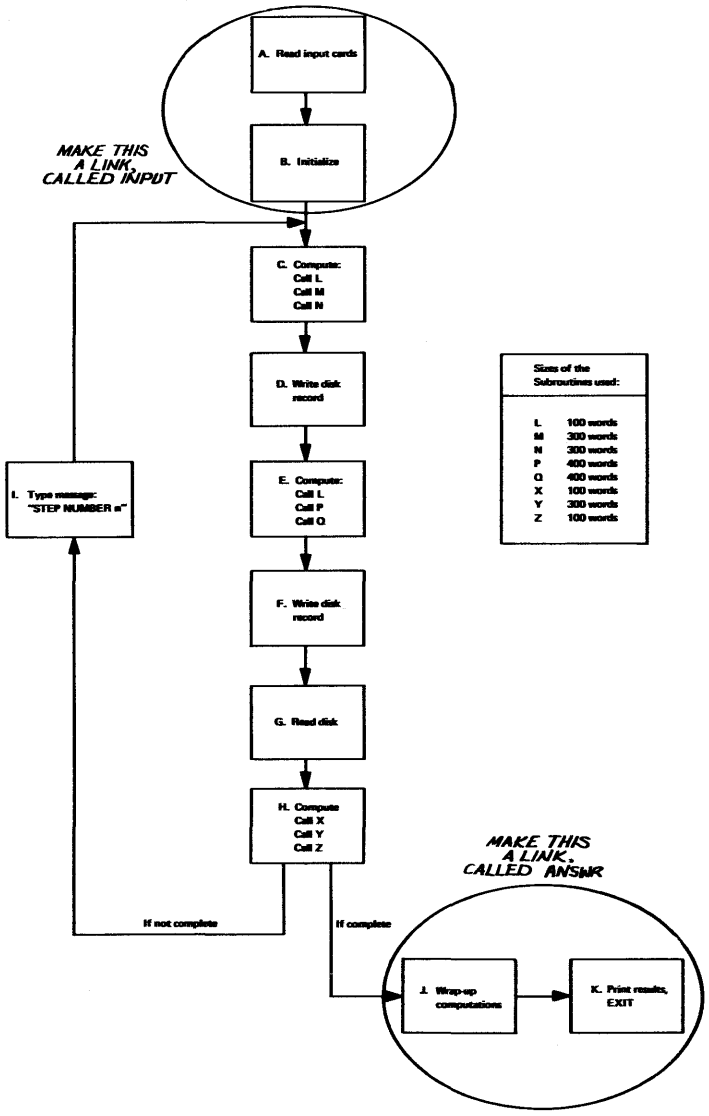
Step 2

Noting that the program may be split into three separate programs or LINKs, we make some minor modifications and obtain:

- INPUT, made up of the first two blocks, A and B
- ANSWR, the printing of the results, formerly block K
- TECH1, the main program

Executing, we find that INPUT and ANSWR fit with room to spare, but TECH1 is still too large; however, it now exceeds core by only 8E or 142 words.

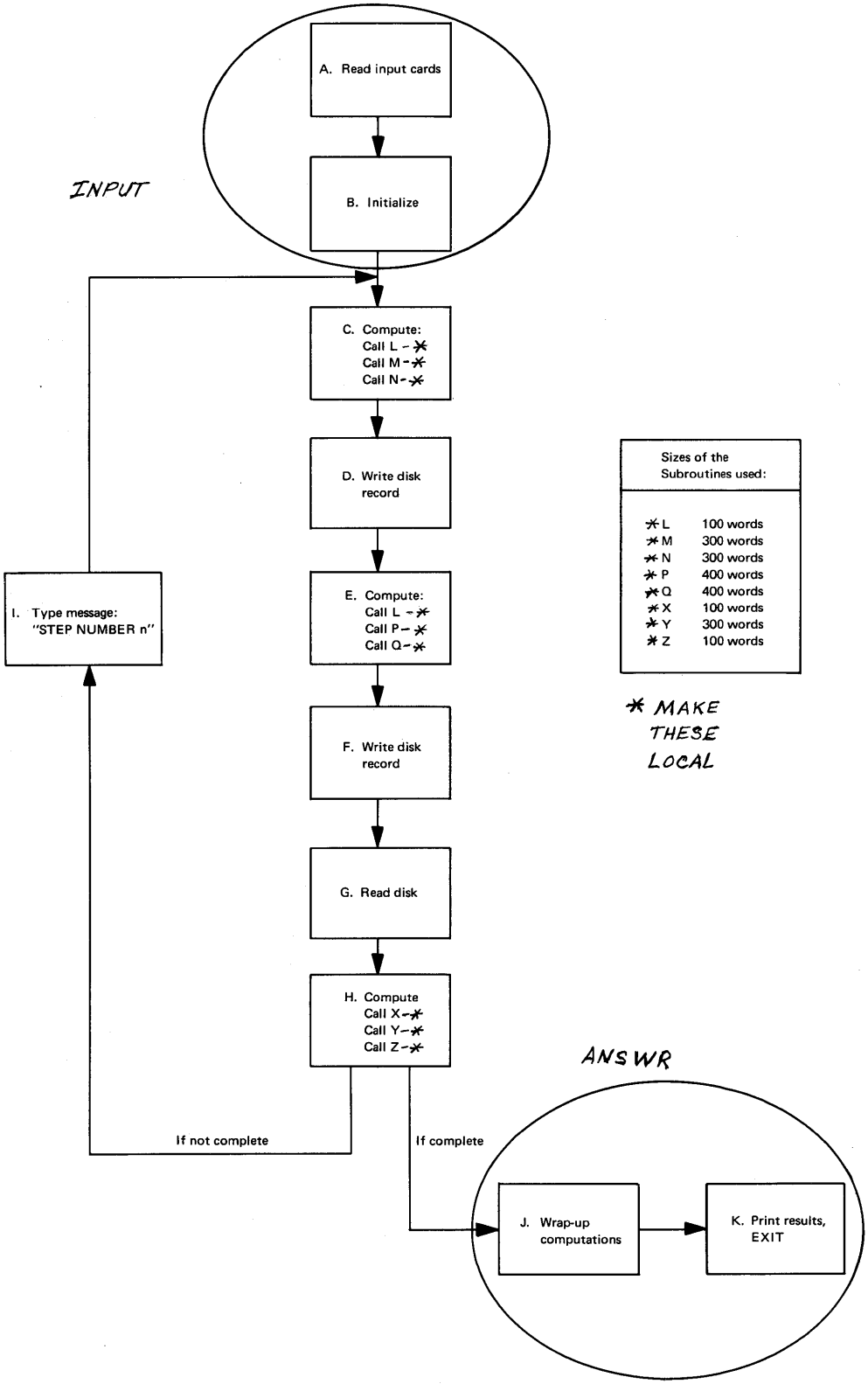
```
// XEQ TECH1 L
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 0000  0001  7061  01A7
   22 0001  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  047A (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01C4 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  0514 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 40  008E (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 18 TECH1 LOADING HAS BEEN TERMINATED
```



Step 3

Reexecuting TECH1 with all eight subroutines as LOCALs (L, M, N, P, Q, X, Y, Z), we learn from the load map that this strategy not only gets the program into core storage, but eliminates the need for SOCALs. It runs quite slowly, however, and takes nearly 60 minutes to go to completion, compared with the 15 minutes we expected. The sound of the disk arm moving gives us a clue to what is wrong: we have caused an overlay to be placed between the disk READ/WRITE commands. In this case the LOCAL subroutines L, P, and Q are the culprits.

```
// XEQ TECH1 L  2
*FILES(1,FILEN)
*LOCALTECH1,L,M,N,P,Q,X,Y,Z
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 41  0132 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 Z       1D4D LOCAL
 Y       1E15 LOCAL
 X       1D4D LOCAL
 Q       1E79 LOCAL
 P       1E79 LOCAL
 N       1E15 LOCAL
 M       1E15 LOCAL
 L       1D4D LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 EADDX   1AA3
 XDD     1C12
 FARC    1BF0
 XMD     1BAE
 ELDX    19B6
 NORM    1B84
 EBCTB   1B81
 GETAD   1B38
 IFIX    1B0C
 ESBR    1AF8
 EADD    1A9D
 EDIV    1A44
 EMPY    1A16
 EDVR    19FE
 FLOAT   19EC
 SUBSC   19CE
 ESTO    19A4
 ELD     19BA
 WRTYZ   1964
 SFIO    15DB
 SDFIO   12E5
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04   00C4
 ILS02   00B3
 FLIPR   1C8C
      11DA (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

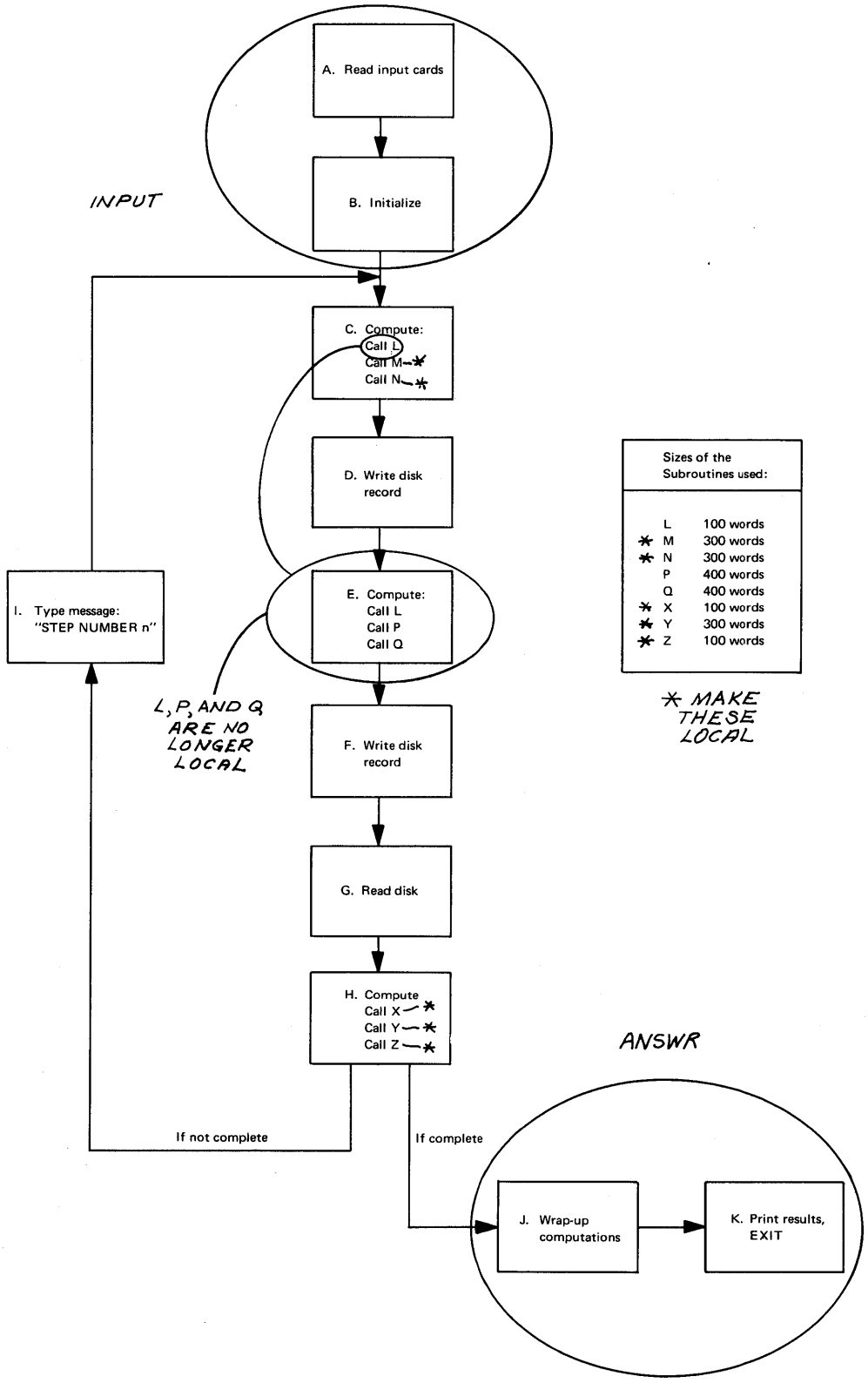

INPUT
A. Read input cards
B. Initialize
C. Compute:
Call L - *
Call M - *
Call N - *
D. Write disk record
E. Compute:
Call L - *
Call P - *
Call Q - *
F. Write disk record
G. Read disk
H. Compute
Call X - *
Call Y - *
Call Z - *
I. Type message: "STEP NUMBER n"
If not complete
If complete
ANSWR
J. Wrap-up computations
K. Print results, EXIT
Sizes of the Subroutines used:
*L 100 words
*M 300 words
*N 300 words
*P 400 words
*Q 400 words
*X 100 words
*Y 300 words
*Z 100 words
* MAKE THESE LOCAL

Step 4

Leaving L, P, and Q off the LOCAL card, we again execute TECH1, but find that it runs even more slowly, since we now need SOCAL level 2 to fit into core storage.

```
// XEQ TECH1 L  2
*LOCALTECH1,M,N,X,Y,Z
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 40  01DC (HEX) ADDITIONAL CORE REQUIRD
R 43  01C4 (HEX) ARITH/FUNC SOCAL WD CNT
R 44  0514 (HEX) FI/O, I/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 45  02A2 (HEX) DISK FI/O SOCAL WD CNT
R 41  0274 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 L       1607
 P       15A3
 Q       1413
 Z       1745 LOCAL
 Y       180D LOCAL
 X       1745 LOCAL
 N       180D LOCAL
 M       180D LOCAL
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 EADDX   18C5 SOCAL 1
 XDD     1992 SOCAL 1
 FARC    1970 SOCAL 1
 XMD     192E SOCAL 1
 ELDX    124C
 NORM    163C
 EBCTB   1D29 SOCAL 2
 GETAD   1CE0 SOCAL 2
 IFIX    1610
 ESBR    191A SOCAL 1
 EADD    18BF SOCAL 1
 EDIV    1866 SOCAL 1
 EMPY    1838 SOCAL 1
 EDVR    1820 SOCAL 1
 FLOAT   1282
 SUBSC   1264
 ESTO    123A
 ELD     1250
 WRTYZ   1CA4 SOCAL 2
 SFIO    191B SOCAL 2
 SDFIO   18C7 SOCAL 3
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04   00C4
 ILS02   00B3
 FLIPR   1684
      11DA (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

At this point, you have a choice: accept the program as a one-hour job, or work on it further to speed it up. Since it is used quite often, you decide to give it one last check.


INPUT
A. Read input cards
B. Initialize
C. Compute:
Call L
Call M
Call N
D. Write disk record
E. Compute:
Call L
Call P
Call Q
F. Write disk record
G. Read disk
H. Compute
Call X
Call Y
Call Z
I. Type message: "STEP NUMBER n"
If not complete
If complete
ANSWR
J. Wrap-up computations
K. Print results, EXIT
L, P, AND Q ARE NO LONGER LOCAL
Sizes of the Subroutines used:
L 100 words
M 300 words
N 300 words
P 400 words
Q 400 words
X 100 words
Y 300 words
Z 100 words
* MAKE THESE LOCAL

Step 5

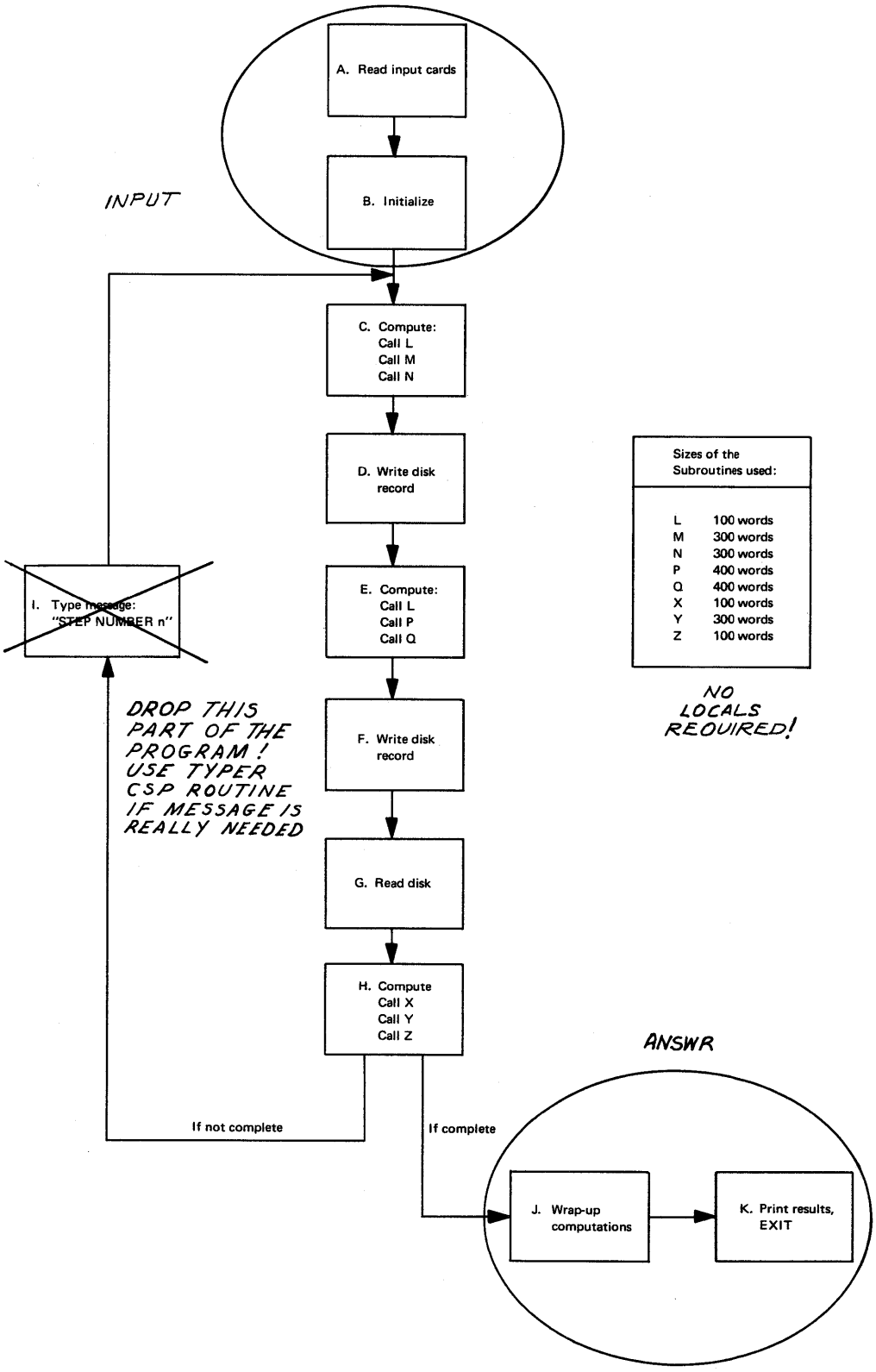
After some study, we notice that the typewritten message, block I, is the only non-disk input/output in the entire program. It looks innocent enough, but because of it, the entire Format Interpreter (SFIO) is required, plus the Typewriter routine (WRTYZ) and the typewriter code conversion routine (EBCTB). The total size of this package may be determined from the previous R44 message -- 514 (hexadecimal) or 1300 words.

```
// XEQ TECH2 L  1
*FILES(1,FILEN)
FILES ALLOCATION
    1 01A3  0001  7061 FILEN
   22 0000  0001  7061  01A7
STORAGE ALLOCATION
R 41  00F2 (HEX) WDS UNUSED BY CORE LOAD
CALL TRANSFER VECTOR
 N      1CA3
 M      1B77
 L      1A4B
 P      19E7
 Q      1857
 Z      16C7
 Y      1663
 X      1537
LIBF TRANSFER VECTOR
 EADDX  1D63
 XDD    1E88
 FARC   1E66
 XMD    1E24
 ELDX   1DCA
 NORM   1DFA
 ESBR   1DE6
 ESTO   1DB8
 EADD   1D5D
 EDIV   1D04
 EMPY   1CD6
 EDVR   1CBE
 FLOAT  1CAC
 SUBSC  14BE
 SDFIO  12CB
SYSTEM SUBROUTINES
 ILS04  00C4
 ILS02  00B3
      11D7 (HEX) IS THE EXECUTION ADDR
```

Removing that message -- and the *IOCS (TYPEWRITER) Card! -- we recompile the program (calling it TECH2) and find, on execution, that it runs with no SOCALs or LOCALs.

It now executes to completion in 15 minutes, as we hoped, and the disk arm movement is reduced to an occasional "click" as it moves from one cylinder to the next in the data file area.

If a typewritten message is really needed, consider using the TYPER routine of CSP - it is quite small and does not use SFIO.


INPUT
A. Read input cards
B. Initialize
C. Compute:
Call L
Call M
Call N
D. Write disk record
E. Compute:
Call L
Call P
Call Q
F. Write disk record
G. Read disk
H. Compute
Call X
Call Y
Call Z
I. Type message:
"STEP NUMBER n"
DROP THIS PART OF THE PROGRAM! USE TYPER CSP ROUTINE IF MESSAGE IS REALLY NEEDED
If not complete
If complete
ANSWR
J. Wrap-up computations
K. Print results, EXIT
Sizes of the Subroutines used:
L 100 words
M 300 words
N 300 words
P 400 words
Q 400 words
X 100 words
Y 300 words
Z 100 words
NO LOCALS REQUIRED!

Discussion of Case III

This type program, although quite different from the previous two cases, is analyzed in much the same way:

1. The main program is split into three LINKs: Input, Processing, and Output.
2. Since all subprograms are called during each pass, we try to LOCALize only those that do not appear inside the main disk READ/WRITE loop.
3. With excessive overlays still required, we attack the main program and try to shorten it or eliminate some of the subroutines it uses.

	No . SOCAL's . LOCAL's . LINK's	SOCAL's, LOCAL's and/or LINK's are used		
		Overlays Limited to Seldom-Used Blocks	Overlays Used Continuously, But Not in between Disk Statements	Overlays Used in between Disk Read/Write Statements
No Disk Data Files	Program will run at some basic "Top Speed".	Program will run at less than "Top Speed", but probably not enough to be noticed.		
Small to Medium-Size Files Near WS (at the End of WS)	Program will run at some basic "Top Speed".	Program will run at less than "Top Speed", but probably not enough to be noticed.	Program will run noticeably below "Top Speed", but not too much, since overlay area is not too far away from data file area.	Program will run slowly; many arm movements of short distance will be needed.
Very Large Disk Data Files, or Small Files Deep inside UA	Program will run at some basic "Top Speed".	Program will run at less than "Top Speed", but probably not enough to be noticed.	Program will run slowly, since overlay area is proportionately further away from data file area.	The combination of many arm movements, and long distances, will cause this type program to run considerably below "Top Speed". Worst case!

Figure 90.11.

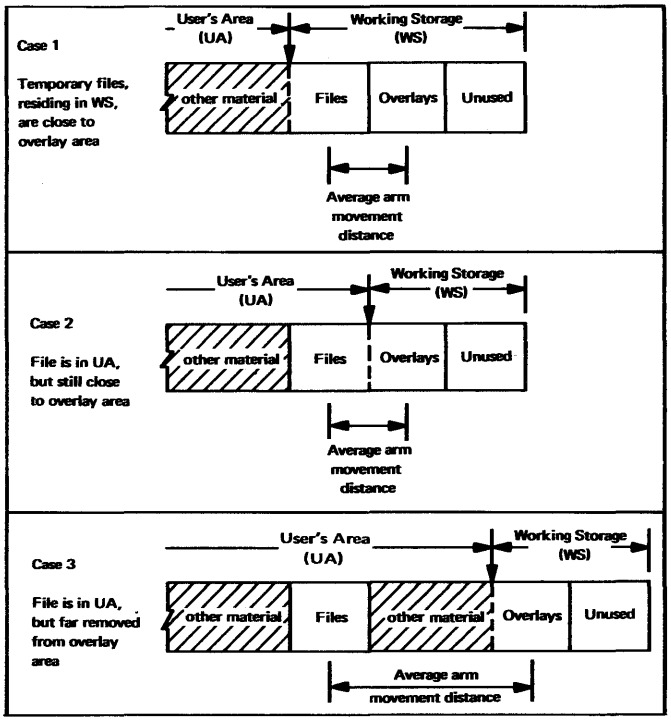


Figure 90.12.

Summary

To recapitulate the lessons learned in the preceding three case studies, performance depends on five major factors:

1. The size of the program. When writing any program, you should anticipate problems with core storage and performance. Plan programs of reasonable scope, and code them as a series of LINKs, if at all possible.
2. The subroutines required by the program. Realize that many seemingly innocent FORTRAN statements can cause sizable subroutines to be included in your core load. Some examples are PAUSE, STOP, FIND, division, use of the data switches, etc. FORTRAN control cards can have a similar effect -- for example, unnecessary *IOCS cards, the TRACE, etc.
3. The way the program is structured. When flowcharting and coding your programs, always keep in mind the location of the disk arm, so that you do not invite excessive arm movement between the overlay area and the data area. Place as little coding as possible between disk READ/WRITE loops so that the chance of an intervening overlay is reduced. Figure 90.11 shows the various combinations of data files and overlays.

   Note that the location of the overlay has a great effect on performance. If you must move the disk arm from one area to the other, you can at least try to minimize the number of times it is required (or reduce the distance involved, by making data files compact).
4. The overlay scheme used. If your program is of such magnitude that some overlaying is required, you should have a good feel for how each works and how each can affect performance. Figure 90.11 shows that there is no differentiation made between LOCALs, SOCALs, and LINKs -- they are all overlays.

   Note also that the number of times an overlay is required is not as important as the disk arm movement that may be necessary to get it. For this reason you should take particular care to avoid causing an overlay to be placed in between disk READ/WRITE statements.

   LOCALs, because they are selected by the programmer, will often yield better performance than SOCALs, which are chosen by the CLB according to predetermined rules. However, if you select LOCALs without regard to their effect on performance, it is possible that they can slow down execution time even more than SOCALs.
5. The size and location of the data file. Since you are concerned with minimizing disk arm movement time, you should try to shorten the distance involved.

   The overlay area is always at the end of the UA or at the beginning of WS, whichever way you prefer to look at it. The data files may be either:

   - In the UA or FX, if you have put them there with the *STOREDATA card
   - At the end of UA (beginning of WS), if you have not used a *STOREDATA or *FILES card

   If you have a temporary file, in WS, your arm movement times will be minimized, since the files and the overlays are as close as they can be. If your file is in the UA, however, the picture may be quite different, depending on how "deep" it lies in the UA. If a DUMPLET shows that there is a great deal of distance between the file and the end of UA, you should consider moving the file. Figure 90.12 shows three possible situations.

The key to gaining good program performance is knowledge:

- Knowledge of the way in which the three overlays work
- Knowledge of the basic workflow of your program

INDEX

A1DEC: 70.30.00, 70.40.10
Accidents: 15.10.60, 15.20.01, 15.20.10, 15.20.30, 15.20.50, 15.20.60, 15.20.70
Accounting controls: 10.30.00, 20.01.00, 20.10.01, 20.10.10, 20.10.20, 25.40.40, 40.20.00
Accounts payable: 10.40.50
Accounts receivable: 10.40.20
Accumulator: 30.20.00, 45.05.30
Accuracy: 70.10.01, 70.10.20
ADD: 70.10.30
Addend: 70.10.30
Addition area: 85.10.10
Address calculation sorting: 75.30.10
Alphabetic fields, comparing: 70.40.20
Alternating exchange sort: 75.40.00
Arithmetic: 70.10.01
- Binary: 70.10.20
- Constant subscripts: 70.50.10
- Decimal: 70.10.20, 70.10.30
- Extended precision: 70.10.20
- Fractions: 70.10.20
- Integer: 70.10.10
- Interaction with I/O: 70.30.00
- Real: 70.10.20
- Real fixed point: 70.10.20
- Real floating point: 70.10.20
- Standard precision: 70.10.20
- Variable precision: 70.10.20

Arithmetic statement function: 25.40.40
Assembler: 50.01.00, 60.10.20
Assembler Language: 20.60.01
Audit: 20.10.10
- Control: 20.30.10
- Trail: 20.40.70

Auditors: 20.10.10
Augend: 70.10.30
Backup: 15.10.60, 15.20.60, 25.40.40
Batch size: 20.10.10
Batch controls: 20.10.20, 20.40.70
Billing: 10.40.10
Blocking factor (see "packing factor")
Bugs (see "errors")
CALL LINK: 65.10.50
CALL PDUMP: 30.20.00
CALL TSTOP: 30.20.00
CALL TSTRT: 30.20.00
Cancellation: 20.10.20
Card data files
- Backup: 15.10.60
- Changes to: 15.10.30
- Size: 15.10.50

Card: 15.10.01
- Design: 20.30.10
- Formats: 40.30.00
- Layout: 10.20.00
- Layout form: 20.30.10
- Paths: 45.20.00
- Punches: 45.20.00
- Punching: 30.01.00
- Punching standards: 30.01.00
- Readers: 45.20.00
- Verification: 20.10.10
- Zone punches: 70.20.10, 70.40.10, 70.40.20

CARDZ: 65.10.30
Cartridge identification: 55.10.00
Cathode ray tube: 45.35.00
Check, reasonableness: 15.20.40
Check register: 25.40.60
Check writing: 25.40.50
COGO: 20.60.01
Collating sequence: 75.10.00
Commercial Subroutine Package: 20.30.10, 20.60.01, 30.20.00, 30.30.00, 70.10.20, 70.10.30, 70.20.01, 70.20.10, 70.20.20, 70.30.00, 70.40.10, 70.40.20, 70.60.10, 80.60.00, 90.20.30
COMMON: 65.10.50
Comparing fields: 70.10.30
Components, nonstandard: 45.45.00
Computed GO TO: 30.20.00
Configurator: 45.55.00
Console
- Debugging: 30.20.00
- Display lamps: 45.05.30
- Keyboard: 15.10.40, 45.05.10, 70.20.10
- Keyboard input: 25.40.10

Continuous Systems Modeling Program: 20.60.01
Contour map plotting: 20.60.01
Control
- Field, major: 75.10.00
- Field, minor: 75.10.00
- Key: 75.10.00, 85.10.30
- Panel, punched card: 10.20.00
- Tape: 10.30.00
- Word: 75.01.00

Controls (see "accounting controls")
Conversion: 40.10.00, 40.20.00
- Methods: 40.30.00

Copy a data file: 60.30.20
Copy a data file onto another disk: 60.30.30
Copy an entire disk onto another disk: 60.30.30
Copy a program onto another disk: 60.30.30
COPY program: 60.30.30
Core image format (see "disk data formats", "disk core image")
Core image buffer: 55.10.00, 60.10.20
Core load builder: 60.30.01, 65.10.30, 90.10.10, 90.20:00, 90.20.20, 90.30.40
Core storage
- Dump: 30.20.00
- Factors affecting: 85.10.30
- Logical layout: 65.10.00
- Management: 50.01.00, 65.01.00
- Map: 65.10.30
- Reducing requirements: 90.20.30
- Saving: 70.50.00

Crossfooting: 20.10.20
CRT (see "cathode ray tube")
CSP (see "Commercial Subroutine Package")
Cutover: 40.30.00
- One-time: 40.30.00

Cycle stealing: 70.20.01
Cylinder: 45.10.00, 80.10.00
Cylinder zero: 60.10.10, 60.20.20
DASD (see "direct access storage device")
Data: 15.10.01
- Area on disk: 80.20.00
- Live: 30.01.00
- Packing: 25.40.10
- Switches: 15.10.40, 25.40.40, 45.05.20, 65.10.30
- Types: 15.20.10

DATA statement: 70.10.30, 70.20.20, 70.40.20, 70.50.10, 70.50.20
Data Presentation System: 20.60.01
DCI (see "disk core image")
Debugging (see "programs, testing of")
Debugging, console: 30.20.00
DECA1: 70.30.00, 70.40.10
Decimal arithmetic: 70.10.20, 70.10.30
Decision tables: 25.10.00
DEFINE FILE: 80.30.10, 80.30.20, 80.40.10, 80.70.10, 85.10.30
*DEFINE VOID ASSEMBLER: 60.20.20
*DEFINE VOID FORTRAN: 60.20.20
DELETE: 60.30.20
Desk checking: 30.40.00

Direct access storage device: 15.10.10
Disk (see "disk data file", "disk cartridge", etc.)
Disk arm movement time: 45.10.00
Disk cartridge: 15.20.20, 45.10.00, 80.10.00
    Checking of ID numbers: 55.30.00
    Format of material: 60.30.01
    ID numbers: 50.01.00
    Number required: 50.01.00
    Scratch: 50.01.00
    Space on: 60.20.10
Disk core image: 60.30.01, 80.30.20
Disk core image format (see "disk data formats")
Disk data file: 15.10.01, 45.10.00
    Adding items: 85.10.10, 85.10.20
    Addition area: 85.10.10
    Backup: 15.10.60, 15.20.60
    Changes: 15.10.30
    Design: 20.30.10
    Duplicate copies: 15.20.10
    Hazards: 15.20.20
    Inquiry: 15.10.40
    Intentional modification: 15.20.20
    Jobs involving more than one: 15.10.20
    Organization: 85.10.01, 85.10.20
    Organization, choosing: 85.30.10
    Organization, direct: 85.10.30
    Organization, indexed sequential: 20.30.10, 75.20.10, 85.10.20
    Organization, partitioned direct: 85.10.30
    Organization, pure sequential: 85.10.10
    Organization, random: 20.30.10, 75.20.10, 85.10.30
    Organization, searching a pure sequential: 85.10.10
    Organization, sequential: 75.20.10
    Processing: 85.20.00
    Processing, random: 85.20.00
    Processing, sequential: 85.20.00
    Reorganization: 15.10.30, 85.10.10
    Safeguarding: 15.20.01
    Setup: 80.70.10
    Size: 15.10.50
    Space required: 80.40.00
Disk data formats: 60.30.01, 80.30.20
    Conversion: 60.30.20
Disk drives
    Logical: 50.01.00
    Physical: 50.01.00
Disk file (see "disk data file")
Disk management: 50.01.00
Disk Monitor System: 50.01.00
    Version I: 70.20.10
    Version II: 65.10.00, 70.20.10
Disk storage (see "disk data file", "disk cartridge", etc.)
Disk system format: 60.30.01
Disk Utility Program: 50.01.00, 60.30.01
DIV: 70.10.30
Dividend: 70.10.30
Divisor: 70.10.30
Documentation: 10.01.00, 15.20.70
    Current system: 20.01.00
    Old system: 40.20.00
    Standards: 25.10.00
Document controls: 20.10.20
Document register: 20.10.20
DSF (see "disk system format")
Dump: 60.30.20
Dump a data file and reload: 60.30.20
Dumplet: 90.30.40
*DUMPLET: 60.20.10
DUP (see "Disk Utility Program")
Duplicate files: 15.10.60
EDIT: 25.40.50, 70.30.00, 70.40.10, 70.40.20
Editing: 25.40.10
    Input cards: 85.30.10
EDIT mask: 70.40.20, 70.50.10
Employee numbers: 85.10.30
EQUIVALENCE statement: 70.50.10
Error recovery sheet: 15.20.70
Errors: 15.20.20, 15.20.40, 15.20.50, 15.20.60, 15.20.70, 30.10.00, 40.30.00
    Card punch: 30.01.00
    Program logic: 30.01.00
    Programmer clerical: 30.01.00
    Programmer procedural: 30.01.00
Exchanging sorting: 75.30.10
Execution time (see "running time, factors affecting")
Executive: 40.30.00
Exponentiation: 70.50.20
Extended precision: 70.10.20, 80.50.00, 80.60.00
Fields: 10.10.00, 80.20.00
Field size: 20.30.10
File maintenance: 20.30.10 (see also "disk data file, organization")
File organization: 20.30.10
FILES: 80.20.00, 80.30.20, 80.70.10, 90.30.30
FILL: 70.10.30, 70.40.20
FIND: 65.10.30, 70.50.20, 90.20.30
Fixed area: 60.10.50, 60.20.20, 80.30.20, 80.70.10
Fixed Location Equivalence Table: 60.10.50, 80.30.20
Fixed point arithmetic: 70.10.20
FLET (see "Fixed Location Equivalence Table")
Flipper: 65.10.20, 65.10.30
FLOAT: 70.40.10
Floating boundary: 60.10.40
Floating point arithmetic: 70.10.20
Flowcharts: 10.10.00, 20.01.00, 25.10.00, 25.30.20, 30.40.00
Format, A1: 70.40.10
Format, A2: 70.40.10
Formats, core storage required: 70.50.10
Forms
    Design: 20.20.10, 20.20.20
    Preprinted: 45.40.00
FORTRAN: 20.60.01
    Compiler: 50.01.00, 60.10.20
Fractions: 70.10.20
FUNCTION, arithmetic statement: 25.40.40
FX (see "fixed area")
GET: 70.30.00, 70.40.10
GO TO, computed: 30.20.00
Graphic output: 45.30.00, 45.35.00
Half-adjust: 25.40.40, 70.40.10
Hash total: 20.10.10, 20.40.70
Hazards (see "disk data file, hazards")
Hexadecimal numbers: 30.20.00, 45.05.30
High/low/equal compare: 70.40.20
IBM System/360: 45.50.00
IBM systems area: 60.10.20, 60.20.20
ICOMP: 70.10.30
IFIX: 70.40.10
IF statement: 30.20.00
ILS00: 65.10.40
ILS01: 65.10.40
ILS02: 65.10.40
ILS03: 65.10.40
ILS04: 65.10.40
Index: 25.40.20
Index to a disk data file: 85.10.01, 85.10.20
    Maintaining: 85.10.20
Indexed sequential (see "disk data file, organization, indexed sequential")
Input data, errors: 15.20.70
Input stream: 55.20.00
Inquiry: 15.10.40
Insertion: 75.30.10
Inside controls: 20.10.20
Installation: 05.01.00, 05.30.00
Integer arithmetic: 70.10.10
Integers: 70.10.10, 80.60.00
    One-word: 80.50.00, 80.60.00
Interchangeable chain cartridge: 20.20.10
Internal sort: 75.10.00
Interrupt: 70.20.01

Inventory: 10.40.40, 85.10.20
Involution: 70.50.20
*IOCS card: 65.10.30, 70.20.20, 70.50.20, 90.30.40
IOND: 70.20.10
JOB: 55.10.00
Job management: 50.01.00
Job-to-job transition: 50.01.00
KEYBD: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
Keyboard, console: 45.05.10
Keypunching (see "cards, punching")
Key-tag pair: 75.10.00
Key verification: 20.10.10
Language selection: 20.60.01
Large real numbers: 70.10.20
LET (see "Location Equivalence Table")
Light pen: 45.35.00
Linear Programming: 20.60.01
LINK: 65.10.60, 70.20.20, 90.20.20, 90.30.40
LINK area: 65.10.50
Load on call: 65.10.40
LOCAL: 65.10.20, 65.10.30, 70.50.20, 85.10.10, 90.20.20, 90.20.30, 90.30.40
LOCAL area: 65.10.40
Location Equivalence Table: 50.01.00, 60.10.40, 80.30.20
Magnitude: 70.10.20
Main line: 25.30.20
Manpower requirements: 40.30.00
Master cartridge: 50.01.00
Matching: 20.10.20
Match/no match: 70.40.20
Mechanism Design System: 20.60.01
Merge order: 75.10.00
Merging: 75.10.00, 75.30.10
Minuend: 70.10.30
Modular programs: 15.20.50, 25.30.20
Monitor control record: 55.10.00
MOVE: 25.40.50, 70.40.20
MPY: 70.10.30
NCOMP: 70.40.20
Negative balance: 20.10.20
Next record number indicator: 80.30.10, 80.40.10
Nonstandard components: 45.45.00
Non-systems cartridge: 50.01.00
NSIGN: 70.10.30
Numbers
- Binary: 45.05.30
- Hexadecimal: 30.20.00, 45.05.30

Numerical Surface Techniques: 20.60.01
NZONE: 70.40.20
Object code: 70.50.01
Operation manual: 15.20.70
Optical reader: 45.40.00
Optical System Design: 20.60.01
Order entry: 45.40.00
Outside controls: 20.10.20
Overlap: 70.20.01
Overlays: 65.10.30
PACK: 70.30.00, 70.40.10
Packing factor: 80.40.00
Paper tape punch: 45.25.00
Paper tape reader: 45.25.00
PAPTZ: 65.10.30
Parallel operations: 40.30.00
Partitioned direct (see "disk data file, organization, partitioned direct")
Pass: 75.10.00
Patches: 30.40.00
PAUSE: 30.20.00, 45.05.30, 65.10.30, 70.20.10
Payroll: 10.40.60, 15.10.20, 15.20.10, 15.20.50, 55.30.00, 80.60.00, 85.10.30, 85.30.10
PDUMP: 30.20.00
Performance (see "running time, factors affecting")
Personnel: 05.01.00
Petroleum Engineering and Exploration: 20.60.01
PID (see "Program Information Department")
Pigeonhole sorting: 75.30.10
Pilot operation: 40.30.00
Planning: 05.10.00
- For conversion: 40.10.00
- For testing: 30.01.00

Plotter: 45.30.00
PNCHZ: 65.10.30
Precision: 70.10.01
Preinstallation: 05.01.00
PRINT: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
Printer, console: 45.05.10
Printers: 45.15.00
Priority interrupt system: 70.20.01
PRNTZ: 65.10.30
PRNZ: 65.10.30
Processing, order: 15.10.10
Programmers, experience: 15.10.90
Program
- Area: 65.10.50
- Change authorization: 25.20.00
- Changes: 25.10.00, 25.30.20
- Comments: 25.40.10
- Modular: 15.20.50, 25.30.20
- Patches: 30.40.00
- Testing: 30.01.00, 30.10.00
- Type I: 20.60.01
- Type II: 20.60.01
- Type III: 20.60.01
- Type IV: 20.60.01

Program Information Department: 50.01.00
Program informatiom manual: 35.10.10
Programming
- Aids: 25.30.10
- Modular: 25.30.20
- Standards: 25.10.00

Project Control System: 20.60.01
PUNCH: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
Punched card systems: 10.20.00
Punching cards (see "cards, punching")
PUT: 25.40.50, 70.10.20, 70.30.00, 70.40.10
Random file organization (see "disk data file, organization, random")
READ: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
Read/write heads: 45.10.00, 80.10.00
READZ: 65.10.30
Real arithmetic: 70.10.20
Real numbers: 80.60.00
- Output of large: 70.10.20
- Multiplication of large: 70.10.20

Record
- Layout: 30.40.00
- Length: 80.40.00, 80.40.10
- Length, computing: 80.50.00
- Length, shortening: 80.60.00
- Number: 85.10.30
- Size: 15.10.70

Records: 80.20.00
Recovery: 15.20.60
Replacement selection: 75.30.10
Resident monitor: 65.10.10
Rotational delay: 45.10.00
Rounding: 70.10.20
Route accounting: 20.60.01
Route slip: 20.10.20
Run book: 15.20.70
Running time, factors affecting: 80.01.00, 80.40.00, 85.10.20, 85.10.30
SAC (see "storage access channel")
Sales analysis: 10.40.30
Sample documents: 10.10.00
Satellite cartridge: 50.01.00
SCA (see "synchronous communications adapter")
Scientific Subroutine Package: 20.60.01
Scratch disk: 50.01.00
SDFIO: 65.10.30
SDFND: 65.10.30, 70.50.20

Searching an index: 85.10.10
Sectors: 45.10.00, 80.10.00, 80.40.00
    Utilization: 80.40.00
Seek time: 45.10.00
Selective sorting: 75.30.10
Selective tracing: 30.20.00
Sequential organization (see "disk data file, organization, sequential")
Serial numbering: 20.10.20
SFIO: 65.10.30
SKIP: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
SOCAL: 65.10.10, 65.10.20, 70.50.20, 85.10.10, 90.10.10, 90.20.20, 90.20.30, 90.30.40
SOCAL area: 65.10.30
Sorting: 15.10.10, 15.10.20, 75.01.00, 75.10.00, 85.30.10
    Mechanical: 70.40.20, 75.20.20
    1130 flowchart: 75.40.00
Sort phases: 75.10.00
SQRT: 70.50.20
Stabilization time: 45.10.00
STACK: 70.20.10
Stacker select: 25.40.30
Standard precision: 80.50.00, 80.60.00
    Arithmetic: 70.10.20
Standards
    Documentation: 25.10.00
    Error handling: 25.10.00
    FORTRAN labels: 25.10.00
    Programming: 25.10.00
Statistical System: 20.60.01
Stock status: 15.10.40
STOP: 45.05.30, 70.20.10
Storage access channel: 45.45.00
Storage costs: 15.10.80
*STORE: 60.30.20
*STORECI: 65.10.40
Store core image: 60.30.20
*STOREDATA: 80.30.20, 80.70.10
Store data core image: 60.30.20
Strategy, testing: 30.10.00
STRESS: 20.60.01
String: 75.10.00
SUB: 70.10.30
Subjob: 55.10.00
Subprograms, subtypes of: 65.10.10
Subroutine library: 50.01.00
Subroutines: 25.30.20, 70.50.01
    Devices not on your system: 60.20.20
    Logarithmic: 60.20.20
    Long argument lessons: 70.50.10
    Trigonometric: 60.20.20
    Unlikely to be used: 60.20.20
Subtrahend: 70.10.30
SUFIO: 65.10.30
Supervisor program: 50.01.00
Survey: 10.10.00
Survey questionnaire
    Accounts payable: 10.40.50
    Accounts receivable: 10.40.20
    Billing: 10.40.10
    Inventory: 10.40.40
    Payroll: 10.40.60
    Sales analysis: 10.40.30
Synchronous communications adapter: 45.50.00
System overlay: 65.10.30
Systems cartridge: 50.01.00
Systems testing: 30.10.00
Table lookup: 25.10.00
Tag: 75.10.00
Tag sort: 75.10.00, 75.30.20
Teleprocessing: (see "synchronous communications adapter")
Temporary indicator: 55.10.00
Test decks: 30.10.00
Testing: 30.10.00, 30.20.00, 30.30.00, 30.40.00
Throughput (see "running time, factors affecting")
Time
    Rotational delay: 45.10.00
    Stabilization: 45.10.00
    Stamps: 20.10.20
Timing: 70.60.10
Trace: 30.20.00, 30.30.00, 45.05.20, 70.10.20, 70.20.20, 70.50.20
Transfer vector: 65.10.10
Transmittal slip: 20.10.20
TSTOP: 30.20.00
TSTRT: 30.20.00
Type Composition: 20.60.01
TYPER: 70.20.10, 70.20.20
TYPEZ: 65.10.30
UA (see "user area")
UDISK: 65.10.30
UNPAC: 70.30.00, 70.40.10
Unused area: 65.10.70
User area: 60.10.40, 60.20.20, 80.30.20, 80.70.10
Variable precision arithmetic (see "arithmetic, variable precision")
Variable summary sheet: 25.30.10
Verifier: 20.10.10
WHOLE: 25.40.40, 70.10.20
Work Measurement Aids: 20.60.01
Working storage: 60.10.30, 60.20.20, 80.30.20, 80.70.10
WRTYZ: 65.10.30
WS (see "working storage")
X-punch: 70.40.20
Zero balance: 20.10.20, 25.40.40
Zone punch: 20.30.10, 70.40.10, 70.40.20
1DUMY: 60.20.10
11-punch: 70.20.10, 70.40.10, 70.40.20
11-zone: 70.40.20
12-punch: 70.40.20
12-zone: 70.40.20
941 report: 25.40.70
1055 Paper Tape Punch: 45.25.00
1130 Configurator: 45.55.00
1131 Central Processing Unit: 90.30.20
1132 Printer: 45.05.10, 45.15.00, 70.20.10, 90.30.20
1134 Paper Tape Reader: 45.25.00
1231 Optical Mark Page Reader: 45.40.00
1403 Printer: 45.05.10, 45.15.00, 70.20.01, 90.30.20
1442 Card Read Punch: 45.20.00, 70.20.10, 90.30.20
    Model 5 Card Punch: 45.20.00
1627 Plotter: 45.30.00, 90.30.20
2250 Display Unit: 45.35.00
2315 Disk Cartridge: 45.10.00, 80.10.00
2501 Card Reader: 45.20.00, 90.30.20

READER'S COMMENT FORM

IBM 1130 Computing System User's Guide C20-1690-0

Please comment on the usefulness and readability of this publication, suggest additions and deletions, and list specific errors and omissions (give page numbers). All comments and suggestions become the property of IBM. If you wish a reply, be sure to include your name and address.

COMMENTS

fold fold

fold fold

- Thank you for your cooperation. No postage necessary if mailed in the U.S.A. FOLD ON TWO LINES, STAPLE AND MAIL.

YOUR COMMENTS PLEASE...

Your comments on the other side of this form will help us improve future editions of this publication. Each reply will be carefully reviewed by the persons responsible for writing and publishing this material.

Please note that requests for copies of publications and for assistance in utilizing your IBM system should be directed to your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality.

fold fold

FIRST CLASS
PERMIT NO. 1359
WHITE PLAINS, N. Y.

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
NO POSTAGE STAMP NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY . . .

IBM Corporation
112 East Post Road
White Plains, N. Y. 10601

Attention: Technical Publications

fold fold

Printed in U.S.A. C20-1690-0

IBM®

International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
112 East Post Road, White Plains, N.Y. 10601
[USA Only]

IBM World Trade Corporation
821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
[International]

Printed in U.S.A. C20-1690-0

International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
112 East Post Road, White Plains, N.Y. 10601
(USA Only)

IBM World Trade Corporation
821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
(International)